

THE LOEB CLASSICAL LIBRARY

FOUNDED BY JAMES LOEB, LL.D.

EDITED BY
G. P. GOOLD, PH.D.

FORMER EDITORS

† T. E. PAGE, C.H., LITT.D. † E. CAPPS, PH.D., LL.D.
† W. H. D. ROUSE, LITT.D. † L. A. POST, L.H.D.
E. H. WARMINGTON, M.A., F.R.HIST.SOC.

XENOPHON

III
ANABASIS
Books I-VII

XENOPHON

IN SEVEN VOLUMES

III

ANABASIS

BOOKS I-VII

WITH AN ENGLISH TRANSLATION BY

CARLETON L. BROWNSON

COLLEGE OF THE CITY OF NEW YORK



CAMBRIDGE, MASSACHUSETTS
HARVARD UNIVERSITY PRESS

LONDON
WILLIAM HEINEMANN LTD

MOMLXXX

American ISBN 0-674-99100-1

British ISBN 0 434 99090 6

First printed 1922

Reprinted 1932, 1947, 1961, 1968, 1980

CONTENTS

	PAGE
ANABASIS—	
INTRODUCTION	vii
MANUSCRIPTS AND EDITIONS	xv
BOOK I	1
BOOK II	103
BOOK III	175
BOOK IV	255
BOOK V	347
BOOK VI	435
BOOK VII	511
INDEX TO ANABASIS	627
MAP—THE MARCH OF THE TEN THOUSAND	<i>At end</i>

Printed in Great Britain by
Fletcher & Son, Norwich

INTRODUCTION

XENOPHON'S *Anabasis*¹ is the story of the expedition which Cyrus the Younger² led against his brother Artaxerxes II., king of Persia, in the hope of gaining for himself the Persian throne; of the retreat to the Euxine Sea, after the death of Cyrus, of the "Ten Thousand" Greeks who had made part of his army; and of their ultimate return to western Asia Minor.

Cyrus undertook his ill-fated expedition in 401 B.C. Before that time he had played a somewhat prominent part in Greek history. Toward the close of the great struggle for supremacy between Athens and Sparta, which lasted from 431 to 404 B.C. and is known as the Peloponnesian War, the Spartans had concluded an alliance with Tissaphernes, Persian satrap of Lydia and Ionia and

¹ The verb *ἀναβαίνειν*, *lit.* "to go up," was used of any journey from the sea coast to the higher lands of the interior, but more especially of the famous route from the Greek coast of Asia Minor to the Persian capital, Susa. Hence the noun *ἀνάβασις*—"Anabasis." It will be seen that the title properly belongs only to the first part of Xenophon's story.

² Usually so called to distinguish him from Cyrus the Great, the founder of the Persian Empire.

INTRODUCTION

commander-in-chief of all the Persian forces of western Asia Minor. Tissaphernes hoped that with the help of the Spartans he might regain control of the Greek cities on the Asiatic coast which had formerly been under Persian rule, but were now included in the Athenian Empire; the Spartans, on their side, were to receive subsidies from him for the support of their fleet. Tissaphernes, however, was a double-dealer by nature; furthermore, he was persuaded by the Athenian Alcibiades that it was to the interest of Persia that neither Greek belligerent should triumph, but that both should exhaust themselves by continued warfare. Accordingly he soon reduced and finally cut off altogether the stipulated grants of money to the Spartans. When the latter protested to the then reigning king of Persia, Darius II., against this breach of faith, the king commissioned Cyrus, the younger of his two sons, as satrap of Lydia, Greater Phrygia, and Cappadocia, and military commander of all western Asia Minor.¹ Thus Cyrus practically superseded Tissaphernes, who was divested of his military authority and retained only the lesser part—Ionia—of his former satrapy.

Cyrus entered upon his important offices in 407 B.C., when he was but seventeen years of age. He had been instructed by Darius to give whole-hearted support to the Spartans, whose fortunes seemed to be then at their lowest ebb. In the performance of

¹ *Anabasis*, I. i. 2.

INTRODUCTION

this task he showed himself able, zealous, and straightforward. The aid which he rendered to the Spartans was certainly a most important, perhaps an essential, factor in bringing about their final triumph over the Athenians.

Shortly before the conclusion of the Peloponnesian War, *i.e.* in 405 B.C., Cyrus was called away from his post in Asia Minor to be present at the death-bed of his father.¹ But his participation in the war had given him opportunity to learn the immense superiority of the Greek soldier and Greek methods of warfare over the Persian soldier and Persian warfare, and to establish relations of friendship with many officers of the Peloponnesian forces; furthermore, the termination of the war in 404 B.C., after it had lasted more than a quarter of a century, released from military service thousands of men who knew no other calling and had no desire to turn to peaceful pursuits. These circumstances explain not only why Cyrus wished, but how he was able, to enlist Greeks for the great enterprise upon which he soon afterwards embarked, *viz.* his attempt to dethrone his brother Artaxerxes.

The only reason for this attempt which Xenophon offers in the *Anabasis*² was the resentment and humiliation which Cyrus felt in consequence of his arrest by Artaxerxes at the time when the latter, assuming the royal power upon the death of Darius

¹ *Anabasis*, I. i. 2.

² I. i. 4.

INTRODUCTION

(405 B.C.), was led by the false¹ accusation of Tissaphernes to believe that Cyrus was plotting against him. We learn from other sources that Cyrus had expected to be designated by Darius as heir to the throne, partly because he was the favourite son of the queen,² and still more because he was "born in the purple," *i.e.* after the accession of Darius, while Artaxerxes was not. In fact, it was for precisely these reasons that Xerxes, eighty years before, had been chosen king of Persia to the exclusion of an older brother.

Xenophon was an eye-witness of the events which he describes in the *Anabasis*. He had joined the expedition, "not as general or captain or private,"³ but upon the solicitation of his friend Proxenus, who was one of the Greek generals in Cyrus' service. At this time Xenophon was probably somewhat less than thirty years of age. Despite his comparative youth, and despite the fact that he was an Athenian in an army of Peloponnesians,⁴ he was destined to play the leading part in the famous retreat of the Ten Thousand, a part which he describes with simple directness and unaffected modesty.

The time of the composition of the *Anabasis* has been a subject for dispute. It can hardly be doubted

¹ That Xenophon so regarded it is made clear by his use of the verb διαβάλλει (I. i. 3, see translation).

² *Anabasis*, I. i. 4. ³ *Anabasis*, III. i. 4.

⁴ *cp.* I. i. 6 and the roll of the Greek generals, I. i. 9-ii. 3. Cyrus' previous associations, it will be remembered, had been with Peloponnesians only.

INTRODUCTION

that the narrative was based upon full notes which Xenophon must have taken during the progress of the events which it covers; and the natural assumption that it would have been reduced to final form while these events were still fresh in the thoughts of the writer and his countrymen is supported by internal evidence, *viz.* characteristics of style which appear to mark the *Anabasis* as one of Xenophon's earlier works. On the other hand, an autobiographical digression in the fifth book¹ was probably composed as late as 370 B.C.; and secondly, when Xenophon alludes to the expedition of Cyrus in a passage² of his *Hellenica* which was written *c.* 380 B.C., he refers his reader for fuller information to a history of the expedition by "Themistogenes the Syracusan," thus implying, apparently, that his own *Anabasis* was not at that time in existence. A reasonable way of reconciling these conflicting indications has been found in the view that Xenophon's *Anabasis* was *written*, in very nearly its present form, soon after the author returned to Greece from Asia in 394 B.C., but was not *published* until *c.* 370 B.C. It is held that Xenophon may well have wished to delay until his later years the publication of a work in which he himself figured so prominently.

The march of the Ten Thousand Greeks from Sardis to the gates of Babylon, and thence back to the Greek coast of the Euxine Sea, was an historical

¹ v. iii. 7-13.

² III. i. 2.

INTRODUCTION

event of the first importance. Defeating with scarcely an effort Persian forces many times their number, and accomplishing a safe return despite all the efforts of Artaxerxes to hinder them, they revealed to all men the utter weakness of the immense, much vaunted, and much dreaded Persian Empire. Greek statesmen and commanders were not slow to read the lesson. In the words of Francis Bacon¹: "This young scholar or philosopher [Xenophon], after all the captains were murdered in parley by treason, conducted these ten thousand foot through the heart of all the king's high countries, from Babylon to Graecia, in safety, to the astonishment of the world and the encouragement of the Grecians in time succeeding to make invasion upon the kings of Persia, as was afterwards purposed by Jason the Thessalian, attempted by Agesilaus the Spartan, and achieved by Alexander the Macedonian, all upon the ground of the act of that young scholar."

While the march of the Ten Thousand revealed to the Greeks the weakness of the Persians, Xenophon's account of it reveals to us most clearly the fine qualities of these Greek soldiers of fortune—their courage and endurance, piety and humanity, independence and reasonableness. True soldiers in their readiness to meet danger and hardship, they were still free Greeks, who could be governed only with their own consent and who insisted upon being heard

¹*The Advancement of Learning*, I: vii. 30.

INTRODUCTION

and consulted in matters of common interest. They have been truly called "a marching democracy," "a roving commonwealth," "deliberating and acting, fighting and voting; an epitome of Athens set adrift in the centre of Asia." One hardly needs other evidence of the strength, the character, and the temper of a people whose "mercenary" troops were men like these.

The *Anabasis* is valuable, furthermore, for the information it yields regarding the art of war among the Greeks, and as a real contribution to military science. Xenophon was, or became in the course of the retreat, an exceedingly able strategist and tactician, approaching each problem in the spirit of a scholar and thinker and then translating his reasoned solution into terms of military method, always resourceful in meeting new situations with new tactics, and never fettered by the lore of accepted practice. The influence of his original and inventive genius upon later Greek warfare was profound. That influence has lasted down to our own time. A modern student¹ of military science writes: "The soldier of greatest use to us preceding Alexander was unquestionably Xenophon. . . . It is he who has shown the world what should be the tactics of retreat, how to command a rear-guard. More tactical originality has come from the *Anabasis* than from any dozen other books. . . . After the lapse

¹ Col. Theodore A. Dodge, *Alexander*, pp. 101 ff.

INTRODUCTION

of twenty-three centuries, there is no better military text-book than the *Anabasis*."

Finally, the simplicity and grace, the charm and vividness with which Xenophon's story is told give it a high place among narratives of travel and adventure. Taine has even said of the *Anabasis* that "the beauty of the style transcends the interest of the story." Certainly, Xenophon's reputation as a man of letters depends in no small degree upon the *Anabasis*.

MANUSCRIPTS AND EDITIONS

I.—MANUSCRIPTS

The extant MSS. of the *Anabasis* fall into two groups. The first, or superior, group includes :—

- C. Parisinus 1640, written in the year 1320, but from an original of the latter part of the ninth century. Many additions and changes, by a later hand and usually for the worse, are found in this MS. In the present edition C₁ designates the earlier hand and C₂ the later.
- B. Parisinus 1641, of the fifteenth century.
- A. Vaticanus 987, later than B.
- E. Etonensis, of the fifteenth century.

C is far the best of all the MSS. It was clearly the source from which B, A, and E were copied.

The best MSS. of the second, or inferior, group are

- D. Bodleianus (lib. Canon. 39), of the fifteenth century.
- V. Vindobonensis 95, of the fifteenth century.

2.—EDITIONS OF THE ANABASIS¹

The *Anabasis* has been so long and so universally employed as a text-book for beginners in Greek that almost numberless editions of the work have been published. It must suffice to mention a very few :

(a) *Annotated Editions.*

REHDANTZ-CARNUTH : Berlin (Weidmann).
VOLLBRECHT, W. : Leipzig (Teubner).
GOODWIN AND WHITE : Boston (Ginn).
MATHER AND HEWITT : New York (American Book Co.).

¹ For important editions of the complete works of Xenophon see *Hellenica*, Vol. I., of this series, p. xiii.

MANUSCRIPTS AND EDITIONS

(b) Critical Editions.

DINDORF, L. : Leipzig and Oxford.

COBET, C. G. : Leyden.

HUG, A. : Leipzig.

GEMOLL, W. : Leipzig (editio major).

MARCHANT, E. C. : Oxford.

The text of the present edition is selective, the critical notes calling attention to important variations from the texts of Marchant and Gemoll.

Recent work includes the following:

Ed. Maior. C. Hude. Leipzig, 1931.

Text and French translation (Budé), P. Masqueray.
Paris, 1930-31.

Translation by R. Warner. Penguin Classics. 1949.

XENOPHON

THE ANABASIS OF CYRUS

BOOK I

ΞΕΝΟΦΩΝΤΟΣ ΚΥΡΟΥ ΑΝΑΒΑΣΙΣ

A

I. Δαρείου καὶ Παρυσάτιδος γίνονται παῖδες δύο, πρεσβύτερος μὲν Ἀρταξέρξης, νεώτερος δὲ Κύρος· ἐπεὶ δὲ ἡσθένει Δαρείος καὶ ὑπώπτευε τελευτὴν τοῦ βίου, ἐβούλετο τῶ παῖδε ἀμφοτέρω
 2 παρῆναι. ὁ μὲν οὖν πρεσβύτερος παρῶν ἐτύγχανε· Κύρον δὲ μεταπέμπεται ἀπὸ τῆς ἀρχῆς (ἧς) αὐτὸν σατράπην ἐποίησε, καὶ στρατηγὸν δὲ αὐτὸν ἀπέδειξε πάντων ὅσοι εἰς Καστωλοῦ πεδίου ἀθροίζονται. ἀναβαίνει οὖν ὁ Κύρος λαβὼν Τισσαφέρην ὡς φίλον καὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἔχων ὀπλίτας τριακοσίους,¹ ἄρχοντα δὲ αὐτῶν Ξενίαν Παρράσιον.

3 Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐτελεύτησε Δαρείος καὶ κατέστη εἰς τὴν βασιλείαν Ἀρταξέρξης, Τισσαφέρης διαβάλλει τὸν Κύρον πρὸς τὸν ἀδελφὸν ὡς ἐπιβουλεύει αὐτῷ. ὁ δὲ πείθεται καὶ συλλαμβάνει² Κύρον ὡς ἀποκτενῶν· ἡ δὲ μήτηρ ἐξαιτησαμένη

¹ Before τριακοσίους the MSS. have ἀνέβη: Gemoll brackets, following Bissehop.

² συλλαμβάνει MSS. except C₁, Marchant: λαμβάνει C₁, Gemoll.

¹ In regard to the persons mentioned and the events sketched in §§ 1-4, see Introduction, pp. 231 sqq.

XENOPHON THE ANABASIS OF CYRUS

BOOK I

I. DARIUS and Parysatis had two sons born to them, of whom the elder was Artaxerxes and the younger Cyrus.¹ Now when Darius lay sick and suspected that the end of his life was near, he wished to have both his sons with him. The elder, as it chanced, was with him already; but Cyrus he summoned from the province over which he had made him satrap, and he had also appointed him commander of all the forces that muster in the plain of Castolus.² Cyrus accordingly went up³ to his father, taking with him Tissaphernes as a friend and accompanied by three hundred Greek hoplites,⁴ under the command of Xenias of Parrhasia.

When Darius had died and Artaxerxes had become established as king, Tissaphernes falsely accused Cyrus to his brother of plotting against him. And Artaxerxes, believing the accusation, arrested Cyrus, with the intention of putting him to death; his mother, however, made intercession for him, and sent him back

² Castolus was the mustering place for all the Persian forces of western Asia Minor. See Introd. p. 232.

³ See Introd. p. vii, note 1.

⁴ i.e. heavy-armed infantrymen, the regular "troops of the line" in Greek warfare. In this instance, of course, they are serving Cyrus as a bodyguard.

4 αὐτὸν ἀποπέμπει πάλιν ἐπὶ τὴν ἀρχήν. ὁ δ' ὡς ἀπῆλθε κινδυνεύσας καὶ ἀτιμασθείς, βουλευεται ὅπως μήποτε ἔτι ἔσται ἐπὶ τῷ ἀδελφῷ, ἀλλά, ἣν δύνηται, βασιλεύσει αὐτ' ἐκείνου. Παρύσατις μὲν δὴ ἡ μήτηρ ὑπῆρχε τῷ Κύρῳ, φιλοῦσα αὐτὸν μᾶλλον ἢ τὸν βασιλεύοντα Ἄρταξερξην.
5 ὅστις δ' ἀφικνεῖτο τῶν παρὰ βασιλέως πρὸς αὐτὸν πάντας οὕτω διατιθεῖς ἀπεπέμπετο ὥστε αὐτῷ μᾶλλον φίλους εἶναι ἢ βασιλεῖ. καὶ τῶν παρ' ἑαυτῷ δὲ βαρβάρων ἐπεμελεῖτο ὡς πολεμεῖν τε ἱκανοὶ εἴησαν καὶ εὐνοϊκῶς ἔχοιεν
6 αὐτῷ. τὴν δὲ Ἑλληνικὴν δύναμιν ἤθροιζεν ὡς μάλιστα ἐδύνατο ἐπικρυπτόμενος, ὅπως ὅτι ἀπαρασκευότατον λάβοι βασιλέα.

Ὡδε οὖν ἐποιεῖτο τὴν συλλογὴν. ὅποσας εἶχε φυλακὰς ἐν ταῖς πόλεσι παρήγγειλε τοῖς φρουρ-
ἀρχοῖς ἐκάστοις λαμβάνειν ἄνδρας Πελοποννησίους ὅτι πλείστους καὶ βελτίστους, ὡς ἐπιβου-
λεύοντος Τισσαφέρνους ταῖς πόλεσι. καὶ γὰρ ἦσαν αἱ Ἰωνικαὶ πόλεις Τισσαφέρνους τὸ ἀρχαῖον ἐκ βασιλέως δεδομένα, τότε δὲ ἀφειστήκεσαν
7 πρὸς Κύρον πᾶσαι πλὴν Μιλήτου· ἐν Μιλήτῳ δὲ Τισσαφέρνης προαισθόμενος τὰ αὐτὰ ταῦτα βουλευομένους, ἀποστῆναι πρὸς Κύρον, τοὺς μὲν αὐτῶν ἀπέκτεινε, τοὺς δ' ἐξέβαλεν. ὁ δὲ Κύρος ὑπολαβὼν τοὺς φεύγοντας συλλέξας στράτευμα ἐπολιόρκει Μίλητον καὶ κατὰ γῆν καὶ κατὰ θάλατταν καὶ ἐπειρᾶτο κατάγειν τοὺς ἐκπεπτω-

again to his province. Now when Cyrus had thus returned, after his danger and disgrace, he set about planning that he might never again be in the power of his brother, but, if possible, might be king in his stead. He had, in the first place, the support of Parysatis, his mother, for she loved him better than the son who was king, Artaxerxes. Again, when any of the King's court came to visit him, he treated them all in such a way that when he sent them back they were more devoted to him than to the King. He also took care that the barbarians¹ of his own province should be capable soldiers and should feel kindly toward him. Lastly, as regards his Greek force, he proceeded to collect it with the utmost secrecy, so that he might take the King as completely unprepared as possible.

It was in the following way, then, that he gathered this force: In the first place, he sent orders to the commanders of all the garrisons he had in the cities to enlist as many Peloponnesian soldiers of the best sort as they severally could, on the plea that Tissaphernes had designs upon their cities. For, in fact, the Ionian cities had originally belonged to Tissaphernes, by gift of the King,² but at that time all of them except Miletus had revolted and gone over to Cyrus. The people of Miletus also were planning to do the very same thing, namely, to go over to Cyrus, but Tissaphernes, finding out about it in time, put some of them to death and banished others. Cyrus thereupon took the exiles under his protection, collected an army, and laid siege to Miletus both by land and by sea, and endeavoured to restore the exiles to their
were not Greeks. In general, then, it meant "foreigners"; in most cases in the *Anabasis* (as here) it could be translated "Persians."² See *Introd.* p. viii.

¹ "Barbarians" is a convenient, but not an accurate, translation for βάρβαροι, which was simply the name the Greeks gave, without implying reproach, to all peoples who

κότας. καὶ αὕτη αὖ ἄλλη πρόφασις ἦν αὐτῷ
 8 τοῦ ἀθροίζειν στράτευμα. πρὸς δὲ βασιλέα
 πέμπων ἡξίου ἀδελφὸς ὢν αὐτοῦ δοθῆναι οἱ
 ταύτας τὰς πόλεις μᾶλλον ἢ Τισσαφέρνην ἄρ-
 χεῖν αὐτῶν, καὶ ἡ μήτηρ συνέπραττεν αὐτῷ
 ταῦτα· ὥστε βασιλεὺς τὴν μὲν πρὸς ἑαυτὸν
 ἐπιβουλήν οὐκ ἠσθάνετο, Τισσαφέρνει δὲ ἐνόμιζε
 πολεμοῦντα αὐτὸν ἀμφὶ τὰ στρατεύματα δα-
 πανᾶν· ὥστε οὐδὲν ἤχθετο αὐτῶν πολεμοῦντων.
 καὶ γὰρ ὁ Κῦρος ἀπέπεμπε τοὺς γιγνομένους
 δασμοὺς βασιλεῖ ἐκ τῶν πόλεων ὧν Τισσα-
 φέρνους¹ ἐτύγχανεν ἔχων.

9 Ἄλλο δὲ στράτευμα αὐτῷ συνελέγετο ἐν
 Χερρονήσῳ τῇ κατ' ἀντιπέρας Ἀβύδου τόνδε τὸν
 τρόπον. Κλέαρχος Λακεδαιμόνιος φυγὰς ἦν·
 τούτῳ συγγενόμενος ὁ Κῦρος ἠγάσθη τε αὐτὸν
 καὶ δίδωσιν αὐτῷ μυρίους δαρεικοὺς. ὁ δὲ
 λαβὼν τὸ χρυσίον στράτευμα συνέλεξεν ἀπὸ
 τούτων τῶν χρημάτων καὶ ἐπολέμει ἐκ Χερρο-
 νήσου ὀρμώμενος τοῖς Θραξὶ τοῖς ὑπὲρ Ἑλλησ-
 ποντον οἰκοῦσι καὶ ὠφέλει τοὺς Ἕλληνας· ὥστε
 καὶ χρήματα συνεβάλλοντο αὐτῷ εἰς τὴν τροφήν
 τῶν στρατιωτῶν αἱ Ἑλλησποντιακαὶ πόλεις
 ἐκούσαι. τοῦτο δ' αὖ οὕτω τρεφόμενον ἐλάν-
 θανεν αὐτῷ τὸ στράτευμα.

10 Ἀρίστιππος δὲ ὁ Θετταλὸς ξένος ὢν ἐτύγχανεν
 αὐτῷ, καὶ πιεζόμενος ὑπὸ τῶν οἴκοι ἀντιστα-

¹ Τισσαφέρνους Mar., following Krüger: Τισσαφέρνης MSS.: Τισσαφέρνης ἔτι Gem.

¹ For the reason for his banishment see II. vi. 2-4.

² The daric was a Persian gold coin, equivalent in weight

city; and this, again, made him another pretext for gathering an army. Meanwhile he sent to the King and urged, on the ground that he was his brother, that these Ionian cities should be given to him instead of remaining under the rule of Tissaphernes, and his mother co-operated with him in this. The result was that the King failed to perceive the plot against himself, but believed that Cyrus was spending money on his troops because he was at war with Tissaphernes. Consequently he was not at all displeased at their being at war, the less so because Cyrus regularly remitted to the King the tribute which came in from the cities he chanced to have that belonged to Tissaphernes.

Still another army was being collected for him in the Chersonese which is opposite Abydus, in the following manner: Clearchus¹ was a Lacedaemonian exile; Cyrus, making his acquaintance, came to admire him, and gave him ten thousand darics.² And Clearchus, taking the gold, collected an army by means of this money, and using the Chersonese as a base of operations, proceeded to make war upon the Thracians who dwell beyond the Hellespont, thereby aiding the Greeks.³ Consequently, the Hellespontine cities of their own free will sent Clearchus contributions of money for the support of his troops. So it was that this army also was being secretly maintained for Cyrus.

Again, Aristippus the Thessalian chanced to be a friend of Cyrus, and since he was hard pressed by his

of gold to £1 2s. 2½d. or \$5.40, but in purchasing power to a much larger sum.

³ i.e. the Greeks on the European side of the Hellespont, who suffered from the incursions of their Thracian neighbours.

σιωτῶν ἔρχεται πρὸς τὸν Κῦρον καὶ αἰτεῖ αὐτὸν εἰς δισχιλίους ξένους καὶ¹ τριῶν μηνῶν μισθόν, ὡς οὕτως περιγεγόμενος ἂν τῶν ἀντιστασιωτῶν. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος δίδωσιν αὐτῷ εἰς τετρακισχιλίους καὶ ἕξ μηνῶν μισθόν, καὶ δεῖται αὐτοῦ μὴ πρόσθεν καταλύσαι πρὸς τοὺς ἀντιστασιώτας πρὶν ἂν αὐτῷ συμβουλεύσῃται. οὕτω δὲ αὐτὸ ἐν Θετταλίᾳ ἐλάμβανεν αὐτῷ τρεφόμενον στράτευμα.

11 Πρόξενον δὲ τὸν Βοιωτίον ξένον ὄντα ἐκέλευσε λαβόντα ἄνδρας ὅτι πλείστους παραγενέσθαι, ὡς ἐς Πισίδας βουλόμενος στρατεύεσθαι, ὡς πράγματα παρεχόντων τῶν Πισιδῶν τῇ ἑαυτοῦ χώρᾳ. Σοφαίνετον δὲ τὸν Στυμφάλιον καὶ Σωκράτην τὸν Ἀχαιόν, ξένους ὄντας καὶ τούτους, ἐκέλευσεν ἄνδρας λαβόντας ἐλθεῖν ὅτι πλείστους, ὡς πολέμησων Τισσαφέρνει σὺν τοῖς φυγάσι τοῖς Μιλησίων· καὶ ἐποίουν οὕτως οὗτοι.

II. Ἐπεὶ δ' ἐδόκει ἤδη πορεύεσθαι αὐτῷ ἄνω, τὴν μὲν πρόφασιν ἐποιεῖτο ὡς Πισίδας βουλόμενος ἐκβαλεῖν παντάπασιν ἐκ τῆς χώρας· καὶ ἀθροίζει ὡς ἐπὶ τούτους τό τε βαρβαρικὸν καὶ τὸ Ἑλληνικόν. ἐνταῦθα καὶ παραγγέλλει τῷ τε Κλεάρχῳ λαβόντι ἤκειν ὅσον ἦν αὐτῷ στράτευμα, καὶ τῷ Ἀριστίπῳ συναλλαγέντι πρὸς τοὺς οἴκοι ἀποπέμψαι πρὸς ἑαυτὸν ὃ εἶχε στράτευμα· καὶ Ξενίᾳ τῷ Ἀρκάδι, ὃς αὐτῷ προειστήκει τοῦ ἐν ταῖς πόλεσι ξενικοῦ, ἤκειν παραγγέλλει λαβόντα τοὺς ἄλλους² πλὴν ὅποσοι ἰκανοὶ ἦσαν
2 τὰς ἀκροπόλεις φυλάττειν. ἐκάλεσε δὲ καὶ τοὺς

¹ καὶ MSS.: Gem. brackets.

² τοὺς ἄλλους MSS.: Gem. brackets, following Dindorf.

political opponents at home, he came to Cyrus and asked him for three months' pay for two thousand mercenaries, urging that in this way he should get the better of his opponents. And Cyrus gave him six months' pay for four thousand, and requested him not to come to terms with his opponents until he had consulted with him. Thus the army in Thessaly, again, was being secretly maintained for him.

Furthermore, Cyrus directed Proxenus the Boeotian, who was a friend of his, to come to him with as many men as he could get, saying that he wished to undertake a campaign against the Pisidians, because, as he said, they were causing trouble to his province. He also directed Sophanetus the Stymphalian and Socrates the Achaean, who were likewise friends of his, to come with as many men as they could get, saying that he intended to make war upon Tissaphernes with the aid of the Milesian exiles; and they proceeded to carry out his directions.

II. When he thought the time had come to begin his upward¹ march, the pretext he offered was that he wished to drive the Pisidians out of his land entirely, and it was avowedly against them that he set about collecting both his barbarian and his Greek troops. At that time he also sent word to Clearchus to come to him with the entire army which he had, and to Aristippus to effect a reconciliation with his adversaries at home and send him the army which he had; and he sent word to Xenias the Arcadian, who commanded for him the mercenary force in the cities,² to come with his troops, leaving behind only so many as were necessary to garrison the citadels. He likewise summoned the troops which were besieging

¹ See Introd. p. vii, note 1.

² See i. 6.

Μίλητον πολιορκούντας, καὶ τοὺς φυγάδας ἐκέλευσε σὺν αὐτῷ στρατεύεσθαι, ὑποσχόμενος αὐτοῖς, εἰ καλῶς καταπράξειεν ἐφ' ἃ ἐστρατεύετο, μὴ πρόσθεν παύσασθαι¹ πρὶν αὐτοὺς καταγάγοι οἴκαδε. οἱ δὲ ἠδέως ἐπέιθοντο· ἐπίστευον γὰρ αὐτῷ· καὶ λαβόντες τὰ ὄπλα παρήσαν εἰς Σάρδεις.

3 Ξενίας μὲν δὴ τοὺς ἐκ τῶν πόλεων λαβῶν παρεγένετο εἰς Σάρδεις ὀπλίτας εἰς τετρακισχιλίους, Πρόξενος δὲ παρῆν ἔχων ὀπλίτας μὲν εἰς πεντακοσίους καὶ χιλίους, γυμνήτας δὲ πεντακοσίους, Σοφαίνετος δὲ ὁ Στυμφάλιος ὀπλίτας ἔχων χιλίους,² Σωκράτης δὲ ὁ Ἀχαιὸς ὀπλίτας ἔχων ὡς πεντακοσίους, Πασίων δὲ ὁ Μεγαρεὺς τριακοσίους μὲν ὀπλίτας, τριακοσίους δὲ πελταστὰς ἔχων παρεγένετο· ἦν δὲ καὶ οὗτος καὶ ὁ Σωκράτης τῶν ἀμφὶ Μίλητον στρατευομένων. οὗτοι μὲν εἰς Σάρδεις αὐτῷ ἀφίκοντο.

4 Τισσαφέρηνος δὲ κατανοήσας ταῦτα, καὶ μείζονα ἠγησάμενος εἶναι ἢ ὡς ἐπὶ Πισίδας τὴν παρασκευήν, πορεύεται ὡς βασιλέα ἢ ἐδύνατο τάχιστα
5 ἵππεας ἔχων ὡς πεντακοσίους. καὶ βασιλεὺς μὲν δὴ ἐπεὶ ἤκουσε Τισσαφέρηνους τὸν Κύρου στόλον, ἀντιπαρεσκευάζετο.

Κύρος δὲ ἔχων οὓς εἶρηκα ὠρμάτο ἀπὸ Σάρδεων· καὶ ἐξελαύνει διὰ τῆς Λυδίας σταθμοὺς τρεῖς παρασάγγας εἴκοσι καὶ δύο ἐπὶ τὸν Μαίαν-

¹ παύσασθαι MSS. except VZ, Gem.: παύσεσθαι VZ, Mar.

² Σοφαίνετος . . . χιλίους MSS.: Gem. brackets, following Dindorf.

Miletus, and urged the Milesian exiles to take the field with him, promising them that, if he should successfully accomplish the object for which he was taking the field, he would not stop until he had restored them to their homes. And they gladly obeyed—for they trusted him—and presented themselves, under arms, at Sardis.

Xenias, then, arrived at Sardis with the troops from the cities, who were hoplites to the number of four thousand; Proxenus was there with hoplites to the number of fifteen hundred, and five hundred light-armed troops; Sophanetus the Stymphalian with a thousand hoplites; Socrates the Achaean with about five hundred hoplites; and Pasion the Megarian arrived with three hundred hoplites and three hundred peltasts.¹ The last-named, and Socrates also, belonged to the force that had been engaged in besieging Miletus. All these came to Cyrus at Sardis.

Meanwhile Tissaphernes had taken note of these proceedings and come to the conclusion that Cyrus' preparations were too extensive to be against the Pisidians; he accordingly made his way to the King as quickly as he could, with about five hundred horsemen. And when the King heard from Tissaphernes about Cyrus' array, he set about making counter-preparations.

Cyrus was now setting forth from Sardis with the troops I have mentioned; and he marched through Lydia three stages,² a distance of twenty-two

¹ Peltasts differed from ordinary light-armed troops (*cp.* *γυμνήτας* above) only in the fact that they carried a small, light shield, the *πέλτη*--whence their name.

² *σταθμός* = lit. a stopping-place, hence a day's journey.

δρον ποταμόν. τούτου τὸ εὖρος δύο πλέθρα·
 6 γέφυρα δὲ ἐπὴν ἐπτὰ¹ ἐξευγμένη πλοίοις. τούτου
 διαβὰς ἐξελαύνει διὰ Φρυγίας σταθμόν ἕνα
 παρασάγγας ὀκτὼ εἰς Κολοσσάς, πόλιν οἰκου-
 μένην καὶ εὐδαίμονα καὶ μεγάλην. ἐνταῦθα
 ἔμεινεν ἡμέρας ἐπτὰ· καὶ ἦκε Μένων ὁ Θετταλὸς
 ὀπλίτας ἔχων χιλίους καὶ πελταστὰς πεντα-
 κοσίους, Δόλοπας καὶ Αἰνιᾶνας καὶ Ὀλυνθίους.
 7 ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς τρεῖς παρασάγγας
 εἴκοσιν εἰς Κελαινάς, τῆς Φρυγίας πόλιν οἰκου-
 μένην, μεγάλην καὶ εὐδαίμονα. ἐνταῦθα Κύρῳ
 βασιλεία ἦν καὶ παράδεισος μέγας ἀγρίων θηρίων
 πλήρης, ἃ ἐκεῖνος ἐθήρευεν ἀπὸ ἵππου, ὁπότε
 γυμνάσαι βούλοιο ἐαυτὸν τε καὶ τοὺς ἵππους.
 διὰ μέσου δὲ τοῦ παραδείσου ρεῖ ὁ Μαίανδρος
 ποταμὸς· αἱ δὲ πηγαὶ αὐτοῦ εἰσιν ἐκ τῶν βασι-
 8 λείων· ρεῖ δὲ καὶ διὰ τῆς Κελαινῶν πόλεως. ἔστι
 δὲ καὶ μεγάλου βασιλέως βασιλεία ἐν Κελαιναῖς
 ἐρυμνὰ ἐπὶ ταῖς πηγαῖς τοῦ Μαρσίου ποταμοῦ
 ὑπὸ τῆ ἀκροπόλει· ρεῖ δὲ καὶ οὗτος διὰ τῆς
 πόλεως καὶ ἐμβάλλει εἰς τὸν Μαίανδρον· τοῦ δὲ
 Μαρσίου τὸ εὖρος ἐστὶν εἴκοσι καὶ πέντε ποδῶν.
 ἐνταῦθα λέγεται Ἀπόλλων ἐκδεῖραι Μαρσύαν
 νικήσας ἐρίζοντά οἱ περὶ σοφίας, καὶ τὸ δέρμα
 κρεμάσαι ἐν τῷ ἄντρῳ ὅθεν αἱ πηγαί· διὰ δὲ
 9 τοῦτο ὁ ποταμὸς καλεῖται Μαρσύας. ἐνταῦθα
 Ξέρξης, ὅτε ἐκ τῆς Ἑλλάδος ἠττηθεὶς τῇ μάχῃ

¹ ἐπτὰ ἐξευγμένη Gem., following Hug : ἐπεξευγμένη MSS.

¹ A Persian measure of distance, equivalent to 30 Greek stadia, or about 3.3 English miles.

² The plethrum = about 97 English feet.

³ Many of the cities of Asia were then, as now, deserted.

parasangs,¹ to the Maeander river. The width of this river was two plethra,² and there was a bridge over it made of seven boats. After crossing the Maeander he marched through Phrygia one stage, a distance of eight parasangs, to Colossac, an inhabited³ city, prosperous and large. There he remained seven days; and Menon⁴ the Thessalian arrived, with a thousand hoplites and five hundred peltasts, consisting of Dolopians, Aenianians, and Olynthians. Thence he marched three stages, twenty parasangs, to Celaenae, an inhabited city of Phrygia, large and prosperous. There Cyrus had a palace and a large park full of wild animals, which he used to hunt on horseback whenever he wished to give himself and his horses exercise. Through the middle of this park flows the Maeander river; its sources are beneath the palace, and it flows through the city of Celaenae also. There is likewise a palace of the Great King⁵ in Celaenae, strongly fortified and situated at the foot of the Acropolis over the sources of the Marsyas river; the Marsyas also flows through the city, and empties into the Maeander, and its width is twenty-five feet. It was here, according to the story, that Apollo flayed Marsyas,⁶ after having defeated him in a contest of musical skill; he hung up his skin in the cave from which the sources issue, and it is for this reason that the river is called Marsyas. It was here also, report has it, that Xerxes, when he was on

⁴ Who had been sent by Aristippus (see § 1 above).

⁵ A title often given by the Greeks to the king of Persia.

⁶ Marsyas, a Phrygian satyr, was so proud of his skill with the flute that he presumed to challenge Apollo, god of music and master of the lyre. The myth appears to be a record of the supersession of the flute by the lyre in Greek favour.

ἀπεχώρει, λέγεται οἰκοδομηῆσαι ταῦτά τε τὰ βασιλεία καὶ τὴν Κελαινῶν ἀκρόπολιν. ἐνταῦθα ἔμεινε Κύρος ἡμέρας τριάκοντα· καὶ ἦκε Κλέαρχος ὁ Λακεδαιμόνιος φυγὰς ἔχων ὀπλίτας χιλίους καὶ πελταστὰς Θρᾷκας ὀκτακοσίους καὶ τοξότας Κρήτας διακοσίους. ἄμα δὲ καὶ Σῶσις παρῆν ὁ Συρακόσιος ἔχων ὀπλίτας τριακοσίους, καὶ Ἀγίας ὁ Ἀρκὰς¹ ἔχων ὀπλίτας χιλίους. καὶ ἐνταῦθα Κύρος ἐξέτασιν καὶ ἀριθμὸν τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐποίησεν ἐν τῷ παραδείσῳ, καὶ ἐγένοντο οἱ σύμπαντες ὀπλίται μὲν μύριοι χίλιοι, πελτασταὶ δὲ ἀμφὶ τοὺς δισχιλίους.

- 10 Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς δύο παρασάγγας δέκα εἰς Πέλτας, πόλιν οἰκουμένην. ἐνταῦθ' ἔμεινε ἡμέρας τρεῖς· ἐν αἷς Ξενίας ὁ Ἀρκὰς τὰ Λύκαια ἔθυσσε καὶ ἀγῶνα ἔθηκε· τὰ δὲ ἄθλα ἦσαν στλεγγίδες χρυσαῖ· ἔθεώρει δὲ τὸν ἀγῶνα καὶ Κύρος. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς δύο παρασάγγας δώδεκα εἰς Κεράμων ἀγοράν, πόλιν οἰκουμένην,
11 ἐσχάτην πρὸς τῇ Μυσίᾳ χώρᾳ. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς τρεῖς παρασάγγας τριάκοντα εἰς Καῦστρου πεδίου, πόλιν οἰκουμένην. ἐνταῦθ' ἔμεινε ἡμέρας πέντε· καὶ τοῖς στρατιώταις ὠφείλετο μισθὸς πλεον ἢ τριῶν μηνῶν, καὶ πολλάκις ἰόντες ἐπὶ τὰς θύρας ἀπήτουν. ὁ δὲ ἐλπίδας λέγων διῆγε καὶ δῆλος ἦν ἀνιώμενος· οὐ γὰρ ἦν πρὸς τοῦ Κύρου τρόπον ἔχοντα μὴ ἀποδιδόναι.

¹ Ἀγίας ὁ Ἀρκὰς Kōchly: Σοφαίνετος Ἀρκάδας MSS., Gem., Mar.

¹ viz. of Salamis, in 480 B.C.

² Here used in the general sense, i.e. to include all kinds of light-armed troops; cp. note on § 3 above. Xenophon

his retreat from Greece after losing the famous battle,¹ built the palace just mentioned and likewise the citadel of Celaenae. Here Cyrus remained thirty days; and Clearchus, the Lacedaemonian exile, arrived, with a thousand hoplites, eight hundred Thracian peltasts, and two hundred Cretan bowmen. At the same time came also Sosis the Syracusan with three hundred hoplites and Agias the Arcadian with a thousand hoplites. And here Cyrus held a review and made an enumeration of the Greeks in the park, and they amounted all told to eleven thousand hoplites and about two thousand peltasts.²

Thence he marched two stages, ten parasangs, to Peltae, an inhabited city. There he remained three days, during which time Xenias the Arcadian celebrated the Lycaean³ festival with sacrifice and held games; the prizes were golden strigils, and Cyrus himself was one of those who watched the games. Thence he marched two stages, twelve parasangs, to the inhabited city of Ceramon-agera,⁴ the last Phrygian city as one goes toward Mysia. Thence he marched three stages, thirty parasangs, to Caÿstru-pedion,⁵ an inhabited city. There he remained five days. At this time he was owing the soldiers more than three months' pay, and they went again and again to his headquarters and demanded what was due them. He all the while expressed hopes, and was manifestly troubled; for it was not Cyrus' way to withhold payment when he had

here uses round numbers. The exact totals, according to the figures previously given, are 10,600 hoplites and 2,300 light-armed troops.

³ In honour of Lycaean Zeus, i.e. Zeus of Mt. Lycaeus, in Arcadia.

⁴ Or Tilemarket.

⁵ Or Caÿsterfield.

- 12 ἐνταῦθα ἀφικνεῖται Ἐπύαξα ἡ Συεννέσιος γυνὴ τοῦ Κιλίκων βασιλέως παρὰ Κῦρον· καὶ ἐλέγετο Κύρῳ δοῦναι χρήματα πολλά. τῇ δ' οὖν στρατιᾷ τότε ἀπέδωκε Κῦρος μισθὸν τεττάρων μηνῶν. εἶχε δὲ ἡ Κίλισσα φυλακὴν περὶ αὐτὴν Κίλικας καὶ Ἀσπενδίους· ἐλέγετο δὲ καὶ συγγενέσθαι Κῦρον τῇ Κιλίσσῃ.
- 13 Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελιύει σταθμοὺς δύο παρασάγγας δέκα εἰς Θύμβριον, πόλιν οἰκουμένην. ἐνταῦθα ἦν παρὰ τὴν ὁδὸν κρήνη ἡ Μίδου καλουμένη τοῦ Φρυγῶν βασιλέως, ἐφ' ἣ λέγεται Μίδας τὸν
- 14 Σάτυρον θηρεύσαι οἴνω κεράσας αὐτήν. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς δύο παρασάγγας δέκα εἰς Τυριάειον, πόλιν οἰκουμένην. ἐνταῦθα ἔμεινεν ἡμέρας τρεῖς. καὶ λέγεται δεηθῆναι ἡ Κίλισσα Κύρου ἐπιδειξαι τὸ στράτευμα αὐτῆ· βουλόμενος οὖν ἐπιδειξαι ἐξέτασιν ποιεῖται ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ τῶν
- 15 Ἑλλήνων καὶ τῶν βαρβάρων. ἐκέλευσε δὲ τοὺς Ἑλλήνας ὡς νόμος αὐτοῖς εἰς μάχην οὕτω ταχθῆναι καὶ στήναι, συντάξαι δ' ἕκαστον τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ. ἐτάχθησαν οὖν ἐπὶ τεττάρων· εἶχε δὲ τὸ μὲν δεξιὸν Μένων καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ, τὸ δὲ εὐώνυμον Κλέαρχος καὶ οἱ ἐκείνου, τὸ δὲ μέσον οἱ ἄλλοι
- 16 στρατηγοί. ἐθεώρει οὖν ὁ Κῦρος πρῶτον μὲν τοὺς βαρβάρους· οἱ δὲ παρήλαννον τεταγμένοι κατὰ ἴλας καὶ κατὰ τάξεις· εἶτα δὲ τοὺς Ἑλλήνας, παρελαύνων ἐφ' ἄρματος καὶ ἡ Κίλισσα

money. At this juncture arrived Epyaxa, the wife of Syennesis, the king¹ of the Cilicians, coming to visit Cyrus, and the story was that she gave him a large sum of money; at any rate, Cyrus paid the troops at that time four months' wages. The Cilician queen was attended by a body-guard of Cilicians and Aspendians; and people said that Cyrus had intimate relations with the queen.

Thence he marched two stages, ten parasangs, to the inhabited city of Thymbrium. There, alongside the road, was the so-called spring of Midas, the king of the Phrygians, at which Midas, according to the story, caught the satyr by mixing wine with the water of the spring.² Thence he marched two stages, ten parasangs, to Tyriaeum, an inhabited city. There he remained three days. And the Cilician queen, as the report ran, asked Cyrus to exhibit his army to her; such an exhibition was what he desired to make, and accordingly he held a review of the Greeks and the barbarians on the plain. He ordered the Greeks to form their lines and take their positions just as they were accustomed to do for battle, each general marshalling his own men. So they formed the line four deep, Menon and his troops occupying the right wing, Clearchus and his troops the left, and the other generals the centre. Cyrus inspected the barbarians first, and they marched past with their cavalry formed in troops and their infantry in companies; then he inspected the Greeks, driving past them in

¹ "King" in name, but in fact a dependent of the king of Persia. Syennesis was seeking, as the narrative indicates, to keep on good terms with both Cyrus and Artaxerxes, secretly aiding the former, while still making a show of resistance (see § 21 below) to his march.

² This story is less familiar than its sequel, viz. that for his kindly treatment of the satyr (Silenus) Midas was granted by Dionysus the fulfilment of any request he might make; he requested that all he touched should turn to gold, and so died of hunger.

ἐφ' ἄρμαμάξης. εἶχον δὲ πάντες κράνη χαλκῆ καὶ χιτῶνας φοινικοῦς καὶ κνημίδας καὶ τὰς
 17 ἀσπίδας ἐκκεκαλυμμένας. ἐπειδὴ δὲ πάντας παρήλασε, στήσας τὸ ἄρμα πρὸ τῆς φάλαγγος μέσης, πέμψας Πίγρητα τὸν ἑρμηνέα παρὰ τοὺς στρατηγούς τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐκέλευσε προβαλέσθαι τὰ ὄπλα καὶ ἐπιχωρῆσαι ὅλην τὴν φάλαγγα. οἱ δὲ ταῦτα προεῖπον τοῖς στρατιώταις· καὶ ἐπεὶ ἐσάλπιγξε, προβαλόμενοι τὰ ὄπλα ἐπήσαν. ἐκ δὲ τούτου θᾶπτον προϊόντων σὺν κραυγῇ ἀπὸ τοῦ αὐτομάτου δρόμος ἐγένετο τοῖς στρατιώταις ἐπὶ
 18 τὰς σκηνάς, τῶν δὲ βαρβάρων φόβος πολὺς, καὶ ἢ τε Κίλισσα ἔφυγεν ἐπὶ τῆς ἄρμαμάξης καὶ οἱ ἐκ τῆς ἀγορᾶς καταλιπόντες τὰ ὄνια ἔφυγον. οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες σὺν γέλωτι ἐπὶ τὰς σκηνάς ἦλθον. ἡ δὲ Κίλισσα ἰδοῦσα τὴν λαμπρότητα καὶ τὴν τάξιν τοῦ στρατεύματος ἐθαύμασε. Κύρος δὲ ἦσθη τὸν ἐκ τῶν Ἑλλήνων εἰς τοὺς βαρβάρους φόβον ἰδὼν
 19 Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς τρεῖς παρασάγγας εἴκοσιν εἰς Ἰκόνιον, τῆς Φρυγίας πόλιν ἐσχάτην. ἐνταῦθα ἔμεινε τρεῖς ἡμέρας. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει διὰ τῆς Λυκαονίας σταθμοὺς πέντε παρασάγγας τριάκοντα. ταύτην τὴν χώραν ἐπέτρεψε διαρπάσαι τοῖς Ἕλλησιν ὡς πολέμιαν οὖσαν. ἐντεῦθεν Κύρος τὴν Κίλισσαν εἰς τὴν Κιλικίαν ἀποπέμπει τὴν ταχίστην ὁδὸν· καὶ συνέπεμψεν αὐτῇ στρατιώτας¹ οὓς Μένων εἶχε

¹ στρατιώτας MSS.: Gem. brackets.

¹ Greek troops were not supplied with rations in the modern way, but bought their provisions from day to day

a chariot, the Cilician queen in a carriage. And the Greeks all had helmets of bronze, crimson tunics, and greaves, and carried their shields uncovered. When he had driven past them all, he halted his chariot in front of the centre of the phalanx, and sending his interpreter Pigres to the generals of the Greeks, gave orders that the troops should advance arms and the phalanx move forward in a body. The generals transmitted these orders to the soldiers, and when the trumpet sounded, they advanced arms and charged. And then, as they went on faster and faster, at length with a shout the troops broke into a run of their own accord, in the direction of the camp. As for the barbarians, they were terribly frightened; the Cilician queen took to flight in her carriage, and the people in the market¹ left their wares behind and took to their heels; while the Greeks with a roar of laughter came up to their camp. Now the Cilician queen was filled with admiration at beholding the brilliant appearance and the order of the Greek army; and Cyrus was delighted to see the terror with which the Greeks inspired the barbarians.

Thence he marched three stages, twenty parasangs, to Iconium, the last city of Phrygia. There he remained three days. Thence he marched through Lycaonia five stages, thirty parasangs. This country he gave over to the Greeks to plunder, on the ground that it was hostile territory.² From there Cyrus sent the Cilician queen back to Cilicia by the shortest route, and he sent some of Menon's troops to from sutlers who accompanied the army. The commander's duty ended with "providing a market" (ἀγορὰν παρέχειν).

² In leaving Phrygia Cyrus was passing beyond the limits of his own satrapy. Introd. p. viii.

καὶ αὐτόν. Κῦρος δὲ μετὰ τῶν ἄλλων ἐξελαύνει διὰ Καππαδοκίας σταθμοὺς τέτταρας παρασάγγας εἴκοσι καὶ πέντε πρὸς Δάνα, πόλιν οἰκουμένην, μεγάλην καὶ εὐδαίμονα. ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν ἡμέρας τρεῖς· ἐν ᾧ Κῦρος ἀπέκτεινεν ἄνδρα Πέρσην Μεγαφέρνην, φοινικιστὴν βασιλείου, καὶ ἕτερόν τινα τῶν ὑπάρχων¹ δυνάστην, αἰτιασάμενος ἐπιβουλεύειν αὐτῷ.

- 21 Ἐντεῦθεν ἐπειρῶντο εἰσβάλλειν εἰς τὴν Κιλικίαν· ἡ δὲ εἰσβολὴ ἦν ὁδὸς ἀμαξιτὸς ὀρθία ἰσχυρῶς καὶ ἀμήχανος εἰσελθεῖν στρατεύματι, εἴ τις ἐκώλυεν. ἐλέγετο δὲ καὶ Σύννεσις εἶναι ἐπὶ τῶν ἄκρων φυλάττων τὴν εἰσβολήν· διὸ ἔμεινεν ἡμέραν ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ. τῇ δὲ ὑστεραία ἦκεν ἄγγελος λέγων ὅτι λελοιπῶς εἶη Σύννεσις τὰ ἄκρα, ἐπεὶ ἤσθετο ὅτι τὸ Μένωνος στρατεύμα ἤδη ἐν Κιλικίᾳ ἦν εἴσω τῶν ὀρέων, καὶ ὅτι τριήρεις ἤκουε περιπλεούσας ἀπ' Ἰωνίας εἰς Κιλικίαν Ταμῶν ἔχοντα
- 22 τὰς Λακεδαιμονίων καὶ αὐτοῦ Κύρου. Κῦρος δ' οὖν ἀνέβη ἐπὶ τὰ ὄρη οὐδενὸς κωλύοντος, καὶ εἶδε τὰς σκηναὺς οὐ οἱ Κίλικες ἐφύλαττον. ἐντεῦθεν δὲ κατέβαινεν εἰς πεδίου μέγα καὶ καλόν, ἐπίρρυτον, καὶ δένδρων παντοδαπῶν σύμπλεων καὶ ἀμπέλων· πολὺ δὲ καὶ σήσαμον καὶ μελίνην καὶ κέγχρον καὶ πυροὺς καὶ κριθὰς φέρει. ὄρος δ' αὐτὸ περιεῖχεν ὄχυρόν καὶ ὑψηλὸν πάντη ἐκ

¹ τῶν ὑπάρχων MSS.: Gem. brackets, following Schenkli.

¹ A title of honour at the Persian court.

² Cyrus had asked the Lacedaemonians "to show themselves as good friends to him as he had been to them in their war against Athens" (Xen. *Hellenica*, II. i. 1). The aid

escort her, Menon himself commanding them. With the rest of the army Cyrus marched through Cappadocia four stages, twenty-five parasangs, to Dana, an inhabited city, large and prosperous. There they remained three days; and during that time Cyrus put to death a Persian named Megaphernes, who was a wearer of the royal purple,¹ and another dignitary among his subordinates, on the charge that they were plotting against him.

From there they made ready to try to enter Cilicia. Now the entrance was by a wagon-road, exceedingly steep and impracticable for an army to pass if there was anybody to oppose it; and in fact, as report ran, Syennesis was upon the heights, guarding the entrance; therefore Cyrus remained for a day in the plain. On the following day, however, a messenger came with word that Syennesis had abandoned the heights, because he had learned that Menon's army was already in Cilicia, on his own side of the mountains, and because, further, he was getting reports that triremes belonging to the Lacedaemonians² and to Cyrus himself were sailing around from Ionia to Cilicia under the command of Tamos. At any rate³ Cyrus climbed the mountains without meeting any opposition, and saw the camp where the Cilicians had been keeping guard. Thence he descended to a large and beautiful plain, well-watered and full of trees of all sorts and vines; it produces an abundance of sesame, millet, panic, wheat, and barley, and it is surrounded on every side, from sea to sea, by a lofty

they now rendered (see also iv. 2-3) was in response to that request.

³ i.e. whether or not the reasons just given were the true ones.

- 23 θαλάττης εἰς θάλατταν. καταβὰς δὲ διὰ τούτου τοῦ πεδίου ἤλασε σταθμούς τέτταρας παρασάγγας πέντε καὶ εἴκοσιν εἰς Ταρσοὺς, τῆς Κιλικίας πόλιν μεγάλην καὶ εὐδαίμονα, οὗ ἦν τὰ Συεννέσιος βασιλεία τοῦ Κιλικίων βασιλέως· διὰ μέσου δὲ τῆς πόλεως ρεῖ ποταμὸς Κύδνος ὄνομα, εὖρος δύο
- 24 πλέθρων. ταύτην τὴν πόλιν ἐξέλιπον οἱ ἐνοικοῦντες μετὰ Συεννέσιος εἰς χωρίον ὄχυρον ἐπὶ τὰ ὄρη πλὴν οἱ τὰ καπηλεῖα ἔχοντες· ἔμειναν δὲ καὶ οἱ παρὰ τὴν θάλατταν οἰκοῦντες ἐν Σόλοις καὶ ἐν Ἴσσοις.
- 25 Ἐπύαξα δὲ ἡ Συεννέσιος γυνὴ προτέρα Κύρου πέντε ἡμέραις εἰς Ταρσοὺς ἀφίκετο· ἐν δὲ τῇ ὑπερβολῇ τῶν ὁρῶν τῇ εἰς τὸ πεδίου δύο λόχοι τοῦ Μένωνος στρατεύματος ἀπόλοντο· οἱ μὲν ἔφασαν ἀρπάζοντάς τι κατακοπήναι ὑπὸ τῶν Κιλικίων, οἱ δὲ ὑπολειφθέντας καὶ οὐ δυναμένους εὐρεῖν τὸ ἄλλο στρατεύμα οὐδὲ τὰς ὁδοὺς εἶτα πλανωμένους ἀπολέσθαι· ἦσαν δ' οὖν οὗτοι
- 26 ἑκατὸν ὀπλίται. οἱ δ' ἄλλοι ἐπεὶ ἤκου, τὴν τε πόλιν τοὺς Ταρσοὺς διήρπασαν, διὰ τὸν ὄλεθρον τῶν συστρατιωτῶν ὀργιζόμενοι, καὶ τὰ βασιλεία τὰ ἐν αὐτῇ. Κύρος δ' ἐπεὶ εἰσῆλασεν εἰς τὴν πόλιν, μετεπέμπετο τὸν Συέννεσιν πρὸς ἑαυτὸν· ὁ δ' οὔτε πρότερον οὐδενὶ πω κρείττονι ἑαυτοῦ εἰς χεῖρας ἔλθειν ἔφη οὔτε τότε Κύρῳ ἰέναι ἠθελε, πρὶν ἢ γυνὴ αὐτὸν ἔπεισε καὶ πίστει εἶλαβε.
- 27 μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα ἐπεὶ συνεγένοντο ἀλλήλοις, Συέννεσις μὲν ἔδωκε Κύρῳ χρήματα πολλὰ εἰς τὴν

and formidable range of mountains. After descending he marched through this plain four stages, twenty-five parasangs, to Tarsus,¹ a large and prosperous city of Cilicia, where the palace of Syennesis, the king of the Cilicians, was situated; and through the middle of the city flows a river named the Cydnus, two plethra in width. The inhabitants of this city had abandoned it and fled, with Syennesis, to a stronghold upon the mountains—all of them, at least, except the tavern-keepers; and there remained also those who dwelt on the sea-coast, in Soli and Issus.²

Now Epyaxa, the wife of Syennesis, had reached Tarsus five days ahead of Cyrus, but in the course of her passage over the mountains to the plain two companies of Menon's army³ had been lost. Some said that they had been cut to pieces by the Cilicians while engaged in a bit of plundering; another story was that they had been left behind, and, unable to find the rest of the army or the roads, had thus wandered about and perished; at any rate, they numbered a hundred hoplites. And when the rest of Menon's troops reached Tarsus, in their anger over the loss of their comrades they plundered thoroughly, not only the city, but also the palace that was in it. As for Cyrus, after he had marched into the city he more than once summoned Syennesis to his presence; but Syennesis said that he had never yet put himself in the hands of anyone who was more powerful than he was, and he would not now put himself in the hands of Cyrus until his wife had won him over and he had received pledges. When the two men finally met one another, Syennesis gave Cyrus a large sum of money for his army, while

¹ The birth-place of the apostle Paul.

² Famous as the scene of one of the most important victories of Alexander the Great (333 B.C.).

³ *cp.* § 20, above.

στρατιάν, Κύρος δὲ ἐκείνῳ δῶρα ἃ νομίζεται παρὰ βασιλεῖ τίμια, ἵππον χρυσοχάλινον καὶ στρεπτόν χρυσοῦν καὶ ψέλια καὶ ἀκινάκην χρυσοῦν καὶ στολὴν Περσικὴν, καὶ τὴν χώραν μηκέτι διαρπάζεσθαι· τὰ δὲ ἡρπασμένα ἀνδράποδα, ἣν που ἐντυγχάνωσιν, ἀπολαμβάνειν.

III. Ἐνταῦθα ἔμεινεν ὁ Κύρος καὶ ἡ στρατιὰ ἡμέρας εἴκοσιν· οἱ γὰρ στρατιῶται οὐκ ἔφασαν ἰέναι τοῦ πρόσω· ὑπόπτεον γὰρ ἤδη ἐπὶ βασιλέα ἰέναι· μισθωθῆναι δὲ οὐκ ἐπὶ τούτῳ ἔφασαν· πρῶτος δὲ Κλέαρχος τοὺς αὐτοῦ στρατιώτας ἐβιάζετο ἰέναι· οἱ δ' αὐτόν τε ἔβαλλον καὶ τὰ ὑποζύγια τὰ ἐκείνου, ἐπεὶ ἄρξαιντο προῖ-
 2 ἔναι· Κλέαρχος δὲ τότε μὲν μικρὸν ἐξέφυγε μὴ καταπετρωθῆναι, ὕστερον δ' ἐπεὶ ἔγνω ὅτι οὐ δυνήσεται βιάσασθαι, συνήγαγεν ἐκκλησίαν τῶν αὐτοῦ στρατιωτῶν· καὶ πρῶτον μὲν ἐδάκρυε πολὺν χρόνον ἑστώς· οἱ δὲ ὀρώντες ἐθαύμαζον καὶ ἐσιώπων· εἶτα δὲ ἔλεξε τοιάδε.
 3 "Ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, μὴ θαυμάζετε ὅτι χαλεπῶς φέρω τοῖς παροῦσι πράγμασιν· ἐμοὶ γὰρ ξένος Κύρος ἐγένετο καὶ με φεύγοντα ἐκ τῆς πατρίδος τά τε ἄλλα ἐτίμησε καὶ μυρίους ἔδωκε δαρεικούς· οὐς ἐγὼ λαβὼν οὐκ εἰς τὸ ἴδιον κατεθέμην ἐμοὶ οὐδὲ καθηδυνάθησα, ἀλλ' εἰς ὑμᾶς ἔδαπάνων.
 4 καὶ πρῶτον μὲν πρὸς τοὺς Θρᾷκας ἐπολέμησα, καὶ ὑπὲρ τῆς Ἑλλάδος ἐτιμωρούμην μεθ' ὑμῶν, ἐκ τῆς Χερρονήσου αὐτοὺς ἐξελαύνων βουλομένους ἀφαιρεῖσθαι τοὺς ἐνοικοῦντας Ἑλληνας

Cyrus gave him gifts which are regarded at court¹ as tokens of honour—a horse with a gold-mounted bridle, a gold necklace and bracelets, a gold dagger and a Persian robe—promising him, further, that his land should not be plundered any more and that they might take back the slaves that had been seized in case they should chance upon them anywhere.

III. Cyrus and his army remained here at Tarsus twenty days, for the soldiers refused to go any farther; for they suspected by this time that they were going against the King, and they said they had not been hired for that. Clearchus was the first to try to force his men to go on, but they pelted him and his pack-animals with stones as often as they began to go forward. At that time Clearchus narrowly escaped being stoned to death; but afterwards, when he realized that he could not accomplish anything by force, he called a meeting of his own troops. And first he stood and wept for a long time, while his men watched him in wonder and were silent; then he spoke as follows:

"Fellow-soldiers, do not wonder that I am distressed at the present situation. For Cyrus became my friend and not only honoured me, an exile from my fatherland, in various ways, but gave me ten thousand darics. And I, receiving this money, did not lay it up for my own personal use or squander it in pleasure, but I proceeded to expend it on you. First I went to war with the Thracians, and for the sake of Greece I inflicted punishment upon them with your aid, driving them out of the Chersonese when they wanted to deprive the Greeks who dwelt

¹ i.e. such gifts as could be bestowed only by the Persian king. Cyrus is already assuming royal prerogatives.

τὴν γῆν. ἐπειδὴ δὲ Κύρος ἐκάλει, λαβὼν ὑμᾶς ἐπορευόμεν, ἵνα εἴ τι δέοιτο ὠφελοῖν αὐτὸν ἀνθ' ὧν εὖ ἔπαθον ὑπ' ἐκείνου. ἐπεὶ δὲ ὑμεῖς οὐ βούλεσθε συμπορεύεσθαι, ἀνάγκη δὴ μοι ἢ ὑμᾶς προδόντα τῇ Κύρου φιλίᾳ χρῆσθαι ἢ πρὸς ἐκείνον ψευδάμενον μεθ' ὑμῶν εἶναι. εἰ μὲν δὴ δίκαια ποιήσω οὐκ οἶδα, αἰρήσομαι δ' οὖν ὑμᾶς καὶ σὺν ὑμῖν ὅ τι ἂν δέη πείσομαι. καὶ οὐποτε ἐρεῖ οὐδεὶς ὡς ἐγὼ "Ἕλληνας ἀγαγὼν εἰς τοὺς βαρβάρους, προδοὺς τοὺς "Ἕλληνας τὴν τῶν βαρβάρων φιλίαν εἰλόμην, ἀλλ' ἐπεὶ ὑμεῖς ἐμοὶ οὐ θέλετε πείθεσθαι, ἐγὼ σὺν ὑμῖν ἔψομαι καὶ ὅ τι ἂν δέη πείσομαι. νομίζω γὰρ ὑμᾶς ἐμοὶ εἶναι καὶ πατρίδα καὶ φίλους καὶ συμμάχους, καὶ σὺν ὑμῖν μὲν ἂν οἶμαι εἶναι τίμιος ὅπου ἂν ᾦ, ὑμῶν δὲ ἔρημος ὧν οὐκ ἂν ἰκανὸς οἶμαι εἶναι οὐτ' ἂν φίλον ὠφελῆσαι οὐτ' ἂν ἐχθρὸν ἀλέξασθαι. ὡς ἐμοῦ οὖν ἰόντος ὅπῃ ἂν καὶ ὑμεῖς οὕτω τὴν γνώμην ἔχετε.

7 Ταῦτα εἶπεν· οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται οἱ τε αὐτοῦ ἐκείνου καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι ταῦτα ἀκούσαντες ὅτι οὐ φαίη παρὰ βασιλέα πορεύεσθαι ἐπήνεσαν· παρὰ δὲ Ξενίου καὶ Πασίωνος πλείους ἢ δισχίλιοι λαβόντες τὰ ὄπλα καὶ τὰ σκευοφόρα ἐστρατοπεδεύσαντο παρὰ Κλεάρχῳ. Κύρος δὲ τούτοις ἀπορῶν τε καὶ λυπούμενος μετεπέμπετο τὸν Κλεάρχον· ὁ δὲ ἰέναι μὲν οὐκ ἠθέλε, λάθρα δὲ τῶν στρατιωτῶν πέμπων αὐτῷ ἀγγελὸν ἔλεγε θαρρεῖν ὡς καταστησομένων τούτων εἰς τὸ δέον· μεταπέμπεσθαι δ' ἐκέλευεν αὐτόν· αὐτὸς δ' οὐκ ἔφη ἰέναι.

there of their land. Then when Cyrus' summons came, I took you with me and set out, in order that, if he had need of me, I might give him aid in return for the benefits I had received from him. But you now do not wish to continue the march with me; so it seems that I must either desert you and continue to enjoy Cyrus' friendship, or prove false to him and remain with you. Whether I shall be doing what is right, I know not, but at any rate I shall choose you and with you shall suffer whatever I must. And never shall any man say that I, after leading Greeks into the land of the barbarians, betrayed the Greeks and chose the friendship of the barbarians; nay, since you do not care to obey me, I shall follow with you and suffer whatever I must. For I consider that you are to me both fatherland and friends and allies; with you I think I shall be honoured wherever I may be, bereft of you I do not think I shall be able either to aid a friend or to ward off a foe. Be sure, therefore, that wherever you go, I shall go also."

Such were his words. And the soldiers—not only his own men, but the rest also—when they heard that he said he would not go on to the King's capital, commended him; and more than two thousand of the troops under Xenias and Pasion took their arms and their baggage train and encamped with Clearchus. But Cyrus, perplexed and distressed by this situation, sent repeatedly for Clearchus. Clearchus refused to go to him, but without the knowledge of the soldiers he sent a messenger and told him not to be discouraged, because, he said, this matter would be settled in the right way. He directed Cyrus, however, to keep on sending for him, though he himself, he said, would refuse to go.

9 Μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα συναγαγὼν τοὺς θ' ἑαυτοῦ στρατιώτας καὶ τοὺς προσελθόντας αὐτῷ καὶ τῶν ἄλλων τὸν βουλόμενον, ἔλεξε τοιαύδε. "Ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, τὰ μὲν δὴ Κύρου δῆλον ὅτι οὕτως ἔχει πρὸς ἡμᾶς ὥσπερ τὰ ἡμέτερα πρὸς ἐκείνον· οὔτε γὰρ ἡμεῖς ἐκείνου ἔτι στρατιῶται, ἐπεὶ γε οὐ συνεπόμεθα αὐτῷ, οὔτε ἐκείνος ἔτι ἡμῖν μισθοδότης. ὅτι μέντοι ἀδικεῖσθαι νομίζει ὑφ' ἡμῶν
 10 οἶδα· ὥστε καὶ μεταπεμπομένου αὐτοῦ οὐκ ἐθέλω ἐλθεῖν, τὸ μὲν μέγιστον αἰσχυρόμενος ὅτι σύν-οἶδα ἑμαυτῷ πάντα ἐψευσμένος αὐτόν, ἔπειτα καὶ δεδιὼς μὴ λαβὼν με δίκην ἐπιθῆ ὧν νομίζει
 11 ὑπ' ἐμοῦ ἠδικῆσθαι. ἐμοὶ οὖν δοκεῖ οὐχ ὥρα εἶναι ἡμῖν καθεύδειν οὐδ' ἀμελεῖν ἡμῶν αὐτῶν, ἀλλὰ βουλευέσθαι ὃ τι χρὴ ποιεῖν ἐκ τούτων. καὶ ἕως γε μένομεν αὐτοῦ σκεπτέον μοι δοκεῖ εἶναι ὅπως¹ ἀσφαλέστατα μένωμεν,² εἴ τε ἤδη δοκεῖ ἀπιέναι, ὅπως ἀσφαλέστατα ἄπιμεν, καὶ ὅπως τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἔξομεν· ἀνευ γὰρ τούτων οὔτε
 12 στρατηγού οὔτε ἰδιώτου ὄφελος οὐδέν. ὁ δ' ἀνὴρ πολλοῦ μὲν ἄξιος (ὧ) ἂν φίλος (ἦ) χαλεπώτατος δ' ἐχθρὸς ὧ ἂν πολέμιος ἦ, ἔχει δὲ δύναμιν καὶ πεζὴν καὶ ἰππικὴν καὶ ναυτικὴν ἣν πάντες ὁμοίως ὀρώμεν τε καὶ ἐπιστάμεθα· καὶ γὰρ οὐδὲ πόρρω δοκοῦμέν μοι αὐτοῦ καθῆσθαι. ὥστε ὥρα λέγειν ὃ τι τις γιγνώσκει ἄριστον εἶναι. ταῦτα εἰπὼν ἐπαύσατο.

13 Ἐκ δὲ τούτου ἀνίσταντο οἱ μὲν ἐκ τοῦ αὐτομάτου, λέγοντες ἃ ἐγίγνωσκον, οἱ δὲ καὶ ὑπ'

¹ After ὅπως, in this line and the next, Gem. inserts ὡς, following Cobet.

² μένωμεν MSS., Gem.: μενοῦμεν Mar., following Buttmann.

After this Clearchus gathered together his own soldiers, those who had come over to him, and any others who wanted to be present, and spoke as follows: "Fellow-soldiers, it is clear that the relation of Cyrus to us is precisely the same as ours to him; that is, we are no longer his soldiers, since we decline to follow him, and likewise he is no longer our paymaster. I know, however, that he considers himself wronged by us. Therefore, although he keeps sending for me, I decline to go, chiefly, it is true, from a feeling of shame, because I am conscious that I have proved utterly false to him, but, besides that, from fear that he may seize me and inflict punishment upon me for the wrongs he thinks he has suffered at my hands. In my opinion, therefore, it is no time for us to be sleeping or unconcerned about ourselves; we should rather be considering what course we ought to follow under the present circumstances. And so long as we remain here we must consider, I think, how we can remain most safely; or, again, if we count it best to depart at once, how we are to depart most safely and how we shall secure provisions—for without provisions neither general nor private is of any use. And remember that while this Cyrus is a valuable friend when he is your friend, he is a most dangerous foe when he is your enemy; furthermore, he has an armament—infantry and cavalry and fleet—which we all alike see and know about; for I take it that our camp is not very far away from him. It is time, then, to propose whatever plan any one of you deems best." With these words he ceased speaking.

Thereupon various speakers arose, some of their own accord to express the opinions they held, but

ἐκείνου ἐγκέλευστοι, ἐπιδεικνύντες οἷα εἴη ἡ ἀπορία ἄνευ τῆς Κύρου γνώμης καὶ μένειν καὶ
 14 ἀπιέναι. εἰς δὲ δὴ εἶπε προσποιούμενος σπεύδειν ὡς τάχιστα πορεύεσθαι εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα στρατηγὸς μὲν ἐλέσθαι ἄλλους ὡς τάχιστα, εἰ μὴ βούλεται Κλέαρχος ἀπάγειν· τὰ δ' ἐπιτήδει' ἀγοράζεσθαι—ἡ δ' ἀγορὰ ἦν ἐν τῷ βαρβαρικῷ στρατεύματι—καὶ συσκευάζεσθαι· ἐλθόντας δὲ Κύρον αἰτεῖν πλοῖα, ὡς ἀποπλέοιεν· ἐὰν δὲ μὴ διδῶ ταῦτα, ἡγεμόνα αἰτεῖν Κύρον ὅστις διὰ φιλίας τῆς χώρας ἀπάξει· ἐὰν δὲ μηδὲ ἡγεμόνα διδῶ, συντάττεσθαι τὴν ταχίστην, πέμψαι δὲ καὶ προκαταληφόμενους τὰ ἄκρα, ὅπως μὴ φθάσωσι μήτε Κύρος μήτε οἱ Κίλικες καταλαμβάνοντες, ὧν πολλοὺς καὶ πολλὰ χρήματα ἔχομεν ἀνηρπακότες. οὗτος μὲν τοιαῦτα εἶπε.

15 Μετὰ δὲ τοῦτον Κλέαρχος εἶπε τοσοῦτον· Ὡς μὲν στρατηγήσουντα ἐμὲ ταύτην τὴν στρατηγίαν μηδεὶς ὑμῶν λεγέτω· πολλὰ γὰρ ἐνορῶ δι' ἃ ἐμοὶ τοῦτο οὐ ποιητέον· ὡς δὲ τῷ ἀνδρὶ ὃν ἂν ἔλησθε πείσομαι ἢ δυνατὸν μάλιστα, ἵνα εἰδῆτε ὅτι καὶ ἄρχεσθαι ἐπίσταμαι ὡς τις καὶ ἄλλος μάλιστα
 16 ἀνθρώπων. μετὰ τοῦτον ἄλλος ἀνέστη, ἐπιδεικνύς μὲν τὴν εὐήθειαν τοῦ τὰ πλοῖα αἰτεῖν κελεύοντος, ὥσπερ πάλιν τὸν στόλον Κύρου ποιουμένου, ἐπιδεικνύς δὲ ὡς εὖηθες εἴη ἡγεμόνα αἰτεῖν παρὰ τούτου ᾧ λυμαινόμεθα τὴν πρᾶξιν. εἰ δὲ καὶ τῷ ἡγεμόνι πιστεύσομεν ὃν ἂν Κύρος

others at the instigation of Clearchus to make clear the difficulty of either remaining or departing without the consent of Cyrus. One man in particular, pretending to be in a hurry to proceed back to Greece with all speed, proposed that they should choose other generals as quickly as possible, in case Clearchus did not wish to lead them back; secondly, that they should buy provisions—the market was in the barbarian army!—and pack up their baggage; then, to go to Cyrus and ask for vessels to sail away in; and if he would not give them vessels, to ask him for a guide to lead them homeward through a country that was friendly; and if he would not give them a guide, either, to form in line of battle with all speed and likewise to send a force to occupy the mountain heights in advance, in order that neither Cyrus nor the Cilicians should forestall them—“and we have in our possession,” he said, “many of these Cilicians and much of their property that we have seized as plunder.” Such were the words of this speaker.

After him Clearchus said merely this: “Let no one among you speak of me as the man who is to hold this command, for I see many reasons why I should not do so; say rather that I shall obey to the best of my ability the man whom you choose, in order that you may know that I understand as well as any other person in the world how to be a subordinate also.” After he had spoken another man arose to point out the foolishness of the speaker who had urged them to ask for vessels, just as if Cyrus were going home again, and to point out also how foolish it was to ask for a guide “from this man whose enterprise we are ruining. Indeed, if we propose to trust the guide that Cyrus gives us, what is to hinder us from

- διδῶ, τι κωλύει καὶ τὰ ἄκρα ἡμῖν κελεύειν Κύρον
 17 προκαταλαβεῖν; ἐγὼ γὰρ ὀκνοίην μὲν ἂν εἰς τὰ
 πλοῖα ἐμβαίνειν ἢ ἡμῖν δοίη, μὴ ἡμᾶς ταῖς
 τριήρεσι καταδύσῃ, φοβοίμην δ' ἂν τῷ ἡγεμόνι
 ὄν δοίη ἔπεσθαι, μὴ ἡμᾶς ἀγάγῃ ὅθεν οὐκ ἔσται
 ἐξελθεῖν· βουλοίμην δ' ἂν ἄκοντος ἀπιὼν Κύρου
 λαθεῖν αὐτὸν ἀπελθών· ὃ οὐ δυνατόν ἐστιν.
 18 ἀλλ' ἐγὼ φημι ταῦτα μὲν φλυαρίας εἶναι· δοκεῖ
 δέ μοι ἄνδρας ἐλθόντας πρὸς Κύρον οἵτινες
 ἐπιτήδειοι σὺν Κλεάρχῳ ἐρωτᾶν ἐκείνους τί βού-
 λεται ἡμῖν χρῆσθαι· καὶ εἰ μὲν ἢ πρᾶξις ἢ
 παραπλησία οἷα περ καὶ πρόσθεν ἐχρήτο τοῖς
 ξένοις, ἔπεσθαι καὶ ἡμᾶς καὶ μὴ κακίους εἶναι
 19 τῶν πρόσθεν τούτῳ συναναβάντων· εἰ δὲ μείζων
 ἢ πρᾶξις τῆς πρόσθεν φαίνεται καὶ ἐπιπικνωτέρα
 καὶ ἐπικινδυνωτέρα, ἀξιούν ἢ πείσαντα ἡμᾶς
 ἄγειν ἢ πεισθέντα πρὸς φίλιαν ἀφιέναι· οὕτω
 γὰρ καὶ ἐπόμενοι ἂν φίλοι αὐτῷ καὶ πρόθυμοι
 ἐποίμεθα καὶ ἀπιόντες ἀσφαλῶς ἂν ἀπίοιμεν·
 ὃ τι δ' ἂν πρὸς ταῦτα λέγῃ ἀπαγγεῖλαι δεῦρο·
 ἡμᾶς δ' ἀκούσαντας πρὸς ταῦτα βουλευέσθαι.
 20 Ἔδοξε ταῦτα, καὶ ἄνδρας ἐλόμενοι σὺν Κλε-
 ἀρχῳ πέμπουσιν οἱ ἡρώτων Κύρον τὰ δόξαντα
 τῇ στρατιᾷ. ὁ δ' ἀπεκρίνατο ὅτι ἀκούει Ἀβρο-
 κόμαν ἐχθρὸν ἄνδρα ἐπὶ τῷ Εὐφράτῃ ποταμῷ
 εἶναι, ἀπέχοντα δώδεκα σταθμούς· πρὸς τοῦτον

¹ As described in i. 2.

² i.e. in the form of extra pay.

directing Cyrus also to occupy the heights for us in
 advance? For my part, I should hesitate to em-
 bark on the vessels that he might give us, for fear
 of his sinking us with his war-ships, and I should be
 afraid to follow the guide that he might give, for fear
 of his leading us to a place from which it will not be
 possible to escape; my choice would be, in going off
 without Cyrus' consent, to go off without his know-
 ledge—and that is not possible. Now in my own
 opinion the plans just proposed are nonsense; rather,
 I think we should send to Cyrus men of the proper
 sort, along with Clearchus, to ask him what use he
 wishes to make of us; and if his enterprise is like
 the sort of one in which he employed mercenaries
 before,¹ I think that we also should follow him and
 not be more cowardly than those who went up
 with him on the former occasion; if, however, his
 enterprise is found to be greater and more laborious
 and more dangerous than the former one, we ought
 to demand that he should either offer sufficient per-
 suasion² and lead us on with him, or yield to our
 persuasion and let us go home in friendship; for in
 this way, if we should follow him, we should follow
 as friends and zealous supporters, and if we should
 go back, we should go back in safety. I propose,
 further, that our representatives should report back
 to us whatever reply he may make, and that we after
 hearing it should deliberate about the matter."

This plan was adopted, and they chose representa-
 tives and sent them with Clearchus; and they pro-
 ceeded to put to Cyrus the questions resolved upon
 by the army. He replied that he had heard that
 Abrocomas, a foe of his, was at the Euphrates river,
 twelve stages distant. It was against him, therefore, he

οὖν ἔφη βούλεσθαι ἐλθεῖν· κὰν μὲν ἦ ἐκεῖ, τὴν δίκην ἔφη χρῆζειν ἐπιθεῖναι αὐτῷ, ἦν δὲ φύγη, 21 ἡμεῖς ἐκεῖ πρὸς ταῦτα βουλευσόμεθα. ἀκούσαντες δὲ ταῦτα οἱ αἰρετοὶ ἀγγέλλουσι τοῖς στρατιώταις· τοῖς δὲ ὑποψία μὲν ἦν ὅτι ἄγει πρὸς βασιλέα, ὅμως δὲ ἐδόκει ἔπεσθαι. προσαιτούσι δὲ μισθόν· ὁ δὲ Κῦρος ὑπισχνεῖται ἡμιόλιον πᾶσι δώσειν οὐ πρότερον ἔφερον, ἀντὶ δαρεικοῦ τρία ἡμιδαρειακά τοῦ μηνὸς τῷ στρατιώτῃ· ὅτι δὲ ἐπὶ βασιλέα ἄγοι οὐδὲ ἐνταῦθα ἤκουσεν οὐδεὶς ἐν τῷ γε φανερώ.

IV. Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς δύο παρασάγγας δέκα ἐπὶ τὸν Ψάρον ποταμόν, οὗ ἦν τὸ εὖρος τρία πλέθρα. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμὸν ἕνα παρασάγγας πέντε ἐπὶ τὸν Πύραμον ποταμόν, οὗ ἦν τὸ εὖρος στάδιον. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς δύο παρασάγγας πεντεκαίδεκα εἰς Ἴσσοῦς, τῆς Κιλικίας ἐσχάτην πόλιν ἐπὶ τῇ θαλάττῃ 2 οἰκουμένην, μεγάλην καὶ εὐδαίμονα. ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν ἡμέρας τρεῖς· καὶ Κύρῳ παρήσαν αἱ ἐκ Πελοποννήσου νῆες τριάκοντα καὶ πέντε καὶ ἐπ' αὐταῖς ναύαρχος Πυθαγόρας Λακεδαιμόνιος. ἠγεῖτο δ' αὐταῖς Ταμῶς Αἰγύπτιος ἐξ Ἐφέσου, ἔχων ναῦς ἑτέρας Κύρου πέντε καὶ εἴκοσιν, αἷς ἐπολιόρκει Μίλητον ὅτε Τισσαφέρνει φίλη ἦν, 3 καὶ συνεπολέμει Κύρῳ πρὸς αὐτόν.¹ παρῆν δὲ καὶ Χειρίσοφος Λακεδαιμόνιος ἐπὶ τῶν νεῶν, μετὰ-

¹ ὅτε . . . αὐτόν: condemned by Cobet, whom many edd. follow.

said, that he desired to march. And if he were there, he wished to inflict due punishment upon him; "but if he has fled," he continued, "we will deliberate about the matter then and there." Upon hearing this reply the deputies reported it to the soldiers, and they, while suspecting that Cyrus was leading them against the King, nevertheless thought it best to follow him. They asked, however, for more pay, and Cyrus promised to give them all half as much again as they had been receiving before, namely, a daric and a half a month to each man instead of a daric; but as regards the suspicion that he was leading them against the King, no one heard it expressed even then—at any rate, not openly.

IV. Thence he marched two stages, ten parasangs, to the Psarus river, the width of which was three plethra. From there he marched one stage, five parasangs, to the Pyramus river, the width of which was a stadium.¹ From there he marched two stages, fifteen parasangs, to Issus, the last city in Cilicia, a place situated on the sea, and large and prosperous. There they remained three days; and the ships from Peloponnesus² arrived to meet Cyrus, thirty-five in number, with Pythagoras the Lacedaemonian as admiral in command of them. They had been guided from Ephesus to Issus by Tamos the Egyptian, who was at the head of another fleet of twenty-five ships belonging to Cyrus—these latter being the ships with which Tamos had besieged Miletus, at the time when it was friendly to Tissaphernes,³ and had supported Cyrus in his war upon Tissaphernes. Cheirisophus the Lacedaemonian also arrived with this fleet, coming in response to Cyrus'

¹ The stadium = 582½ English feet.

² See ii. 21. ³ See i. 7.

πεμπτος ὑπὸ Κύρου, ἑπτακοσίους ἔχων ὀπλίτας, ὧν ἐστρατήγει παρὰ Κύρω. αἱ δὲ νῆες ὥρμουν παρὰ τὴν Κύρου σκηνήν. ἐνταῦθα καὶ οἱ παρὰ Ἀβροκόμα μισθοφόροι Ἕλληνες ἀποστάντες ἦλθον παρὰ Κύρον τετρακόσιοι ὀπλίται καὶ συν-εστρατεύοντο ἐπὶ βασιλέα.

4 Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμὸν ἓνα παρασάγγας πέντε ἐπὶ πύλας τῆς Κιλικίας καὶ τῆς Συρίας. ἦσαν δὲ ταῦτα δύο τείχη, καὶ τὸ μὲν ἔσωθεν πρὸ τῆς Κιλικίας Σύννεσις εἶχε καὶ Κιλικῶν φυλακῆ, τὸ δὲ ἔξω τὸ πρὸ τῆς Συρίας βασιλέως ἐλέγετο φυλακῆ φυλάττειν. διὰ μέσου δὲ ρεῖ τούτων ποταμὸς Κάρσος ὄνομα, εὖρος πλέθρου. ἅπαν δὲ τὸ μέσον τῶν τειχῶν ἦσαν στάδιοι τρεῖς· καὶ παρελθεῖν οὐκ ἦν βία· ἦν γὰρ ἡ πάροδος στενὴ καὶ τὰ τείχη εἰς τὴν θάλατταν καθήκοντα, ὑπερ-
5 ἄμφοτέροις ἐφειστήκεσαν πύργοι.¹ ταύτης ἕνεκα τῆς παρόδου Κύρος τὰς ναῦς μετεπέμψατο, ὅπως ὀπλίτας ἀποβιβάσειεν εἴσω καὶ² ἔξω τῶν πυλῶν καὶ βιασόμενος³ τοὺς πολεμίους εἰ φυλάττοιεν ἐπὶ ταῖς Συρίαις πύλαις, ὅπερ ᾤετο ποιήσειν ὁ Κύρος τὸν Ἀβροκόμαν, ἔχοντα πολὺν στρατεύμα. Ἀβροκόμας δὲ οὐ τοῦτ' ἐποίησεν, ἀλλ' ἐπεὶ ἤκουσε Κύρον ἐν Κιλικίᾳ ὄντα, ἀναστρέψας ἐκ

¹ πύργοι Gem., following Hartman : πύλαι MSS.

² εἴσω καὶ MSS. : Gem. brackets.

³ καὶ βιασόμενος Mar. : βιασομένουσ Gem., following Schenkl : καὶ βιασόμενος (or βιασόμενοι) MSS. : βιασόμενος Dindorf.

summons,¹ together with seven hundred hoplites, over whom he continued to hold command in the army of Cyrus. And the ships lay at anchor alongside Cyrus' tent. It was at Issus also that the Greek mercenaries who had been in the service of Abrocomas—four hundred hoplites—joined Cyrus, after deserting Abrocomas, and so bore a share in his expedition against the King.

Thence he marched one stage, five parasangs, to the Gates between Cilicia and Syria. These Gates consisted of two walls; the one on the hither, or Cilician, side was held by Syennesis and a garrison of Cilicians, while the one on the farther, the Syrian, side was reported to be guarded by a garrison of the King's troops. And in the space between these walls flows a river named the Carsus, a plethrum in width. The entire distance from one wall to the other was three stadia; and it was not possible to effect a passage by force, for the pass was narrow, the walls reached down to the sea, and above the pass were precipitous rocks, while, besides, there were towers upon both the walls. It was because of this pass that Cyrus had sent for the fleet, in order that he might disembark hoplites between and beyond the walls and thus overpower the enemy if they should be keeping guard at the Syrian Gates—and that was precisely what Cyrus supposed Abrocomas would do, for he had a large army. Abrocomas, however, did not do so, but as soon as he heard that Cyrus was in Cilicia, he turned about in his journey from

¹ See note on ii. 21. These seven hundred hoplites under Cheirisophus had been sent by the Lacedaemonian authorities to aid Cyrus, and were the only troops in his army which stood in any official connection with any Greek state.

Φοινίκης παρὰ βασιλέα ἀπήλαυνεν, ἔχων, ὡς ἐλέγετο, τριάκοντα μυριάδας στρατιᾶς.

6 Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει διὰ Συρίας σταθμὸν ἕνα παρασάγγας πέντε εἰς Μυριάδου, πόλιν οἰκουμένην ὑπὸ Φοινίκων ἐπὶ τῇ θαλάττῃ· ἐμπόριον δ' ἦν τὸ χωρίον καὶ ὄρμουν αὐτόθι ὀλκάδες
7 πολλαί. ἐνταῦθα ἔμεινεν ἡμέρας ἑπτὰ· καὶ Ξενίας ὁ Ἀρκὰς καὶ Πασίων ὁ Μεγαρεὺς ἐμβάντες εἰς πλοῖον καὶ τὰ πλείστου ἄξια ἐνθήμενοι ἀπέπλευσαν, ὡς μὲν τοῖς πλείστοις ἐδόκουν φιλοτιμηθέντες ὅτι τοὺς στρατιώτας αὐτῶν τοὺς παρὰ Κλέαρχον ἀπελθόντας ὡς ἀπιόντας εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα πάλιν καὶ οὐ πρὸς βασιλέα εἶα Κῦρος τὸν Κλέαρχον ἔχειν. ἐπεὶ δ' ἦσαν ἀφανεῖς, διήλθε λόγος ὅτι διώκοι αὐτοὺς Κῦρος τριήρεσι καὶ οἱ μὲν ἠύχοντο ὡς δειλοὺς ὄντας αὐτοὺς ληφθῆναι, οἱ δ' ὤκτιρον εἰ ἀλώσονται.

8 Κῦρος δὲ συγκαλέσας τοὺς στρατηγούς εἶπεν· Ἀπολελοίπασιν ἡμᾶς Ξενίας καὶ Πασίων. ἀλλ' εὖ γε μέντοι ἐπιστάσθων ὅτι οὔτε ἀποδεδράκασιν· οἶδα γὰρ ὅπῃ οἴχονται· οὔτε ἀποπεφεύγασιν· ἔχω γὰρ τριήρεις ὥστε ἐλεῖν τὸ ἐκείνων πλοῖον· ἀλλὰ μὰ τοὺς θεοὺς οὐκ ἔγωγε αὐτοὺς διώξω, οὐδ' ἐρεῖ οὐδεὶς ὡς ἐγὼ ἕως μὲν ἂν παρῆ τις χρῶμαι, ἐπειδὰν δὲ ἀπιέναι βούληται, συλλαβὼν καὶ αὐτοὺς κακῶς ποιῶ καὶ τὰ χρήματα ἀποσυλῶ. ἀλλὰ ἴτωσαν,¹ εἰδότες ὅτι κακίους εἰσὶ περὶ ἡμᾶς

¹ ἴτωσαν Mar., following Bornemann: ἰέτωσαν MSS.: ἴτων Gem.

Phoenicia¹ and marched off to join the King, with an army, so the report ran, of three hundred thousand men.

Thence Cyrus marched one stage, five parasangs, to Myriandus, a city on the sea coast, inhabited by Phoenicians; it was a trading place, and many merchant ships were lying at anchor there. There he remained seven days; and Xenias the Arcadian and Pasion the Megarian embarked upon a ship, put on board their most valuable effects, and sailed away; they were moved to do this, as most people thought, by a feeling of jealous pride, because their soldiers had gone over to Clearchus² with the intention of going back to Greece again instead of proceeding against the King, and Cyrus had allowed Clearchus to keep them. After they had disappeared, a report went round that Cyrus was pursuing them with warships; and while some people prayed that they might be captured, because, as they said, they were cowards, yet others felt pity for them if they should be caught.

Cyrus, however, called the generals together and said: "Xenias and Pasion have deserted us. But let them, nevertheless, know full well that they have not escaped from me—either by stealth, for I know in what direction they have gone, or by speed, for I have men-of-war with which I can overtake their craft. But for my part, I swear by the gods that I shall not pursue them, nor shall anyone say about me that I use a man so long as he is with me and then, when he wants to leave me, seize him and maltreat him and despoil him of his possessions. Nay, let them go, with the knowledge that their behaviour toward

¹ Of which Abrocomas was satrap. ² See iii. 7.

ἢ ἡμεῖς περὶ ἐκείνους. καίτοι ἔχω γε αὐτῶν καὶ τέκνα καὶ γυναῖκας ἐν Τράλλεσι φρουρούμενα· ἀλλ' οὐδὲ τούτων στερήσονται, ἀλλ' ἀπολήψονται τῆς πρόσθεν ἕνεκα περὶ ἐμὲ ἀρετῆς. καὶ ὁ μὲν ταῦτα εἶπεν· οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνας, εἴ τις καὶ ἀθυμότερος ἦν πρὸς τὴν ἀνάβασιν, ἀκούοντες τὴν Κύρου ἀρετὴν ἠδίων καὶ προθυμότερον συνεπορεύοντο.

Μετὰ ταῦτα Κύρος ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς τέτταρας παρασάγγας εἴκοσιν ἐπὶ τὸν Χάλον ποταμόν, ὄντα τὸ εὖρος πλέθρου, πλήρη δ' ἰχθύων μεγάλων καὶ πραέων, οὓς οἱ Σύροι θεοὺς ἐνόμιζον καὶ ἄδικεῖν οὐκ εἶων, οὐδὲ τὰς περιστεράς.¹ αἱ δὲ κῶμαι ἐν αἷς ἐσκήρουν Παρυσάτιδος ἦσαν εἰς ζώνην δεδομέναι. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς πέντε παρασάγγας τριάκοντα ἐπὶ τὰς πηγὰς τοῦ Δάρδατος ποταμοῦ, οὗ τὸ εὖρος πλέθρου. ἐνταῦθα ἦσαν τὰ Βελέσους βασιλεία τοῦ Συρίας ἄρξαντος, καὶ παράδεισος πάνυ μέγας καὶ καλός, ἔχων πάντα ὅσα ὄραι φύουσι. Κύρος δ' αὐτὸν ἐξέκοψε καὶ τὰ βασιλεία κατέκαυσεν. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς τρεῖς παρασάγγας πεντεκαίδεκα ἐπὶ τὸν Εὐφράτην ποταμόν, ὄντα τὸ εὖρος τεττάρων σταδίων· καὶ πόλις αὐτόθι ὠκείτο μεγάλη καὶ εὐδαίμων Θάψακος ὄνομα. ἐνταῦθα ἔμεινεν ἡμέρας πέντε. καὶ Κύρος μεταπεμφάμενος τοὺς στρατηγούς τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἔλεγεν ὅτι ἡ ὁδὸς ἔσοιτο πρὸς βασιλέα μέγαν εἰς Βαβυλῶνα· καὶ κελεύει αὐτοὺς λέγειν ταῦτα τοῖς

us is worse than ours toward them. To be sure, I have their wives and children under guard in Tralles,¹ but I shall not deprive them of these, either, for they shall receive them back because of their former excellence in my service." Such were his words; as for the Greeks, even those who had been somewhat despondent in regard to the upward march, when they heard of the magnanimity of Cyrus they continued on their way with greater satisfaction and eagerness.

After this Cyrus marched four stages, twenty parasangs, to the Chalus river, which is a plethrum in width and full of large, tame fish; these fish the Syrians regarded as gods, and they would not allow anyone to harm them, or the doves, either.² And the villages in which the troops encamped belonged to Parysatis, for they had been given her for girdle-money.³ From there Cyrus marched five stages, thirty parasangs, to the sources of the Dardas river, the width of which is a plethrum. There was the palace of Belesys, the late ruler of Syria, and a very large and beautiful park containing all the products of the seasons. But Cyrus cut down the park and burned the palace. Thence he marched three stages, fifteen parasangs, to the Euphrates river, the width of which was four stadia; and on the river was situated a large and prosperous city named Thapsacus. There he remained five days. And Cyrus summoned the generals of the Greeks and told them that the march was to be to Babylon, against the Great King; he directed them, accordingly, to explain this to the

¹ A city in Caria.

² According to the legend, the Syrian goddess Derceto had been transformed into a fish, and her daughter, Semiramis, into a dove. ³ *cp.* the English "pin-money."

¹ οὐδὲ . . . περιστεράς MSS.: Gem. brackets, following Bisschop.

- 12 στρατιώταις καὶ ἀναπείθειν ἔπεςθαι. οἱ δὲ ποιήσαντες ἐκκλησίαν ἀπήγγελλον ταῦτα· οἱ δὲ στρατιώται ἐχαλέπαινον τοῖς στρατηγοῖς, καὶ ἔφασαν αὐτοὺς πάλαι ταῦτ' εἰδότας κρύπτειν, καὶ οὐκ ἔφασαν ἰέναι, ἐὰν μὴ τις αὐτοῖς χρήματα διδῶ, ὡσπερ τοῖς προτέροις μετὰ Κύρου ἀναβάσι παρὰ τὸν πατέρα τοῦ Κύρου,¹ καὶ ταῦτα οὐκ ἐπὶ μάχην ἰόντων, ἀλλὰ καλοῦντος τοῦ πατρὸς Κῦρον.
- 13 ταῦτα οἱ στρατηγοὶ Κύρῳ ἀπήγγελλον· ὁ δ' ὑπέσχετο ἀνδρὶ ἐκάστῳ δώσειν πέντε ἀργυρίου μνᾶς, ἐπὰν εἰς Βαβυλῶνα ἤκωσι, καὶ τὸν μισθὸν ἐντελῆ μέχρι ἂν καταστήσῃ τοὺς Ἕλληνας εἰς Ἰωνίαν πάλιν. τὸ μὲν δὴ πολὺ τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ οὕτως ἐπέισθη.

- Μένων δὲ πρὶν δῆλον εἶναι τί ποιήσουσιν οἱ ἄλλοι στρατιώται, πότερον ἔψονται Κύρῳ ἢ οὐ, συνέλεξε τὸ αὐτοῦ στράτευμα χωρὶς τῶν ἄλλων
- 14 καὶ ἔλεξε τάδε. "Ἄνδρες, ἐάν μοι πεισθῆτε, οὔτε κινδυνεύσαντες οὔτε πονήσαντες τῶν ἄλλων πλέον προτιμήσεσθε στρατιωτῶν ὑπὸ Κύρου. τί οὖν κελεύω ποιῆσαι; νῦν δέϊται Κῦρος ἔπεςθαι τοὺς Ἕλληνας ἐπὶ βασιλέα· ἐγὼ οὖν φημι ὑμᾶς χρῆναι διαβῆναι τὸν Εὐφράτην ποταμὸν πρὶν δῆλον εἶναι ὅ τι οἱ ἄλλοι Ἕλληνες ἀποκρινοῦνται
- 15 Κύρῳ. ἦν μὲν γὰρ ψηφίσωνται ἔπεςθαι, ὑμεῖς

¹ παρὰ . . . Κύρου MSS.: Gem. brackets, following Cobet.

¹ The troops are not now asking for additional pay, as at Tarsus (iii. 21), but for a special donation. See below.

² See i. 2.

³ The Attic mina was equivalent (but see note on i. 9) to

soldiers and try to persuade them to follow. So the generals called an assembly and made this announcement; and the soldiers were angry with the generals, and said that they had known about this for a long time, but had been keeping it from the troops; furthermore, they refused to go on unless they were given money,¹ as were the men who made the journey with Cyrus before,² when he went to visit his father; they had received the donation, even though they marched, not to battle, but merely because Cyrus' father summoned him. All these things the generals reported back to Cyrus, and he promised that he would give every man five minas³ in silver when they reached Babylon and their pay in full until he brought the Greeks back to Ionia again.⁴ By these promises the greater part of the Greek army was persuaded.

But as for Menon, before it was clear what the rest of the soldiers would do, that is, whether they would follow Cyrus or not, he gathered together his own troops apart from the others and spoke as follows: "Soldiers, if you will obey me, you will, without either danger or toil, be honoured by Cyrus above and beyond the rest of the troops. What, then, do I direct you to do? At this moment Cyrus is begging the Greeks to follow him against the King; my own plan, then, is that you should cross the Euphrates river before it is clear what answer the rest of the Greeks will make to Cyrus. For if they vote to follow him, it is you who

about £3 15s. or \$18.00; Cyrus probably means here the Persian mina, which was worth about one-fourth more than the Attic.

⁴ Mercenaries were usually expected to make their own way home after a campaign had ended and did not receive pay for the time consumed by the homeward journey.

δόξετε αἴτιοι εἶναι ἄρξαντες τοῦ διαβαίνειν, καὶ ὡς προθυμοτάτοις οὖσιν ὑμῖν χάριν εἴσεται Κύρος καὶ ἀποδώσει· ἐπίσταται δ' εἴ τις καὶ ἄλλος· ἦν δὲ ἀποψηφίσωνται οἱ ἄλλοι, ἄπιμεν μὲν ἅπαντες τοῦμπαλιν, ὑμῖν δὲ ὡς μόνοις πειθόμενοις¹ χρήσεται καὶ εἰς φρούρια² καὶ εἰς λοχαγίας, καὶ ἄλλου οὔτινος ἂν δέησθε οἶδα ὅτι ὡς φίλοι³

16 τεύξεσθε Κύρου. ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα ἐπέιθοντο καὶ διέβησαν πρὶν τοὺς ἄλλους ἀποκρίνασθαι. Κύρος δ' ἐπεὶ ἦσθετο διαβεβηκότας, ἦσθη τε καὶ τῷ στρατεύματι πέμψας Γλοῦν εἶπεν· Ἐγὼ μὲν, ὦ ἄνδρες, ἤδη ὑμᾶς ἐπαινῶ· ὅπως δὲ καὶ ὑμεῖς ἐμὲ ἐπαινέσετε ἐμοὶ μελήσει, ἢ μηκέτι με Κύρου νομίζετε. οἱ μὲν δὴ στρατιῶται ἐν ἐλπίσι μεγά-

17 λαις ὄντες ἠύχοντο αὐτὸν εὐτυχῆσαι, Μένωνι δὲ καὶ δῶρα ἐλέγετο πέμψαι μεγαλοπρεπῶς. ταῦτα δὲ ποιήσας διέβαινε· συνείπετο δὲ καὶ τὸ ἄλλο στρατεύμα αὐτῷ ἅπαν. καὶ τῶν διαβαινόντων τὸν ποταμὸν οὐδεὶς ἐβρέχθη ἀνωτέρω τῶν μαστῶν

18 ὑπὸ τοῦ ποταμοῦ. οἱ δὲ Θαψακηνοὶ ἔλεγον ὅτι οὐπόποθ' οὔτος ὁ ποταμὸς διαβατὸς γένοιτο πεζῇ εἰ μὴ τότε, ἀλλὰ πλοίοις, ἃ τότε Ἀβροκόμας προῖων κατέκαυσε, ἵνα μὴ Κύρος διαβῇ. ἐδόκει δὴ θεῖον εἶναι καὶ σαφῶς⁴ ὑποχωρῆσαι τὸν ποταμὸν Κύρῳ ὡς βασιλεύσοντι.

19 Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει διὰ τῆς Συρίας σταθμοὺς ἐννέα παρασάγγας πεντήκοντα· καὶ ἀφικνούνται

¹ After πειθόμενοις the MSS. have πιστοτάτοις: Gem. brackets.

² φρούρια MSS., Mar.: φρουραρχίας Gem., following Böhme.

³ φίλοι MSS.: φίλου Gem., following Bisschop.

⁴ καὶ σαφῶς MSS.: σαφῶς καὶ Gem., following Hartman.

will get the credit for that decision because you began the crossing, and Cyrus will not only feel grateful to you, regarding you as the most zealous in his cause, but he will return the favour—and he knows how to do that if any man does; on the other hand, if the rest vote not to follow him, we shall all go back together, but you, as the only ones who were obedient, are the men he will employ, not only for garrison duty,¹ but for captainties; and whatever else you may desire, I know that you, as friends of Cyrus, will secure from him." Upon hearing these words the soldiers were persuaded, and made the crossing before the rest gave their answer. When Cyrus learned that they had crossed, he was delighted and sent Glus to the troops with this message: "Soldiers, to-day I commend you; but I shall see to it that you also shall have cause to commend me, else count me no longer Cyrus." So Menon's troops cherished high hopes and prayed that he might be successful, while to Menon himself Cyrus was said to have sent magnificent gifts besides. After so doing Cyrus proceeded to cross the river, and the rest of the army followed him, to the last man. And in the crossing no one was wetted above the breast by the water. The people of Thapsacus said that this river had never been passable on foot except at this time, but only by boats; and these Abrocomas had now burned, as he marched on ahead of Cyrus, in order to prevent him from crossing. It seemed, accordingly, that here was a divine intervention, and that the river had plainly retired before Cyrus because he was destined to be king.

Thence he marched through Syria nine stages, fifty parasangs, and they arrived at the Araxes river.

¹ i.e. easy service.

πρὸς τὸν Ἀράξην ποταμὸν. ἐνταῦθα ἦσαν κῶμαι
πολλαὶ μεσταὶ σίτου καὶ οἴνου. ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν
ἡμέρας τρεῖς καὶ ἐπεσιτίσαντο.

V. Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει διὰ τῆς Ἀραβίας τὸν
Εὐφράτην ποταμὸν ἐν δεξιᾷ ἔχων σταθμοὺς ἐρή-
μους πέντε παρασάγγας τριάκοντα καὶ πέντε.
ἐν τούτῳ δὲ τῷ τόπῳ ἦν μὲν ἡ γῆ πεδίου ἅπαν
ὀμαλὲς ὡσπερ θάλαττα, ἀψιθίου δὲ πλήρες· εἰ
δὲ τι καὶ ἄλλο ἐνῆν ὕλης ἢ καλάμου, ἅπαντα
2 ἦσαν εὐώδη ὡσπερ ἀρώματα· δένδρον δ' οὐδὲν
ἐνῆν, θηρία δὲ παντοῖα, πλείστοι ὄνοι ἄγριοι,
πολλὰ δὲ στρουθοὶ αἱ μεγάλοι· ἐνῆσαν δὲ καὶ
ὠτίδες καὶ δορκάδες. ταῦτα δὲ τὰ θηρία οἱ ἰππεῖς
ἐνίοτε ἐδίωκον. καὶ οἱ μὲν ὄνοι, ἐπεὶ τις διώκοι,
προδραμόντες ἔστασαν· πολὺ γὰρ τῶν ἵππων
ἔτρεχον θᾶπτον· καὶ πάλιν, ἐπεὶ πλησιάζοιεν οἱ
ἵπποι, ταῦτόν ἐποίουν, καὶ οὐκ ἦν λαβεῖν, εἰ μὴ
διαστάντες οἱ ἰππεῖς θηρῶεν διαδεχόμενοι. τὰ
δὲ κρέα τῶν ἀλισκομένων ἦν παραπλήσια τοῖς
3 ἐλαφείοις, ἀπάλωτερα δέ. στρουθὸν δὲ οὐδεὶς
ἔλαβεν· οἱ δὲ διώξαντες τῶν ἰππέων ταχὺ ἐπαύ-
οντο· πολὺ γὰρ ἀπέσπα φεύγουσα, τοῖς μὲν
ποσὶ δρόμῳ, ταῖς δὲ πτέρυξιν αἴρουσα, ὡσπερ
ἰστίῳ χρωμένη. τὰς δὲ ὠτίδας ἂν τις ταχὺ ἀνιστῆ
ἔστι λαμβάνειν· πέτονται γὰρ βραχὺ ὡσπερ
πέρδικες καὶ ταχὺ ἀπαγορεύουσι. τὰ δὲ κρέα
αὐτῶν ἡδίστα ἦν.

4 Πορευόμενοι δὲ διὰ ταύτης τῆς χώρας ἀφικ-
νοῦνται ἐπὶ τὸν Μάσκαν ποταμὸν, τὸ εὖρος
πλεθριαῖον. ἐνταῦθα ἦν πόλις ἐρήμη, μεγάλη,
ὄνομα δ' αὐτῇ Κορσωτή· περιερρεῖτο δ' αὕτη ὑπὸ
τοῦ Μάσκα κύκλῳ. ἐνταῦθ' ἔμειναν ἡμέρας

There they found many villages full of grain and wine, and there they remained for three days and provisioned the army.

V. Thence he marched through Arabia, keeping the Euphrates on the right, five stages through desert country, thirty-five parasangs. In this region the ground was an unbroken plain, as level as the sea, and full of wormwood; and whatever else there was on the plain by way of shrub or reed, was always fragrant, like spices; trees there were none, but wild animals of all sorts, vast numbers of wild asses and many ostriches, besides bustards and gazelles. These animals were sometimes chased by the horsemen. As for the asses, whenever one chased them, they would run on ahead and stop—for they ran much faster than the horses—and then, when the horses came near, they would do the same thing again, and it was impossible to catch them unless the horsemen posted themselves at intervals and hunted them in relays. The flesh of those that were captured was like venison, but more tender. But no ostrich was captured by anyone, and any horseman who chased one speedily desisted; for it would distance him at once in its flight, not merely plying its feet, but hoisting its wings and using them like a sail. The bustards, on the other hand, can be caught if one is quick in starting them up, for they fly only a short distance, like partridges, and soon tire; and their flesh was delicious.

Marching on through this region they arrived at the Mascas river, which is a plethrum in width. There, in the desert, was a large city named Corsote, completely surrounded by the Mascas. There they

5 τρεῖς καὶ ἑπεσιτίσαντο. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς ἑρήμους τρεῖς καὶ δέκα παρασάγγας ἐνενηκοντα τὸν Εὐφράτην ποταμὸν ἐν δεξιᾷ ἔχων, καὶ ἀφικνεῖται ἐπὶ Πύλας. ἐν τούτοις τοῖς σταθμοῖς πολλὰ τῶν ὑποζυγίων ἀπόλετο ὑπὸ λιμοῦ· οὐ γὰρ ἦν χόρτος οὐδὲ ἄλλο οὐδὲν δένδρον, ἀλλὰ ψιλὴ ἦν ἅπασα ἡ χώρα· οἱ δὲ ἐνοικοῦντες ὄνους ἀλέτας παρὰ τὸν ποταμὸν ὀρύττοντες καὶ ποιοῦντες εἰς Βαβυλῶνα ἡγῶν καὶ ἐπώλουν καὶ ἀνταγο-
6 ράζοντες σῖτον ἔζων. τὸ δὲ στράτευμα ὁ σῖτος ἐπέλιπε, καὶ πρίασθαι οὐκ ἦν εἰ μὴ ἐν τῇ Λυδία ἀγορᾷ ἐν τῷ Κύρου βαρβαρικῷ, τὴν καπίθην ἀλεύρων ἢ ἀλφίτων τεττάρων σίγλων. ὁ δὲ σίγλος δύναται ἔπτ' ὀβολοὺς καὶ ἡμιωβέλιον Ἀπτικῶν· ἡ δὲ καπίθη δύο χοίνικας Ἀπτικὰς ἐχώρει. κρέα οὖν ἐσθίοντες οἱ στρατιῶται διεγί-
7 γνοντο. ἦν δὲ τούτων τῶν σταθμῶν οὓς πάνυ μακροὺς ἤλαυνεν, ὅποτε ἢ πρὸς ὕδωρ βούλοιο διατελέσαι ἢ πρὸς χιλόν.

Καὶ δὴ ποτε στενοχωρίας καὶ πηλοῦ φανέντος ταῖς ἀμάξαις δυσπορεύτου ἐπέστη ὁ Κύρος σὺν τοῖς περὶ αὐτὸν ἀρίστοις καὶ εὐδαιμονεστάτοις καὶ ἔταξε Γλοῦν καὶ Πίγρητα λαβόντας τοῦ βαρβαρικοῦ στρατοῦ συνεκβιβάζειν τὰς ἀμάξας.
8 ἐπεὶ δ' ἐδόκουν αὐτῷ σχολαίως ποιεῖν, ὥσπερ ὀργῇ ἐκέλευσε τοὺς περὶ αὐτὸν Πέρσας τοὺς κρατίστους συνεπισπεύσαι τὰς ἀμάξας. ἐνθα δὴ

¹ The Lydians were notorious as hucksters.

² See ii. 18 and the note thereon, and iii. 14.

³ The obol = about 1½d. or 3 cents. The choenix = about 1 quart. The prices stated were, roughly, about fifty times normal prices at Athens.

remained three days and provisioned the army. Thence Cyrus marched thirteen stages through desert country, ninety parasangs, keeping the Euphrates river on the right, and arrived at Pylae. In the course of these stages many of the baggage animals died of hunger, for there was no fodder and, in fact, no growing thing of any kind, but the land was absolutely bare; and the people who dwelt here made a living by quarrying mill-stones along the river banks, then fashioning them and taking them to Babylon, where they sold them and bought grain in exchange. As for the troops, their supply of grain gave out, and it was not possible to buy any except in the Lydian¹ market attached to the barbarian army of Cyrus,² at the price of four *sigli* for a *capithé* of wheat flour or barley meal. The *siglus* is worth seven and one-half Attic obols, and the *capithé* had the capacity of two Attic choenices.³ The soldiers therefore managed to subsist by eating meat.⁴ And Cyrus sometimes made these stages through the desert very long, whenever he wanted to reach water or fresh fodder.

Once in particular, when they came upon a narrow, muddy place which was hard for the wagons to get through, Cyrus halted with his train of nobles and dignitaries and ordered Glus and Pigres to take some of the barbarian troops and help to pull the wagons out. But it seemed to him that they took their time with the work; accordingly, as if in anger, he directed the Persian nobles who accompanied him to take a hand in hurrying on the wagons. And

⁴ The Greeks of Xenophon's time ate comparatively little meat under any circumstances, but in the Arabian desert a diet of meat constituted a real hardship.

μέρος τι τῆς εὐταξίας ἦν θεάσασθαι. ῥίψαντες γὰρ τοὺς πορφυροὺς κἀνδύς ὅπου ἔτυχεν ἕκαστος ἐστηκώς, ἴεντο ὡσπερ ἂν δράμοι τις ἐπὶ νίκη καὶ μάλα κατὰ πρανοῦς γηλόφου, ἔχοντες τοὺς τε πολυτελεῖς χιτῶνας καὶ τὰς ποικίλας ἀναξυρίδας, ἔνιοι δὲ καὶ στρεπτοὺς περὶ τοῖς τραχήλοις καὶ ψέλια περὶ ταῖς χερσίν· εὐθύς δὲ σὺν τούτοις εἰσπηδήσαντες εἰς τὸν πηλὸν θᾶπτον ἢ ὡς τις ἂν

9 ᾤετο μετεώρους ἐξεκόμισαν τὰς ἀμάξας. τὸ δὲ σύμπαν δῆλος ἦν Κῦρος ὡς σπεύδων πᾶσαν τὴν ὁδὸν καὶ οὐ διατρίβων ὅπου μὴ ἐπισιτισμοῦ ἕνεκα ἢ τινος ἄλλου ἀναγκαίου ἐκαθέζετο, νομίζων, ὅσῳ θᾶπτον ἔλθοι, τοσούτῳ ἀπαρασκευαστοτέρῳ βασιλεῖ μαχεῖσθαι, ὅσῳ δὲ σχολαίτερον, τοσούτῳ πλεον συναγείρεσθαι βασιλεῖ στράτευμα. καὶ συνιδεῖν δ' ἦν τῷ προσέχοντι τὸν νοῦν τῇ βασιλέως ἀρχῇ πλήθει μὲν χώρας καὶ ἀνθρώπων ἰσχυρὰ οὖσα, τοῖς δὲ μήκεσι τῶν ὁδῶν καὶ τῷ διεσπᾶσθαι τὰς δυνάμεις ἀσθενής, εἴ τις διὰ ταχέων τὸν πόλεμον ποιοῖτο.

10 Πέραν δὲ τοῦ Εὐφράτου ποταμοῦ κατὰ τοὺς ἐρήμους σταθμοὺς ἦν πόλις εὐδαίμων καὶ μεγάλη, ὄνομα δὲ Χαρμάνδη· ἐκ ταύτης οἱ στρατιῶται ἠγόραζον τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, σχεδίαις διαβαίνοντες ᾧδε. διφθέρας ἂς εἶχον στεγᾶσματα ἐπίμπλασαν χόρτου κούφου, εἶτα συνήγον καὶ συνέσπων, ὡς μὴ ἄπτεσθαι τῆς κάρφης τὸ ὕδωρ· ἐπὶ τούτων διέβαινον καὶ ἐλάμβανον τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, οἶνόν τε ἐκ τῆς βαλάνου πεποιημένον τῆς ἀπὸ τοῦ φοίνικος

then one might have beheld a sample of good discipline: they each threw off their purple cloaks where they chanced to be standing, and rushed, as a man would run to win a victory, down a most exceedingly steep hill, wearing their costly tunics and coloured trousers, some of them, indeed, with necklaces around their necks and bracelets on their arms; and leaping at once, with all this finery, into the mud, they lifted the wagons high and dry and brought them out more quickly than one would have thought possible. In general, it was clear that Cyrus was in haste throughout the whole journey and was making no delays, except where he halted to procure provisions or for some other necessary purpose; his thought was that the faster he went, the more unprepared the King would be to fight with him, while, on the other hand, the slower he went, the greater would be the army that was gathering for the King. Furthermore, one who observed closely could see at a glance that while the King's empire was strong in its extent of territory and number of inhabitants, it was weak by reason of the greatness of the distances and the scattered condition of its forces, in case one should be swift in making his attack upon it.

Across the Euphrates river in the course of these desert marches was a large and prosperous city named Charmande, and here the soldiers made purchases of provisions, crossing the river on rafts in the following way: they took skins which they had for tent covers, filled them with hay, and then brought the edges together and sewed them up, so that the water could not touch the hay; on these they would cross and get provisions—wine made from the date of the palm

καὶ σίτον μελίνης· τοῦτο γὰρ ἦν ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ πλείστον.

- 11 Ἀμφιλεξάντων δέ τι ἐνταῦθα τῶν τέ του¹ Μένωνος στρατιωτῶν καὶ τῶν του² Κλεάρχου ὁ Κλεάρχος κρίνας ἀδικεῖν τὸν τοῦ Μένωνος πληγὰς ἐνέβαλεν· ὁ δὲ ἐλθὼν πρὸς τὸ ἑαυτοῦ στρατεύμα ἔλεγεν· ἀκούσαντες δὲ οἱ στρατιῶται ἐχαλέπαινον
- 12 καὶ ὠργίζοντο ἰσχυρῶς τῷ Κλεάρχῳ. τῇ δὲ αὐτῇ ἡμέρᾳ Κλεάρχος ἐλθὼν ἐπὶ τὴν διάβασιν τοῦ ποταμοῦ καὶ ἐκεῖ κατασκεψάμενος τὴν ἀγορὰν ἀφιππεύει ἐπὶ τὴν ἑαυτοῦ σκηνὴν διὰ τοῦ Μένωνος στρατεύματος σὺν ὀλίγοις τοῖς περὶ αὐτόν· Κῦρος δὲ οὐπω ἦκεν, ἀλλ' ἔτι προσῆλυνε· τῶν δὲ Μένωνος στρατιωτῶν ξύλα σχίζων τις ὡς εἶδε Κλεάρχον διελαύνοντα, ἴησι τῇ ἀξίνῃ· καὶ οὗτος μὲν αὐτοῦ ἤμαρτεν· ἄλλος δὲ λίθῳ καὶ ἄλλος,
- 13 εἶτα πολλοί, κραυγῆς γενομένης· ὁ δὲ καταφεύγει εἰς τὸ ἑαυτοῦ στρατεύμα, καὶ εὐθύς παραγγέλλει εἰς τὰ ὄπλα· καὶ τοὺς μὲν ὀπλίτας αὐτοῦ ἐκέλευσε μείναι τὰς ἀσπίδας πρὸς τὰ γόνατα θέντας, αὐτὸς δὲ λαβὼν τοὺς Θραῦκας καὶ τοὺς ἰππέας οἳ ἦσαν αὐτῷ ἐν τῷ στρατεύματι πλείους ἢ τετταράκοντα, τούτων δὲ οἱ πλείστοι Θραῦκες, ἤλυνεν ἐπὶ τοὺς Μένωνος, ὥστ' ἐκείνους ἐκπεπλήχθαι καὶ αὐτὸν Μένωνα, καὶ τρέχειν ἐπὶ τὰ ὄπλα· οἱ δὲ καὶ
- 14 ἔστασαν ἀποροῦντες τῷ πράγματι· ὁ δὲ Πρόξενος—ἔτυχε γὰρ ὕστερος προσίων καὶ τάξις αὐτῷ ἐπομένη τῶν ὀπλιτῶν—εὐθύς οὖν εἰς τὸ μέσον ἀμφοτέρων ἄγων ἔθετο τὰ ὄπλα καὶ ἐδέετο

¹ τέ του Gem., following Madvig: τε τοῦ MSS. του Gem., following Madvig: τοῦ MSS.

tree and bread made of millet, for this grain was very abundant in the country.

There one of Menon's soldiers and one of Clearchus' men had some dispute, and Clearchus, deciding that Menon's man was in the wrong, gave him a flogging. The man then went to his own army and told about it, and when his comrades heard of the matter, they took it hard and were exceedingly angry with Clearchus. On the same day Clearchus, after going to the place where they crossed the river and there inspecting the market, was riding back to his own tent through Menon's army, having only a few men with him; and Cyrus had not yet arrived, but was still on the march toward the place; and one of Menon's soldiers who was splitting wood threw his axe at Clearchus when he saw him riding through the camp. Now this man missed him, but another threw a stone at him, and still another, and then, after an outcry had been raised, many. Clearchus escaped to his own army and at once called his troops to arms; he ordered his hoplites to remain where they were, resting their shields against their knees,¹ while he himself with the Thracians² and the horsemen, of which he had in his army more than forty, most of them Thracians, advanced upon Menon's troops; the result was that these and Menon himself were thoroughly frightened and ran to their arms, though there were some who stood stock-still, nonplussed by the situation. But Proxenus—for he chanced to be now coming up, later than the others, with a battalion of hoplites following him—straightway led his troops into the space between the two parties, halted them under arms, and

¹ i.e. in readiness to support him in case of need.

² See ii. 9.

τοῦ Κλεάρχου μὴ ποιεῖν ταῦτα. ὁ δ' ἐχαλέπαινε
 ὅτι αὐτοῦ ὀλίγου δεήσαντος καταλευσθῆναι πρῶως
 λέγοι τὸ αὐτοῦ πάθος, ἐκέλευσέ τε αὐτὸν ἐκ τοῦ
 15 μέσου ἐξίστασθαι. ἐν τούτῳ δ' ἐπήει καὶ Κῦρος
 καὶ ἐπύθετο τὸ πρᾶγμα· εὐθύς δ' ἔλαβε τὰ παλτὰ
 εἰς τὰς χεῖρας καὶ σὺν τοῖς παροῦσι τῶν πιστῶν
 ἦκεν ἐλαύνων εἰς τὸ μέσον, καὶ λέγει τάδε.
 16 Κλέαρχε καὶ Πρόξενε καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι οἱ παρόντες
 "Ἕλληνες, οὐκ ἴστε ὃ τι ποιεῖτε. εἰ γὰρ τινα
 ἀλλήλοις μάχην συνάψετε, νομίζετε ἐν τῇδε τῇ
 ἡμέρᾳ ἐμέ τε κατακεκόψεσθαι καὶ ὑμᾶς οὐ πολὺ
 ἐμοῦ ὕστερον· κακῶς γὰρ τῶν ἡμετέρων ἐχόντων
 πάντες οὗτοι οὐδ' ὁρᾶτε βάρβαροι πολεμιώτεροι
 17 ἡμῖν ἔσονται τῶν παρὰ βασιλεῖ ὄντων. ἀκούσας
 ταῦτα ὁ Κλέαρχος ἐν ἑαυτῷ ἐγένετο· καὶ πανσά-
 μνοι ἀμφοτέροι κατὰ χώραν ἔθεντο τὰ ὄπλα.

VI. Ἐντεῦθεν προΐοντων ἐφαίνετο ἵχνια ἵππων
 καὶ κόπρος. εἰκάζετο δ' εἶναι ὁ στίβος ὡς δις-
 χιλίων ἵππων. οὗτοι προΐοντες ἔκαιον καὶ χιλὸν
 καὶ εἴ τι ἄλλο χρήσιμον ἦν. Ὀρόντας δὲ Πέρσης
 ἀνὴρ γένει τε προσήκων βασιλεῖ καὶ τὰ πολέμια
 λεγόμενος ἐν τοῖς ἀρίστοις Περσῶν ἐπιβουλεύει
 Κῦρῳ καὶ πρόσθεν πολεμήσας, καταλλαγεὶς δέ.
 2 οὗτος Κῦρῳ εἶπεν, εἰ αὐτῷ δοίῃ ἵππέας χιλίους,
 ὅτι τοὺς προκατακαίοντας ἵππέας ἢ κατακαίνοι
 ἂν ἐνεδρεύσας ἢ ζῶντας πολλοὺς αὐτῶν ἂν ἔλοι
 καὶ κωλύσειε τοῦ καίειν ἐπιόντας, καὶ ποιήσειεν

began to beg Clearchus not to proceed with his attack. Clearchus, however, was angry, because, when he had barely escaped being stoned to death, Proxenus was talking lightly of his grievance, and he ordered him to remove himself from between them. At this moment Cyrus also came up and learned about the situation, and he immediately took his spears in his hands and, attended by such of his counsellors as were present, came riding into the intervening space and spoke as follows: "Clearchus, and Proxenus, and all you other Greeks who are here, you know not what you are doing. For as certainly as you come to fighting with one another, you may be sure that on this very day I shall be instantly cut to pieces and yourselves not long after me; for once let ill fortune overtake us, and all these barbarians whom you see will be more hostile to us than are those who stand with the King." On hearing these words Clearchus came to his senses, and both parties ceased from their quarrel and returned to their quarters.

VI. As they went on from there, they kept seeing tracks of horses and horses' dung. To all appearances it was the trail of about two thousand horses, and the horsemen as they proceeded were burning up fodder and everything else that was of any use. At this time Orontas, a Persian, who was related to the King by birth and was reckoned among the best of the Persians in matters of war, devised a plot against Cyrus—in fact, he had made war upon him before this, but had become his friend again. He now said to Cyrus that if he would give him a thousand horsemen, he would either ambush and kill these horsemen who were burning ahead of him, or he would capture many of them alive and put a stop to their burning as they

ὥστε μήποτε δύνασθαι αὐτοὺς ἰδόντας τὸ Κύρου
στράτευμα βασιλεῖ διαγγεῖλαι. τῷ δὲ Κύρῳ
ἀκούσαντι ταῦτα ἐδόκει ὠφέλιμα εἶναι, καὶ ἐκέ-
λευεν αὐτὸν λαμβάνειν μέρος παρ' ἐκάστου τῶν
3 ἡγεμόνων. ὃ δ' Ὀρόντας νομίσας ἐτοιμοὺς εἶναι
αὐτῷ τοὺς ἰππέας γράφει ἐπιστολὴν παρὰ
βασιλέα ὅτι ἤξοι ἔχων ἰππέας ὡς ἂν δύνηται
πλείστους· ἀλλὰ φράσαι τοῖς αὐτοῦ ἰππεύσιν
ἐκέλευεν ὡς φίλιον αὐτὸν ὑποδέχεσθαι. ἐνῆν δὲ
ἐν τῇ ἐπιστολῇ καὶ τῆς πρόσθεν φιλίας ὑπομνή-
ματα καὶ πίστεως. ταύτην τὴν ἐπιστολὴν δίδωσι
πιστῷ ἀνδρὶ, ὡς ᾤετο· ὃ δὲ λαβὼν Κύρῳ δίδωσιν.
4 ἀναγνοὺς δὲ αὐτὴν ὁ Κύρος συλλαμβάνει Ὀρόν-
ταν, καὶ συγκαλεῖ εἰς τὴν ἑαυτοῦ σκηνὴν Πέρσας
τοὺς ἀρίστους τῶν περὶ αὐτὸν ἑπτὰ, καὶ τοὺς τῶν
Ἑλλήνων στρατηγοὺς ἐκέλευσεν ὀπλίτας ἀγαγεῖν,
τούτους δὲ θέσθαι τὰ ὄπλα περὶ τὴν αὐτοῦ σκη-
νὴν. οἱ δὲ ταῦτα ἐποίησαν, ἀγαγόντες ὡς τρισ-
χιλίους ὀπλίτας.

5 Κλέαρχον δὲ καὶ εἴσω παρεκάλεσε σύμβουλον,
ὃς γε καὶ αὐτῷ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις ἐδόκει προτιμη-
θῆναι μάλιστα τῶν Ἑλλήνων. ἐπεὶ δ' ἐξῆλθεν,
ἀπήγγειλε τοῖς φίλοις τὴν κρίσιν τοῦ Ὀρόντα ὡς
6 ἐγένετο· οὐ γὰρ ἀπόρρητον ἦν. ἔφη δὲ Κύρον
ἄρχειν τοῦ λόγου ὧδε. Παρεκάλεσα ὑμᾶς, ἄνδρες
φίλοι, ὅπως σὺν ὑμῖν βουλευόμενος ὃ τι δίκαιόν
ἐστὶ καὶ πρὸς θεῶν καὶ πρὸς ἀνθρώπων, τοῦτο
πράξω περὶ Ὀρόντα τουτουί. τουτον γὰρ πρῶτον
μὲν ὁ ἐμὸς πατήρ ἔδωκεν ὑπήκοον εἶναι ἐμοί· ἐπεὶ
δὲ ταχθεῖς, ὡς ἔφη αὐτός, ὑπὸ τοῦ ἐμοῦ ἀδελφοῦ
οὗτος ἐπολέμησεν ἐμοί ἔχων τὴν ἐν Σάρδεσιν

advanced ; and he would see to it that they should never be able to behold Cyrus' army and get to the King with their report. When Cyrus heard this plan, it seemed to him to be an expedient one, and he directed Orontas to get a detachment from each one of the cavalry commanders. Then Orontas, thinking that his horsemen were assured him, wrote a letter to the King saying that he would come to him with as many horsemen as he could get ; and he urged the King to direct his own cavalry to receive him as a friend. The letter also contained reminders of his former friendship and fidelity. This letter he gave to a man whom he supposed to be faithful to him ; but this man took it and gave it to Cyrus. When Cyrus had read it, he had Orontas arrested, and summoned to his tent seven of the noblest Persians among his attendants, while he ordered the Greek generals to bring up hoplites and bid them station themselves under arms around his tent. And the generals obeyed the order, bringing with them about three thousand hoplites.

Clearchus was also invited into the tent as a counsellor, for both Cyrus and the other Persians regarded him as the man who was honoured above the rest of the Greeks. And when he came out, he reported to his friends how Orontas' trial was conducted—for it was no secret. He said that Cyrus began the conference in this way: " My friends, I have invited you here in order that I may consult with you and then take such action in the case of Orontas here as is right in the sight of gods and men. This man was given me at first by my father, to be my subject ; then, at the bidding, as he himself said, of my brother, this man levied war upon me, holding the citadel of Sardis,

ἀκρόπολιν, καὶ ἐγὼ αὐτὸν προσπολεμῶν ἐποίησα ὥστε δόξαι τούτῳ τοῦ πρὸς ἐμὲ πολέμου παύσασθαι, καὶ δεξιὰν ἔλαβον καὶ ἔδωκα, μετὰ ταῦτα, ἔφη, ὦ Ὀρόντα, ἔστιν ὃ τι σε ἠδίκησα; ἀπεκρίνατο ὅτι οὐ. πάλιν δὲ ὁ Κῦρος ἠρώτα. Οὐκοῦν ὕστερον, ὡς αὐτὸς σὺ ὁμολογεῖς, οὐδὲν ὑπ' ἐμοῦ ἀδικούμενος ἀποστὰς εἰς Μυσοὺς κακῶς ἐποίεις τὴν ἐμὴν χώραν ὃ τι ἐδύνω; ἔφη Ὀρόντας. Οὐκοῦν, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, ὁπότ' αὐ ἔγνωσ τὴν σαυτοῦ δύναμιν, ἐλθὼν ἐπὶ τὸν τῆς Ἀρτέμιδος βωμὸν μεταμέλειν τέ σοι ἔφησθα καὶ πείσας ἐμὲ πιστὰ πάλιν ἔδωκάς μοι καὶ ἔλαβες παρ' ἐμοῦ; καὶ ταῦθ' ὁμολόγει Ὀρόντας. Τί οὖν, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, ἀδικηθεὶς ὑπ' ἐμοῦ νῦν τὸ τρίτον ἐπιβουλεύων μοι φανερὸς γέγονας; εἰπόντος δὲ τοῦ Ὀρόντα ὅτι οὐδὲν ἀδικηθεὶς, ἠρώτησεν ὁ Κῦρος αὐτόν. Ὁμολογεῖς οὖν περὶ ἐμὲ ἀδικος γεγενῆσθαι; Ἡ γὰρ ἀνάγκη, ἔφη Ὀρόντας. ἐκ τούτου πάλιν ἠρώτησεν ὁ Κῦρος. Ἐπι οὖν ἂν γένοιο τῷ ἐμῷ ἀδελφῷ πολέμιος, ἐμοὶ δὲ φίλος καὶ πιστός; ὁ δὲ ἀπεκρίνατο ὅτι οὐδ' εἰ γενοίμην, ὦ Κῦρε, σοί γ' ἂν ποτε ἔτι δόξαιμι. πρὸς ταῦτα Κῦρος εἶπε τοῖς παρούσιν. Ὁ μὲν ἀνὴρ τοιαῦτα μὲν πεποίηκε, τοιαῦτα δὲ λέγει. ὑμῶν δὲ σὺ πρῶτος, ὦ Κλέαρχε, ἀπόφηναι γνώμην ὃ τι σοι δοκεῖ. Κλέαρχος δὲ εἶπε τάδε. Συμβουλεύω ἐγὼ τὸν ἄνδρα τούτον ἐκποδῶν ποιεῖσθαι ὡς τάχιστα, ὡς μηκέτι δέη τούτον φυλάττεσθαι, ἀλλὰ σχολῆ ἢ ἡμῖν, τὸ κατὰ τούτον εἶναι, τοὺς ἐβελοντὰς τούτους εὖ ποιεῖν. ταύτῃ δὲ τῇ γνώμῃ ἔφη καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους προσθέσθαι.

and I, by the war I waged against him, made him count it best to cease from warring upon me, and I received and gave the hand-clasp of friendship. Since that," he said, "Orontas, have I done you any wrong?" "No," Orontas answered. Cyrus went on questioning him: "Did you not afterwards, although, as you yourself admit, you had suffered no wrong at my hands, desert me for the Mysians, and do all the harm you could to my territory?" "Yes," said Orontas. "Did you not," Cyrus said, "when once more you had learned the slightness of your own power, go to the altar of Artemis and say you were sorry, and did you not, after prevailing upon me to pardon you, again give me pledges and receive pledges from me?" This also Orontas admitted. "What wrong, then," said Cyrus, "have you suffered at my hands, that you now for the third time have been found plotting against me?" When Orontas replied, "None," Cyrus asked him: "Do you admit, then, that you have proved yourself a doer of wrong toward me?" "I cannot choose but do so," said Orontas. Thereupon Cyrus asked again: "Then could you henceforth prove yourself a foe to my brother and a faithful friend to me?" "Even if I should do so, Cyrus," he replied, "you could never after this believe it of me." Then Cyrus said to those who were present: "Such have been this man's deeds, such are now his words; and now, Clearchus, do you be the first of my counsellors to express the opinion you hold." And Clearchus said: "My advice is to put this man out of the way as speedily as possible, so that we may no longer have to be on our guard against the fellow, but may be left free, so far as concerns him, to requite with benefits these willing servants." In this opinion Clearchus said that the others also concurred.

Μετὰ ταῦτα, ἔφη,¹ κελεύοντος Κύρου ἔλαβον τῆς ζώνης τὸν Ὀρόνταν ἐπὶ θανάτῳ ἅπαντες ἀναστάντες καὶ οἱ συγγενεῖς· εἶτα δ' ἐξήγον αὐτὸν οἷς προσετάχθη. ἐπεὶ δὲ εἶδον αὐτὸν ὅτι περ πρόσθεν προσεκύνουν, καὶ τότε προσεκύνησαν, 11 καί περ εἰδότες ὅτι ἐπὶ θάνατον ἄγοιτο. ἐπεὶ δὲ εἰς τὴν Ἀρταπάτου σκηνὴν εἰσήχθη τοῦ πιστοτάτου τῶν Κύρου σκηπτούχων, μετὰ ταῦτα οὔτε ζῶντα Ὀρόνταν οὔτε τεθνηκότα οὐδεὶς εἶδε πώποτε, οὐδὲ ὅπως ἀπέθανεν οὐδεὶς εἰδὼς ἔλεγεν· εἴκαζον δὲ ἄλλοι ἄλλως· τάφος δὲ οὐδεὶς πώποτε αὐτοῦ ἐφάνη.

VII. Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει διὰ τῆς Βαβυλωνίας σταθμοὺς τρεῖς παρασάγγας δώδεκα. ἐν δὲ τῷ τρίτῳ σταθμῷ Κύρος ἐξέτασιν ποιεῖται τῶν Ἑλλήνων καὶ τῶν βαρβάρων ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ περὶ μέσας νύκτας· ἐδόκει γὰρ εἰς τὴν ἐπιούσαν ἕω ἦξει βασιλέα σὺν τῷ στρατεύματι μαχομένον· καὶ ἐκέλευε Κλέαρχον μὲν τοῦ δεξιοῦ κέρως ἡγεῖσθαι, Μένωνα δὲ² τοῦ εὐωνύμου, αὐτὸς δὲ τοὺς 2 ἑαυτοῦ διέταξε. μετὰ δὲ τὴν ἐξέτασιν ἅμα τῇ ἐπιούσῃ³ ἡμέρᾳ ἦκοντες⁴ αὐτόμολοι παρὰ μεγάλου βυσιλέως ἀπήγγελλον Κύρῳ περὶ τῆς βασιλέως⁵ στρατιᾶς.

Κύρος δὲ συγκαλέσας τοὺς στρατηγοὺς καὶ λοχαγοὺς τῶν Ἑλλήνων συνεβουλεύετό τε πῶς αὖ τὴν μάχην ποιοῖτο καὶ αὐτὸς παρήνει θαρρύνων

¹ ἔφη MSS., Mar.: Gem. omits, following inferior MSS.

² After δὲ the MSS. have τὸν Θετταλὸν: Gem. brackets, following Hug ³ ἐπιούσῃ MSS.: Gem. brackets.

⁴ ἦκοντες MSS.: ἦκον Gem.

⁵ ἀπήγγελλον . . . βασιλέως in margin of MS. O: Gem. omits.

After this, he said, at the bidding of Cyrus, every man of them arose, even Orontas' kinsmen, and took him by the girdle, as a sign that he was condemned to death; and then those to whom the duty was assigned led him out. And when the men who in former days were wont to do him homage saw him, they made their obeisance even then, although they knew that he was being led forth to death. Now after he had been conducted into the tent of Artapates, the most faithful of Cyrus' chamberlains, from that moment no man ever saw Orontas living or dead, nor could anyone say from actual knowledge how he was put to death,—it was all conjectures, of one sort and another; and no grave of his was ever seen.

VII. From there Cyrus marched through Babylonia three stages, twelve parasangs. On the third stage he held a review of the Greeks and the barbarians on the plain at about midnight; for he thought that at the next dawn the King would come with his army to do battle; and he ordered Clearchus to act as commander of the right wing and Menon of the left, while he himself marshalled his own troops. On the morning following the review, at daybreak, there came deserters from the great King and brought reports to Cyrus about his army.

At this time Cyrus called together the generals and captains of the Greeks, and not only took counsel with them as to how he should fight the battle, but, for his own part, exhorted and encouraged them as

- 3 τοιάδε. *Ω ἄνδρες* Ἕλληνες, οὐκ ἀνθρώπων ἀπο-
 ρῶν βαρβάρων¹ συμμάχους ὑμᾶς ἄγω, ἀλλὰ
 νομίζων ἀμείνονας καὶ κρείττους πολλῶν βαρ-
 βάρων ὑμᾶς εἶναι, διὰ τοῦτο προσέλαβον. ὅπως
 οὖν ἔσεσθε ἄνδρες ἄξιοι τῆς ἐλευθερίας ἧς κέ-
 κτησθε καὶ ἧς ὑμᾶς ἐγὼ εὐδαιμονίζω. εὖ γὰρ ἴστε
 4 τῶν καὶ ἄλλων πολλαπλασίων. ὅπως δὲ καὶ
 εἰδῆτε εἰς οἶον ἔρχεσθε ἀγῶνα, ὑμᾶς εἰδὼς διδάξω.
 τὸ μὲν γὰρ πλήθος πολὺ καὶ κραυγῇ πολλῇ
 ἐπίασιν· ἂν δὲ ταῦτα ἀνάσχησθε, τὰ ἄλλα καὶ
 αἰσχύνεσθαί² μοι δοκῶ οἴους ἡμῖν γνώσεσθε τοὺς
 ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ ὄντας ἀνθρώπους. ὑμῶν δὲ ἀνδρῶν
 ὄντων καὶ εὖ τῶν ἐμῶν γεινομένων, ἐγὼ ὑμῶν τὸν
 μὲν οἴκαδε βουλόμενον ἀπιέναι τοῖς οἴκοι ζηλωτὸν
 ποιήσω ἀπελθεῖν, πολλοὺς δὲ οἶμαι ποιήσειν τὰ
 παρ' ἐμοὶ ἐλέσθαι ἀντὶ τῶν οἴκοι.
 5 Ἐνταῦθα Γαυλίτης παρῶν φυγὰς Σάμιος,
 πιστὸς δὲ Κύρῳ, εἶπεν· Καὶ μὴν, ὦ Κύρε, λέγουσί
 τινες ὅτι πολλὰ ὑπισχνῆ νῦν διὰ τὸ ἐν τοιούτῳ
 εἶναι τοῦ κινδύνου προσιόντος,³ ἂν δὲ εὖ γένηται
 τι, οὐ μεμνήσεσθαί σε φατίν· ἔνιοι δὲ οὐδ' εἰ
 μεμνήῳ τε καὶ βούλοιο δύνασθαι ἂν ἀποδοῦναι ὅσα
 6 ὑπισχνῆ. ἀκούσας ταῦτα ἔλεξεν ὁ Κύρος· Ἄλλ'
 ἔστι μὲν ἡμῖν, ὦ ἄνδρες, ἡ ἀρχὴ ἢ πατρώα πρὸς
 μὲν μεσημβρίαν μέχρι οὐ διὰ καῦμα οὐ δύναται
 οἰκεῖν ἄνθρωποι, πρὸς δὲ ἄρκτον μέχρι οὐ διὰ
 χειμῶνα· τὰ δ' ἐν μέσῳ τούτων πάντα σατρα-

¹ βαρβάρων MSS : Gem. brackets, following Bisschop.

² αἰσχύνεσθαι MSS.: αἰσχυνεῖσθαι Gem., following Dindorf.

³ τοῦ . . . προσιόντος MSS.: Gem. brackets, following Cobet.

follows : " Men of Greece, it is not because I have not barbarians enough that I have brought you hither to fight for me ; but because I believe that you are braver and stronger than many barbarians, for this reason I took you also. Be sure, therefore, to be men worthy of the freedom you possess, upon the possession of which I congratulate you. For you may be certain that freedom is the thing I should choose in preference to all that I have and many times more. And now, in order that you may know what sort of a contest it is into which you are going, I who do know will tell you. Our enemies have great numbers and they will come on with a great outcry ; for the rest, however, if you can hold out against these things, I am ashamed, I assure you, to think what sorry fellows you will find the people of our country to be. But if you be men and if my undertaking turn out well, I shall make anyone among you who wishes to return home an object of envy to his friends at home upon his return, while I shall cause many of you, I imagine, to choose life with me in preference to life at home."

Hereupon Gaulites, a Samian exile who was there and was in the confidence of Cyrus, said : " And yet, Cyrus, there are those who say that your promises are big now because you are in such a critical situation—for the danger is upon you—but that if any good fortune befall, you will fail to remember them ; and some say that even if you should remember and have the will, you would not have the means to make good all your promises." Upon hearing these words Cyrus said : " Well, gentlemen, my father's realm extends toward the south to a region where men cannot dwell by reason of the heat, and to the north to a region where they cannot dwell by reason of the cold ; and

- 7 πένουσιν οἱ τοῦ ἐμοῦ ἀδελφοῦ φίλοι. ἦν δ' ἡμεῖς νικήσωμεν, ἡμᾶς δεῖ τοὺς ἡμετέρους φίλους τούτων ἐγκρατεῖς ποιῆσαι. ὥστε οὐ τοῦτο δέδοικα, μὴ οὐκ ἔχω ὃ τι δῶ ἐκάστῳ τῶν φίλων, ἂν εὖ γένηται, ἀλλὰ μὴ οὐκ ἔχω ἰκανοὺς οἷς δῶ. ὑμῶν δὲ τῶν Ἑλλήνων καὶ στέφανον ἐκάστῳ
- 8 χρυσοῦν δώσω. οἱ δὲ ταῦτα ἀκούσαντες αὐτοῖ τε ἦσαν πολὺ προθυμότεροι καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις ἐξήγγελλον. εἰσήσαν δὲ παρ' αὐτὸν καὶ ¹ τῶν ἄλλων Ἑλλήνων τινὲς ἀξιοῦντες εἰδέναι τί σφίσιιν ἔσται; εἰν κρατήσωσιν. ὁ δὲ ἐμπιμπλὰς ἀπάντων τῆν
- 9 γνώμην ἀπέπεμπε. παρεκελεύοντο δὲ αὐτῷ πάντες ὅσοιπερ διελέγοντο μὴ μάχεσθαι, ἀλλ' ὄπισθεν ἑαυτῶν τάττεσθαι. ἐν δὲ τῷ καιρῷ τούτῳ Κλέαρχος ᾧδὲ πως ἤρετο τὸν Κύρον· Οἷει γάρ σοι μαχεῖσθαι, ὦ Κύρε, τὸν ἀδελφόν; Νῆ Δί', ἔφη ὁ Κύρος, εἴπερ γε Δαρείου καὶ Παρυσάτιδος ἔστι παῖς, ἐμὸς δὲ ἀδελφός, οὐκ ἀμαχεῖ ταῦτ' ἐγὼ λήψομαι.
- 10 Ἐνταῦθα δὴ ἐν τῇ ἐξοπλισίᾳ ἀριθμὸς ἐγένετο τῶν μὲν Ἑλλήνων ἄσπις μυρία καὶ τετρακοσία, πελτασταὶ δὲ δισχίλιοι καὶ πεντακόσιοι, τῶν δὲ μετὰ Κύρου βαρβάρων δέκα μυριάδες καὶ ἄρματα
- 11 δρεπανηφόρα ἀμφὶ τὰ εἴκοσι. τῶν δὲ πολεμίων ἐλέγοντο εἶναι ἑκατὸν καὶ εἴκοσι μυριάδες καὶ ἄρματα δρεπανηφόρα διακόσια. ἄλλοι δὲ ἦσαν

¹ Before καὶ the MSS. have οἱ τε στρατηγοὶ : Gem. brackets, following Weiske.

¹ i.e. in the review mentioned in § 1.

² There is a discrepancy, as yet unexplained, between these numbers and those previously given. cp. ii. 9 and note; also ii. 25 and iv. 3.

all that lies between these limits my brother's friends rule as satraps. Now if we win the victory, we must put our friends in control of these provinces. I fear, therefore, not that I shall not have enough to give to each of my friends, if success attends us, but that I shall not have enough friends to give to. And as for you men of Greece, I shall give each one of you a wreath of gold besides." When they heard these words, the officers were far more eager themselves and carried the news away with them to the other Greeks. Then some of the others also sought Cyrus' presence, demanding to know what they should have, in case of victory; and he satisfied the expectations of every one of them before dismissing them. Now all alike who conversed with him urged him not to take part in the fighting, but to station himself in their rear. Taking this opportunity Clearchus asked Cyrus a question like this: "But do you think, Cyrus, that your brother will fight with you?" "Yes, by Zeus," said Cyrus, "if he is really a son of Darius and Parysatis and a brother of mine, I shall not win this realm without fighting for it."

At this time, when the troops were marshalled under arms,¹ the number of the Greeks was found to be ten thousand four hundred hoplites, and two thousand five hundred peltasts,² while the number of the barbarians under Cyrus was one hundred thousand and there were about twenty scythe-bearing chariots. The enemy, it was reported, numbered one million two hundred thousand³ and had two hundred scythe-bearing chariots; besides, there was a troop of six

³ The number is probably overstated. Ctesias, the King's Greek physician (see viii. 26), is said by Plutarch (*Artax.* 13) to have given it as 400,000.

- ἑξακισχίλιοι ἰππεῖς, ὧν Ἄρταγέρσης ἦρχεν οὔτοι δ' αὐτὸν πρὸ αὐτοῦ βασιλέως τεταγμένοι ἦσαν.
- 12 τοῦ δὲ βασιλέως στρατεύματος ἦσαν ἄρχοντες¹ τέτταρες, τριάκοντα μυριάδων ἕκαστος, Ἄβροκόμας, Τισσαφέρνης, Γωβρύας, Ἀρβάκης. τούτων δὲ παρεγένοντο ἐν τῇ μάχῃ ἐνενήκοντα μυριάδες καὶ ἄρματα δρεπανηφόρα ἑκατὸν καὶ πεντήκοντα. Ἄβροκόμας δὲ ὑστέρησε τῆς μάχης ἡμέραις πέντε,
- 13 ἐκ Φοινίκης ἐλαύνων. ταῦτα δὲ ἠγγέλλον πρὸς Κῦρον οἱ αὐτομολήσαντες παρὰ μεγάλου βασιλέως² πρὸ τῆς μάχης, καὶ μετὰ τὴν μάχην οἱ ὑστερον ἐλήφθησαν τῶν πολεμίων ταῦτα ἠγγέλλον.
- 14 Ἐντεῦθεν δὲ Κῦρος ἐξελαύνει σταθμὸν ἓνα παρασάγγας τρεῖς συντεταγμένῳ τῷ στρατεύματι παντὶ καὶ τῷ Ἑλληνικῷ καὶ τῷ βαρβαρικῷ. ὤετο γὰρ ταύτῃ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ μαχεῖσθαι βασιλέα· κατὰ γὰρ μέσον τὸν σταθμὸν τοῦτον τάφρος ἦν ὀρυκτῆ βαθεῖα, τὸ μὲν εὖρος ὀργυαὶ πέντε, τὸ δὲ βάθος
- 15 ὀργυαὶ τρεῖς. παρετέτατο δὲ ἡ τάφρος ἄνω διὰ τοῦ πεδίου ἐπὶ δώδεκα παρασάγγας μέχρι τοῦ Μηδίας τείχους³ ἦν δὲ παρὰ τὸν Εὐφράτην πάρο-

¹ After ἄρχοντες the MSS. have καὶ στρατηγοὶ καὶ ἡγεμόνες; Gem. brackets, following Weiske.

² παρὰ . . . βασιλέως MSS.: Gem. brackets, following Bischof. Immediately before this phrase the MSS. have ἐκ τῶν πολεμίων: Mar. brackets, following Kiehl.

³ After Μηδίας τείχους the MSS. proceed as follows: ἐνθα αἱ διώρυχες, ἀπὸ τοῦ Τίγρητος ποταμοῦ ῥέουσιν· εἰσὶ δὲ τέτταρες, τὸ μὲν εὖρος πλεθριαῖαι, βαθεῖαι δὲ ἰσχυρῶς, καὶ πλοῖα πλεῖ ἐν αὐταῖς σιταγωγὰ· εἰσβάλλουσι δὲ εἰς τὸν Εὐφράτην, διαλείπουσι δ' ἐκάστη παρασάγγην, γέφυραι δ' ἐπεισιν. [Here also are the canals, which flow from the Tigris river; they are four in number, each a plethrum wide and exceedingly deep, and grain-carrying ships ply in them; they empty into the

thousand horsemen, under the command of Artagerses, which was stationed in front of the King himself. And the King's army had four commanders, each at the head of three hundred thousand men, namely, Abrocomas, Tissaphernes, Gobryas, and Arbaces. But of the forces just enumerated only nine hundred thousand, with one hundred and fifty scythe-bearing chariots, were present at the battle; for Abrocomas, marching from Phoenicia, arrived five days too late for the engagement. Such were the reports brought to Cyrus by those who deserted from the Great King before the battle, and after the battle identical reports were made by the prisoners taken thereafter.

From there Cyrus marched one stage, three parasangs, with his whole army, Greek and barbarian alike, drawn up in line of battle; for he supposed that on that day the King would come to an engagement; for about midway of this day's march there was a deep trench, five fathoms¹ in width and three fathoms in depth. This trench extended up through the plain for a distance of twelve parasangs, reaching to the wall of Media,² and alongside the Euphrates

¹ ὀργυά = the reach of the outstretched arms (*cp.* ὀρέγω), or, as an exact unit of measurement, 6 Greek feet = 5 ft. 10 in. English measure.

² Described by Xenophon in II. iv. 12. It extended from the Euphrates north-east to the Tigris, and was built by the Babylonians, apparently in the sixth century B.C., as a defence against the Medes. It is supposed that the southern part of the wall was now in ruins. Such a supposition serves to explain (1) the need of the King's trench, and (2) the fact that Xenophon does not describe the wall here, but only in II. iv. 12.

Euphrates and are a parasang apart, and there are bridges over them.] This passage is regarded by edd. generally as an interpolation.

δος στενή μεταξὺ τοῦ ποταμοῦ καὶ τῆς τάφρου ὡς
 16 εἴκοσι ποδῶν τὸ εὖρος· ταύτην δὲ τὴν τάφρον
 βασιλεὺς ποιεῖ μέγας ἀντὶ ἐρύματος, ἐπειδὴ πυν-
 θάνεται Κύρον προσελαύνοντα. ταύτην¹ δὲ τὴν
 17 ἐγένοντο εἴσω τῆς τάφρου. ταύτη μὲν οὖν τῇ
 ἡμέρᾳ οὐκ ἐμαχέσατο βασιλεὺς, ἀλλ' ὑποχωρούν-
 των φανερὰ ἦσαν καὶ ἵππων καὶ ἀνθρώπων ἴχνη
 18 πολλά. ἐνταῦθα Κύρος Σιλανὸν καλέσας τὸν
 Ἀμπρακιώτην μάντιν ἔδωκεν αὐτῷ δαρεικοὺς
 τρισχιλίους, ὅτι τῇ ἐνδεκάτῃ ἀπ' ἐκείνης ἡμέρα
 πρότερον θυόμενος εἶπεν αὐτῷ ὅτι βασιλεὺς οὐ
 μαχεῖται δέκα ἡμερῶν, Κύρος δ' εἶπεν· Οὐκ ἄρα
 ἔτι μαχεῖται, εἰ ἐν ταύταις οὐ μαχεῖται ταῖς ἡμέ-
 ραις· εἰ δ' ἀληθείσης, ὑπισχνούμαι σοι δέκα
 19 τάλαντα. τοῦτο τὸ χρυσίον τότε ἀπέδωκεν, ἐπεὶ
 παρήλθον αἱ δέκα ἡμέραι. ἐπεὶ δ' ἐπὶ τῇ τάφρῳ
 οὐκ ἐκώλυε βασιλεὺς τὸ Κύρου στράτευμα
 διαβαίνειν, ἔδοξε καὶ Κύρῳ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις
 ἀπεγνωκέναι τοῦ μάχεσθαι· ὥστε τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ
 20 Κύρος ἐπορεύετο ἡμελημένως μᾶλλον. τῇ δὲ
 τρίτῃ ἐπὶ τε τοῦ ἄρματος καθήμενος τὴν πορείαν
 ἐποιεῖτο καὶ ὀλίγους ἐν τάξει ἔχων πρὸ αὐτοῦ, τὸ
 δὲ πολὺ αὐτῷ ἀνατεταραγμένον ἐπορεύετο καὶ τῶν
 ὄπλων τοῖς στρατιώταις πολλὰ ἐπὶ ἀμαξῶν ἤγοντο
 καὶ ὑποζυγίων.

VIII. Καὶ ἤδη τε ἦν ἀμφὶ ἀγορὰν πλήθουσιν

¹ ταύτην MSS.: ταύτη Gem., following Hartman.

¹ It would seem that the rapid approach of Cyrus had prevented the King from completing the trench.

² Hence 10 (Attic) talents = 3,000 (Persian) darics. A talent was 60 minas, and therefore a mina was counted

there was a narrow passage, not more than about twenty feet in width, between the river and the trench; and the trench¹ had been constructed by the Great King as a means of defence when he learned that Cyrus was marching against him. Accordingly Cyrus and his army went through by the passage just mentioned, and so found themselves on the inner side of the trench. Now on that day the King did not offer battle, but tracks of both horses and men in retreat were to be seen in great numbers. Then Cyrus summoned Silanus, his Ambraciot soothsayer, and gave him three thousand darics; for on the eleventh day before this, while sacrificing, he had told Cyrus that the King would not fight within ten days, and Cyrus had said: "Then he will not fight at all, if he will not fight within ten days; however, if your prediction proves true, I promise you ten talents."² So it was this money that he then paid over, the ten days having passed. But since the King did not appear at the trench and try to prevent the passage of Cyrus' army, both Cyrus and the rest concluded that he had given up the idea of fighting. Hence on the following day Cyrus proceeded more carelessly; and on the third day he was making the march seated in his chariot and with only a small body of troops drawn up in line in front of him, while the greater part of the army was proceeding in disorder and many of the soldiers' arms and accoutrements were being carried in wagons and on pack-animals.

VIII. It was now about full-market time³ and the

equivalent to 5 darics. The discrepancy between this result and the values stated previously (see notes on i. 9 and iv. 13) is explained by the fact that silver was worth much more at this time, relatively to gold, than at present.

³ i.e. the middle of the forenoon.

καὶ πλησίον ἦν ὁ σταθμὸς ἔνθα ἔμελλε καταλύειν, ἠνίκα Πατηγύας, ἀνὴρ Πέρσης τῶν ἀμφὶ Κῦρον χρηστός, προφαίνεται ἐλαύνων ἀνὰ κράτος ἰδρῶντι τῷ ἵππῳ, καὶ εὐθύς πᾶσιν οἷς ἐνετύγχανεν ἐβόα καὶ βαρβαρικῶς καὶ ἑλληνικῶς ὅτι βασιλεὺς σὺν στρατεύματι πολλῷ προσέρχεται ὡς εἰς μάχην παρεσκευασμένος. ἔνθα δὴ πολὺς ταραχος ἐγένετο·
 2 αὐτίκα γὰρ ἐδόκουν οἱ Ἕλληνες καὶ πάντες δὲ
 3 ἀτάκτοις σφίσιν ἐπιπεσεῖσθαι· Κῦρός τε καταπηδήσας ἀπὸ τοῦ ἄρμάτος τὸν θώρακα ἐνεδύετο καὶ ἀναβάς ἐπὶ τὸν ἵππον τὰ παλτὰ εἰς τὰς χεῖρας ἔλαβε, τοῖς τε ἄλλοις πᾶσι παρήγγελλεν ἐξοπλιζεσθαι καὶ καθίστασθαι εἰς τὴν ἑαυτοῦ τάξιν
 4 ἕκαστον. ἔνθα δὴ σὺν πολλῇ σπουδῇ καθίσταντο, Κλέαρχος μὲν τὰ δεξιὰ τοῦ κέρατος ἔχων πρὸς τῷ Εὐφράτῃ ποταμῷ, Πρόξενος δὲ ἐχόμενος, οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι μετὰ τούτου, Μένων δὲ καὶ τὸ στράτευμα τὸ
 5 εὐώνυμον κέρας¹ ἔσχε τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ. τοῦ δὲ βαρβαρικοῦ ἵππεῖς μὲν Παφλαγῶνες εἰς χιλίους παρὰ Κλέαρχον ἔστησαν ἐν τῷ δεξιῷ καὶ τὸ Ἑλληνικὸν πελταστικόν, ἐν δὲ τῷ εὐώνυμῳ Ἀριαῖός τε ὁ Κύρου ὑπαρχος καὶ τὸ ἄλλο βαρβαρικόν,
 6 Κῦρος δὲ καὶ ἵππεῖς τούτου ὅσον ἑξακόσιοι κατὰ τὸ μέσον,² ὀπλισμένοι θώραξι μὲν αὐτοὶ καὶ παραμηριδίοις καὶ κράνεσι πάντες πλὴν Κύρου· Κῦρος δὲ ψιλὴν ἔχων τὴν κεφαλὴν εἰς τὴν μάχην

¹ καὶ . . . κέρας MSS.: τὸ στρατεύματος . . . κέρας Gem., following Fischer: Mar., after Bornemann, suspects καὶ τὸ στράτευμα.

² κατὰ τὸ μέσον inserted by Leunclavius, whom Gem. and Mar. follow.

stopping-place where Cyrus was intending to halt had been almost reached, when Pategyas, a trusty Persian of Cyrus' staff, came into sight, riding at full speed, with his horse in a sweat, and at once shouted out to everyone he met, in the barbarian tongue and in Greek, that the King was approaching with a large army, all ready for battle. Then ensued great confusion; for the thought of the Greeks, and of all the rest in fact, was that he would fall upon them immediately, while they were in disorder; and Cyrus leaped down from his chariot, put on his breastplate, and then, mounting his horse, took his spears in his hands and passed the word to all the others to arm themselves and get into their places, every man of them. Thereupon they proceeded in great haste to take their places, Clearchus occupying the right end of the Greek wing,¹ close to the Euphrates river, Proxenus next to him, and the others beyond Proxenus, while Menon and his army took the left end of the Greek wing. As for the barbarians, Paphlagonian horsemen to the number of a thousand took station beside Clearchus on the right wing, as did the Greek peltasts, on the left was Ariaeus, Cyrus' lieutenant, with the rest of the barbarian army, and in the centre Cyrus and his horsemen, about six hundred in number. These troopers were armed with breastplates and thigh-pieces and, all of them except Cyrus, with helmets—Cyrus, however, went into the battle with his

¹ i.e. the Greek army as a whole constituted the right wing of Cyrus' entire army, his Persian troops forming the centre and the left wing. Clearchus and Menon, then, occupy the right and left wings, respectively, of the Greek contingent.

7 καθίστατο.¹ οἱ δ' ἵπποι πάντες² εἶχον καὶ προ-
 μετωπίδια καὶ προστερνίδια· εἶχον δὲ καὶ μαχαί-
 ρας οἱ ἵππεῖς Ἑλληνικάς.

8 Καὶ ἤδη τε ἦν μέσον ἡμέρας καὶ οὐπω καταφα-
 νεῖς ἦσαν οἱ πολέμοιοι· ἠνίκα δὲ δείλη ἐγίγνετο,
 ἐφάνη κοινορτός ὡσπερ νεφέλη λευκή, χρόνῳ δὲ
 συχνῶ ὕστερον ὡσπερ μελανία τις ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ
 ἐπὶ πολὺ. ὅτε δὲ ἐγγύτερον ἐγίγνοντο, τάχα δὴ
 καὶ χαλκός τις ἦστραπτε καὶ λόγχοι καὶ αἰ

9 τάξεις καταφανεῖς ἐγίγνοντο. καὶ ἦσαν ἵππεῖς
 μὲν λευκοθώρακες ἐπὶ τοῦ εὐωνύμου τῶν πολεμίων·
 Τισσαφέρνης ἐλέγετο τούτων ἄρχειν· ἐχόμενοι δὲ
 γερροφόροι, ἐχόμενοι δὲ ὀπλίται σὺν ποδήρεσι
 ξυλίναῖς ἀσπίσιν. Αἰγύπτιοι δ' οὗτοι ἐλέγοντο
 εἶναι· ἄλλοι δ' ἵππεῖς, ἄλλοι τοξόται. πάντες
 δ' οὗτοι κατὰ ἔθνη ἐν πλαισίῳ πλήρει ἀνθρώπων

10 ἕκαστον τὸ ἔθνος ἐπορεύετο.³ πρὸ δὲ αὐτῶν ἄρματα
 διαλείποντα συχνὸν ἀπ' ἀλλήλων τὰ δὴ δρεπανη-
 φόρα καλούμενα· εἶχον δὲ τὰ δρέπανα ἐκ τῶν
 ἀξόνων εἰς πλάγιον ἀποτεταμένα καὶ ὑπὸ τοῖς
 δίφροις εἰς γῆν βλέποντα, ὡς διακόπτειν ὅτῳ
 ἐντυγχάνοιεν. ἡ δὲ γνώμη ἦν ὡς εἰς τὰς τάξεις

11 τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐλῶντα καὶ διακόψοντα. ὁ μὲντοι
 Κύρος εἶπεν ὅτε καλέσας παρεκελεύετο τοῖς

¹ After καθίστατο the MSS. have λέγεται δὲ καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους Πέρσας ψιλαῖς ταῖς κεφαλαῖς ἐν τῷ πολέμῳ διακινδυνεύειν. [In fact, it is said of the Persians in general that they venture all the perils of war with their heads unprotected.] This passage is bracketed by almost all edd., following Wyttenbach.

head unprotected—and all their horses had frontlets and breast-pieces; and the men carried, besides their other weapons, Greek sabres.

And now it was midday, and the enemy were not yet in sight; but when afternoon was coming on, there was seen a rising dust, which appeared at first like a white cloud, but some time later like a kind of blackness in the plain, extending over a great distance. As the enemy came nearer and nearer, there were presently flashes of bronze here and there, and spears and the hostile ranks began to come into sight. There were horsemen in white cuirasses on the left wing of the enemy, under the command, it was reported, of Tissaphernes; next to them were troops with wicker shields and, farther on, hoplites with wooden shields which reached to their feet, these latter being Egyptians, people said; and then more horsemen and more bowmen. All these troops were marching in national divisions, each nation in a solid square. In front of them were the so-called scythe-bearing chariots, at some distance from one another; and the scythes they carried reached out sideways from the axles and were also set under the chariot bodies, pointing towards the ground, so as to cut to pieces whatever they met; the intention, then, was that they should drive into the ranks of the Greeks and cut the troops to pieces. As for the statement, however, which Cyrus made when he called the Greeks together and urged them to hold out against the

² After πάντες the MSS. have οἱ μετὰ Κύρου: Gem. and Mar. bracket, following Schenkl.

³ ἕκαστον . . . ἐπορεύετο MSS.: Gem., following Hartman, brackets ἕκαστον τὸ ἔθνος and reads ἐπορεύοντο.

- "Ελλησι τὴν κραυγὴν τῶν βαρβάρων ἀνέχεσθαι, ἐψεύσθη τοῦτο· οὐ γὰρ κραυγῇ ἀλλὰ σιγῇ ὡς ἀνυστὸν καὶ ἡσυχῇ ἐν ἴσῳ καὶ βραδέως προσῆσαν.
- 12 Καὶ ἐν τούτῳ Κῦρος παρελαύνων αὐτὸς σὺν Πίγρητι τῷ ἑρμηνεῖ καὶ ἄλλοις τρισὶν ἢ τέτταρσι τῷ Κλεάρχῳ ἐβόα ἄγειν τὸ στράτευμα κατὰ μέσον τὸ τῶν πολεμίων, ὅτι ἐκεῖ βασιλεὺς εἶη· καὶ τοῦτ', εἶφη, νικῶμεν, πάνθ' ἡμῖν πεποίηται.
- 13 ὁρῶν δὲ ὁ Κλεάρχος τὸ μέσον στῖφος καὶ ἀκούων Κύρου ἔξω ὄντα τοῦ¹ εὐωνύμου βασιλέα—τοσοῦτον γὰρ πλήθει περιῆν βασιλεὺς ὥστε μέσον τῶν ἑαυτοῦ ἔχων τοῦ Κύρου εὐωνύμου ἔξω ἦν—ἀλλ' ὅμως ὁ Κλεάρχος οὐκ ἠθέλεν ἀποσπάσαι ἀπὸ τοῦ ποταμοῦ τὸ δεξιὸν κέρασ, φοβούμενος μὴ κυκλωθεῖν ἑκατέρωθεν, τῷ δὲ Κύρῳ ἀπεκρίνατο ὅτι αὐτῷ μέλει ὅπως καλῶς ἔχοι.
- 14 Καὶ ἐν τούτῳ τῷ καιρῷ τὸ μὲν βαρβαρικὸν στράτευμα ὁμαλῶς προῆει, τὸ δὲ Ἑλληνικὸν ἔτι ἐν τῷ αὐτῷ μένον συνετάττετο ἐκ τῶν ἔτι προσιόντων. καὶ ὁ Κῦρος παρελαύνων οὐ πάνυ πρὸς αὐτῷ τῷ στρατεύματι κατεθεῶτο ἐκστέρωσε ἀποβλέπων εἰς τε τοὺς πολεμίους καὶ τοὺς φίλους.
- 15 ἰδὼν δὲ αὐτὸν ἀπὸ τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ Ξενοφῶν Ἀθηναῖος, πελάσας ὡς συναυτῆσαι ἤρετο εἴ τι παραγγέλλοι· ὁ δ' ἐπιστήσας εἶπε καὶ λέγειν ἐκέλευε πᾶσιν ὅτι καὶ τὰ ἱερὰ καλὰ καὶ τὰ
- 16 σφάλγια καλὰ. ταῦτα δὲ λέγων θορύβου ἤκουσε διὰ τῶν τάξεων ἰόντος, καὶ ἤρετο τίς ὁ θόρυβος εἶη. ὁ δὲ εἶπεν² ὅτι σύνθημα παρέρχεται δεύ-

¹ After τοῦ the MSS. have Ἑλληνικοῦ: Gem. brackets, following Hertlein.

² Before εἶπεν the better MSS. have Κλεάρχος: Gem. and Mar. bracket, following Bornemann.

shouting of the barbarians, he proved to be mistaken in this point; for they came on, not with shouting, but in the utmost silence and quietness, with equal step and slowly.

At this moment Cyrus rode along the line, attended only by Pigres, his interpreter, and three or four others, and shouted to Clearchus to lead his army against the enemy's centre, for the reason that the King was stationed there; "and if," he said, "we are victorious there, our whole task is accomplished." Clearchus, however, since he saw the compact body at the enemy's centre and heard from Cyrus that the King was beyond his left wing (for the King was so superior in numbers that, although occupying the centre of his own line, he was beyond Cyrus' left wing), was unwilling to draw the right wing away from the river, for fear that he might be turned on both flanks; and he told Cyrus, in reply, that he was taking care to make everything go well.

At this critical time the King's army was advancing evenly, while the Greek force, still remaining in the same place, was forming its line from those who were still coming up. And Cyrus, riding along at some distance from his army, was taking a survey, looking in either direction, both at his enemies and his friends. Then Xenophon,¹ an Athenian, seeing him from the Greek army, approached so as to meet him and asked if he had any orders to give; and Cyrus pulled up his horse and bade Xenophon tell everybody that the sacrificial victims and omens were all favourable. While saying this he heard a noise running through the ranks, and asked what the noise was. Xenophon replied that the watchword was now passing along

¹ The author. He always speaks of himself in the third person.

τερον ἤδη. καὶ ὃς ἐθαύμασε τίς παραγγέλλει καὶ ἤρετο ὃ τι εἶη τὸ σύνθημα. ὁ δ' ἀπεκρίνατο· Ζεὺς
 17 σωτῆρ καὶ νίκη. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος ἀκούσας Ἄλλὰ δέχομαί τε, ἔφη, καὶ τοῦτο ἔστω. ταῦτα δ' εἰπὼν εἰς τὴν αὐτοῦ χώραν ἀπήλαυσε.

Καὶ οὐκέτι τρία ἢ τέτταρα στάδια διειχέτην τὴν φάλαγγα ἀπ' ἀλλήλων ἠνίκα ἐπαιάνιζόν τε οἱ Ἕλληνας καὶ ἤρχοντο ἀντίοι ἵεναὶ τοῖς πολεμίοις.
 18 ὡς δὲ πορευομένων ἐξεκύμαινέ τι τῆς φάλαγγος, τὸ ὑπολειπόμενον ἤρξατο δρόμῳ θεῖν· καὶ ἅμα ἐφθέγγοντο πάντες οἶον τῷ Ἐνυαλίῳ ἐλελίζουσι, καὶ πάντες δὲ ἔθεον. λέγουσι δὲ ὡς τινες¹ καὶ ταῖς ἀσπίσι πρὸς τὰ δόρατα ἐδούπησαν φόβον
 19 ποιοῦντες τοῖς ἵπποις. πρὶν δὲ τόξευμα ἐξικνεῖσθαι ἐκκλίνουσιν οἱ βάρβαροι καὶ φεύγουσι. καὶ ἐνταῦθα δὴ ἐδίωκον μὲν κατὰ κράτος οἱ Ἕλληνας, ἐβόων δὲ ἀλλήλοις μὴ θεῖν δρόμῳ, ἀλλ' ἐν τάξει
 20 ἔπεσθαι. τὰ δ' ἄρματα ἐφέροντο τὰ μὲν δι' αὐτῶν τῶν πολεμίων, τὰ δὲ καὶ διὰ τῶν Ἑλλήνων κενὰ ἠνιόχων. οἱ δ' ἐπεὶ προΐδοιεν, δίσταντο· ἔστι δ' ὅστις καὶ κατελήφθη ὡσπερ ἐν ἵπποδρόμῳ ἐκπλαγεῖς· καὶ οὐδὲν μέντοι οὐδὲ τοῦτον παθεῖν ἔφασαν, οὐδ' ἄλλος δὲ τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐν ταύτῃ τῇ μάχῃ ἔπαθεν οὐδεὶς οὐδέν, πλὴν ἐπὶ τῷ εὐωνύμῳ τοξευθῆναι τις ἐλέγετο.

21 Κῦρος δ' ὁρῶν τοὺς Ἕλληνας νικῶντας τὸ καθ'

¹ δὲ ὡς τινες Gem., following Becker: δὲ τινες ὡς MSS.

for the second time.¹ And Cyrus wondered who had given it out, and asked what the watchword was. Xenophon replied "Zeus Saviour and Victory." And upon hearing this Cyrus said, "Well, I accept it, and so let it be." After he had said these words he rode back to his own position.

At length the opposing lines were not three or four stadia apart, and then the Greeks struck up the paean and began to advance against the enemy. And when, as they proceeded, a part of the phalanx billowed out, those who were thus left behind began to run; at the same moment they all set up the sort of war-cry which they raise to Enyalios,² and all alike began running. It is also reported that some of them clashed their shields against their spears, thereby frightening the enemy's horses. And before an arrow reached them, the barbarians broke and fled. Thereupon the Greeks pursued with all their might, but shouted meanwhile to one another not to run at a headlong pace, but to keep their ranks in the pursuit. As for the enemy's chariots, some of them plunged through the lines of their own troops, others, however, through the Greek lines, but without charioteers. And whenever the Greeks saw them coming, they would open a gap for their passage; one fellow, to be sure, was caught, like a befuddled man on a race-course, yet it was said that even he was not hurt in the least, nor, for that matter, did any other single man among the Greeks get any hurt whatever in this battle, save that some one on the left wing was reported to have been hit by an arrow.

When Cyrus saw that the Greeks were victorious

¹ i. e. back again, from the last man to the first.

² i. e. Ares.

αὐτοὺς καὶ διώκοντας, ἠδόμενος καὶ προσκυνούμενος ἤδη ὡς βασιλεὺς ὑπὸ τῶν ἀμφ' αὐτόν, οὐδ' ὡς ἐξήχθη διώκειν, ἀλλὰ συνεσπειραμένην ἔχων τὴν τῶν σὺν ἑαυτῷ ἑξακοσίων ἰππέων τάξιν ἐπεμελείτο ὅ τι ποιήσει βασιλεὺς. καὶ γὰρ ἤδει αὐτόν

22 ὅτι μέσον ἔχοι τοῦ Περσικοῦ στρατεύματος. καὶ πάντες δ' οἱ τῶν βαρβάρων ἄρχοντες μέσον ἔχοντες τὸ αὐτῶν ἠγούνται, νομίζοντες οὕτω καὶ ἐν ἀσφαλεστάτῳ εἶναι, ἣν ἢ ἡ ἰσχὺς αὐτῶν ἐκατέρωθεν, καὶ εἴ τι παραγγεῖλαι χρήζοιεν, ἡμίσει ἂν

23 χρόνῳ αἰσθάνεσθαι τὸ στρατεύμα. καὶ βασιλεὺς δὴ τότε μέσον ἔχων τῆς αὐτοῦ στρατιᾶς ὁμῶς ἕξω ἐγένετο τοῦ Κύρου εὐωνύμου κέρατος. ἐπεὶ δ' οὐδεὶς αὐτῷ ἐμάχετο ἐκ τοῦ ἀντίου οὐδὲ τοῖς αὐτοῦ τεταγμένοις ἔμπροσθεν, ἐπέκαμπτεν ὡς εἰς κύκλωσιν.

24 Ἐνθα δὴ Κῦρος δείσας μὴ ὀπισθεν γενόμενος κατακόψῃ τὸ Ἑλληνικὸν ἐλαύνει ἀντίος· καὶ ἐμβαλὼν σὺν τοῖς ἑξακοσίοις νικᾷ τοὺς πρὸ βασιλέως τεταγμένους καὶ εἰς φυγὴν ἔτρεψε τοὺς ἑξακισχιλίους, καὶ ἀποκτεῖναι λέγεται αὐτὸς τῇ

25 ἑαυτοῦ χειρὶ Ἀρταγέρσην τὸν ἄρχοντα αὐτῶν. ὡς δ' ἡ τροπὴ ἐγένετο, διασπείρονται καὶ οἱ Κύρου ἑξακόσιοι εἰς τὸ διώκειν ὀρμήσαντες, πλὴν πάντων ὀλίγοι ἀμφ' αὐτόν κατελείφθησαν, σχεδὸν οἱ

26 ὁμοτράπεζοι καλούμενοι. σὺν τούτοις δὲ ὧν καθορᾶ βασιλέα καὶ τὸ ἀμφ' ἐκείνον στῖφος· καὶ εὐθύς οὐκ ἠνέσχετο, ἀλλ' εἰπὼν Τὸν ἄνδρα ὀρῶ

over the division opposite them and were in pursuit, although he was pleased and was already being saluted with homage as King by his attendants, he nevertheless was not induced to join the pursuit, but, keeping in close formation the six hundred horsemen of his troop, he was watching to see what the King would do. For he knew that the King held the centre of the Persian army; in fact, all the generals of the barbarians hold their own centre when they are in command, for they think that this is the safest position, namely, with their forces on either side of them, and also that if they want to pass along an order, the army will get it in half the time; so in this instance the King held the centre of the army under his command, but still he found himself beyond the left wing of Cyrus. Since, then, there was no one in his front to give battle to him or to the troops drawn up before him, he proceeded to wheel round his line with the intention of encircling the enemy.

Thereupon Cyrus, seized with fear lest he might get in the rear of the Greek troops and cut them to pieces, charged to meet him; and attacking with his six hundred, he was victorious over the forces stationed in front of the King and put to flight the six thousand,¹ slaying with his own hand, it is said, their commander Artagerses. But when they turned to flight, Cyrus' six hundred, setting out in pursuit, became scattered also, and only a very few were left about him, chiefly his so-called table companions. While attended by these only, he caught sight of the King and the compact body around him; and on the instant he lost control of himself and, with

¹ See vii. 11.

ἴετο ἐπ' αὐτὸν καὶ παίει κατὰ τὸ στέρνον καὶ τιτρώσκει διὰ τοῦ θώρακος, ὡς φησι Κτησίας ὁ ἰατρός, καὶ¹ ἰάσασθαι αὐτὸς τὸ τραυμά φησι.

27 Παίοντα δ' αὐτὸν ἀκοντίζει τις παλτῶ ὑπὸ τὸν ὀφθαλμὸν βιαίως· καὶ ἐνταῦθα μαχόμενοι καὶ βασιλεὺς καὶ Κῦρος καὶ οἱ ἀμφ' αὐτοὺς ὑπὲρ ἑκατέρου, ὅποσοι μὲν τῶν ἀμφὶ βασιλέα ἀπέθνησκον Κτησίας λέγει· παρ' ἐκείνῳ γὰρ ἦν· Κῦρος δὲ αὐτὸς τε ἀπέθανε καὶ ὀκτὼ οἱ ἄριστοι τῶν περὶ αὐτὸν
28 ἔκειντο ἐπ' αὐτῶ. Ἄρταπάτης δ' ὁ πιστότατος αὐτῶ τῶν σκηπτούχων θεράπων λέγεται, ἐπειδὴ πεπτωκότα εἶδε Κῦρον, καταπηδήσας ἀπὸ τοῦ
29 ἵππου περιπεσεῖν αὐτῶ. καὶ οἱ μὲν φασι βασιλέα κελεῦσαι τινα ἐπισφάζαι αὐτὸν Κύρῳ, οἱ δ' ἑαυτὸν ἐπισφάξασθαι σπασάμενον τὸν ἀκινάκην· εἶχε γὰρ χρυσοῦν· καὶ στρεπτὸν δ' ἐφόρει καὶ ψέλια καὶ τᾶλλα ὥσπερ οἱ ἄριστοι Περσῶν· ἐτετίμητο γὰρ ὑπὸ Κύρου δι' εὐνοίαν τε καὶ πιστότητα.

IX. Κῦρος μὲν οὖν οὕτως ἐτελεύτησεν, ἀνὴρ ὦν Περσῶν τῶν μετὰ Κῦρον τὸν ἀρχαῖον γενομένων βασιλικώτατος τε καὶ ἀρχεῖν ἀξιώτατος, ὡς παρὰ πάντων ὁμολογεῖται τῶν Κύρου δοκούντων ἐν
2 πείρᾳ γενέσθαι. πρῶτον μὲν γὰρ ἔτι παῖς ὦν ὅτ' ἐπαιδεύετο καὶ σὺν τῷ ἀδελφῷ καὶ σὺν τοῖς ἄλλοις παισὶ, πάντων πάντα κράτιστος ἐνομίζετο.
3 πάντες γὰρ οἱ τῶν ἀρίστων Περσῶν παῖδες ἐπὶ

¹ Before καὶ Gem. inserts δs, following Buttmann.

the cry "I see the man," rushed upon him and struck him in the breast and wounded him through his breastplate—as Ctesias¹ the physician says, adding also that he himself healed the wound.

While Cyrus was delivering his stroke, however, some one hit him a hard blow under the eye with a javelin; and then followed a struggle between the King and Cyrus and the attendants who supported each of them. The number that fell on the King's side is stated by Ctesias, who was with him; on the other side, Cyrus himself was killed and eight of the noblest of his attendants lay dead upon him. Of Artapates, the one among Cyrus' chamberlains who was his most faithful follower, it is told that when he saw Cyrus fallen, he leaped down from his horse and threw his arms about him. And one report is that the King ordered someone to slay him upon the body of Cyrus, while others say that he drew his dagger and slew himself with his own hand; for he had a dagger of gold, and he also wore a necklace and bracelets and all the other ornaments that the noblest Persians wear; for he had been honoured by Cyrus because of his affection and fidelity.

IX. In this way, then, Cyrus came to his end, a man who was the most kingly and the most worthy to rule of all the Persians who have been born since Cyrus the Elder, as all agree who are reputed to have known Cyrus intimately. For firstly, while he was still a boy and was being educated with his brother and the other boys, he was regarded as the best of them all in all respects. For all the sons of the noblest Persians are educated at the King's

¹ See note on vii. 11.

ταῖς βασιλέως θύραις παιδεύονται· ἔνθα πολλὴν
 μὲν σωφροσύνην καταμάθοι ἂν τις, αἰσχρὸν δ'
 4 οὐδὲν οὔτ' ἀκούσαι οὔτ' ἰδεῖν ἔστι. θεῶνται δ'
 οἱ παῖδες καὶ τιμωμένους¹ ὑπὸ βασιλέως καὶ
 ἀκούουσι, καὶ ἄλλους ἀτιμαζομένους· ὥστε εὐθὺς
 παῖδες ὄντες μαυθάνουσιν ἄρχειν τε καὶ ἄρχεσθαι.
 5 ἔνθα Κύρος αἰδημονέστατος μὲν πρῶτον τῶν
 ἡλικιωτῶν ἐδόκει εἶναι, τοῖς τε πρεσβυτέροις καὶ
 τῶν ἑαυτοῦ ὑποδεεστέρων μᾶλλον πείθεσθαι,
 ἔπειτα δὲ φιλιππότατος καὶ τοῖς ἵπποις ἄριστα
 χρῆσθαι· ἔκρινον δ' αὐτὸν καὶ τῶν εἰς τὸν πό-
 λεμον ἔργων, τοξικῆς τε καὶ ἀκοντίσεως, φιλομα-
 6 θέστατον εἶναι καὶ μελετηρότατον. ἐπεὶ δὲ τῇ
 ἡλικίᾳ ἔπρεπε, καὶ φιλοθηρότατος ἦν καὶ πρὸς
 τὰ θηρία μέντοι φιλοκινδυνότατος. καὶ ἄρκτον
 ποτὲ ἐπιφερομένην οὐκ ἔτρεσεν, ἀλλὰ συμπεσὼν
 κατεσπίασθη ἀπὸ τοῦ ἵππου, καὶ τὰ μὲν ἔπαθεν,
 ὧν καὶ τὰς ὠτειλάς εἶχεν, τέλος δὲ κατέκανε· καὶ
 τὸν πρῶτον μέντοι βοηθήσαντα πολλοῖς μακα-
 ριστὸν ἐποίησεν.
 7 Ἐπεὶ δὲ κατεπέμφθη ὑπὸ τοῦ πατρὸς σα-
 τράπης Λυδίας τε καὶ Φρυγίας τῆς μεγάλης καὶ
 Καππαδοκίας, στρατηγὸς δὲ καὶ πάντων ἀπε-
 δείχθη οἷς καθήκει εἰς Καστωλοῦ πεδίου ἀθροί-
 ζεσθαι, πρῶτον μὲν ἐπέδειξεν αὐτὸν ὅτι περὶ
 πλείστου ποιοῖτο, εἴ τῳ σπείσαιτο καὶ εἴ τῳ
 συνθοῖτο καὶ εἴ τῳ ὑπόσχοιτό τι, μηδαμῶς²

¹ After τιμωμένους Gem. inserts ἐνίους.

² μηδαμῶς Gem., following Hug: μηδὲν MSS.

court. There one may learn discretion and self-control in full measure, and nothing that is base can be either heard or seen. The boys have before their eyes the spectacle of men honoured by the King and of others dishonoured; they likewise hear of them; and so from earliest boyhood they are learning how to rule and how to submit to rule. Here, then, Cyrus was reputed to be, in the first place, the most modest of his fellows, and even more obedient to his elders than were his inferiors in rank; secondly, the most devoted to horses and the most skilful in managing horses; he was also adjudged the most eager to learn, and the most diligent in practising, military accomplishments, alike the use of the bow and of the javelin. Then, when he was of suitable age, he was the fondest of hunting and, more than that, the fondest of incurring danger in his pursuit of wild animals. On one occasion, when a bear charged upon him, he did not take to flight, but grappled with her and was dragged from his horse; he received some injuries, the scars of which he retained, but in the end he killed the bear; and, furthermore, the man who was the first to come to his assistance he made an object of envy to many.

Again, when he was sent down¹ by his father to be satrap of Lydia, Greater Phrygia, and Cappadocia and was also appointed commander of all the troops whose duty it is to muster in the plain of Castolus, he showed, in the first place, that he counted it of the utmost importance, when he concluded a treaty or compact with anyone or made anyone any promise, under no circumstances to prove false to his

¹ See Introd., p. vii, note 1; also i. 2.

8 ψεύδεσθαι. καὶ γὰρ οὖν ἐπίστευον μὲν αὐτῷ αἱ πόλεις ἐπιτρεπόμεναι, ἐπίστευον δ' οἱ ἄνδρες· καὶ εἴ τις πολέμιος ἐγένετο, σπείσαμένου Κύρου ἐπίστευε μηδὲν ἂν παρὰ τὰς σπονδὰς παθεῖν·
 9 τοιγαροῦν ἐπεὶ Τισσαφέρνει ἐπολέμησε, πᾶσαι αἱ πόλεις ἐκούσαι Κῦρον εἴλοντο ἀντὶ Τισσαφέρ-
 10 τούς φεύγοντας προέσθαι ἐφοβοῦντο αὐτόν. καὶ γὰρ ἔργῳ ἐπεδείκνυτο καὶ ¹ ἔλεγεν ὅτι οὐκ ἂν ποτε προοῖτο, ἐπεὶ ἅπαξ φίλος αὐτοῖς ἐγένετο, οὐδ' εἰ ἔτι μὲν μείους γένοιτο, ἔτι δὲ κάκιον πράξειαν.
 11 Φανερός δ' ἦν καὶ εἴ τις τι ἀγαθὸν ἢ κακὸν ποιήσειεν αὐτόν, νικᾶν πειρώμενος· καὶ εὐχὴν δέ τινες αὐτοῦ ἐξέφερον ὡς εὐχοίτο τοσοῦτον χρόνον ζῆν ἔστε νικῶν καὶ τοὺς εὖ καὶ τοὺς κακῶς
 12 ποιῶντας ἀλεξόμενος. καὶ γὰρ οὖν πλεῖστοι δὴ αὐτῷ ἐνὶ γε ἀνδρὶ τῶν ἐφ' ἡμῶν ἐπεθύμησαν καὶ χρήματα καὶ πόλεις καὶ τὰ ἑαυτῶν σώματα
 13 προέσθαι. οὐ μὲν δὴ οὐδὲ τοῦτ' ἂν τις εἶποι ὡς τοὺς κακούργους καὶ ἀδίκους εἶα καταγελάειν, ἀλλὰ ἀφειδέστατα πάντων ἐτιμωρεῖτο· πολλάκις δ' ἦν ἰδεῖν παρὰ τὰς στειβομένας ὁδοὺς καὶ ποδῶν καὶ χειρῶν καὶ ὀφθαλμῶν στερομένους ἀνθρώπους· ὥστ' ἐν τῇ Κύρου ἀρχῇ ἐγένετο καὶ "Ελληνι καὶ

¹ Before καὶ Gem. inserts δ.

word. It was for this reason, then, that the cities trusted him and put themselves under his protection,¹ and that individuals also trusted him; and if anyone had been an enemy, when Cyrus made a treaty with him he trusted that he would suffer no harm in violation of that treaty. Consequently, when he came to hostilities with Tissaphernes, all the cities of their own accord chose Cyrus rather than Tissaphernes, with the exception of Miletus²; and the reason why the Milesians feared him was, that he would not prove false to the exiles from their city. For he showed repeatedly, by deed as well as by word, that he would never abandon them when once he had come to be their friend, not even if they should become still fewer in number and should meet with still worse misfortune.

It was manifest also that whenever a man conferred any benefit upon Cyrus or did him any harm, he always strove to outdo him; in fact, some people used to report it as a prayer of his that he might live long enough to outdo both those who benefited and those who injured him, returning like for like. Hence it was that he had a greater following than any other one man of our time of friends who eagerly desired to entrust to him both treasure and cities and their very bodies. Yet, on the other hand, none could say that he permitted malefactors and wicked men to laugh at him; on the contrary, he was merciless to the last degree in punishing them, and one might often see along the travelled roads people who had lost feet or hands or eyes; thus in Cyrus' province it became possible for either Greek or barbarian, provided he were guilty of no

¹ See i. 6 *fin.*

² See i. 7 and ii. 2.

- βαρβάρῳ μηδὲν ἀδικοῦντι ἀδεῶς πορεύεσθαι ὅπη
 τις ἤθελεν, ἔχοντι ὃ τι προχωροῖη.
- 14 Τούς γε μέντοι ἀγαθούς εἰς πόλεμον ὠμολόγητο
 διαφερόντως τιμᾶν. καὶ πρῶτον μὲν ἦν αὐτῷ
 πόλεμος πρὸς Πισίδας καὶ Μυσούς· στρατενό-
 μενος οὖν καὶ αὐτὸς εἰς ταύτας τὰς χώρας, ὅς
 ἑώρα ἐθέλοντας κινδυνεύειν, τούτους καὶ ἄρχοντας
 ἐποίει ἧς κατεστρέφετο χώρας, ἔπειτα δὲ καὶ
 15 ἄλλοις δώροις ἐτίμα· ὥστε φαίνεσθαι τοὺς μὲν
 ἀγαθούς εὐδαιμονεστάτους, τοὺς δὲ κακοὺς δού-
 λους τούτων ἀξιοῦσθαι¹ εἶναι. τοιγαροῦν πολλή
 ἦν ἀφθονία αὐτῷ τῶν ἐθελόντων κινδυνεύειν, ὅπου
 16 τις οἶοιτο Κῦρον αἰσθήσεσθαι. εἷς γε μὴν
 δικαιοσύνην εἶ τις φανερὸς γένοιτο ἐπιδείκνυσθαι
 βουλόμενος, περὶ πάντος ἐποιεῖτο τούτους πλου-
 σιωτέρας ζῆν ποιεῖν² τῶν ἐκ τοῦ ἀδίκου φιλοκερ-
 17 δούντων. καὶ γὰρ οὖν ἄλλα τε πολλὰ δικαίως
 αὐτῷ διεχειρίζετο καὶ στρατεύματι ἀληθινῶ
 ἐχρήσατο. καὶ γὰρ στρατηγοὶ καὶ λοχαγοί, οἱ
 χρημάτων ἕνεκα πρὸς ἐκείνον ἐπλευσαν, ἔγνωσαν
 κερδαλεώτερον εἶναι Κῦρῳ καλῶς πειθαρχεῖν³
 18 ἢ τὸ κατὰ μῆνα κέρδος. ἀλλὰ μὴν εἶ γέ τις τι
 αὐτῷ προστάξαντι καλῶς ὑπηρετήσειεν, οὐδενὶ
 πώποτε ἀχάριστον εἶασε τὴν προθυμίαν. ται-
 γαροῦν δὴ κράτιστοι ὑπηρεταὶ πάντος ἔργου
 Κῦρῳ ἐλέχθησαν γενέσθαι.
- 19 Εἰ δέ τινα ὀρώη δεινὸν ὄντα οἰκονόμον ἐκ τοῦ
 δικαίου καὶ κατασκευάζοντά τε ἧς ἄρχοι χώρας

¹ The text is uncertain: Mar. follows, though doubtfully, the MSS. reading ἀξιοῦσθαι: Gem., following Schenkl, has ἀξίως.

² πλουσιωτέρας ζῆν ποιεῖν Gem., following Hug: πλουσιω-
 τέρους ποιεῖν MSS.

wrongdoing, to travel fearlessly wherever he wished, carrying with him whatever it was to his interest to have.

But it was the brave in war, as all agree, whom he honoured especially. For example, he was once at war with the Pisidians and Mysians and commanded in person an expedition into their territories; and whomsoever in his army he found willing to meet dangers, these men he would not only appoint as rulers of the territory he was subduing, but would honour thereafter with other gifts also. Thus the brave were seen to be most prosperous, while cowards were deemed fit to be their slaves. Consequently Cyrus had men in great abundance who were willing to meet danger wherever they thought that he would observe them. As for uprightness, if a man showed that he desired to distinguish himself in that quality, Cyrus considered it all important to enable such an one to live in greater opulence than those who were greedy of unjust gain. Hence he not only had many and various functions performed for him with fidelity, but, in particular, he secured the services of an army worthy of the name. For generals and captains who came overseas to serve him for the sake of money judged that loyal obedience to Cyrus was worth more to them than their mere monthly pay. Again, so surely as a man performed with credit any service that he assigned him, Cyrus never let his zeal go unrewarded. In consequence, he was said to have gained the very best supporters for every undertaking.

Furthermore, whenever he saw that a man was a skilful and just administrator, not only organizing

³ πειθαρχεῖν MSS.: ὑπάρχειν Gem., following Hug.

καὶ προσόδους ποιοῦντα, οὐδένα ἂν πρόποτε ἀφείλετο, ἀλλ' αἰεὶ πλείω προσεδίδου· ὥστε καὶ ἡδέως ἐπόνουν καὶ θαρραλέως ἐκτῶντο καὶ ὁ ἐπέπατο αὐτὸς τις ἤκιστα Κύρον ἔκρυπτεν· οὐ γὰρ φθονῶν τοῖς φανερώς πλουτοῦσιν ἐφαίνετο, ἀλλὰ πειρώμενος χρῆσθαι τοῖς τῶν ἀποκρυπτομένων χρήμασι.

- 20 Φίλους γε μὴν, ὅσους ποιήσαιο καὶ εὖνους γνοίῃ ὄντας καὶ ἱκανοὺς κρινεῖε συνεργοὺς εἶναι ὃ τι τυγχάνοι βουλόμενος κατεργάζεσθαι, ὁμολογεῖται πρὸς πάντων κράτιστος δὴ γενέσθαι θεραπεύειν.
- 21 καὶ γὰρ αὐτὸ τοῦτο οὐπερ αὐτὸς ἔνεκα φίλων ᾤετο δεῖσθαι, ὡς συνεργοὺς ἔχει, καὶ αὐτὸς ἐπειρᾶτο συνεργὸς τοῖς φίλοις κράτιστος εἶναι τουτου
- 22 ὅτου αἰσθάνοιτο ἕκαστον ἐπιθυμοῦντα. δῶρα δὲ πλείστα μὲν οἶμαι εἰς γε ἀνὴρ ἐλάμβανε διὰ πολλά· ταῦτα δὲ πάντων δὴ μάλιστα τοῖς φίλοις
- 23 διεδίδου, πρὸς τοὺς τρόπους ἑκάστου σκοπῶν καὶ ὅτου μάλιστα ὀρώη ἕκαστον δεόμενον. καὶ ὅσα τῷ σώματι αὐτοῦ πέμποι τις ἢ ὡς εἰς πόλεμον ἢ ὡς εἰς καλλωπισμόν, καὶ περὶ τούτων λέγειν αὐτὸν ἔφασαν ὅτι τὸ μὲν ἑαυτοῦ σῶμα οὐκ ἂν δύναίτο τούτοις πᾶσι κοσμηθῆναι, φίλους δὲ καλῶς κεκοσμημένους μέγιστον κόσμον ἀνδρῶν
- 24 νομίζοι. καὶ τὸ μὲν τὰ μεγάλα νικᾶν τοὺς φίλους εὖ ποιοῦντα οὐδὲν θαυμάσιον, ἐπειδὴ γε καὶ δυνατώτερος ἦν· τὸ δὲ τῇ ἐπιμελείᾳ περιεῖναι

well the country over which he ruled, but producing revenues, he would never deprive such a man of territory, but would always give him more besides. The result was that they toiled with pleasure and accumulated with confidence, and, more than that, no one would conceal from Cyrus the store which he had acquired; for it was clear that he did not envy those who were frankly and openly rich, but strove to make use of the possessions of such as tried to conceal their wealth.

As to friends, all agree that he showed himself pre-eminent in his attentions to all the friends that he made and found devoted to him and adjudged to be competent co-workers in whatever he might be wishing to accomplish. For, just as the precise object for which he thought he needed friends himself was that he might have co-workers, so he tried on his own part to be a most vigorous co-worker with his friends to secure that which he found each one of them desired. Again, he received more gifts, I presume, than any other one man, and for many reasons; and surely he of all men distributed gifts most generously among his friends, with an eye to the tastes of each one and to whatever particular need he noted in each case. As for all the gifts which people sent him to wear upon his person, whether intended for war or merely for show, it is reported that he said of them that his own person could not be adorned with all these things, but that in his opinion friends nobly adorned were a man's greatest ornament. To be sure, the fact that he outdid his friends in the greatness of the benefits he conferred is nothing surprising, for the manifest reason that he had greater means than they; but that he surpassed

τῶν φίλων καὶ τῷ προθυμείσθαι χαρίζεσθαι,
 25 ταῦτα ἔμοιγε μᾶλλον δοκεῖ ἀγαστὰ εἶναι. Κύρος
 γὰρ ἔπεμπε βίκους οἴνου ἡμιδεεῖς πολλάκις ὅποτε
 πάνυ ἠδὺν λάβοι, λέγων ὅτι οὐπω δὴ πολλοῦ
 χρόνου τούτου ἠδίου οἴνω ἐπιτύχοι· τούτου οὖν
 σοὶ ἔπεμψε καὶ δεῖταί σου τήμερον τούτου ἐκπιεῖν
 26 σὺν οἷς μάλιστα φιλεῖς. πολλάκις δὲ χῆμας
 ἡμιβρώτους ἔπεμπε καὶ ἄρτων ἡμίσεα καὶ ἄλλα
 τοιαῦτα, ἐπιλέγειν κελεύων τὸν φέροντα· Τούτοις
 ἦσθη Κύρος· βούλεται οὖν καὶ σὲ τούτων γεύ-
 27 σασθαι. ὅπου δὲ χιλὸς σπάνιος πάνυ εἴη, αὐτὸς
 δὲ δύναιτο παρασκευάσασθαι διὰ τὸ πολλοὺς
 ἔχειν ὑπηρέτας καὶ διὰ τὴν ἐπιμέλειαν, δια-
 πέμπων ἐκέλευε τοὺς φίλους τοῖς τὰ ἑαυτῶν
 σώματα ἄγουσιν ἵπποις ἐμβάλλειν τούτου τὸν
 χιλόν, ὡς μὴ πεινῶντες τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ φίλους
 28 ἄγωσιν. εἰ δὲ δὴ ποτε πορεύοιτο καὶ πλείστοι
 μέλλοιεν ὄψεσθαι, προσκαλῶν τοὺς φίλους
 ἐσπουδαιολογεῖτο, ὡς δηλοῖη οὗς τιμᾶ. ὥστε
 ἐγὼ μὲν γε, ἐξ ὧν ἀκούω, οὐδένα κρίνω ὑπὸ
 πλειόνων πεφιλησθαι οὔτε Ἑλλήνων οὔτε βαρ-
 29 βάρων. τεκμήριον δὲ τούτου καὶ τόδε· παρὰ
 μὲν Κύρου δούλου ὄντος οὐδεὶς ἀπῆει πρὸς
 βασιλέα, πλὴν Ὀρόντας ἐπεχείρησε· καὶ οὗτος
 δὴ ὄν ᾤετο πιστόν οἱ εἶναι ταχὺ αὐτὸν ἠῦρε
 Κύρῳ φιλαίτερον ἢ ἑαυτῷ· παρὰ δὲ βασιλέως
 πολλοὶ πρὸς Κύρον ἀπῆλθον, ἐπειδὴ πολέμοιοι

them in solicitude and in eagerness to do favours,
 this in my opinion is more admirable. For example,
 when Cyrus got some particularly good wine, he
 would often send the half-emptied jar to a friend
 with the message: "Cyrus says that he has not
 chanced upon better wine than this for a long time;
 so he sends it to you, and asks you to drink it up to-
 day in company with the friends you love best." So
 he would often send halves of geese and of loaves and
 so forth, instructing the bearer to add the message:
 "Cyrus enjoyed this, and therefore wants you also
 to take a taste of it." And wherever fodder was
 exceedingly scarce and he was able to get it for his
 own use because of the large number of his servants
 and because of his good planning, he would dis-
 tribute this fodder among his friends and tell them to
 give it to the horses that carried their own bodies,
 that they might not be hungry while carrying his
 friends. And whenever he was on the march and
 was likely to be seen by very many people, he would
 call his friends to him and engage them in earnest
 conversation, in order to show whom he honoured.
 Hence, as I at least conclude from what comes to my
 ears, no man, Greek or barbarian, has ever been
 loved by a greater number of people. Here is a fact
 to confirm that conclusion: although Cyrus was a
 slave,¹ no one deserted him to join the King, save
 that Orontas attempted to do so (and he, mark you,
 speedily found out that the man he imagined was
 faithful to him, was more devoted to Cyrus than to
 him); on the other hand, many went over from the
 King to Cyrus after the two had become enemies

¹ A term habitually applied by the Greeks to the subjects of an absolute monarch, especially those of the Persian king.

ἀλλήλοις ἐγένοντο, καὶ οὗτοι μέντοι οἱ μάλιστα
 ὑπ' αὐτοῦ ἀγαπώμενοι,¹ νομίζοντες παρὰ Κύρου
 ὄντες ἀγαθοὶ ἀξιωτέρας ἂν τιμῆς τυγχάνειν ἢ
 30 παρὰ βασιλεῖ. μέγα δὲ τεκμήριον καὶ τὸ ἐν τῇ
 τελευτῇ τοῦ βίου αὐτῷ γενόμενον ὅτι καὶ αὐτὸς
 ἦν ἀγαθὸς καὶ κρίνειν ὀρθῶς ἐδύνατο τοὺς πιστοὺς
 31 καὶ εὖνους καὶ βεβαίους. ἀποθνήσκοντος γὰρ
 αὐτοῦ πάντες οἱ περὶ αὐτὸν φίλοι καὶ συντρα-
 पेζοὶ ἀπέθανον μαχόμενοι ὑπὲρ Κύρου πλὴν
 Ἀριαίου· οὗτος δὲ τεταγμένος ἐτύγγαυεν ἐπὶ τῷ
 εὐωνύμῳ τοῦ ἵππικοῦ ἄρχων· ὡς δ' ἦσθετο Κύρον
 πεπτωκότα, ἔφυγεν ἔχων καὶ τὸ στράτευμα πᾶν
 οὐ ἠγεῖτο.

X. Ἐνταῦθα δὴ Κυροῦ ἀποτέμνεται ἡ κεφαλὴ
 καὶ ἡ χεὶρ ἡ δεξιὰ. βασιλεὺς δὲ διώκων εἰσπίπ-
 τει εἰς τὸ Κύρειον στρατόπεδον· καὶ οἱ μὲν μετὰ
 Ἀριαίου οὐκέτι ἴστανται, ἀλλὰ φεύγουσι διὰ τοῦ
 αὐτῶν στρατοπέδου εἰς τὸν σταθμὸν ἐνθεν ἔωθεν²
 ὠρμώντο· τέτταρες δ' ἐλέγοντο παρασάγγαι εἶναι
 2 τῆς ὁδοῦ. βασιλεὺς δὲ καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ τὰ τε
 ἄλλα πολλὰ διαρπάζουσι καὶ τὴν Φωκαίδα τὴν
 Κύρον παλλακίδα τὴν σοφὴν καὶ καλὴν λεγο-
 3 μένην εἶναι λαμβάνει. ἡ δὲ Μιλησία ἡ νεωτέρα³
 ληφθεῖσα ὑπὸ τῶν ἀμφὶ βασιλέα ἐκφεύγει γυμνὴ
 πρὸς τῶν Ἑλλήνων οἱ ἔτυχον ἐν τοῖς σκευοφόροις
 ὄπλα ἔχοντες καὶ ἀντιταχθέντες πολλοὺς μὲν
 τῶν ἀρπαζόντων ἀπέκτειναν, οἱ δὲ καὶ αὐτῶν
 ἀπέθανον· οὐ μὴν ἔφυγόν γε, ἀλλὰ καὶ ταύτην

¹ ὑπ' αὐτοῦ ἀγαπώμενοι MSS.: ἐαυτοὺς ἀγάμενοι Gem., follow-
 ing Dindorf. ² ἔωθεν inserted by Gem.

³ ἡ νεωτέρα Mar. with the inferior MSS.: the better MSS.
 read ἦν νεωτέρα ἢ, which words, with Μιλησία, Gem. brackets,
 following Lincke.

(these being, moreover, the men who were most highly regarded by the King), because they thought that if they were deserving, they would gain a worthier reward with Cyrus than with the King. Furthermore, what happened to Cyrus at the end of his life is a strong indication that he was a true man himself and that he knew how to judge those who were faithful, devoted, and constant. When he died, namely, all his bodyguard of friends and table companions died fighting in his defence, with the exception of Ariaeus; he, it chanced, was stationed on the left wing at the head of the cavalry, and when he learned that Cyrus had fallen, he took to flight with the whole army that he commanded.

X. Then the head of Cyrus and his right hand were cut off. But the King, pursuing Ariaeus, burst into the camp of Cyrus; and Ariaeus and his men no longer stood their ground, but fled through their own camp to the stopping-place from which they had set out that morning, a distance, it was said, of four parasangs. So the King and his troops proceeded to secure plunder of various sorts in abundance, while in particular he captured the Phocæan woman, Cyrus' concubine, who, by all accounts, was clever and beautiful. The Milesian woman, however, the younger one, after being seized by the King's men made her escape, lightly clad, to some Greeks who had chanced to be standing guard amid the baggage train and, forming themselves in line against the enemy, had killed many of the plunderers, although some of their own number had been killed also; nevertheless, they did not take to flight, but they saved this woman and, furthermore, whatever

ἔσωσαν καὶ τᾶλλα, ὅποσα ἐντὸς αὐτῶν καὶ χρήματα καὶ ἄνθρωποι ἐγένοντο, πάντα ἔσωσαν.

4 Ἐνταῦθα διέσχον ἀλλήλων βασιλεὺς τε καὶ οἱ Ἕλληνες ὡς τριάκοντα στάδια, οἱ μὲν διώκοντες τοὺς καθ' αὐτοὺς ὡς πάντας¹ νικῶντες, οἱ δ' ἀρ-
5 πάζοντες ὡς ἤδη πάντες² νικῶντες. ἐπεὶ δ' ἦσθοντο οἱ μὲν Ἕλληνες ὅτι βασιλεὺς σὺν τῷ στρατεύματι ἐν τοῖς σκευοφόροις εἶη, βασιλεὺς δ' αὖ ἤκουσε Τισσαφέρνους ὅτι οἱ Ἕλληνες νικῶεν τὸ καθ' αὐτοὺς καὶ εἰς τὸ πρόσθεν οἰχονται διώκοντες, ἔνθα δὴ βασιλεὺς μὲν ἀθροίζει τε τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ καὶ συντάπτεται, ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχος ἐβουλεύετο Πρόξενον καλέσας, πλησιαίτατος γὰρ ἦν, εἰ πέμποιεν τινὰς ἢ πάντες ἴοιεν ἐπὶ τὸ στρα-
6 τόπεδον ἀρῆζοντες.³ ἐν τούτῳ καὶ βασιλεὺς δῆλος ἦν προσίων πάλιν, ὡς ἐδόκει, ὄπισθεν. καὶ οἱ μὲν Ἕλληνες στραφέντες παρεσκευάζοντο ὡς ταύτη προσιόντος καὶ δεξόμενοι, ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς ταύτη μὲν οὐκ ἤγεν, ἦ δὲ παρῆλθεν ἔξω τοῦ εὐώ-
νυμου κέρατος ταύτη καὶ ἀπῆγεν, ἀναλαβὼν καὶ τοὺς ἐν τῇ μάχῃ πρὸς⁴ τοὺς Ἕλληνας αὐτομολή-

¹ πάντας MSS. except C₁, Mar.: Gem. brackets ὡς . . . νικῶντες, following Dobree.

² πάντες MSS. except C₁, Mar.: πάντα C₁, Gem.

³ ἢ πάντες ἴοιεν . . . ἀρῆζοντες MSS. except C₁, Mar.: ὡς παντὶ σθένει . . . ἀρῆζοντας Gem., following Hug.

⁴ πρὸς the inferior MSS., Mar.: κατὰ the better MSS., Gem.: Gem., however, following Schenkl, brackets κατὰ . . . Ἕλληνας.

else came within their lines, whether persons or property, they saved all alike.

At this time the King and the Greeks were distant from one another about thirty stadia, the Greeks pursuing the troops in their front, in the belief that they were victorious over all the enemy, the King and his followers plundering, in the belief that they were all victorious already. When, however, the Greeks learned that the King and his forces were in their baggage train, and the King, on the other hand, heard from Tissaphernes that the Greeks were victorious over the division opposite them and had gone on ahead in pursuit, then the King proceeded to gather his troops together and form them in line of battle, and Clearchus called Proxenus (for he was nearest him in the line) and took counsel with him as to whether they should send a detachment or go in full force to the camp, for the purpose of lending aid. Meanwhile the Greeks saw the King advancing again, as it seemed, from their rear, and they accordingly countermarched and made ready to meet his attack in case he should advance in that direction¹; the King, however, did not do so, but returned by the same route he had followed before, when he passed outside of Cyrus' left wing, and in his return picked up not only those who had deserted to the Greeks during the battle,

¹ The Greeks had advanced straight forward from their position on the right wing and the King straight forward from his centre (which was beyond the left wing of Cyrus' entire, i.e. Greek and barbarian, army); hence the two had passed by one another at a considerable distance. The question now was, whether the King on his return march would move obliquely, so as to meet the Greeks, or would follow the same route by which he advanced, thus keeping clear of them again.

σαντας καὶ Τισσαφέρην καὶ τοὺς σὺν αὐτῷ.
 7 ὁ γὰρ Τισσαφέρης ἐν τῇ πρώτῃ συνόδῳ οὐκ
 ἔφυγεν, ἀλλὰ διήλασε παρὰ τὸν ποταμὸν κατὰ
 τοὺς Ἕλληνας πελταστάς· διελαύνων δὲ κατε-
 κανε μὲν οὐδένα, διαστάντες δ' οἱ Ἕλληνες ἔπαιον
 καὶ ἠκόντιζον αὐτούς· Ἐπισθένης δὲ Ἀμφιπο-
 λίτης ἦρχε τῶν πελταστῶν καὶ ἐλέγετο φρόνιμος
 8 γενέσθαι. ὁ δ' οὖν Τισσαφέρης ὡς μείον ἔχων
 ἀπηλλάγη, πάλιν μὲν οὐκ ἀναστρέφει, εἰς δὲ
 τὸ στρατόπεδον ἀφικόμενος τὸ τῶν Ἑλλήνων
 ἐκεῖ συντυγχάνει βασιλεῖ, καὶ ὁμοῦ δὴ πάλιν
 συνταξάμενοι ἐπορεύοντο.
 9 Ἐπεὶ δ' ἦσαν κατὰ τὸ εὐώνυμον τῶν Ἑλλήνων
 κέρας, ἔδεισαν οἱ Ἕλληνες μὴ προσάγοιεν πρὸς
 τὸ κέρας καὶ περιπτύξαντες ἀμφοτέρωθεν αὐτοὺς
 κατακόψειαν· καὶ ἐδόκει αὐτοῖς ἀναπτύσσειν τὸ
 10 κέρας καὶ ποιήσασθαι ὄπισθεν τὸν ποταμὸν. ἐν
 ᾧ δὲ ταῦτα ἐβουλεύοντο, καὶ δὴ βασιλεὺς παρα-
 μειψάμενος εἰς τὸ αὐτὸ σχῆμα κατέστησεν ἀν-
 τίαν τὴν φάλαγγα ὥσπερ τὸ πρῶτον μαχοῦμενος
 συνῆει. ὡς δὲ εἶδον οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐγγύς τε ὄντας
 καὶ παρατεταγμένους, αἰθις παιανίσαντες ἐπῆσαν

¹ See viii. 4-5.

² At this point the fronts of the two armies—which were facing in opposite directions, and, further, each in the direction opposite to that which it took in the first encounter—were in approximately the same straight line. It should be noted that Xenophon means by “the left wing” of the Greeks that which had been the left wing in the original formation, but had now become the right.

but also Tissaphernes and his troops. For Tissaphernes had not taken to flight in the first encounter, but had charged along the river through the Greek peltasts¹; he did not kill anyone in his passage, but the Greeks, after opening a gap for his men, proceeded to deal blows and throw javelins upon them as they went through. The commander of the Greek peltasts was Episthenes of Amphipolis, and it was said that he proved himself a sagacious man. At any rate, after Tissaphernes had thus come off with the worst of it, he did not wheel round again, but went on to the camp of the Greeks and there fell in with the King; so it was that, after forming their lines once more, they were proceeding together.

When they were over against the left wing of the Greeks,² the latter conceived the fear that they might advance against that wing and, by outflanking them on both sides, cut them to pieces; they thought it best, therefore, to draw the wing back and get the river in their rear.³ But while they were taking counsel about this matter, the King had already changed his line of battle to the same form as theirs and brought it into position opposite them, just as when he had met them for battle the first time.⁴ And when the Greeks saw that the enemy were near them and in battle-order, they again struck up the paean and advanced to the attack much more eagerly

³ The Greek line was now, as in the beginning, at right angles to the Euphrates. The movement here described would (if executed) have made it parallel to the river, the latter serving as a defence in the rear.

⁴ Xenophon seems to mean that the King now moved to the right until his flank (like that of the Greeks—see the preceding notes) rested upon the Euphrates. The two armies, therefore, were again squarely facing one another, though with positions relatively reversed (see note 2 above).

- 11 πολὺ προθυμότερον ἢ πρόσθεν. οἱ δ' αὖ βάρ-
 βαροι οὐκ ἐδέχοντο, ἀλλὰ ἐκ πλέονος ἢ τὸ πρό-
 σθεν ἔφευγον· οἱ δ' ἐπεδίωκον μέχρι κώμης τινός·
 12 ἐνταῦθα δ' ἔστησαν οἱ "Ἕλληνες· ὑπὲρ γὰρ τῆς
 κώμης γήλοφος ἦν, ἐφ' οὗ ἀνεστράφησαν οἱ ἀμφὶ
 βασιλέα, πεζοὶ μὲν οὐκέτι, τῶν δὲ ἰππέων ὁ
 λόφος ἐνεπλήσθη, ὥστε τὸ ποιούμενον μὴ γι-
 γνώσκειν. καὶ τὸ βασιλείον σημεῖον ὄραν ἔφασαν
 αἰετόν τινα χρυσοῦν ἐπὶ πέλτῃ ἐπὶ ξύλου¹ ἀνα-
 13 τεταμένον. ἐπεὶ δὲ καὶ ἐνταῦθ' ἐχώρουν οἱ
 "Ἕλληνες, λείπουσι δὴ καὶ τὸν λόφον οἱ ἰππεῖς·
 οὐ μὴν ἔτι ἀθρόοι ἀλλ' ἄλλοι ἄλλοθεν· ἐψιλοῦτο
 δ' ὁ λόφος τῶν ἰππέων· τέλος δὲ καὶ πάντες
 14 ἀπεχώρησαν. ὁ οὖν Κλέαρχος οὐκ ἀνεβίβαζεν
 ἐπὶ τὸν λόφον, ἀλλ' ὑπ' αὐτὸν στήσας τὸ στρα-
 τευμα πέμπει Λύκιον τὸν Συρακόσιον καὶ ἄλλον
 ἐπὶ τὸν λόφον καὶ κελεύει κατιδόντας τὰ ὑπὲρ
 15 τοῦ λόφου τί ἐστὶν ἀπαγγεῖλαι. καὶ ὁ Λύκιος
 ἤλασέ τε καὶ ἰδὼν ἀπαγγέλλει ὅτι φεύγουσιν ἀνὰ
 κράτος. σχεδὸν δ' ὅτε ταῦτα ἦν καὶ ἥλιος ἐδύετο.
 16 Ἐνταῦθα δ' ἔστησαν οἱ "Ἕλληνες καὶ θέμενοι
 τὰ ὄπλα ἀνεπαύοντο· καὶ ἅμα μὲν ἐθαύμαζον ὅτι
 οὐδαμοῦ Κῦρος φαίνοιτο οὐδ' ἄλλος ἀπ' αὐτοῦ
 οὐδεὶς παρῆεν· οὐ γὰρ ᾔδεσαν αὐτὸν τεθνηκότα,
 ἀλλ' εἵκαζον ἢ διώκοντα οἴχεσθαι ἢ καταληψό-
 17 μόνον τι προεληλακέναι· καὶ αὐτοὶ ἐβουλεύοντο
 εἰ αὐτοῦ μείναντες τὰ σκευοφόρα ἐνταῦθα ἄγουντο
 ἢ ἀπίοιεν ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον. ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς
 ἀπίεναί· καὶ ἀφικνοῦνται ἀμφὶ δορπηστὸν ἐπὶ
 18 τὰς σκηνάς. ταύτης μὲν τῆς ἡμέρας τοῦτο τὸ

¹ ἐπὶ ξύλου MSS.: Gem. brackets, following Cobet: Mar. regards as corrupt.

than before; and the barbarians once again failed to await the attack, but took to flight when at a greater distance from the Greeks than they were the first time. The Greeks pursued as far as a certain village, and there they halted; for above the village was a hill, upon which the King and his followers rallied; and they were not now foot-soldiers, but the hill was covered with horsemen, so that the Greeks could not perceive what was going on. They did see, they said, the royal standard, a kind of golden eagle on a shield, raised aloft upon a pole. But when at this point also the Greeks resumed their forward movement, the horsemen at once proceeded to leave the hill; they did not keep together, however, as they went, but scattered in different directions; so the hill became gradually cleared of the horsemen, till at last they were all gone. Clearchus, accordingly, did not lead the army up the hill, but halted at its foot and sent Lycius the Syracusan and another man to the summit, directing them to observe what was beyond the hill and report back to him. And Lycius, after riding up and looking, brought back word that the enemy were in headlong flight. At about this time the sun set.

Then the Greeks halted, grounded arms, and proceeded to rest themselves. At the same time they wondered that Cyrus was nowhere to be seen and that no one else had come to them from him; for they did not know that he was dead, but conjectured that he had either gone off in pursuit or pushed on to occupy some point. So they took counsel for themselves as to whether they should remain where they were and bring the baggage train thither, or return to their camp. The decision was to return, and they reached their tents about supper-time. Such

τέλος ἐγένετο. καταλαμβάνουσι δὲ τῶν τε ἄλλων
 χρημάτων τὰ πλεῖστα διηρπασμένα καὶ εἴ τι
 σιτίον ἢ ποτὸν ἦν, καὶ τὰς ἀμάξας μεστὰς ἀλεύ-
 ρων καὶ οἴνου, ἃς παρεσκευάσατο Κύρος, ἵνα εἴ-
 ποτε σφόδρα τὸ στράτευμα λάβοι ἔνδεια, διαδι-
 δοίη τοῖς Ἕλλησιν—ἦσαν δ' αὐταὶ τετρακόσιοι,
 ὡς ἐλέγοντο, ἀμαξαι—καὶ ταύτας τότε οἱ σὺν
 19 βασιλεῖ διήρπασαν. ὥστε ἄδειπνοι ἦσαν οἱ
 πλεῖστοι τῶν Ἑλλήνων· ἦσαν δὲ καὶ ἀνάριστοι·
 πρὶν γὰρ δὴ καταλύσαι τὸ στράτευμα πρὸς
 ἄριστον βασιλεὺς ἐφάνη. ταύτην μὲν οὖν τὴν
 νύκτα οὕτω διεγένοντο.

was the conclusion of this day. They found most of
 their property pillaged, in particular whatever there
 was to eat or drink, and as for the wagons loaded
 with flour and wine which Cyrus had provided in
 order that, if ever serious need should overtake the
 army, he might have supplies to distribute among
 the Greeks (and there were four hundred of these
 wagons, it was said), these also the King and his
 men had now pillaged. The result was that most of
 the Greeks had no dinner; and they had had no
 breakfast, either, for the King had appeared before
 the time when the army was to halt for breakfast.
 Thus it was, then that they got through this
 night.

BOOK II

B

2 I.¹ Ἄμα δὲ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ συνελθόντες οἱ στρατηγοὶ
 ἐθαύμαζον ὅτι Κῦρος οὔτε ἄλλον πέμπει σημα-
 νοῦντα ὃ τι χρὴ ποιεῖν οὔτε αὐτὸς φαίνοιτο.
 ἔδοξεν οὖν αὐτοῖς συσκευασαμένοις ἃ εἶχον καὶ
 ἐξοπλισαμένοις προΐεναι εἰς τὸ πρόσθεν ἕως Κύρῳ
 3 συμμείξειαν. ἤδη δὲ ἐν ὄρμῃ ὄντων ἅμα ἠλίφ
 ἀνέχοντι ἦλθε Προκλῆς ὁ Τευθρανίας ἄρχων,
 γεγωνὸς ἀπὸ Δαμαράτου τοῦ Λάκωνος, καὶ Γλοῦς
 ὁ Ταμῳ. οὗτοι ἔλεγον ὅτι Κῦρος μὲν τέθνηκεν,
 Ἄριαῖος δὲ πεφευγὼς ἐν τῷ σταθμῷ εἶη μετὰ
 τῶν ἄλλων βαρβάρων ὅθεν τῇ προτεραίᾳ ὠρ-
 μῶντο, καὶ λέγει ὅτι ταύτην μὲν τὴν ἡμέραν
 περιμένοιεν αὐτούς, εἰ μέλλοιεν ἔκειν, τῇ δὲ ἄλλῃ
 4 ἀπιέναι φαίη ἐπὶ Ἰωνίας, ὅθεν περ ἦλθε. ταῦτα

¹ The MSS. here prefix the following summary of the preceding narrative (see translation on opposite page): Ὡς μὲν οὖν ἠθροίσθη Κύρῳ τὸ Ἑλληνικὸν ὅτε ἐπὶ τῶν ἀδελφῶν Ἄρταξέρξην ἐστρατεύετο, καὶ ὅσα ἐν τῇ ἀνάδῳ ἐπράχθη καὶ ὡς ἡ μάχη ἐγένετο καὶ ὡς Κῦρος ἐτελεύτησε καὶ ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον ἐλθόντες οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐκοιμήθησαν οἰόμενοι τὰ πάντα νικᾶν καὶ Κῦρον ζῆν, ἐν τῷ πρόσθεν λόγῳ δεδήλωται. A like introduction is prefixed to each of the following books except the sixth. All these summaries must have been the work of a late editor.

I. ¹ AT daybreak the generals came together, and they wondered that Cyrus neither sent anyone else to tell them what to do nor appeared himself. They resolved, accordingly, to pack up what they had, arm themselves, and push forward until they should join forces with Cyrus. When they were on the point of setting out, and just as the sun was rising, came Procles, the ruler of Teuthrania, a descendant of Damaratus,² the Laconian, and with him Glus, the son of Tamos. They reported that Cyrus was dead, and that Ariaeus had fled and was now, along with the rest of the barbarians, at the stopping-place from which they had set out on the preceding day; further, he sent word that he and his troops were that day waiting for the Greeks, on the chance that they intended to join them, but on the next day, so Ariaeus said, he should set out on the return journey for Ionia, whence he had come. The generals upon

¹ Summary (see opposite page): The preceding narrative has described how a Greek force was collected for Cyrus at the time when he was planning an expedition against his brother Artaxerxes, what events took place during the upward march, how the battle was fought, how Cyrus met his death, and how the Greeks returned to their camp and lay down to rest, supposing that they were victorious at all points and that Cyrus was alive.

² A king of Sparta who was deposed in 491 B.C., fled to Persia, and afterwards accompanied Xerxes in his expedition against Greece. Teuthrania (in western Asia Minor) made part of the territory given him by Xerxes as a reward for this service.

ἀκουσαντες οι στρατηγοὶ καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι Ἕλληνες
 πυνθανόμενοι βαρέως ἔφερον. Κλέαρχος δὲ τὰδε
 εἶπεν. Ἄλλ' ὄφελε μὲν Κύρος ζῆν· ἐπεὶ δὲ
 τετελεύτηκεν, ἀπαγγέλλετε Ἀριαίῳ ὅτι ἡμεῖς
 νικῶμέν τε βασιλέα καί, ὡς ὄρατε, οὐδεὶς ἔτι
 ἡμῖν μάχεται, καὶ εἰ μὴ ὑμεῖς ἦλθετε, ἐπορευόμεθα
 ἂν ἐπὶ βασιλέα. ἐπαγγελλόμεθα δὲ Ἀριαίῳ, ἐὰν
 ἐνθάδε ἔλθῃ, εἰς τὸν θρόνον τὸν βασιλείου καθιεῖν
 αὐτόν· τῶν γὰρ μάχην νικῶντων καὶ τὸ ἄρχειν
 5 ἐστί. ταῦτα εἰπὼν ἀποστέλλει τοὺς ἀγγέλους
 καὶ σὺν αὐτοῖς Χειρίσοφον τὸν Λάκωνα καὶ
 Μένωνα τὸν Θετταλόν· καὶ γὰρ αὐτὸς Μένων
 ἐβούλετο· ἦν γὰρ φίλος καὶ ξένος Ἀριαίου.

6 Οἱ μὲν ᾤχοντο, Κλέαρχος δὲ περιέμενε· τὸ δὲ
 στράτευμα ἐπορίζετο σίτον ὅπως ἐδύνατο ἐκ τῶν
 ὑποζυγίων κόπτοντες τοὺς βοῦς καὶ ὄνους· ξύλοις
 δὲ ἐχρῶντο μικρὸν προΐοντες ἀπὸ τῆς φάλαγγος
 οὗ ἡ μάχη ἐγένετο τοῖς τε οἰστοῖς πολλοῖς οὖσιν,
 οὓς ἠνάγκαζον οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐκβάλλειν τοὺς αὐτο-
 μολούντας παρὰ βασιλέως, καὶ τοῖς γέρροισ καὶ
 ταῖς ἀσπίσι ταῖς ξυλίναις ταῖς Αἴγυπτίαις·
 7 πολλαὶ δὲ καὶ πέλται καὶ ἄμαξαι ἦσαν φέρεσθαι
 ἔρημοι· οἷς πᾶσι χρώμενοι κρέα ἔψοντες ἦσθιον
 ἐκείνην τὴν ἡμέραν.

Καὶ ἤδη τε ἦν ἀμφὶ πλήθουσιν ἀγορὰν καὶ
 ἔρχονται παρὰ βασιλέως καὶ Τισσαφέρνους κή-
 ρυκες οἱ μὲν ἄλλοι βάρβαροι, ἦν δ' αὐτῶν Φαλῖνος
 εἷς Ἕλληνα, ὃς ἐτύγχανε παρὰ Τισσαφέρνει ὦν

hearing this message, and the rest of the Greeks as
 they learned of it, were greatly distressed. Clearchus,
 however, said: "Well, would that Cyrus were alive!
 but since he is dead, carry back word to Ariaeus
 that, for our part, we have defeated the King, that
 we have no enemy left, as you see, to fight with, and
 that if you had not come, we should now be march-
 ing against the King. And we promise Ariaeus that,
 if he will come here, we will set him upon the royal
 throne; for to those who are victorious in battle
 belongs also the right to rule." With these words
 he sent back the messengers, sending with them
 Cheirisophus the Laconian and Menon the Thes-
 salian; for this was Menon's own wish, inasmuch as
 he was an intimate and guest-friend of Ariaeus.

So they went off, and Clearchus awaited their
 return; meanwhile the troops provided themselves
 with food as best they could, by slaughtering
 oxen and asses of the baggage train. As for fuel,
 they went forward a short distance from their line
 to the place where the battle was fought and used
 for that purpose not only the arrows, many in
 number, which the Greeks had compelled all who
 deserted from the King to throw away, but also the
 wicker shields and the wooden Egyptian shields;
 there were likewise many light shields and wagons
 that they could carry off, all of them abandoned.
 These various things, then, they used for fuel, and
 so boiled meat and lived on it for that day.¹

And now it was about full-market time,² and
 heralds arrived from the King and Tissaphernes, all
 of them barbarians except one, a Greek named
 Phalinus, who, as it chanced, was with Tissaphernes

¹ See note on I. v. 6.

² See note on I. viii. 1.

- καὶ ἐντίμως ἔχων· καὶ γὰρ προσεποιεῖτο ἐπιστη-
μων εἶναι τῶν ἀμφὶ τάξεις τε καὶ ὀπλομαχίαν.
8 οὗτοι δὲ προσελθόντες καὶ καλέσαντες τοὺς τῶν
Ἑλλήνων ἄρχοντας λέγουσιν ὅτι βασιλεὺς
κελεύει τοὺς Ἕλληνας, ἐπεὶ νικῶν τυγχάνει καὶ
Κῦρον ἀπέκτονε, παραδόντας τὰ ὄπλα ἴοντας ἐπὶ
βασιλέως θύρας εὐρίσκεισθαι ἂν τι δύνωνται
9 ἀγαθόν. ταῦτα μὲν εἶπον οἱ βασιλέως κήρυκες·
οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες βαρέως μὲν ἤκουσαν, ὁμῶς δὲ
Κλέαρχος τοσοῦτον εἶπεν, ὅτι οὐ τῶν νικῶντων
εἶη τὰ ὄπλα παραδιδόναι· ἀλλ', ἔφη, ὑμεῖς μὲν,
ὦ ἄνδρες στρατηγοί, τούτοις ἀποκρίνασθε ὃ τι
κάλλιστόν τε καὶ ἄριστον ἔχετε· ἐγὼ δὲ αὐτίκα
ἤξω. ἐκάλεσε γὰρ τις αὐτὸν τῶν ὑπηρετῶν, ὅπως
ἴδοι τὰ ἱερὰ ἐξηρημένα· ἔτυχε γὰρ θυόμενος.
10 Ἐνθα δὴ ἀπεκρίνατο Κλεάνωρ ὁ Ἀρκάς, πρεσ-
βύτατος ὢν, ὅτι πρόσθεν ἂν ἀποθάνοιεν ἢ τὰ
ὄπλα παραδοίησαν· Πρόξενος δὲ ὁ Θηβαῖος,
Ἄλλ' ἐγὼ, ἔφη, ὦ Φαλίνε, θαυμίζω πότερα ὡς
κρατῶν βασιλεὺς αἰτεῖ τὰ ὄπλα ἢ ὡς διὰ φιλίαν
δῶρα. εἰ μὲν γὰρ ὡς κρατῶν, τί δεῖ αὐτὸν αἰτεῖν
καὶ οὐ λαβεῖν ἐλθόντα; εἰ δὲ πείσας βούλεται
λαβεῖν, λεγέτω τί ἔσται τοῖς στρατιώταις, ἐὰν
11 αὐτῷ ταῦτα χαρίσωνται. πρὸς ταῦτα Φαλίνοσ
εἶπε· Βασιλεὺς νικᾶν ἠγείται, ἐπεὶ Κῦρον ἀπέ-
κτεινε. τίς γὰρ αὐτῷ ἔστιν ὅστις τῆς ἀρχῆς
ἀντιποιεῖται; νομίζει δὲ καὶ ὑμᾶς ἑαυτοῦ εἶναι,
ἔχων ἐν μέσῃ τῇ ἑαυτοῦ χώρα καὶ ποταμῶν

¹ These words recall the famous answer which Leonidas at Thermopylae made to the same demand: *μολὼν λαβέ*, "Come and take them."

and was held in honour by him; for this Phalinus professed to be an expert in tactics and the handling of heavy infantry. When these heralds came up, they called for the leaders of the Greeks and said that the King, since victory had fallen to him and he had slain Cyrus, directed the Greeks to give up their arms, go to the King's court, and seek for themselves whatever favour they might be able to get. Such was the message of the King's heralds. The Greeks received it with anger, but nevertheless Clearchus said as much as this, that it was not victors who gave up their arms; "However," he continued, "do you, my fellow generals, give these men whatever answer you can that is best and most honourable, and I will return immediately." For one of his servants had summoned him to see the vital organs that had been taken out of a sacrificial victim, for Clearchus chanced to be engaged in sacrificing.

Then Cleanor the Arcadian, being the eldest of the generals, made answer that they would die sooner than give up their arms. And Proxenus the Theban said: "For my part, Phalinus, I wonder whether the King is asking for our arms on the assumption that he is victorious, or simply as gifts, on the assumption that we are his friends. For if he asks for them as victor, why need he ask for them, instead of coming and taking them?¹ But if he desires to get them by persuasion, let him set forth what the soldiers will receive in case they do him this favour." In reply to this Phalinus said: "The King believes that he is victor because he has slain Cyrus. For who is there now who is contending against him for his realm? Further, he believes that you also are his because he has you in the

- ἐντὸς ἀδιαβάτων καὶ πλήθος ἀνθρώπων ἐφ' ὑμᾶς
 δυνάμενος ἀγαγεῖν, ὅσον οὐδ' εἰ παρέχοι ὑμῖν
 δύνασθε ἂν ἀποκτεῖναι. μετὰ τοῦτον Θεόπομπος
- 12 Ἀθηναῖος εἶπεν· ὦ Φαλίνε, νῦν, ὡς σὺ ὀράς,
 ἡμῖν οὐδὲν ἔστιν ἀγαθὸν ἄλλο εἰ μὴ ὄπλα καὶ
 ἀρετὴ. ὄπλα μὲν οὖν ἔχοντες οἴομεθα ἂν καὶ τῇ
 ἀρετῇ χρῆσθαι, παραδόντες δ' ἂν ταῦτα καὶ τῶν
 σωμάτων στερηθῆναι. μὴ οὖν οἴου τὰ μόνα
 ἀγαθὰ ἡμῖν ὄντα ὑμῖν παραδώσειν, ἀλλὰ σὺν
- 13 ταῦτοις καὶ περὶ τῶν ὑμετέρων ἀγαθῶν μαχοῦ-
 μεθα. ἀκούσας δὲ ταῦτα ὁ Φαλίνοσ ἐγέλασε καὶ
 εἶπεν· Ἀλλὰ φιλοσόφῳ μὲν ἔοικας, ὦ νεανίσκε,
 καὶ λέγεις οὐκ ἀχάριστα· ἴσθι μέντοι ἀνόητος ὢν,
 εἰ οἶει τὴν ὑμέτεραν ἀρετὴν περιγενέσθαι ἂν τῆς
- 14 βασιλέως δυνάμεως. ἄλλους δὲ τινὰς ἔφασαν
 λέγειν ὑπομαλακίζομένους ὡς καὶ Κύρῳ πιστοὶ
 ἐγένοντο καὶ βασιλεῖ ἂν πολλοῦ ἄξιοι γένοιτο, εἰ
 βούλοιο φίλος γενέσθαι· καὶ εἴτε ἄλλο τι θέλοι
 χρῆσθαι εἴτ' ἐπ' Αἴγυπτον στρατεύειν, συγκατα-
 στρέψαι τ' ἂν αὐτῷ.
- 15 Ἐν τούτῳ Κλέαρχος ἦκε, καὶ ἠρώτησεν εἰ ἤδη
 ἀποκεκριμένοι εἶεν. Φαλίνοσ δὲ ὑπολαβὼν εἶπεν·
 Οὗτοι μὲν, ὦ Κλέαρχε, ἄλλοσ ἄλλα λέγει· σὺ δ'
- 16 ἡμῖν εἶπέ τί λέγεις. ὁ δ' εἶπεν· Ἐγὼ σε, ὦ
 Φαλίνε, ἄσμενοσ ἑώρακα, οἶμαι δὲ καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι
 πάντεσ· σύ τε γὰρ Ἕλλην εἶ καὶ ἡμεῖσ τοσοῦτοι
 ὄντεσ ὅσοουσ σὺ ὀράσ· ἐν τοιοῦτοισ δὲ ὄντεσ πράγ-

middle of his country, enclosed by impassable rivers, and because he can bring against you a multitude of men so great that you could not slay them even if he were to put them in your hands." Then Theopompus, an Athenian, said: "Phalinus, at this moment, as you see for yourself, we have no other possession save arms and valour. Now if we keep our arms, we imagine that we can make use of our valour also, but if we give them up, that we shall likewise be deprived of our lives. Do not suppose, therefore, that we shall give up to you the only possessions that we have; rather, with these we shall do battle against you for your possessions as well." When he heard this, Phalinus laughed and said: "Why, you talk like a philosopher, young man, and what you say is quite pretty; be sure, however, that you are a fool if you imagine that your valour could prove superior to the King's might." There were some others, so the story goes, who weakened a little, and said that, just as they had proved themselves faithful to Cyrus, so they might prove valuable to the King also if he should wish to become their friend; he might want to employ them for various purposes, perhaps for a campaign against Egypt, which they should be glad to assist him in subduing.

At this time Clearchus returned, and asked whether they had yet given an answer. And Phalinus broke in and said: "These people, Clearchus, all say different things; but tell us what your own opinion is." Clearchus replied: "I myself, Phalinus, was glad to see you, and, I presume, all the rest were, too; for you are a Greek and so are we, whose numbers you can observe for yourself. Now since we are in such a situation, we ask you to

17 *μασι συμβουλευόμεθά σοι τί χρῆ ποιεῖν περὶ ὧν λέγεις. σὺ οὖν πρὸς θεῶν συμβούλευσον ἡμῖν ὅ τι σοι δοκεῖ κάλλιστον καὶ ἄριστον εἶναι, καὶ ὃ σοι τιμὴν οἴσει εἰς τὸν ἔπειτα χρόνον λεγόμενον,¹ ὅτι Φαλίνος ποτε πεμφθεὶς παρὰ βασιλέως κελεύσων τοὺς Ἕλληνας τὰ ὄπλα παραδοῦναι ξυμβουλευομένοις ξυμβούλευσεν αὐτοῖς τάδε. οἴσθα δὲ ὅτι ἀνάγκη λέγεσθαι ἐν τῇ Ἑλλάδι ἅ*
 18 *ἂν ξυμβουλεύσης. ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχος ταῦτα ὑπήγετο βουλόμενος καὶ αὐτὸν τὸν παρὰ βασιλέως πρεσβεύοντα ξυμβουλεύσαι μὴ παραδοῦναι τὰ ὄπλα, ὅπως εὐέλπιδες μᾶλλον εἴεν οἱ Ἕλληνες. Φαλίνος δὲ ὑποστρέψας παρὰ τὴν δόξαν αὐτοῦ*
 19 *εἶπεν. Ἐγώ, εἰ μὲν τῶν μυρίων ἐλπίδων μία τις ὑμῖν ἐστι σωθῆναι πολεμοῦντας βασιλεῖ, συμβουλεύω μὴ παραδιδόναι τὰ ὄπλα· εἰ δέ τοι μηδεμία σωτηρίας ἐστὶν ἐλπίς ἄκοντος βασιλέως,*
 20 *ξυμβουλεύω σφῆζεσθαι ὑμῖν ὅπῃ δυνατὸν. Κλέαρχος δὲ πρὸς ταῦτα εἶπεν. Ἄλλὰ ταῦτα μὲν δὴ σὺ λέγεις· παρ' ἡμῶν δὲ ἀπάγγελλε τάδε, ὅτι ἡμεῖς οἴομεθα, εἰ μὲν δέοι βασιλεῖ φίλους εἶναι, πλείονος ἂν ἄξιοι εἶναι φίλοι ἔχοντες τὰ ὄπλα ἢ παραδόντες ἄλλῳ, εἰ δὲ δέοι πολεμεῖν, ἄμεινον ἂν πολεμεῖν ἔχοντες τὰ ὄπλα ἢ ἄλλῳ παραδόντες.*
 21 *ὁ δὲ Φαλίνος εἶπε. Ταῦτα μὲν δὴ ἀπαγγελοῦμεν· ἀλλὰ καὶ τάδε ὑμῖν εἰπεῖν ἐκέλευσε βασιλεύς, ὅτι μένουσι μὲν ὑμῖν αὐτοῦ σπονδαὶ εἴησαν, προϊοῦσι δὲ καὶ ἀπιοῦσι πόλεμος. εἶπατε οὖν καὶ περὶ τούτου ποτερα μενεῖτε καὶ σπονδαὶ εἰσὶν ἢ ὡς*

¹ λεγόμενον Mar., edd.: ἀναλεγόμενον MSS.: ἀναγγελλόμενον Gem.

advise us as to what we ought to do about the matter you mention. Do you, then, in the sight of the gods, give us whatever advice you think is best and most honourable, advice which will bring you honour in future time when it is reported in this way: 'Once on a time Phalinus, when he was sent by the King to order the Greeks to surrender their arms, gave them, when they sought his counsel, the following advice.' And you know that any advice you may give will certainly be reported in Greece." Now Clearchus was making this crafty suggestion in the hope that the very man who was acting as the King's ambassador might advise them not to give up their arms, and that thus the Greeks might be made more hopeful. But, contrary to his expectation, Phalinus also made a crafty turn, and said: "For my part, if you have one chance in ten thousand of saving yourselves by carrying on war against the King, I advise you not to give up your arms; but if you have no hope of deliverance without the King's consent, I advise you to save yourselves in what way you can." In reply to this Clearchus said: "Well, that is what you say; but as our answer carry back this word, that in our view if we are to be friends of the King, we should be more valuable friends if we keep our arms than if we give them up to someone else, and if we are to wage war with him, we should wage war better if we keep our arms than if we give them up to someone else." And Phalinus said: "That answer, then, we will carry back; but the King bade us tell you this also, that if you remain where you are, you have a truce, if you advance or retire, war. Inform us, therefore, on this point as well: shall you remain

πολέμου ὄντος παρ' ὑμῶν ἀπαγγελῶ.¹ Κλέαρχος
 22 δ' ἔλεξε· Ἀπάγγελλε τόνυ καὶ περὶ τούτου
 ὅτι καὶ ἡμῖν ταῦτά δοκεῖ ἄπερ καὶ βασιλεῖ. Τί
 οὖν ταῦτά ἐστιν; ἔφη ὁ Φαλίνοσ. ἀπεκρίνατο²
 Κλέαρχοσ· Ἦν μὲν μένωμεν, σπονδαί, ἀπιούσι δὲ
 καὶ προῖούσι πόλεμοσ. ὁ δὲ πάλιν ἠρώτησε·
 23 Σπονδάσ ἢ πόλεμον ἀπαγγελῶ; Κλέαρχοσ δὲ
 ταῦτά πάλιν ἀπεκρίνατο· Σπονδαί μὲν μένουσιν,
 ἀπιούσι δὲ ἢ προῖούσι πόλεμοσ. ὅ τι δὲ ποιήσοι
 οὐ διεσήμηνε.

II. Φαλίνοσ μὲν δὴ ᾤχετο καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ.
 οἱ δὲ παρὰ Ἀριαίου ἦκον Προκλήσ καὶ Χειρί-
 σοφοσ. Μένων δὲ αὐτοῦ ἔμενε παρὰ Ἀριαίω·
 οὔτοι δὲ ἔλεγον ὅτι πολλοὺσ φαίη ὁ Ἀριαίοσ εἶναι
 Πέρσασ ἑαυτοῦ βελτίουσ, οὺσ οὐκ ἂν ἀνασχέσθαι
 αὐτοῦ βασιλεύοντοσ· ἀλλ' εἰ βούλεσθε συναπ-
 ιέναι, ἤκειν ἤδη κελεύει τῆσ νυκτόσ. εἰ δὲ μῆ,
 2 αὔριον πρῶ ἀπιέναι φησίν. ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχοσ εἶπεν·
 Ἄλλ' οὕτω χρῆ ποιεῖν· ἐὰν μὲν ἤκωμεν, ὥσπερ
 λέγετε· εἰ δὲ μῆ, πράττετε ὅποῖον ἂν τι ὑμῖν
 οἴησθε μάλιστα συμφέρειν. ὅ τι δὲ ποιήσοι οὐδὲ
 τούτοισ εἶπε.

3 Μετὰ ταῦτα ἤδη ἡλίου δύνοντοσ συγκαλέσασ
 στρατηγοὺσ καὶ λοχαγοὺσ ἔλεξε τοιάδε· Ἐμοί,
 ὦ ἄνδρεσ, θυομένω ἰέναι ἐπὶ βασιλεά οὐκ ἐγίγνετο
 τὰ ἱερά. καὶ εἰκότωσ ἄρα οὐκ ἐγίγνετο· ὡσ γὰρ
 ἐγὼ νῦν πυνθάνομαι, ἐν μέσῳ ἡμῶν καὶ βασιλέωσ
 ὁ Τίγρησ ποταμόσ ἐστί ναυσίποροσ, ὃν οὐκ ἂν

¹ ἀπαγγελῶ MSS., Mar.: ἀπαγγείλω Gem., following Bis-
 schop.

² ἀπεκρίνατο the inferior MSS., Mar.: ἀπεκρίθη ὁ the better
 MSS., Gem.

and is there a truce, or shall I report from you that there is war?" Clearchus replied: "Report, then, on this point that our view is precisely the same as the King's." "What, then, is that?" said Phalinus. Clearchus replied, "If we remain, a truce, if we retire or advance, war." And Phalinus asked again, "Shall I report truce or war?" And Clearchus again made the same reply, "Truce if we remain, if we retire or advance, war." What he meant to do, however, he did not indicate.

II. So Phalinus and his companions departed. But the messengers from Ariaeus arrived—Procles and Cheirisophus only, for Menon stayed behind with Ariaeus; they reported that Ariaeus said there were many Persians of higher rank than himself and they would not tolerate his being king. "But," the messengers continued, "if you wish to make the return journey with him, he bids you come at once, during the night; otherwise, he says he will set out to-morrow morning." And Clearchus said: "Well, let it be this way: if we come, even as you propose; if we do not, follow whatever course you may think most advantageous to yourselves." But what he meant to do, he did not tell them, either.

After this, when the sun was already setting, he called together the generals and captains and spoke as follows: "When I sacrificed, gentlemen, the omens did not result favourably for proceeding against the King. And with good reason, it proves, they were not favourable; for, as I now ascertain, between us and the King is the Tigris, a navigable

δυναίμεθα ἄνευ πλοίων διαβῆναι· πλοῖα δὲ ἡμεῖς οὐκ ἔχομεν. οὐ μὲν δὴ αὐτοῦ γε μένειν οἶόν τε· τὰ γὰρ ἐπιτήδεια οὐκ ἔστιν ἔχειν· ἰέναι δὲ παρὰ τοὺς Κύρου φίλους πάνυ καλὰ ἡμῖν τὰ ἱερά ἦν.

4 ὧδε οὖν χρή ποιεῖν· ἀπιόντας δειπνεῖν ὃ τι τις ἔχει· ἐπειδὴν δὲ σημήνη τῷ κέρατι ὡς ἀναπαύεσθαι, συσκευάζεσθε· ἐπειδὴν δὲ τὸ δεύτερον, ἀνατίθεσθε ἐπὶ τὰ ὑποζύγια· ἐπὶ δὲ τῷ τρίτῳ ἔπεσθε τῷ ἡγουμένῳ, τὰ μὲν ὑποζύγια ἔχοντες

5 πρὸς τοῦ ποταμοῦ, τὰ δὲ ὄπλα ἔξω. ταῦτ' ἀκούσαντες οἱ στρατηγοὶ καὶ λοχαγοὶ ἀπῆλθον

6 καὶ ἐποίουν οὕτω. καὶ τὸ λοιπὸν ὃ μὲν ἦρχεν, οἱ δὲ ἐπέιθοντο, οὐχ ἐλόμενοι, ἀλλὰ ὀρώντες ὅτι μόνος ἐφρόνει οἷα δεῖ τὸν ἄρχοντα, οἱ δ' ἄλλοι ἄπειροι ἦσαν.¹

7 Ἐντεῦθεν ἐπεὶ σκότος ἐγένετο Μιλτοκύθης μὲν ὁ Θραῆξ ἔχων τοὺς τε ἵππείας τοὺς μεθ' ἑαυτοῦ εἰς τετταράκοντα καὶ τῶν πεζῶν Θρακῶν ὡς τριακο-

8 σίους ἠῦτομόλησε πρὸς βασιλέα. Κλέαρχος δὲ τοῖς ἄλλοις ἠγεῖτο κατὰ τὰ παρηγγελμένα, οἱ δ' εἶποντο· καὶ ἀφικνούνται εἰς τὸν πρῶτον σταθμὸν παρ' Ἀριαίου καὶ τὴν ἐκείνου στρατιὰν ἀμφὶ μέσας νύκτας· καὶ ἐν τάξει θέμενοι τὰ ὄπλα ξυνήλθον οἱ στρατηγοὶ καὶ λοχαγοὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων

¹ § 6 in the MSS. is as follows (see translation on opposite page): ἀριθμὸς τῆς ὁδοῦ ἦν ἦλθον ἐξ Ἐφέσου τῆς Ἰωνίας μέχρι τῆς μάχης σταθμοὶ τρεῖς καὶ ἐνεήκοντα, παρασάγγαι πέντε καὶ τριακόνα καὶ πεντακόσιοι, στάδιοι πενήκοντα καὶ ἑξακισχίλιοι καὶ μύριοι· ἀπὸ δὲ τῆς μάχης ἐλέγοντο εἶναι εἰς Βαβυλῶνα στάδιοι ἑξήκοντα καὶ τριακόσιοι. This passage is regarded by edd. generally as an interpolation.

river, which we could not cross without boats—and boats we have none. On the other hand, it is not possible for us to stay where we are, for we cannot get provisions; but the omens were extremely favourable for our going to join the friends of Cyrus. This, then, is what you are to do: go away and dine on whatever you severally have; when the horn gives the signal for going to rest, pack up; when the second signal is given, load your baggage upon the beasts of burden; and at the third signal follow the van, keeping the beasts of burden on the side next to the river and the hoplites outside." Upon hearing these words the generals and captains went away and proceeded to do as Clearchus had directed. And thenceforth he commanded and they obeyed, not that they had chosen him, but because they saw that he alone possessed the wisdom which a commander should have, while the rest were without experience.¹

Afterwards, when darkness had come on, Miltocythes the Thracian, with the horsemen under his command, forty in number, and about three hundred Thracian foot-soldiers, deserted to the King. But Clearchus put himself at the head of the rest of the troops, following out the plan of his previous orders, and they followed; and they reached the first stopping-place,² and there joined Ariaeus and his army, at about midnight. Then, while they halted under arms in line of battle, the generals and

¹ § 6 (see opposite page): The length of the journey they had made from Ephesus, in Ionia, to the battlefield was ninety-three stages, five hundred and thirty-five parasangs, or sixteen thousand and fifty stadia; and the distance from the battlefield to Babylon was said to be three hundred and sixty stadia.

² See i. 3.

- παρ' Ἀριαῖον· καὶ ὤμοσαν οἷ τε "Ἕλληνες καὶ ὁ Ἀριαῖος καὶ τῶν σὺν αὐτῷ οἱ κρᾶτιστοι μήτε προδώσειν ἀλλήλους σύμμαχοί τε ἔσεσθαι· οἱ δὲ Βάρβαροι προσώμοσαν καὶ ἠγγήσεσθαι ἀδόλως.
- 9 ταῦτα δὲ ὤμοσαν, σφάξαντες ταῦρον καὶ κάπρον καὶ κριὸν εἰς ἀσπίδα, οἱ μὲν "Ἕλληνες βάπτουτες
- 10 ξίφος, οἱ δὲ Βάρβαροι λόγχην. ἐπεὶ δὲ τὰ πιστὰ ἐγένετο, εἶπεν ὁ Κλέαρχος· "Ἄγε δὴ, ὦ Ἀριαῖε, ἐπεὶπερ ὁ αὐτὸς ὑμῖν στόλος ἐστὶ καὶ ἡμῖν, εἰπέ τίνα γνώμην ἔχεις περὶ τῆς πορείας, πότερον ἀπιμεν ἢ ὑπερ ἤλθομεν ἢ ἄλλην τιὰ ἐννενοηκέμεν
- 11 δοκεῖς ὁδὸν κρεῖττω. ὁ δὲ εἶπεν· "Ἦν μὲν ἤλθομεν ἀπιόντες παντελῶς ἂν ὑπὸ λιμοῦ ἀπολοίμεθα· ὑπάρχει γὰρ νῦν ἡμῖν οὐδὲν τῶν ἐπιτηδείων. ἐπτακαίδεκα γὰρ σταθμῶν τῶν ἐγγυτάτω οὐδὲ δεῦρο ἴοντες ἐκ τῆς χώρας οὐδὲν εἶχομεν λαμβάνειν· ἐνθα δέ τι ἦν, ἡμεῖς διαπορευόμενοι καταδαπανήσαμεν. νῦν δ' ἐπινοοῦμεν πορεύεσθαι μακροτέραν μὲν, τῶν δ' ἐπιτηδείων οὐκ ἀπορήσομεν. πορευτέον δ' ἡμῖν τοὺς πρώτους σταθμοὺς ὡς ἂν δυνώμεθα μακροτάτους, ἵνα ὡς πλεῖστον ἀποσπάσωμεν τοῦ βασιλικοῦ στρατεύματος· ἦν γὰρ ἅπαξ δύο ἢ τριῶν ἡμερῶν ὁδὸν ἀπόσχωμεν, οὐκέτι μὴ δύνηται βασιλεὺς ἡμᾶς καταλαβεῖν. ὀλίγω μὲν γὰρ στρατεύματι οὐ τολμήσει ἐφέπεσθαι· πολὺν δ' ἔχων στόλον οὐ δυνήσεται ταχέως πορεύεσθαι· ἴσως δὲ καὶ τῶν ἐπιτηδείων σπανιεῖ.
- 13 ταύτην, ἔφη, τὴν γνώμην ἔχω ἔγωγε.
- Ἦν δὲ αὕτη ἡ στρατηγία οὐδὲν ἄλλο δυναμένη

captains had a meeting with Ariaeus; and the two parties—the Greek officers, and Ariaeus together with the highest in rank of his followers—made oath that they would not betray each other and that they would be allies, while the barbarians took an additional pledge to lead the way without treachery. These oaths they sealed by sacrificing a bull, a boar, and a ram over a shield, the Greeks dipping a sword in the blood and the barbarians a lance. After the pledges had been given, Clearchus said: "And now, Ariaeus, since you and we are to make the same journey, tell us what view you hold in regard to the route—shall we return by the same way we came, or do you think you have discovered another way that is better?" Ariaeus replied: "If we should return by the way we came, we should perish utterly from starvation, for we now have no provisions whatever. For even on our way hither we were not able to get anything from the country during the last seventeen stages; and where there was anything, we consumed it entirely on our march through. Now, accordingly, we intend to take a route that is longer, to be sure, but one where we shall not lack provisions. And we must make our first marches as long as we can, in order to separate ourselves as far as possible from the King's army; for if we once get a two or three days' journey away from the King, he will not then be able to overtake us. For he will not dare to pursue us with a small army, and with a large array he will not find it possible to march rapidly; and perhaps, furthermore, he will lack provisions. This," said he, "is the view which I hold, for my part."

This plan of campaign meant nothing else than

- ἢ ἀποδρᾶναι ἢ ἀποφυγεῖν· ἡ δὲ τύχη ἐστρατη-
 γησε κάλλιον. ἐπεὶ γὰρ ἡμέρα ἐγένετο, ἐπορεύοντο
 ἐν δεξιᾷ ἔχοντες τὸν ἥλιον, λογιζόμενοι ἥξειν ἅμα
 ἡλίῳ δύνοντι εἰς κώμας τῆς Βαβυλωνίας χώρας·
 14 καὶ τοῦτο μὲν οὐκ ἐφρεύσθησαν. ἔτι δὲ ἀμφὶ δειλὴν
 ἔδοξαν πολεμίους ὄρᾶν ἰππέας· καὶ τῶν τε Ἑλ-
 λήνων οἱ μὴ ἔτυχον ἐν ταῖς τάξεσιν ὄντες εἰς τὰς
 τάξεις ἔθεον, καὶ Ἀριαῖος, ἐτύγχανε γὰρ ἐφ' ἀμά-
 ξης πορευόμενος διότι ἐτέτρωτο, καταβάς ἐθωρα-
 15 κίζετο καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ. ἐν ᾧ δὲ ὠπλίζοντο ἤκου
 λέγοντες οἱ προπεμφθέντες σκοποὶ ὅτι οὐχ ἰππεῖς
 εἶεν, ἀλλ' ὑποζύγια νέμοιντο. καὶ εὐθύς ἔγνωσαν
 πάντες ὅτι ἐγγύς που ἐστρατοπεδεύετο βασιλεύς·
 καὶ γὰρ καπνὸς ἐφαίνετο ἐν κώμας οὐ πρόσω.
 16 Κλέαρχος δὲ ἐπὶ μὲν τοὺς πολεμίους οὐκ ἦγεν·
 ἦδει γὰρ καὶ ἀπειρηκότας τοὺς στρατιώτας καὶ
 ἀσίτους ὄντας· ἦδη δὲ καὶ ὄψ' ἦν· οὐ μέντοι οὐδὲ
 ἀπέκλινε, φυλαττόμενος μὴ δοκοίη φεύγειν, ἀλλ'
 εὐθύωρον ἄγων ἅμα τῷ ἡλίῳ δυομένῳ εἰς τὰς
 ἐγγυτάτω κώμας τοὺς πρώτους ἔχων κατεσκήνω-
 σεν, ἐξ ὧν διήρπαστο ὑπὸ τοῦ βασιλικοῦ στρα-
 17 τεύματος καὶ αὐτὰ τὰ ἀπὸ τῶν οἰκιῶν ξύλα. οἱ
 μὲν οὖν πρῶτοι ὁμῶς τρόπῳ τινὶ ἐστρατοπεδεύ-
 σαντο, οἱ δὲ ὕστεροι σκοταῖοι προσιόντες ὡς
 ἐτύγχανον ἕκαστοι ἠϋλίζοντο, καὶ κραυγὴν πολλὴν
 ἐποίουν καλοῦντες ἀλλήλους, ὥστε καὶ τοὺς
 πολεμίους ἀκούειν· ὥστε οἱ μὲν ἐγγύτατα τῶν
 πολεμίῳν καὶ ἔφυγον ἐκ τῶν σκηνωμάτων. δῆλον
 18 δὲ τοῦτο τῇ ὕστεραία ἐγένετο· οὔτε γὰρ ὑποζύγιον

effecting an escape, either by stealth or by speed; but fortune planned better. For when day came, they set out on the march, keeping the sun on their right and calculating that at sunset they would reach villages in Babylonia—and in this they were not disappointed. But while it was still afternoon they thought that they saw horsemen of the enemy; and such of the Greeks as chanced not to be in the lines proceeded to run to the lines, while Ariaeus, who was making the journey in a wagon because he was wounded, got down and put on his breastplate, and his attendants followed his example. While they were arming themselves, however, the scouts who had been sent ahead returned with the report that it was not horsemen, but pack animals grazing. Straightway everybody realized that the King was encamping somewhere in the neighbourhood—in fact, smoke was seen in villages not far away.

Clearchus, however, would not advance against the enemy, for he knew that his troops were not only tired out, but without food, and, besides, it was already late; still, he would not turn aside, either, for he was taking care to avoid the appearance of flight, but leading the army straight ahead he encamped with the van at sunset in the nearest villages, from which the King's army had plundered even the very timbers of the houses. The van nevertheless encamped after a fashion, but the men who were further back, coming up in the dark, had to bivouac each as best they could, and they made a great uproar with calling one another, so that the enemy also heard it; the result was that the nearest of the enemy actually took to flight from their quarters. This became clear on the

ἔτ' οὐδὲν ἐφάνη οὔτε στρατόπεδον οὔτε καπνὸς οὐδαμοῦ πλησίον. ἐξεπλάγη δέ, ὡς ἔοικε, καὶ βασιλεὺς τῇ ἐφόδῳ τοῦ στρατεύματος. ἐδήλωσε
 19 δὲ τοῦτο οἷς τῇ ὑστεραία ἔπραττε. προϊούσης μέντοι τῆς νυκτὸς ταύτης καὶ τοῖς Ἕλλησι φόβος ἐμπίπτει, καὶ θόρυβος καὶ δοῦπος ἦν οἷον εἰκὸς
 20 φόβου ἐμπεσόντος γίνεσθαι. Κλέαρχος δὲ Τολμίδην Ἡλείου, ὃν ἐτύγχανεν ἔχων παρ' ἑαυτῷ κήρυκα ἄριστον τῶν τότε, ἀνείπειν ἐκέλευσε σιγὴν κηρύξαντα ὅτι προαγορεύουσιν οἱ ἄρχοντες, ὃς ἂν τὸν ἀφέντα τὸν ὄνον εἰς τὰ ὄπλα μηνύσῃ, ὅτι λήψεται
 21 μισθὸν τάλαντον. ἐπεὶ δὲ ταῦτα ἐκηρύχθη, ἔγνωσαν οἱ στρατιῶται ὅτι κενὸς ὁ φόβος εἶη καὶ οἱ ἄρχοντες σώοι. ἅμα δὲ ὄρθρῳ παρήγγειλεν ὁ Κλέαρχος εἰς τάξιν τὰ ὄπλα τίθεσθαι τοὺς Ἕλληνας ἠπερ εἶχον ὅτε ἦν ἡ μάχη.

III. Ὁ δὲ δὴ ἔγραψα ὅτι βασιλεὺς ἐξεπλάγη τῇ ἐφόδῳ, τῷδε δήλῳ ἦν. τῇ μὲν γὰρ πρόσθεν ἡμέρᾳ πέμπων τὰ ὄπλα παραδιδόναι ἐκέλευε, τότε δὲ ἅμα ἠλίῳ ἀνατέλλοντι κήρυκας ἔπεμψε περὶ
 2 σπονδῶν. οἱ δ' ἐπεὶ ἦλθον πρὸς τοὺς προφύλακας, ἐζήτησαν τοὺς ἄρχοντας. ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἀπήγγελλον οἱ προφύλακες, Κλέαρχος τυχὼν τότε τὰς τάξεις ἐπισκοπῶν εἶπεν τοῖς προφύλαξι κελεύειν τοὺς
 3 κήρυκας περιμένειν ἄχρι ἂν σχολάσῃ. ἐπεὶ δὲ κατέστησε τὸ στρατεύμα ὡς καλῶς ἔχειν¹ ὀρᾶσθαι πάντῃ φάλαγγα πυκνὴν, ἐκτὸς τῶν ὄπλων² δὲ μηδένα καταφανῆ εἶναι, ἐκάλεσε τοὺς ἀγγέλους,

¹ καλῶς ἔχειν MSS.: Gem. brackets, following Cobet.

² ἐκτὸς τῶν ὄπλων Gem., following Hug: ἐκ τῶν ὄπλων the better MSS.: τῶν ἀόπλων the inferior MSS.

following day, for not a pack animal was any more to be seen nor camp nor smoke anywhere near. Even the King, so it seems, was terrified by the approach of the army. He made this evident by what he did the next day. However, as the night went on a panic fell upon the Greeks also, and there was confusion and din of the sort that may be expected when panic has seized an army. Clearchus, however, directed Tolmides the Elean, who chanced to be with him as herald and was the best herald of his time, to make this proclamation, after he had ordered silence: "The commanders give public notice that whoever informs on the man who let the ass loose among the arms shall receive a reward of a talent of silver." When this proclamation had been made, the soldiers realized that their fears were groundless and their commanders safe. And at dawn Clearchus ordered the Greeks to get under arms in line of battle just as they were when the battle took place.

III. The fact which I just stated, that the King was terrified by the approach of the Greeks, was made clear by the following circumstance: although on the day before he had sent and ordered them to give up their arms, he now, at sunrise, sent heralds to negotiate a truce. When these heralds reached the outposts, they asked for the commanders. And when the outposts reported, Clearchus, who chanced at the time to be inspecting the ranks, told the outposts to direct the heralds to wait till he should be at leisure. Then after he had arranged the army so that it should present a fine appearance from every side as a compact phalanx, with no one to be seen outside the lines of the hoplites, he summoned

καὶ αὐτός τε προήλθε τούς τε εὐοπλοτάτους ἔχων
καὶ εὐειδεστάτους τῶν αὐτοῦ στρατιωτῶν καὶ τοῖς
4 ἄλλοις στρατηγοῖς ταῦτα ἔφρασεν. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦν
πρὸς τοῖς ἀγγέλοις, ἀνηρώτα τί βούλονται. οἱ δ'
ἔλεγον ὅτι περὶ σπονδῶν ἤκοιεν ἄνδρες οἵτινες
ἱκανοὶ ἔσονται τά τε παρὰ βασιλέως τοῖς Ἑλλη-
5 σιν ἀπαγγεῖλαι καὶ τὰ παρὰ τῶν Ἑλλήνων
βασιλεῖ. ὁ δὲ ἀπεκρίνατο· Ἀπαγγέλλετε τοίνυν
αὐτῷ ὅτι μάχης δεῖ πρῶτον· ἄριστον γὰρ οὐκ
ἔστιν οὐδ' ὁ τολμήσων περὶ σπονδῶν λέγειν τοῖς
6 Ἑλλησι μὴ πορίσας ἄριστον. ταῦτα ἀκούσαντες
οἱ ἄγγελοι ἀπήλυνον, καὶ ἤκουον ταχύ· ᾧ καὶ
δῆλον ἦν ὅτι ἐγγύς που βασιλεὺς ἦν ἢ ἄλλος τις
ᾧ ἐπετέτακτο ταῦτα πράττειν· ἔλεγον δὲ ὅτι
εἰκότα δοκοῖεν λέγειν βασιλεῖ, καὶ ἤκοιεν ἡγε-
7 μόνους ἔχοντες οἱ αὐτούς, ἐὰν σπονδαὶ γένωνται,
ἄξουσιν ἔνθεν ἔξουσι τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. ὁ δὲ ἡρώτα
εἰ αὐτοῖς τοῖς ἀνδράσι σπένδοιτο τοῖς ἰούσι καὶ
ἀπιούσιν, ἢ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις ἔσονται σπονδαί. οἱ
δέ, Ἄπασιν, ἔφασαν, μέχρι ἂν βασιλεῖ τὰ παρ'
8 ὑμῶν διαγγεληθῇ. ἐπεὶ δὲ ταῦτα εἶπον, μεταστη-
σάμενος αὐτοὺς ὁ Κλέαρχος ἐβουλεύετο· καὶ
ἐδόκει τὰς σπονδὰς ποιεῖσθαι ταχὺ καὶ καθ' ἡσυ-
9 χίαν ἐλθεῖν τε ἐπὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια καὶ λαβεῖν. ὁ δὲ
Κλέαρχος εἶπε· Δοκεῖ μὲν κάμοι ταῦτα· οὐ μέντοι
ταχὺ γε ἀπαγγελω, ἀλλὰ διατρίψω ἔστ' ἂν
ὀκνήσωσιν οἱ ἄγγελοι μὴ ἀποδόξῃ ἡμῖν τὰς σπον-

the messengers; and he himself came forward with the best armed and best looking of his own troops and told the other generals to do likewise. Once face to face with the messengers, he inquired what they wanted. They replied that they had come to negotiate for a truce, and were empowered to report the King's proposals to the Greeks and the Greeks' proposals to the King. And Clearchus answered: "Report to him, then, that we must have a battle first; for we have had no breakfast, and there is no man alive who will dare to talk to Greeks about a truce unless he provides them with a breakfast." Upon hearing these words the messengers rode away, but were speedily back again, which made it evident that the King, or someone else who had been charged with carrying on these negotiations, was somewhere near. They stated that what the Greeks said seemed to the King reasonable, and that they had now brought guides with them who would lead the Greeks, in case a truce should be concluded, to a place where they could get provisions. Thereupon Clearchus asked whether he was making a truce merely with the men who were coming and going, or whether the truce would bind the others also. "Every man of them," they replied, "until your message is carried to the King." When they had said this, Clearchus had them retire and took counsel about the matter; and it was thought best to conclude the truce speedily, so that they could go and get the provisions without being molested. And Clearchus said: "I, too, agree with this view; nevertheless, I shall not so report at once, but I shall delay until the messengers get fearful of our deciding not to conclude the truce;

δὰς ποιήσασθαι· οἰμαί γε μέντοι, ἔφη, καὶ τοῖς ἡμετέροις στρατιώταις τὸν αὐτὸν φόβον παρέσεσθαι. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐδόκει καιρὸς εἶναι, ἀπήγγελλεν ὅτι σπένδοιτο, καὶ εὐθὺς ἠγείσθαι ἐκέλευε πρὸς τὰπιτήδεια.

- 10 Καὶ οἱ μὲν ἠγούντο, Κλέαρχος μέντοι ἐπορεύετο τὰς μὲν σπονδὰς ποιησάμενος, τὸ δὲ στράτευμα ἔχων ἐν τάξει, καὶ αὐτὸς ὠπισθοφυλάκει. καὶ ἐνετύγχανον τάφροις καὶ αὐλῶσιν ὕδατος πλήρεσιν, ὡς μὴ δύνασθαι διαβαίνειν ἄνευ γεφυρῶν· ἀλλ' ἐποιοῦντο διαβάσεις ἐκ τῶν φοινίκων οἷ
- 11 ἦσαν¹ ἐκπεπτωκότες, τοὺς δὲ καὶ ἐξέκοπτον. καὶ ἐνταῦθα ἦν Κλέαρχον καταμαθεῖν ὡς ἐπεστάται, ἐν μὲν τῇ ἀριστερᾷ χειρὶ τὸ δόρυ ἔχων, ἐν δὲ τῇ δεξιᾷ βακτηρίαν· καὶ εἴ τις αὐτῷ δοκοίη τῶν πρὸς τοῦτο τεταγμένων βλακεύειν, ἐκλεγόμενος τὸν ἐπιτήδειον ἔπαισεν ἄν, καὶ ἅμα αὐτὸς προσελάμβανεν εἰς τὸν πηλὸν ἐμβαίνων· ὥστε πᾶσιν
- 12 αἰσχύνῃν εἶναι μὴ οὐ συσπουδάξουσιν. καὶ ἐτάχθησαν πρὸς αὐτὸ οἱ εἰς τριάκοντα ἔτη γεγονότες· ἐπεὶ δὲ Κλέαρχον ἐώρων σπουδάζοντα, προσε-
- 13 λάμβανον καὶ οἱ πρεσβύτεροι. πολὺ δὲ μᾶλλον ὁ Κλέαρχος ἔσπευδεν, ὑποπτεύων μὴ αἰεὶ οὕτω πλήρεις εἶναι τὰς τάφρους ὕδατος· οὐ γὰρ ἦν ὥρα οἷα τὸ πεδίου ἄρδειν· ἀλλ' ἵνα ἤδη πολλὰ προφαίνοντο τοῖς Ἕλλησι δεινὰ εἰς τὴν πορείαν, τούτου ἕνεκα βασιλέα ὑπόπτευεν ἐπὶ τὸ πεδίου τὸ ὕδωρ ἀφεικέναι.

¹ ἦσαν MSS.: ἠέρισκοντο Gem.

to be sure," he said, "I suppose that our own soldiers will also feel the same fear." When, accordingly, it seemed that the proper time had come, he reported that he accepted the truce, and directed them to lead the way immediately to the provisions.

They proceeded, then, to lead the way, but Clearchus, although he had made the truce, kept his army in line of battle on the march, and commanded the rearguard himself. And they kept coming upon trenches and canals, full of water, which could not be crossed without bridges. They made bridges of a kind, however, out of the palm trees which had fallen and others which they cut down themselves. And here one could well observe how Clearchus commanded; he had his spear in his left hand and in his right a stick, and whenever he thought that anyone of the men assigned to this task was shirking, he would pick out the right man and deal him a blow, while at the same time he would get into the mud and lend a hand himself; the result was that everyone was ashamed not to match him in energy. The men detailed to the work were all those up to thirty years of age, but the older men also took hold when they saw Clearchus in such energetic haste. Now Clearchus was in a far greater hurry because he suspected that the trenches were not always full of water in this way, for it was not a proper time to be irrigating the plain; his suspicion was, then, that the King had let the water into the plain just in order that the Greeks might have before their eyes at the very start many things to make them fearful about their journey.

- 14 Πορευόμενοι δὲ ἀφίκοντο εἰς κώμας ὅθεν ἀπέδειξαν οἱ ἡγεμόνες λαμβάνειν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. ἐνῆν δὲ σίτος πολὺς καὶ οἶνος φοινίκων καὶ ὄξος
- 15 ἐψητὸν ἀπὸ τῶν αὐτῶν. αὐταὶ δὲ αἱ βάλανοι τῶν φοινίκων οἷας μὲν ἐν τοῖς Ἑλλησιν ἔστιν ἰδεῖν τοῖς οἰκέταις ἀπέκειντο, αἱ δὲ τοῖς δεσπόταις ἀποκείμεναι ἦσαν ἀπόλεκτοι, θαυμάσιαι τοῦ κάλλους καὶ μεγέθους, ἡ δὲ ὄψις ἠλέκτρον οὐδὲν διέφερον· τὰς δὲ τινὰς ξηραίνοντες τραγήματα ἀπετίθεσαν. καὶ ἦν καὶ παρὰ πότον ἡδὺ μὲν,
- 16 κεφαλαλγὲς δέ. ἐνταῦθα καὶ τὸν ἐγκέφαλον τοῦ φοίνικος πρῶτον ἔφαγον οἱ στρατιῶται, καὶ οἱ πολλοὶ ἐθαύμασαν τό τε εἶδος καὶ τὴν ιδιότητα τῆς ἡδονῆς. ἦν δὲ σφόδρα καὶ τοῦτο κεφαλαλγὲς. ὁ δὲ φοῖνιξ ὅθεν ἐξαιρεθείη ὁ ἐγκέφαλος ὅλος ἠυαίεντο.
- 17 Ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν ἡμέρας τρεῖς· καὶ παρὰ μεγάλου βασιλέως ἦκε Τισσαφέρνης καὶ ὁ τῆς βασιλέως γυναικὸς ἀδελφὸς καὶ ἄλλοι Πέρσαι τρεῖς· δούλοι δὲ πολλοὶ εἶποντο. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀπήντησαν αὐτοῖς οἱ τῶν Ἑλλήνων στρατηγοί, ἔλεγε
- 18 πρῶτος Τισσαφέρνης δι' ἐρμηνέως τοιαύδε. Ἐγώ, ὦ ἄνδρες Ἕλληνες, γείτων οἰκῶ τῇ Ἑλλάδι, καὶ ἐπεὶ ὑμᾶς εἶδον εἰς πολλὰ καὶ ἀμήχανα πεπτωκότας, εὕρημα ἐποισάμην εἴ πως δυναίμην παρὰ βασιλέως αἰτήσασθαι δοῦναι ἐμοὶ ἀποσῶσαι ὑμᾶς εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα. οἶμαι γὰρ ἂν οὐκ ἀχαρίστως μοι ἔχειν οὔτε πρὸς ὑμῶν οὔτε πρὸς τῆς
- 19 πάσης Ἑλλάδος. ταῦτα δὲ γνοὺς ἠτούμην

The march at length brought them to villages where the guides directed them to get provisions. In these villages was grain in abundance and palm wine and a sour drink made from the same by boiling. As for the dates themselves of the palm, the sort that one can see in Greece were set apart for the servants, while those laid away for the masters were selected ones, remarkable for their beauty and size and with a colour altogether resembling that of amber; others, again, they would dry and store away for sweetmeats. These made a pleasant morsel also at a symposium, but were apt to cause headache. Here also the soldiers ate for the first time the crown of the palm, and most of them were surprised not alone at its appearance, but at the peculiar nature of its flavour. This, too, however, was exceedingly apt to cause headache. And when the crown was removed from a palm, the whole tree would wither.

In these villages they remained three days; and there came to them, as messengers from the Great King, Tissaphernes and the brother of the King's wife and three other Persians; and many slaves followed in their train. When the Greek generals met them, Tissaphernes, through an interpreter, began the speaking with the following words: "Men of Greece, in my own home I am a neighbour of yours, and when I saw you plunged into many difficulties, I thought it would be a piece of good fortune if I could in any way gain permission from the King to take you back safe to Greece. For I fancy I should not go without thanks, both from you and from all Greece. After reaching this conclusion

- βασιλέα, λέγων αὐτῷ ὅτι δικαίως ἂν μοι χαρίζοιτο, ὅτι αὐτῷ Κῦρόν τε ἐπιστρατεύοντα πρῶτος ἠγγεῖλα καὶ βοήθειαν ἔχων ἅμα τῇ ἀγγελίᾳ ἀφικόμεν, καὶ μόνος τῶν κατὰ τοὺς Ἑλληνας τεταγμένων οὐκ ἔφυγον, ἀλλὰ διήλασα καὶ συνέμειξα βασιλεῖ ἐν τῷ ὑμετέρῳ στρατοπέδῳ ἔνθα βασιλεὺς ἀφίκετο, ἐπεὶ Κῦρον ἀπέκτεινε καὶ τοὺς ξὺν Κύρῳ βαρβάρους ἐδίωξε σὺν τοῖσδε τοῖς παροῦσιν ὑν μετ' ἐμοῦ, οἵπερ αὐτῷ εἰσι πιστότατοι.
- 20 καὶ περὶ μὲν τούτων ὑπέσχετό μοι βουλευσέσθαι ἐρέσθαι δέ με ὑμᾶς ἐκέλευεν ἐλθόντα τίνος ἕνεκεν ἐστρατεύσατε ἐπ' αὐτόν. καὶ συμβουλεύω ὑμῖν μετρίως ἀποκρίνασθαι, ἵνα μοι εὐπρακτότερον ἢ ἂν τι δύνωμαι ἀγαθὸν ὑμῖν παρ' αὐτοῦ διαπράξασθαι.
- 21 Πρὸς ταῦτα μεταστάντες οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐβουλεύοντο· καὶ ἀπεκρίναντο, Κλέαρχος δ' ἔλεγεν· Ἡμεῖς οὔτε συνήλθομεν ὡς βασιλεῖ πολεμήσοντες οὔτε ἐπορευόμεθα ἐπὶ βασιλέα, ἀλλὰ πολλὰς προφάσεις Κῦρος ἠύρισκεν, ὡς καὶ σὺ εὖ οἶσθα, ἵνα ὑμᾶς τε ἀπαρασκευάστους λάβοι καὶ ἡμᾶς ἐνθάδε
- 22 ἀγάγοι. ἐπεὶ μέντοι ἤδη αὐτὸν ἐωρῶμεν ἐν δεινῷ ὄντα, ἠσχύνθημεν καὶ θεοὺς καὶ ἀνθρώπους προδοῦναι αὐτόν, ἐν τῷ πρόσθεν χρόνῳ παρέχοντες ἡμᾶς αὐτοὺς εὖ ποιεῖν. ἐπεὶ δὲ Κῦρος τέθνηκεν, οὔτε βασιλεῖ ἀντιποιούμεθα τῆς ἀρχῆς οὔτ' ἔστιν ὅτου ἕνεκα βουλοίμεθα ἂν τὴν βασιλείως χῶραν κακῶς ποιεῖν οὐδ' αὐτὸν ἀποκτεῖναι ἂν

I presented my request to the King, saying to him that it would be fair for him to do me a favour, because I was the first to report to him that Cyrus was marching against him, because along with my report I brought him aid also, and because I was the only man among those posted opposite the Greeks who did not take to flight, but, on the contrary, I charged through and joined forces with the King in your camp, where the King had arrived after slaying Cyrus and pursuing the barbarians of Cyrus' army with the help of these men now present with me, men who are most faithful to the King. And he promised me that he would consider this request of mine, but, meanwhile, he bade me come and ask you for what reason you took the field against him. Now I advise you to answer with moderation, that so it may be easier for me to obtain for you at his hands whatever good thing I may be able to obtain."

Hereupon the Greeks withdrew and proceeded to take counsel; then they gave their answer, Clearchus acting as spokesman: "We neither gathered together with the intention of making war upon the King nor were we marching against the King, but Cyrus kept finding many pretexts, as you also are well aware, in order that he might take you unprepared and bring us hither. When, however, the time came when we saw that he was in danger, we felt ashamed in the sight of gods and men to desert him, seeing that in former days we had been putting ourselves in the way of being benefited by him. But since Cyrus is dead, we are neither contending with the King for his realm nor is there any reason why we should desire to do harm to the King's territory or wish to slay the King himself, but rather

- ἐθέλομεν, πορευοίμεθα δ' ἂν οἴκαδε, εἴ τις ἡμᾶς
 μὴ λυποίῃ· ἀδικοῦντα μέντοι πειρασόμεθα σὺν
 τοῖς θεοῖς ἀμύνασθαι· ἐὰν μέντοι τις ἡμᾶς καὶ εὖ
 ποιῶν ὑπάρχη, καὶ τούτου εἰς γε δύναμιν οὐχ
 24 ἠττησόμεθα εὖ ποιοῦντες. ὁ μὲν οὕτως εἶπεν·
 ἀκούσας δὲ ὁ Τισσαφέρνης ταῦτα, ἔφη, ἐγὼ
 ἀπαγγελῶ βασιλεῖ καὶ ὑμῖν πάλιν τὰ παρ'
 ἐκείνου· μέχρι δ' ἂν ἐγὼ ἤκω αἰ σπονδαὶ μενόντων·
 ἀγορὰν δὲ ἡμεῖς παρέξομεν.
- 25 Καὶ εἰς μὲν τὴν ὑστεραίαν οὐχ ἦκεν· ὥσθ' οἱ
 Ἕλληνες ἐφρόντιζον· τῇ δὲ τρίτῃ ἡκων ἔλεγεν
 ὅτι διαπεπραγμένος ἦκει παρὰ βασιλέως δοθῆναι
 αὐτῷ σῶξιν τοὺς Ἕλληνας, καίπερ πολλῶν
 ἀντιλεγόντων ὡς οὐκ ἄξιον εἶη βασιλεῖ ἀφεῖναι
 26 τοὺς ἐφ' ἑαυτὸν στρατευσαμένους. τέλος δὲ εἶπε·
 Καὶ νῦν ἔξεστιν ὑμῖν πιστὰ λαβεῖν παρ' ἡμῶν ἢ
 μὴν φιλίαν παρέξειν ὑμῖν τὴν χώραν καὶ ἀδόλως
 ἀπάξειν εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα ἀγορὰν παρέχοντας·
 ὅπου δ' ἂν μὴ ᾖ πρίασθαι, λαμβάνειν ὑμᾶς ἐκ τῆς
 27 χώρας εἰσόμεν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. ὑμᾶς δὲ αὖ ἡμῖν
 δεήσει ὁμόσαι ἢ μὴν πορεύσεσθαι ὡς διὰ φιλίας
 ἀσινῶς σῦτα καὶ ποτὰ λαμβάνοντας ὁπόταν μὴ
 ἀγορὰν παρέχωμεν· ἣν δὲ παρέχωμεν ἀγορὰν,
 28 ὄνουμένους ἔξειν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. ταῦτα ἔδοξε, καὶ
 ὤμοσαν καὶ δεξιὰς ἔδοσαν Τισσαφέρνης καὶ ὁ τῆς
 βασιλέως γυναικὸς ἀδελφὸς τοῖς τῶν Ἑλλήνων
 στρατηγοῖς καὶ λοχαγοῖς καὶ ἔλαβον παρὰ τῶν

we should return to our homes, if no one should molest us. If, however, anyone seeks to injure us, we shall try with the help of the gods to retaliate. On the other hand, if anyone is kind enough to do us a service, we shall not, so far as we have the power, be outdone in doing a service to him." So he spoke, and upon hearing his words Tissaphernes said: "This message I shall carry to the King, and bring back his to you; and until I return, let the truce continue, and we will provide a market.¹"

The next day he did not return, and the Greeks, consequently, were anxious; but on the third day he came and said that he had secured permission from the King to save the Greeks, although many opposed the plan, urging that it was not fitting for the King to allow those who had undertaken a campaign against him to escape. In conclusion he said: "And now you may receive pledges from us that in very truth the territory you pass through shall be friendly and that we will lead you back to Greece without treachery, providing you with a market; and wherever it is impossible to buy provisions, we will allow you to take them from the country. And you, on your side, will have to swear to us that in very truth you will proceed as you would through a friendly country, doing no damage and taking food and drink from the country only when we do not provide a market, but that, if we do provide a market, you will obtain provisions by purchase." This was resolved upon, and Tissaphernes and the brother of the King's wife made oath and gave their right hands in pledge to the generals and captains of the Greeks, receiving the same also from the Greeks.

¹ See note on I. ii. 18.

29 Ἑλλήνων. μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα Τισσαφέρνης εἶπε·
 Νῦν μὲν δὴ ἄπειμι ὡς βασιλέα· ἐπειδὴν δὲ δια-
 πράξωμαι ἂ δέομαι, ἤξω συσκευασάμενος ὡς
 ἀπάξων ὑμᾶς εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα καὶ αὐτὸς ἀπὼν
 ἐπὶ τὴν ἐμαυτοῦ ἀρχήν.

IV. Μετὰ ταῦτα περιέμενον Τισσαφέρην οἱ
 τε Ἕλληνες καὶ ὁ Ἀριαῖος ἐγγὺς ἀλλήλων
 ἐστρατοπεδευμένοι ἡμέρας πλείους ἢ εἴκοσιν. ἐν
 δὲ ταύταις ἀφικνοῦνται πρὸς Ἀριαῖον καὶ οἱ
 ἀδελφοὶ καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι ἀναγκαῖοι καὶ πρὸς τοὺς
 σὺν ἐκείνῳ Περσῶν τινες, παρεθάρρυνόν¹ τε καὶ
 δεξιὰς ἐνίοις παρὰ βασιλέως ἔφερον μὴ μνη-
 σικακήσειν βασιλέα αὐτοῖς τῆς σὺν Κύρῳ ἐπι-
 στρατείας μηδὲ ἄλλου μηδενὸς τῶν παροιχομένων.
 2 τούτων δὲ γιγνομένων ἔνδηλοι ἦσαν οἱ περὶ
 Ἀριαῖον ἦττον προσέχοντες τοῖς Ἕλλησι τὸν
 νοῦν· ὥστε καὶ διὰ τοῦτο τοῖς μὲν πολλοῖς τῶν
 Ἑλλήνων οὐκ ἤρεσκον, ἀλλὰ προσιόντες τῷ
 3 Κλεάρχῳ ἔλεγον καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις στρατηγοῖς· Τί
 μένομεν; ἢ οὐκ ἐπιστάμεθα ὅτι βασιλεὺς ἡμᾶς
 ἀπολέσαι ἂν περὶ παντὸς ποιήσαιο, ἵνα καὶ τοῖς
 ἄλλοις Ἕλλησι φόβος εἴη ἐπὶ βασιλέα μέγαν
 στρατεύειν; καὶ νῦν μὲν ἡμᾶς ὑπάγεται μένειν
 διὰ τὸ διεσπάρθαι αὐτοῦ τὸ στράτευμα· ἐπὶ δὲ
 πάλιν ἀλισθῆ αὐτῷ ἢ στρατιᾷ, οὐκ ἔστιν ὅπως
 4 οὐκ ἐπιθήσεται ἡμῖν. ἴσως δέ που ἢ ἀποσκά-
 πτει τι ἢ ἀποτεριχίξει, ὡς ἄπορος ἢ ἡ ὁδός.
 οὐ γάρ ποτε ἐκὼν γε βουλήσεται ἡμᾶς ἐλθόν-
 τας εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα ἀπαγγεῖλαι ὡς ἡμεῖς
 τοσοῦδε ὄντες ἐνικῶμεν τὸν βασιλέα ἐπὶ ταῖς
 θύραις αὐτοῦ καὶ καταγελάσαντες ἀπήλθομεν.

¹ Before παρεθάρρυνον Mar., following Rehdantz, inserts οἱ.

After this Tissaphernes said: "Now I am going back to the King; but when I have accomplished what I desire, I shall return, fully equipped to conduct you back to Greece and to go home myself to my own province."

IV. After this the Greeks and Ariaeus, encamped close by one another, waited for Tissaphernes more than twenty days. During this time Ariaeus' brothers and other relatives came to him and certain Persians came to his followers, and they kept encouraging them and bringing pledges to some of them from the King that the King would bear them no ill-will because of their campaign with Cyrus against him or because of anything else in the past. While these things were going on, it was evident that Ariaeus and his followers paid less regard to the Greeks; this, accordingly, was another reason why the greater part of the Greeks were not pleased with them, and they would go to Clearchus and the other generals and say: "Why are we lingering? Do we not understand that the King would like above everything else to destroy us, in order that the rest of the Greeks also may be afraid to march against the Great King? For the moment he is scheming to keep us here because his army is scattered, but when he has collected his forces again, there is no question but that he will attack us. Or perhaps he is digging a trench or building a wall somewhere to cut us off and make our road impassable. For never, if he can help it, will he choose to let us go back to Greece and report that we, few as we are, were victorious over the King at his very gates, and then laughed in his face and came home again." To those

- 5 Κλέαρχος δὲ ἀπεκρίνατο τοῖς ταῦτα λέγουσιν· Ἐγὼ ἐνθυμοῦμαι μὲν καὶ ταῦτα πάντα ἐννοῶ δ' ὅτι εἰ νῦν ἄπιμεν, δόξομεν ἐπὶ πολέμῳ ἀπιέναι καὶ παρὰ τὰς σπονδὰς ποιεῖν. ἔπειτα πρῶτον μὲν ἀγορὰν οὐδεὶς παρέξει ἡμῖν οὐδὲ ὄθεν ἐπισιτιούμεθα· αὐθις δὲ ὁ ἡγησόμενος οὐδεὶς ἔσται· καὶ ἅμα ταῦτα ποιούντων ἡμῶν εὐθύς Ἀριαῖος ἀφεστήξει.¹ ὥστε φίλος ἡμῖν οὐδεὶς λελείψεται, ἀλλὰ καὶ οἱ πρόσθεν ὄντες πολέμιοι ἡμῖν ἔσονται. ποταμὸς δ' εἰ μὲν τις καὶ ἄλλος ἄρα ἡμῖν ἔστι διαβατέος οὐκ οἶδα· τὸν δ' οὖν Εὐφράτην οἶδαμεν² ὅτι ἀδύνατον διαβῆναι κωλύοντων πολεμίων. οὐ μὲν δὴ ἂν μάχεσθαί γε δέη, ἵππεῖς εἰσιν ἡμῖν ξύμμαχοι, τῶν δὲ πολεμίων ἵππεῖς εἰσι πλείστοι³ καὶ πλείστου ἄξιοι· ὥστε νικῶντες μὲν τίνα ἂν ἀποκτείναιμεν; ἡττωμένων δὲ οὐδένα οἶόν τε σωθῆναι. ἐγὼ μὲν οὖν βασιλέα, φ' οὕτω πολλά ἐστὶ τὰ σύμμαχα, εἶπερ προθυμεῖται ἡμᾶς ἀπολέσαι, οὐκ οἶδα ὅ τι δεῖ αὐτὸν ὀμόσαι καὶ δεξιὰν δοῦναι καὶ θεοὺς ἐπιορκῆσαι καὶ τὰ ἑαυτοῦ πιστὰ ἄπιστα ποιῆσαι Ἑλλησὶ τε καὶ βαρβάροις. τοιαῦτα πολλὰ ἔλεγεν.
- 8 Ἐν δὲ τούτῳ ἦκε Τισσαφέρνης ἔχων τὴν ἑαυτοῦ δύναμιν ὡς εἰς οἶκον ἀπιὼν καὶ Ὀρόντας τὴν ἑαυτοῦ δύναμιν· ἦγε δὲ καὶ τὴν θυγατέρα τὴν βασιλέως ἐπὶ γάμφ. ἐντεῦθεν δὲ ἤδη Τισσα-

¹ ἀφεστήξει the inferior MSS., Mar.: the better MSS. have ἀποσταλή, which Gem. adopts, inserting ἂν after ἅμα, with Rehdantz.

² οἶδαμεν the better MSS., Gem.: ἴσμεν the inferior MSS., Mar.

³ Before πλείστοι the MSS. have οἱ: Gem. brackets, following Carnuth.

who talked in this way Clearchus replied: "I too have in mind all these things; but, I reflect that if we go away now, it will seem that we are going away with hostile intent and are acting in violation of the truce. And then, in the first place, no one will provide us a market or a place from which we can get provisions; secondly, we shall have no one to guide us; again, the moment we take this course Ariaeus will instantly desert us; consequently we shall have not a friend left, for even those who were friends before will be our enemies. Then remember the rivers—there may be others, for aught I know, that we must cross, but we know about the Euphrates at any rate, that it cannot possibly be crossed in the face of an enemy. Furthermore, in case fighting becomes necessary, we have no cavalry to help us, whereas the enemy's cavalry are exceedingly numerous and exceedingly efficient; hence if we are victorious, whom could we kill¹? And if we are defeated, not one of us can be saved. For my part, therefore, I cannot see why the King, who has so many advantages on his side, should need, in case he is really eager to destroy us, to make oath and give pledge and forswear himself by the gods and make his good faith unfaithful in the eyes of Greeks and barbarians." Such arguments Clearchus would present in abundance.

Meanwhile Tissaphernes returned with his own forces as if intending to go back home, and likewise Orontas² with his forces; the latter was also taking home the King's daughter as his wife. Then they

¹ Hoplites, because of their heavy equipment, were ineffective in a pursuit, especially when an enemy fled, as in "the battle" of i. viii., long before they were within striking distance. Horsemen, of course, were at their best in following up a routed enemy. ² Satrap of Armenia

φέρνους ἡγουμένου καὶ ἀγορὰν παρέχοντος ἐπο-
 ρεύοντο· ἐπορεύετο δὲ καὶ Ἀριαῖος τὸ Κύρου
 βαρβαρικὸν ἔχων στρατεύμα ἅμα Τισσαφέρνει
 καὶ Ὀρόντα καὶ ξυνεστρατοπεδεύετο σὺν ἐκείνοις.
 10 οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες ὑφορῶντες τούτους αὐτοὶ ἐφ'
 ἑαυτῶν ἐχώρου ἡγεμόνας ἔχοντες. ἐστρατο-
 πεδεύοντο δὲ ἐκάστοτε ἀπέχοντες ἀλλήλων
 παρασάγγην καὶ πλείον· ἐφυλάττοντο δὲ ἀμφό-
 τεροι ὥσπερ πολεμίους ἀλλήλους, καὶ εὐθὺς
 11 τοῦτο ὑποψίαν παρεῖχεν. ἐνίοτε δὲ καὶ ξυλιζό-
 μενοι ἐκ τοῦ αὐτοῦ καὶ χόρτον καὶ ἄλλα τοιαῦτα
 12 ξυλλέγοντες πληγὰς ἐνέτεινον ἀλλήλοις· ὥστε
 καὶ τοῦτο ἔχθραν παρεῖχε.

Διελθόντες δὲ τρεῖς σταθμοὺς ἀφίκοντο πρὸς
 τὸ Μηδίας καλούμενον τεῖχος, καὶ παρήλθον εἰσω¹
 αὐτοῦ. ἦν δὲ ὠκοδομημένον πλίνθοις ὀπταῖς ἐν
 ἀσφάλτῳ κειμέναις, εὖρος εἴκοσι ποδῶν, ὕψος δὲ
 ἑκατόν· μῆκος δ' ἐλέγετο εἶναι εἴκοσι παρα-
 13 σάγγαι· ἀπέχει δὲ Βαβυλῶνος οὐ πολὺ. ἐντεῦθεν
 δ' ἐπορεύθησαν σταθμοὺς δύο παρασάγγας ὀκτώ·
 καὶ διέβησαν διώρυχας δύο, τὴν μὲν ἐπὶ γεφύρας,
 τὴν δὲ ἐξενυγμένην πλοίοις ἐπτὰ· αὗται δ' ἦσαν
 ἀπὸ τοῦ Τίγρητος ποταμοῦ· κατετέμνητο δὲ ἐξ
 αὐτῶν καὶ τάφροι ἐπὶ τὴν χώραν, αἱ μὲν πρῶται
 μεγάλαι, ἔπειτα δὲ ἐλάττους· τέλος δὲ καὶ μικροὶ
 ὀχετοί, ὥσπερ ἐν τῇ Ἑλλάδι ἐπὶ τὰς μελίνας.

Καὶ ἀφικνοῦνται ἐπὶ τὸν Τίγρητα ποταμόν·
 πρὸς ᾧ πόλις ἦν μεγάλη καὶ πολυάνθρωπος ἢ
 ὄνομα Σιττάκη, ἀπέχουσα τοῦ ποταμοῦ σταδίου
 14 πεντεκαίδεκα. οἱ μὲν οὖν Ἕλληνες παρ' αὐτὴν

¹ εἰσω MSS.: Gem. brackets, following Rendantz.

finally began the march, Tissaphernes taking the
 lead and providing a market; and Ariaeus with Cyrus'
 barbarian army kept with Tissaphernes and Orontas
 on the march and encamped with them. The Greeks,
 however, viewing them all with suspicion, proceeded
 by themselves, with their own guides. And the two
 parties encamped in every case a parasang or more
 from one another, and kept guard each against the
 other, as though against enemies—a fact which at
 once occasioned suspicion. Sometimes, moreover,
 when Greeks and barbarians were getting firewood
 from the same place or collecting fodder or other
 such things, they would come to blows with one
 another, and this also occasioned ill-will.

After travelling three stages they reached the so-
 called wall of Media,¹ and passed within it. It was
 built of baked bricks, laid in asphalt, and was twenty
 feet wide and a hundred feet high; its length was
 said to be twenty parasangs, and it is not far distant
 from Babylon. From there they proceeded two
 stages, eight parasangs, crossing on their way two
 canals, one by a stationary bridge and the other by
 a bridge made of seven boats. These canals issued
 from the Tigris river, and from them, again, ditches
 had been cut that ran into the country, at first large,
 then smaller, and finally little channels, such as run
 to the millet fields in Greece.

Then they reached the Tigris river, near which
 was a large and populous city named Sittace, fifteen
 stadia from the river. The Greeks accordingly

¹ See note on I. vii. 15. The Greeks had twice already,
 once on the advance and again on the retreat, crossed the
 original line of this wall. Now, turning to the eastward
 (see the map), they reach it at a point where it is still
 standing, and pass "within it," i.e. to the south-eastern, or
 Babylonian, side of it.

ἐσκήνησαν ἐγγὺς παραδείσου μεγάλου καὶ καλοῦ
 καὶ δασέος παντοίων δένδρων, οἱ δὲ βάρβαροι
 διαβεβηκότες τὸν Τίγρητα· οὐ μέντοι καταφανεῖς
 15 ἦσαν. μετὰ δὲ τὸ δεῖπνον ἔτυχον ἐν περιπάτῳ
 ὄντες πρὸ τῶν ὄπλων Πρόξενος καὶ Ξενοφῶν· καὶ
 προσελθὼν ἄνθρωπός τις ἠρώτησε τοὺς προφύ-
 λακας ποῦ ἂν ἴδοι Πρόξενον ἢ Κλέαρχον· Μέ-
 νωνα δὲ οὐκ ἐζήτηι, καὶ ταῦτα παρ' Ἀριαίου ὧν
 16 τοῦ Μένωνος ξένου. ἐπεὶ δὲ Πρόξενος εἶπεν ὅτι
 αὐτός εἰμι ὃν ζητεῖς, εἶπεν ὁ ἄνθρωπος τάδε.
 Ἐπεμψέ με Ἀριαῖος καὶ Ἀρτάοζος, πιστοὶ ὄντες
 Κύρῳ καὶ ὑμῖν εὔνοι, καὶ κελεύουσι φυλάττεσθαι
 μὴ ὑμῖν ἐπιθῶνται τῆς νυκτός οἱ βάρβαροι· ἔστι
 δὲ στράτευμα πολὺ ἐν τῷ πλησίον παραδείσῳ.
 17 καὶ παρὰ τὴν γέφυραν τοῦ Τίγρητος ποταμοῦ
 πέμψαι κελεύουσι φυλακὴν, ὡς διανοεῖται αὐτὴν
 λύσαι Τισσαφέρνης τῆς νυκτός, εἰὰν δύνηται, ὡς
 μὴ διαβῆτε ἀλλ' ἐν μέσῳ ἀποληφθῆτε τοῦ ποτα-
 18 μοῦ καὶ τῆς διώρυχος. ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα ἄγουσιν
 αὐτὸν παρὰ τὸν Κλέαρχον καὶ φράζουσιν ἃ λέγει.
 ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχος ἀκούσας ἐταράχθη σφόδρα καὶ
 ἐφοβεῖτο.
 19 Νεανίσκος δέ τις τῶν παρόντων ἐννοήσας εἶπεν
 ὡς οὐκ ἀκόλουθα εἶη τὸ ἐπιθήσεσθαι καὶ τὸ
 λύσειν τὴν γέφυραν. δῆλον γὰρ ὅτι ἐπιθεμένους
 ἢ νικᾶν δεήσει ἢ ἠττᾶσθαι. εἰὰν μὲν οὖν νικῶσι,
 τί δεῖ λύειν αὐτοὺς τὴν γέφυραν; οὐδὲ γὰρ ἂν
 20 ἡμεῖς σωθῶμεν. εἰὰν δὲ ἡμεῖς νικῶμεν, λελυμένης

encamped beside this city, near a large and beautiful
 park, thickly covered with all sorts of trees, while the
 barbarians had crossed the Tigris before encamping,
 and were not within sight of the Greeks. After the
 evening meal Proxenus and Xenophon chanced to be
 walking in front of the place where the arms were
 stacked, when a man came up and asked the out-
 posts where he could see Proxenus or Clearchus—he
 did not ask for Menon, despite the fact that he
 came from Ariaeus, Menon's friend. And when
 Proxenus said "I am the one you are looking for,"
 the man made this statement: "I was sent here by
 Ariaeus and Artaozus, who were faithful to Cyrus
 and are friendly to you; they bid you be on your
 guard lest the barbarians attack you during the
 night, for there is a large army in the neighbouring
 park. They also bid you send a guard to the bridge
 over the Tigris river, because Tissaphernes intends
 to destroy it during the night, if he can, so that you
 may not cross, but may be cut off between the river
 and the canal." Upon hearing these words they
 took him to Clearchus and repeated his message.
 And when Clearchus heard it, he was exceedingly
 agitated and full of fear.

A young man who was present, however, fell to
 thinking, and then said that the two stories, that
 they intended to attack and intended to destroy the
 bridge, were not consistent. "For it is clear," he
 went on, "that if they attack, they must either be
 victorious or be defeated. Now if they are victorious,
 why should they need to destroy the bridge? For even
 if there were many bridges, we should have no place
 to which we could flee and save ourselves. But if it
 is we who are victorious, with the bridge destroyed

τῆς γεφύρας οὐχ ἔξουσιν ἐκεῖνοι ὅποι φύγωσιν· οὐδὲ μὴν βοηθήσαι πολλῶν ὄντων πέραν οὐδεὶς αὐτοῖς δυνήσεται λελυμένης τῆς γεφύρας.

- 21 Ἀκούσας δὲ ὁ Κλέαρχος ταῦτα ἤρreto τὸν ἄγγελον πῶς τις εἶη χώρα ἢ ἐν μέσῳ τοῦ Τίγρητος καὶ τῆς διώρυχος. ὁ δὲ εἶπεν ὅτι πολλὰ καὶ κῶμαι ἔνεισι καὶ πόλεις πολλαὶ καὶ μεγάλαι.
- 22 τότε δὴ καὶ ἐγνώσθη ὅτι οἱ Βάρβαροι τὸν ἄνθρωπον ὑποπέμφαιεν, ὀκνοῦντες μὴ οἱ Ἕλληνας διελόντες τὴν γέφυραν μείναιεν ἐν τῇ νήσῳ ἐρύματα ἔχοντες ἔνθεν μὲν τὸν Τίγρητα, ἔνθεν δὲ τὴν διώρυχα· τὰ δ' ἐπιτήδεια ἔχοιεν ἐκ τῆς ἐν μέσῳ χώρας πολλῆς καὶ ἀγαθῆς οὔσης καὶ τῶν ἐργασομένων ἐόντων· εἶτα δὲ καὶ ἀποστροφή γένοιτο εἰ τις βούλοιο βασιλέα κακῶς ποιεῖν.
- 23 Μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα ἀνεπαύοντο· ἐπὶ μέντοι τὴν γέφυραν ὅμως φυλακὴν ἔπεμψαν· καὶ οὔτε ἐπέθετο οὐδεὶς οὐδαμῶθεν οὔτε πρὸς τὴν γέφυραν οὐδεὶς ἦλθε τῶν πολεμίων, ὡς οἱ φυλάττοντες
- 24 ἀπήγγελλον· ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἕως ἐγένετο, διέβαινον τὴν γέφυραν ἐξευγμένην πλοίοις τριάκοντα καὶ ἑπτὰ ὡς οἶόν τε μάλιστα πεφυλαγμένως· ἐξήγγελλον γάρ τινες τῶν παρὰ Τισσαφέρους Ἑλλήνων ὡς διαβαιόντων μέλλοιεν ἐπιθήσασθαι· ἀλλὰ ταῦτα μὲν ψευδῆ ἦν· διαβαιόντων μέντοι ὁ Γλοῦς ἐπεφάνη μετ' ἄλλων σκοπῶν εἰ διαβαίνοιεν τὸν ποταμόν· ἐπειδὴ δὲ εἶδεν, ὄχρητο ἀπελαύνων.
- 25 Ἀπὸ δὲ τοῦ Τίγρητος ἐπορεύθησαν σταθμοὺς

they will have no place to which they can flee. And, furthermore, though there are troops in abundance on the other side, no one will be able to come to their aid with the bridge destroyed."

After hearing these words Clearchus asked the messenger about how extensive the territory between the Tigris and the canal was. He replied that it was a large tract, and that there were villages and many large towns in it. Then it was perceived that the barbarians had sent the man with a false message out of fear that the Greeks might destroy the bridge and establish themselves permanently on the island, with the Tigris for a defence on one side and the canal on the other; in that case, they thought, the Greeks might get provisions from the territory between the river and the canal, since it was extensive and fertile and there were men in it to cultivate it; and furthermore, the spot might also become a place of refuge for anyone who might desire to do harm to the King.

After this the Greeks went to rest, yet they did, nevertheless, send a guard to the bridge; and no one attacked the army from any quarter, nor did anyone of the enemy, so the men on guard reported, come to the bridge. When dawn came, they proceeded to cross the bridge, which was made of thirty-seven boats, as guardedly as possible; for they had reports from some of the Greeks who were with Tissaphernes that the enemy would attack them while they were crossing. But these reports were false. To be sure, in the course of their passage Glus did appear, with some others, watching to see if they were crossing the river, but once he had seen, he went riding off.

From the Tigris they marched four stages, twenty

τέτταρας παρασάγγας εἴκοσιν ἐπὶ τὸν Φύσκειον ποταμόν, τὸ εὖρος πλέθρον· ἐπὴν δὲ γέφυρα. καὶ ἐνταῦθα ὠκεῖτο πόλις μεγάλη ὄνομα Ὀπις· πρὸς ἣν ἀπήντησε τοῖς Ἑλλησιν ὁ Κύρου καὶ Ἀρταξέρξου νόθος ἀδελφὸς ἀπὸ Σούσων καὶ Ἐκβατάνων στρατιὰν πολλὴν ἄγων ὡς βοηθήσων βασιλεῖ· καὶ ἐπιστήσας τὸ ἑαυτοῦ στρατεύμα παρερχο-
 26 μένους τοὺς Ἑλληνας ἐθεώρει. ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχος ἠγείτο μὲν εἰς δύο, ἐπορεύετο δὲ ἄλλοτε καὶ ἄλλοτε ἐφιστάμενος· ὅσον δὲ χρόνον τὸ ἠγούμενον τοῦ στρατεύματος ἐπιστήσειε, τοσοῦτον ἦν ἀνάγκη χρόνον δι' ὅλου τοῦ στρατεύματος γίγνεσθαι τὴν ἐπίστασιν· ὥστε τὸ στρατεύμα καὶ
 27 τὸν Πέρσην ἐκπεπλήχθαι θεωροῦντα. ἐτεῦθεν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν διὰ τῆς Μηδίας σταθμοὺς ἐρήμους ἕξ παρασάγγας τριάκοντα εἰς τὰς Παρυσάτιδος κώμας τῆς Κύρου καὶ βασιλέως μητρός. ταύτας Τισσαφέρνης Κύρω ἐπεγγελῶν διαρπάσαι τοῖς Ἑλλησιν ἐπέτρεψε πλὴν ἀνδραπόδων. ἐνὴν δὲ σίτος πολὺς καὶ πρόβατα καὶ ἄλλα χρήματα.
 28 ἐντεῦθεν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν σταθμοὺς ἐρήμους τέτταρας παρασάγγας εἴκοσι τὸν Τίγρητα ποταμόν ἐν ἀριστερᾷ ἔχοντες. ἐν δὲ τῷ πρώτῳ σταθμῷ πέραν τοῦ ποταμοῦ πόλις ὠκεῖτο μεγάλη καὶ εὐδαίμων ὄνομα Καιναί, ἐξ ἧς οἱ βάρβαροι διήγον ἐπὶ σχεδίαις διφθερίναις ἄρτους, τυρούς, οἶνον.

V. Μετὰ ταῦτα ἀφικνοῦνται ἐπὶ τὸν Ζαπάταν ποταμόν, τὸ εὖρος τεττάρων πλέθρων. καὶ ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν ἡμέρας τρεῖς· ἐν δὲ ταύταις ὑποψίαι μὲν ἦσαν, φανερὰ δὲ οὐδεμία ἐφαίνετο ἐπιβουλή.

parasangs, to the Physcus river, which was a plethrum in width and had a bridge over it. There was situated a large city named Opis, near which the Greeks met the bastard brother of Cyrus and Artaxerxes, who was leading a large army from Susa and Ecbatana to the support, as he said, of the King; and he halted his own army and watched the Greeks as they passed by. Clearchus led them two abreast, and halted now and then in his march; and whatever the length of time for which he halted the van of the army, just so long a time the halt would necessarily last through the entire army; the result was that even to the Greeks themselves their army seemed to be very large, and the Persian was astounded as he watched them. From there they marched through Media, six desert stages, thirty parasangs, to the villages of Parysatis,¹ the mother of Cyrus and the King. And Tissaphernes, by way of insulting Cyrus,² gave over these villages—save only the slaves they contained—to the Greeks to plunder. In them there was grain in abundance and cattle and other property. From there they marched four desert stages, twenty parasangs, keeping the Tigris river on the left. Across the river on the first stage was situated a large and prosperous city named Caenae, from which the barbarians brought over loaves, cheeses and wine, crossing upon rafts made of skins.

V. After this they reached the Zapatas river, which was four plethra in width. There they remained three days. During this time suspicions were rife, it is true, but no plot came openly to light.

¹ *cp.* I. iv. 9.

² *i.e.* through the mother who “loved him better than her reigning son Artaxerxes” (I. i. 4).

- 2 ἔδοξεν οὖν τῷ Κλεάρχῳ ξυγγενέσθαι τῷ Τισσαφέρνηι καὶ εἰ πως δύναίτο παῦσαι τὰς ὑποψίας πρὶν ἐξ αὐτῶν πόλεμον γενέσθαι· καὶ ἔπεμψέ τινα ἐροῦντα ὅτι ξυγγενέσθαι αὐτῷ χρήξει. ὁ δὲ ἐτοίμως ἐκέλευεν ἔκειν.
- 3 Ἐπειδὴ δὲ ξυνῆλθον, λέγει ὁ Κλεάρχος τάδε. Ἐγὼ, ὦ Τισσαφέρνη, οἶδα μὲν ἡμῖν ὄρκους γεγενημένους καὶ δεξιὰς δεδομένας μὴ ἀδικήσειν ἀλλήλους· φυλαττόμενον δὲ σέ τε ὁρῶ ὡς πολεμίους ἡμᾶς καὶ ἡμεῖς ὁρῶντες ταῦτα ἀντιφυλαττό-
- 4 μεθα. ἐπεὶ δὲ σκοπῶν οὐ δύναμαι οὔτε σὲ αἰσθῆσθαι πειρώμενον ἡμᾶς κακῶς ποιεῖν ἐγὼ τε σαφῶς οἶδα ὅτι ἡμεῖς γε οὐδὲ ἐπινοοῦμεν τοιοῦτον. οὐδέν, ἔδοξέ μοι εἰς λόγους σοι ἐλθεῖν, ὅπως εἰ δυναίμεθα ἐξέλκοιμεν ἀλλήλων τὴν ἀπιστίαν.
- 5 καὶ γὰρ οἶδα ἀνθρώπους ἤδη τοὺς μὲν ἐκ διαβολῆς τοὺς δὲ καὶ ἐξ ὑποψίας ὅτι¹ φοβηθέντες ἀλλήλους φθάσαι βουλόμενοι πρὶν παθεῖν ἐποίησαν ἀνήκεστα κακὰ τοὺς οὔτε μέλλοντας οὔτ' αὖ
- 6 βουλομένους τοιοῦτον οὐδέν. τὰς οὖν τοιαύτας ἀγνωμοσύνας νομίζων συνουσίαις μάλιστα παύεσθαι ἤκω καὶ διδάσκω σε βούλομαι ὡς σὺ ἡμῖν
- 7 οὐκ ὀρθῶς ἀπιστεῖς. πρῶτον μὲν γὰρ καὶ μέγιστον οἱ θεῶν ἡμᾶς ὄρκοι κωλύουσι πολεμίους εἶναι ἀλλήλοις· ὅστις δὲ τούτων σύνοιδεν αὐτῷ παρημεληκῶς, τοῦτον ἐγὼ οὔποτ' ἂν εὐδαιμονίσαιμι. τὸν γὰρ θεῶν πόλεμον οὐκ οἶδα οὔτ'² ἀποποίου ἂν τάχους οὔτε ὅποι ἂν τις φεύγων ἀπο-

¹ ὅτι Gem., following Schenkl: οἱ MSS.

² οὐκ οἶδα οὔτ' the inferior MSS., Mar.: οὐκ οἶδα the better MSS.: οὔτ' οἶδα Gem.

Clearchus resolved, therefore, to have a meeting with Tissaphernes and put a stop to these suspicions, if he possibly could, before hostilities resulted from them; so he sent a messenger to say that he desired to meet him. And Tissaphernes readily bade him come.

When they had met, Clearchus spoke as follows: "I know, to be sure, Tissaphernes, that both of us have taken oaths and given pledges not to injure one another; yet I see that you are on your guard against us as though we were enemies, and we, observing this, are keeping guard on our side. But since, upon inquiry, I am unable to ascertain that you are trying to do us harm, and am perfectly sure that we, for our part, are not even thinking of any such thing against you, I resolved to have an interview with you, so that, if possible, we might dispel this mutual distrust. For I know that there have been cases before now—some of them the result of slander, others of mere suspicion—where men who have become fearful of one another and wished to strike before they were struck, have done irreparable harm to people who were neither intending nor, for that matter, desiring to do anything of the sort to them. In the belief, then, that such misunderstandings are best settled by conference, I have come here, and I wish to point out to you that you are mistaken in distrusting us. For, first and chiefly, our oaths, sworn by the gods, stand in the way of our being enemies of one another; and the man who is conscious that he has disregarded such oaths, I for my part should never account happy. For in war with the gods I know not either by what swiftness of foot or to what place of refuge one could make his escape, or into what darkness

φύγοι οὐτ' εἰς ποῖον ἂν σκότος ἀποδραίῃ οὐθ' ὅπως ἂν εἰς ἐχυρὸν χωρίου ἀποσταίῃ. πάντη γὰρ πάντα τοῖς θεοῖς ὑποχα καὶ πάντων ἴσον οἱ θεοὶ κρατοῦσι.

8 Περὶ μὲν δὴ τῶν θεῶν τε καὶ τῶν¹ ὄρκων οὕτω γιννώσκω, παρ' οὓς ἡμεῖς τὴν φιλίαν συνθέμενοι κατεθέμεθα· τῶν δ' ἀνθρωπίνων σὲ ἐγὼ ἐν τῷ
9 παρόντι νομίζω μέγιστον εἶναι ἡμῖν ἀγαθόν. σὺν μὲν γὰρ σοὶ πᾶσα μὲν ὁδὸς εὐπόρος, πᾶς δὲ ποταμὸς διαβατός, τῶν τε ἐπιτηδείων οὐκ ἀπορία· ἄνευ δὲ σοῦ πᾶσα μὲν διὰ σκότους ἢ ὁδός· οὐδὲν γὰρ αὐτῆς ἐπιστάμεθα· πᾶς δὲ ποταμὸς δύσπορος, πᾶς δὲ ἔχλος φοβερὸς, φοβερῶτατον δ' ἐρημία·
10 μεστὴ γὰρ πολλῆς ἀπορίας ἐστίν. εἰ δὲ δὴ καὶ μανέντες σε κατακτείναιμεν, ἄλλο τι ἂν ἢ τὸν εὐεργέτην κατακτείναντες πρὸς βασιλέα τὸν μέγιστον ἔφεδρον ἀγωνιζοίμεθα²; ὅσων δὲ δὴ καὶ οἴων ἂν ἐλπίδων ἔμαντὸν στερήσαιμι, εἰ σέ τι
11 κακὸν ἐπιχειρήσαιμι ποιεῖν, ταῦτα λέξω. ἐγὼ γὰρ Κῦρον ἐπεθύμησά μοι φίλον γενέσθαι, νομίζων τῶν τότε ἰκανώτατον εἶναι εὖ ποιεῖν ὃν βούλοιο· σὲ δὲ νῦν ὄρω τὴν τε Κύρου δύναμιν καὶ χώραν ἔχοντα καὶ τὴν σαντοῦ σῶζοντα, τὴν δὲ βασιλέως δύναμιν, ἣ Κῦρος πολεμία ἐχρήτο, σοὶ
12 ταύτην ξύμμαχον οὔσαν. τούτων δὲ τοιούτων ὄντων τίς οὕτω μαινεται ὅστις οὐ βούλεται σοὶ φίλος εἶναι;

Ἄλλὰ μὴν ἐρῶ γὰρ καὶ ταῦτα ἐξ ὧν ἔχω ἐλπίδας καὶ σὲ βουλήσεσθαι φίλον ἡμῖν εἶναι.

¹ τε καὶ τῶν MSS.: Gem. brackets.

² ἀγωνιζοίμεθα the inferior MSS., Mar.: πολεμήσαμεν the better MSS., which Gem. follows, bracketing ἂν above.

he could steal away, or how he could withdraw himself to a secure fortress. For all things in all places are subject to the gods, and all alike the gods hold in their control.

“Touching the gods, then, and our oaths I am thus minded, and to the keeping of the gods we consigned the friendship which we covenanted; but as for things human, I believe that at this time you are to us the greatest good we possess. For, with you, every road is easy for us to traverse, every river is passable, supplies are not lacking; without you, all our road is through darkness—for none of it do we know—every river is hard to pass, every crowd excites our fears, and most fearful of all is solitude—for it is crowded full of want. And if we should, in fact, be seized with madness and slay you, should we not certainly, after slaying our benefactor, be engaged in contest with the King, a fresh and most powerful opponent? ¹ Again, how great and bright are the hopes of which I should rob myself if I attempted to do you any harm, I will relate to you. I set my heart upon having Cyrus for my friend because I thought that he was the best able of all the men of his time to benefit whom he pleased; but now I see that it is you who possess Cyrus' power and territory, while retaining your own besides, and that the power of the King, which Cyrus found hostile, is for you a support. Since this is so, who is so mad as not to desire to be your friend?

“And now for the other side,—for I will go on to tell you the grounds upon which I base the hope that you will likewise desire to be our

¹ The ἔφεδρος, in the language of Greek athletics, was the man who had “drawn a bye,” and so waited for the result of a contest in order to engage the victor.

- 13 οἶδα μὲν γὰρ ὑμῖν Μυσοὺς λυπηροὺς ὄντας, οὓς νομίζω ἂν σὺν τῇ παρουσίᾳ δυνάμει ταπεινοὺς ὑμῖν παρασχεῖν· οἶδα δὲ καὶ Πισιδᾶς· ἀκούω δὲ καὶ ἄλλα ἔθνη πολλὰ τοιαῦτα εἶναι, ἃ οἶμαι ἂν παῦσαι ἐνοχλοῦντα ἀεὶ τῇ ὑμετέρᾳ εὐδαιμονίᾳ. Αἰγυπτίους δέ, οἷς μάλιστα ὑμᾶς γινώσκω τεθυμωμένους, οὐχ ὁρῶ ποῖα δυνάμει συμμάχῳ χρησάμενοι μᾶλλον ἂν κολάσαισθε τῆς νῦν σὺν
- 14 ἐμοὶ οὐσης. ἀλλὰ μὴν ἔν γε τοῖς πέριξ οἰκοῦσι σὺ εἰ μὲν βούλοιο φίλος ὡς μέγιστος ἂν εἴης, εἰ δὲ τίς σε λυποῖη, ὡς δεσπότης ἂν ἀναστρέφοιο ἔχων ἡμᾶς ὑπηρέτας, οἷ σοι οὐκ ἂν μισθοῦ ἔνεκα ὑπηρετοῖμεν ἀλλὰ καὶ τῆς χάριτος ἣν σωθέντες ὑπὸ
- 15 σοῦ σοὶ ἂν ἔχοιμεν δικαίως. ἐμοὶ μὲν ταῦτα πάντα ἐνθυμουμένῳ οὕτω δοκεῖ θαυμαστὸν εἶναι τὸ σὲ ἡμῖν ἀπιστεῖν ὥστε καὶ ἥδιστ' ἂν ἀκούσαιμι τὸ ὄνομα¹ τίς οὕτως ἐστὶ δεινὸς λέγειν ὥστε σε πείσαι λέγων ὡς ἡμεῖς σοι ἐπιβουλεύομεν. Κλέαρχος μὲν οὖν τσαῦτα εἶπε· Τισσαφέρνης δὲ ὧδε ἀπημείφθη.
- 16 Ἄλλ' ἠδομαι μὲν, ὦ Κλέαρχε, ἀκούων σου φρονίμους λόγους· ταῦτα γὰρ γινώσκων εἴ τι ἐμοὶ κακὸν βουλευοῖς, ἅμα ἂν μοι δοκεῖς καὶ σαυτῷ κακόνους εἶναι. ὡς δ' ἂν μάθης ὅτι οὐδ' ἂν ὑμεῖς δικαίως οὔτε βασιλεῖ οὔτ' ἐμοὶ ἀπιστοῖ-
- 17 ητε, ἀντάκουσον. εἰ γὰρ ὑμᾶς ἐβουλόμεθα ἀπολέσαι, πότερά σοι δοκοῦμεν ἰππέων πλήθους

¹ τὸ ὄνομα MSS.: Gem. brackets, following Bisschop.

friend. I know that the Mysians are troublesome to you, and I believe that with the force I have I could make them your submissive servants; I know that the Pisidians also trouble you, and I hear that there are likewise many other tribes of the same sort; I could put a stop, I think, to their being a continual annoyance to your prosperity. As for the Egyptians, with whom I learn that you are especially angry, I do not see what force you could better employ to aid you in chastising them than the force which I now have. Again, take those who dwell around you: if you chose to be a friend to any, you could be the greatest possible friend, while if any were to annoy you, you could play the part of master over them in case you had us for supporters, for we should serve you, not merely for the sake of pay, but also out of the gratitude that we should feel, and rightly feel, toward you, the man who had saved us. For my part, as I consider all these things the idea of your distrusting us seems to me so astonishing that I should be very glad indeed to hear the name of the man who is so clever a talker that his talk could persuade you that we were cherishing designs against you." Thus much Clearchus said, and Tissaphernes replied as follows:

"It is a pleasure to me, Clearchus, to hear your sensible words; for if, holding these views, you should devise any ill against me, you would at the same time, I think, be showing ill-will toward yourself also. And now, in order that you may learn that you likewise are mistaken in distrusting either the King or myself, take your turn in listening. If we were, in fact, desirous of destroying you, does it seem to you that we have not cavalry in abundance

- ἀπορεῖν ἢ πεζῶν ἢ ὀπλίσεως ἐν ἧ ὑμᾶς μὲν βλάπτειν ἱκανοὶ εἶημεν ἄν, ἀντιπάσχειν δὲ οὐδεὶς
 18 κίνδυνος; ἀλλὰ χωρίων ἐπιτηδεῖων ὑμῖν ἐπιτίθεσθαι ἀπορεῖν ἄν σοι δοκοῦμεν; οὐ τοσαῦτα μὲν πεδία ἃ ὑμεῖς φίλια ὄντα σὺν πολλῷ πόνῳ διαπορεύεσθε, τοσαῦτα δὲ ὄρη ὁράτε ὑμῖν ὄντα πορευτέα, ἃ ἡμῖν ἕξεστι προκαταλαβοῦσιν ἄπορα ὑμῖν παρέχειν, τοσοῦτοι δ' εἰσὶ ποταμοὶ ἐφ' ὧν ἕξεστι ἡμῖν ταμιεύεσθαι ὁπόσοις ἄν ὑμῶν βουλώμεθα μάχεσθαι; εἰσὶ δ' αὐτῶν οὓς οὐδ' ἄν παντάπασι
 19 διαβαίητε, εἰ μὴ ἡμεῖς ὑμᾶς διαπορεύοιμεν. εἰ δ' ἐν πάσι τούτοις ἠττώμεθα, ἀλλὰ τό γέ τοι πῦρ κρεῖττον τοῦ καρποῦ ἐστίν· ὃν ἡμεῖς δυναίμεθ' ἄν κατακαύσαντες λιμὸν ὑμῖν ἀντιτάξαι, ᾧ ὑμεῖς οὐδ' εἰ πάνυ ἀγαθοὶ εἴητε μάχεσθαι ἄν δύναισθε.
 20 πῶς ἄν οὖν ἔχοντες τοσοῦτους πόρους πρὸς τὸ ὑμῖν πολεμεῖν, καὶ τούτων μηδένα ἡμῖν ἐπικίνδυνον, ἔπειτα ἐκ τούτων πάντων τούτου ἄν τὸν τρόπον ἐξελοίμεθα ὃς μόνος μὲν πρὸς θεῶν ἀσεβῆς,
 21 μόνος δὲ πρὸς ἀνθρώπων αἰσχρὸς; παντάπασι δὲ ἀπόρων ἐστὶ καὶ ἀμηχάνων καὶ ἐν ἀνάγκῃ ἐχομένων, καὶ τούτων πονηρῶν, οἵτινες ἐθέλουσι δι' ἐπιτοκίας τε πρὸς θεοῦς καὶ ἀπιστίας πρὸς ἀνθρώπους πράττειν τι. οὐχ οὕτως ἡμεῖς, ᾧ Κλέαρχε, οὔτε ἀλόγιστοι οὔτε ἠλίθιοι ἐσμεν.
 22 Ἄλλὰ τί δὴ ὑμᾶς ἐξὸν ἀπολέσαι οὐκ ἐπὶ τούτῳ ἤλθομεν; εὖ ἴσθι ὅτι ὁ ἐμὸς ἕρως τούτου αἴτιος τὸ τοῖς Ἕλλησιν ἐμὲ πιστὸν γενέσθαι, καὶ ᾧ Κῦρος ἀνέβη ξενικῶ δια μισθοδοσίας πιστεύων τούτῳ

and infantry and military equipment, whereby we should be able to harm you without being in any danger of suffering harm ourselves? Or do you think that we should not have places suitable for attacking you? Do you not behold these vast plains, which even now, although they are friendly, it is costing you a deal of labour to traverse? and these great mountains you have to pass, which we can occupy in advance and render impassable for you? and have we not these great rivers, at which we can parcel out whatever number of you we may choose to fight with—some, in fact, which you could not cross at all unless we carried you over? And if we were worsted at all these points, nevertheless it is certain that fire can worst crops; by burning them up we could bring famine into the field against you, and you could not fight against that, however brave you might be. Since, then, we have so many ways of making war upon you, no one of them dangerous to us, why, in such a case, should we choose out of them all that one way which alone is impious in the sight of the gods and shameful in the sight of men? For it is those who are utterly without ways and means, who are bound by necessity, and who are rascals in any case, that are willing to accomplish an object by perjury to the gods and unfaithfulness to men. As for us, Clearchus, we are not so unreasoning or foolish.

“But why, one might ask, when it was possible for us to destroy you, did we not proceed to do so? The reason for this, be well assured, was my eager desire to prove myself trustworthy to the Greeks, so that with the same mercenary force which Cyrus led up from the coast in the faith of wages paid, I might

- 23 ἐμὲ καταβῆναι δι' εὐεργεσίαν ἰσχυρόν. ὅσα δ' ἐμοὶ χρήσιμοι ὑμεῖς ἐστε τὰ μὲν καὶ σὺ εἶπας, τὸ δὲ μέγιστον ἐγὼ οἶδα· τὴν μὲν γὰρ ἐπὶ τῇ κεφαλῇ τιάραν βασιλεῖ μόνῳ ἔξεστιν ὀρθὴν ἔχειν, τὴν δ' ἐπὶ τῇ καρδίᾳ ἴσως ἂν ὑμῶν παρόντων καὶ ἕτερος εὐπετῶς ἔχοι.
- 24 Ταῦτα εἰπὼν ἔδοξε τῷ Κλεάρχῳ ἀληθῆ λέγειν· καὶ εἶπεν· Οὐκοῦν, ἔφη, οἷτινες τοιούτων ἡμῖν εἰς φιλίαν ὑπαρχόντων πειρῶνται διαβάλλοντες ποιῆσαι πολεμίους ἡμᾶς ἀξιοὶ εἰσι τὰ ἔσχατα
- 25 παθεῖν; Καὶ ἐγὼ μὲν γε, ἔφη ὁ Τισσαφέρνης, εἰ βούλεσθέ μοι οἷ τε στρατηγοὶ καὶ οἱ λοχαγοὶ ἔλθειν, ἐν τῷ ἐμφανεῖ λέξω τοὺς πρὸς ἐμὲ λέγοντας ὡς σὺ ἐμοὶ ἐπιβουλεύεις καὶ τῇ σὺν ἐμοὶ
- 26 στρατιᾷ. Ἐγὼ δέ, ἔφη ὁ Κλεάρχος, ἄξω πάντας, καὶ σοὶ αὐτὸ δηλώσω ὅθεν ἐγὼ περὶ σοῦ ἀκούω.
- 27 Ἐκ τούτων δὴ τῶν λόγων ὁ Τισσαφέρνης φιλοφρονούμενος τότε μὲν μένειν τε αὐτὸν ἐκέλευε καὶ σύνδειπνον ἐποιήσατο. τῇ δὲ ὑστεραία ὁ Κλεάρχος ἐλθὼν ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον δηλὸς τ' ἦν πάνυ φιλικῶς οἰόμενος διακεῖσθαι τῷ Τισσαφέρνει καὶ ἂν ἔλεγεν ἐκεῖνος ἀπήγγελλεν, ἔφη τε χρῆναι ἵεναι παρὰ Τισσαφέρνην οὓς ἐκέλευεν, καὶ οἱ ἂν¹ ἐλεγχθῶσι διαβάλλοντες τῶν Ἑλλήνων, ὡς προδότας αὐτοὺς καὶ κακόνους τοῖς

¹ οἱ ἂν MSS.: ἂν Gem., following Dindorf. Gem. also brackets τῶν Ἑλλήνων, following Dobree.

go back to the coast in the security of benefits conferred. And as for all the ways in which you are of use to me, you also have mentioned some of them, but it is I who know the most important: the King alone may wear upright the tiara that is upon the head, but another, too, with your help, might easily so wear the one that is upon the heart.¹ ”

In these things that he said Tissaphernes seemed to Clearchus to be speaking the truth; and Clearchus said: “Then do not those who are endeavouring by false charges to make us enemies, when we have such grounds for friendship, deserve to suffer the uttermost penalty?” “Yes,” said Tissaphernes, “and for my part, if you generals and captains care to come to me, I will give you, publicly, the names of those who tell me that you are plotting against me and the army under my command.” “And I,” said Clearchus, “will bring them all, and in my turn will make known to you whence come the reports that I hear about you.”

After this conversation Tissaphernes showed all kindness, inviting Clearchus at that time to stay with him and making him his guest at dinner. On the following day, when Clearchus returned to the Greek camp, he not only made it clear that he imagined he was on very friendly terms with Tissaphernes and reported the words which he had used, but he said that those whom Tissaphernes had invited must go to him, and that whoever among the Greeks should be convicted of making false charges ought to be

¹ The first clause states a fact of Persian court etiquette; the second is apparently intended to give Clearchus the impression that Tissaphernes aspires to the Persian throne, and for that reason really desires the friendship and help of the Greeks.

- 28 Ἐλλῆσι δὲ ὄντας τιμωρηθῆναι. ὑπώπτευε δὲ εἶναι τὸν διαβάλλοντα Μένωνα, εἰδὼς αὐτὸν καὶ συγγεγενημένον Τισσαφέρνει μετ' Ἀριαίου καὶ στασιάζοντα αὐτῷ καὶ ἐπιβουλευόντα, ὅπως τὸ στρατεύμα ἅπαν πρὸς αὐτὸν λαβὼν φίλος ἢ Τισ-
- 29 σαφέρνει. ἐβούλετο δὲ καὶ Κλέαρχος ἅπαν τὸ στρατεύμα πρὸς ἑαυτὸν ἔχειν τὴν γνώμην καὶ τοὺς παραλυποῦντας ἐκποδῶν εἶναι. τῶν δὲ στρατιωτῶν ἀντέλεγον τινες αὐτῷ μὴ ἵεναι πάντας τοὺς λοχαγοὺς καὶ στρατηγούς μηδὲ πιστεύειν Τισσαφέρνει. ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχος ἰσχυρῶς κατέτινεν, ἔστε διεπράξατο πέντε μὲν στρατηγούς ἵεναι, εἴκοσι δὲ λοχαγούς· συνηκολούθησαν δὲ ὡς εἰς ἀγορὰν καὶ τῶν ἄλλων στρατιωτῶν ὡς διακόσιοι.
- 31 Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦσαν ἐπὶ θύραις ταῖς Τισσαφέρνους, οἱ μὲν στρατηγοὶ παρεκλήθησαν εἰσω, Πρόξενος Βοιωτίας, Μένων Θετταλός, Ἀγίας Ἀρκὰς, Κλέαρχος Λάκων, Σωκράτης Ἀχαιοῦ· οἱ δὲ λοχαγοὶ
- 32 ἐπὶ ταῖς θύραις ἔμενον. οὐ πολλῷ δὲ ὕστερον ἀπὸ τοῦ αὐτοῦ σημείου οἱ τ' ἔνδον ξυνελαμβάνοντο καὶ οἱ ἔξω κατεκόπησαν. μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα τῶν βαρβάρων τινὲς ἰππέων διὰ τοῦ πεδίου ἐλαύνοντες ὄπιθεν ἐντυγχάνοιεν Ἕλλησι ἢ δούλῳ ἢ
- 33 ἐλευθέρῳ πάντας ἐκτενον. οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες τὴν τε ἰππασίαν ἐθαύμαζον ἐκ τοῦ στρατοπέδου ὄρωντες καὶ ὃ τι ἐποίουν ἠμφεγνόουν, πρὶν Νίκαρχος Ἀρκὰς ἦκε φεύγων τετρωμένος εἰς τὴν γαστέρα καὶ τὰ ἔντερα ἐν ταῖς χερσὶν ἔχων, καὶ εἶπε
- 34 πάντα τὰ γεγενημένα. ἐκ τούτου δὴ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἔθεον ἐπὶ τὰ ὄπλα πάντες ἐκπεπληγμένοι καὶ

punished, as traitors and foes to the Greeks. Now Clearchus suspected that the author of these slanders was Menon, for he was aware that Menon had not only had meetings with Tissaphernes, in company with Ariaeus, but was also organizing opposition to his own leadership and plotting against him, with the intention of winning over to himself the entire army and thereby securing the friendship of Tissaphernes. Clearchus desired, however, to have the entire army devoted to him and to put the refractory out of the way. As for the soldiers, some of them made objections to Clearchus' proposal, urging that the captains and generals should not all go and that they should not trust Tissaphernes. But Clearchus vehemently insisted, until he secured an agreement that five generals should go and twenty captains; and about two hundred of the soldiers also followed along, with the intention of going to market.

When they reached Tissaphernes' doors, the generals were invited in—Proxenus the Boeotian, Menon the Thessalian, Agias the Arcadian, Clearchus the Laconian, and Socrates the Achaean—while the captains waited at the doors. Not long afterward, at the same signal, those within were seized and those outside were cut down. After this some of the barbarian horsemen rode about over the plain and killed every Greek they met, whether slave or freeman. And the Greeks wondered at this riding about, as they saw it from their camp, and were puzzled to know what the horsemen were doing, until Nicarchus the Arcadian reached the camp in flight, wounded in his belly and holding his bowels in his hands, and told all that had happened. Thereupon the Greeks, one and all, ran to their arms,

νομίζοντες αὐτίκα ἤξειν αὐτοὺς ἐπὶ τὸ στρατό-
πεδον.

- 35 Οἱ δὲ πάντες μὲν οὐκ ἦλθον, Ἀριαῖος δὲ καὶ
Ἀρτάοζος καὶ Μιθραδάτης, οἳ ἦσαν Κύρω πισ-
τότατοι· ὁ δὲ τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἑρμηνεὺς ἔφη καὶ
τὸν Τισσαφέρνους ἀδελφὸν σὺν αὐτοῖς ὄραν καὶ
γνωσκέειν· ξυνηκολούθουν δὲ καὶ ἄλλοι Περσῶν
36 τεθωρακισμένοι εἰς τριακοσίους. οὗτοι ἐπεὶ ἐγγὺς
ἦσαν, προσελθεῖν ἐκέλευον εἴ τις εἶη τῶν Ἑλλήνων
στρατηγὸς ἢ λοχαγός, ἵνα ἀπαγγείλωσι τὰ παρὰ
37 βασιλέως. μετὰ ταῦτα ἐξῆλθον φυλαττόμενοι
τῶν Ἑλλήνων στρατηγοὶ μὲν Κλεάνωρ Ὀρχο-
μένιος καὶ Σοφαίνετος Στυμφάλιος, ξὺν αὐτοῖς δὲ
Ξενοφῶν Ἀθηναῖος, ὅπως μάθοι τὰ περὶ Προ-
ξένου· Χειρίσοφος δὲ ἐτύγχανεν ἀπὼν ἐν κώμῃ
38 τινὶ ξὺν ἄλλοις ἐπισιτιζομένοις. ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἔστη-
σαν εἰς ἐπήκοον, εἶπεν Ἀριαῖος τάδε. Κλέαρχος
μὲν, ὦ ἄνδρες Ἕλληνες, ἐπεὶ ἐπιορκῶν τε ἐφάνη
καὶ τὰς σπουδὰς λύων, ἔχει τὴν δίκην καὶ τέθνηκε,
Πρόξενος δὲ καὶ Μένων, ὅτι κατήγγειλαν αὐτοῦ
τὴν ἐπιβουλήν, ἐν μεγάλῃ τιμῇ εἰσιν. ὑμᾶς δὲ
βασιλεὺς τὰ ὄπλα ἀπαιτεῖ· αὐτοῦ γὰρ εἶναί
φησιν, ἐπεὶπερ Κύρου ἦσαν τοῦ ἐκείνου δούλου.
39 πρὸς ταῦτα ἀπεκρίναντο οἱ Ἕλληνες, ἔλεγε δὲ
Κλεάνωρ ὁ Ὀρχομένιος· ὦ κάκιστε ἀνθρώπων
Ἀριαῖε καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι ὅσοι ἦτε Κύρου φίλοι, οὐκ
αἰσχύνεσθε οὔτε θεοὺς οὔτ' ἀνθρώπους, οὔτινες
ὁμόσαντες ἡμῖν τοὺς αὐτοὺς φίλους καὶ ἐχθροὺς
νομεῖν, προδόντες ἡμᾶς σὺν Τισσαφέρνει τῷ

panic-stricken and believing that the enemy would
come at once against the camp.

Not all of them came, however, but Ariaeus, Artaozus, and Mithradates, who had been most faithful friends of Cyrus, did come; and the interpreter of the Greeks said that with them he also saw and recognized Tissaphernes' brother; furthermore, they were followed by other Persians, armed with breastplates, to the number of three hundred. As soon as this party had come near, they directed whatever Greek general or captain there might be to come forward, in order that they might deliver a message from the King. After this two generals went forth from the Greek lines under guard, Cleanor the Orchomenian and Sophanetus the Stymphalian, and with them Xenophon the Athenian, who wished to learn the fate of Proxenus; Cheirisophus, however, chanced to be away in a village in company with others who were getting provisions. And when the Greeks got within hearing distance, Ariaeus said: "Clearchus, men of Greece, inasmuch as he was shown to be perjuring himself and violating the truce, has received his deserts and is dead, but Proxenus and Menon, because they gave information about his plotting, are held in high honour. For yourselves, the King demands your arms; for he says that they belong to him, since they belonged to Cyrus, his slave." To this the Greeks replied as follows, Cleanor the Orchomenian acting as spokesman: "Ariaeus, you basest of men, and all you others who were friends of Cyrus, are you not ashamed, either before gods or men, that, after giving us your oaths to count the same people friends and foes as we did, you have betrayed us, joining hands

ἀθεωτάτῳ τε καὶ πανουργοτάτῳ τοὺς τε ἄνδρας
 αὐτοὺς οἷς ὄμνυτε ἀπολωλέκατε καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους
 ἡμᾶς προδεδωκότες ξὺν τοῖς πολεμίοις ἐφ' ἡμᾶς
 40 ἔρχεσθε; ὁ δὲ Ἀριαῖος εἶπε· Κλέαρχος γὰρ
 πρόσθεν ἐπιβουλεύων φανερὸς ἐγένετο Τισσαφέρ-
 νει τε καὶ Ὀρόντα, καὶ πᾶσιν ἡμῖν τοῖς ξὺν
 41 τούτοις. ἐπὶ τούτῳ Ξενοφῶν τάδε εἶπε. Κλέαρχος
 μὲν τοίνυν εἰ παρὰ τοὺς ὄρκους ἔλυσεν τὰς σπονδάς,
 τὴν δίκην ἔχει· δίκαιον γὰρ ἀπόλλυσθαι τοὺς
 ἐπιορκούντας· Πρόξενος δὲ καὶ Μένων ἐπέιπερ
 εἰσὶν ὑμέτεροι μὲν εὐεργέται, ἡμέτεροι δὲ στρατη-
 γοί, πέμψατε αὐτοὺς δεῦρο· δῆλον γὰρ ὅτι φίλοι
 γε ὄντες ἀμφοτέροις πειράσσονται καὶ ὑμῖν καὶ
 42 ἡμῖν τὰ βέλτιστα συμβουλευσαί. πρὸς ταῦτα οἱ
 βάρβαροι πολὺν χρόνον διαλεχθέντες ἀλλήλοις
 ἀπήλθον οὐδὲν ἀποκρινάμενοι.

VI. Οἱ μὲν δὴ στρατηγοὶ οὕτω ληφθέντες ἀνή-
 χθησαν ὡς βασιλέα καὶ ἀποτμηθέντες τὰς κε-
 φαλὰς ἐτελεύτησαν, εἷς μὲν αὐτῶν Κλέαρχος
 ὁμολογουμένως ἐκ πάντων τῶν ἐμπείρως αὐτοῦ
 ἐχόντων δόξας γενέσθαι ἀνὴρ καὶ πολεμικὸς καὶ
 2 φιλοπόλεμος ἐσχάτως. καὶ γὰρ δὴ ἕως μὲν
 πόλεμος ἦν τοῖς Λακεδαιμονίοις πρὸς τοὺς Ἀθη-
 ναίους παρέμενε, ἐπειδὴ δὲ εἰρήνη ἐγένετο, πείσας
 τὴν αὐτοῦ πόλιν ὡς οἱ Θρᾶκες ἀδικοῦσι τοὺς
 "Ἕλληνας καὶ διαπραξάμενος ὡς ἐδύνατο παρὰ
 τῶν ἐφόρων ἐξέπλει ὡς πολεμήσων τοῖς ὑπὲρ
 3 Χερρονήσου καὶ Περίνθου Θραξίν. ἐπεὶ δὲ

with Tissaphernes, that most godless and villainous man, and that you have not only destroyed the very men to whom you were then making oath, but have betrayed the rest of us and are come with our enemies against us?" And Ariaeus said: "But it was shown that long ago Clearchus was plotting against Tissaphernes and Orontas and all of us who are with them." Upon this Xenophon spoke as follows: "Well, then, if Clearchus was really transgressing the truce in violation of his oaths, he has his deserts, for it is right that perjurers should perish; but as for Proxenus and Menon, since they are your benefactors and our generals, send them hither, for it is clear that, being friends of both parties, they will endeavour to give both you and ourselves the best advice." To this the barbarians made no answer, but, after talking for a long time with one another, they departed.

VI. The generals, then, after being thus seized, were taken to the King and put to death by being beheaded. One of them, Clearchus, by common consent of all who were personally acquainted with him, seemed to have shown himself a man who was both fitted for war and fond of war to the last degree. For, in the first place, as long as the Lacedaemonians were at war with the Athenians, he bore his part with them; then, as soon as peace had come, he persuaded his state that the Thracians were injuring the Greeks,¹ and, after gaining his point as best he could from the ephors,² set sail with the intention of making war upon the Thracians who dwelt beyond the Chersonese and Perinthus. When, however, the

¹ i.e. the Greek colonists in the Thracian Chersonese.

² The ephors, five in number, were the ruling officials at Sparta.

μεταγνόντες πως οἱ ἔφοροι ἤδη ἔξω ὄντος ἀποστρέφειν αὐτὸν ἐπειρῶντο ἐξ Ἰσθμοῦ, ἐνταῦθα οὐκέτι πείθεται, ἀλλ' ὄρχετο πλέων εἰς Ἑλλάσποντον. ἐκ τούτου καὶ ἐθανατώθη ὑπὸ τῶν ἐν Σπάρτῃ τελῶν ὡς ἀπειθῶν. ἤδη δὲ φυγὰς ὦν ἔρχεται πρὸς Κῦρον, καὶ ὁποίοις μὲν λόγοις ἔπεισε Κῦρον ἄλλη γέγραπται, δίδωσι δὲ αὐτῷ Κῦρος 5 μυρίους δαρεικούς· ὁ δὲ λαβὼν οὐκ ἐπὶ ῥαθυμίαν ἐτράπετο, ἀλλ' ἀπὸ τούτων τῶν χρημάτων συλλέξας στρατεύμα ἐπολέμει τοῖς Θραξί, καὶ μάχη τε ἐνίκησε καὶ ἀπὸ τούτου δὴ ἔφερε καὶ ἤγε τούτους καὶ πολεμῶν διεγένετο μέχρι Κῦρος ἐδεήθη τοῦ στρατεύματος· τότε δὲ ἀπῆλθεν ὡς ξὺν ἐκείνῳ αὐ πολεμήσων.

6 Ταῦτα οὖν φιλοπολέμου μοι δοκεῖ ἀνδρὸς ἔργα εἶναι, ὅστις ἐξὸν μὲν εἰρήνην ἄγειν ἀνευ αἰσχύνης καὶ βλάβης αἰρεῖται πολεμεῖν, ἐξὸν δὲ ῥαθυμεῖν βούλεται πονεῖν ὥστε πολεμεῖν,¹ ἐξὸν δὲ χρήματα ἔχειν ἀκινδύνως αἰρεῖται πολεμῶν μείονα ταῦτα ποιεῖν· ἐκεῖνος δὲ ὥσπερ² εἰς παιδικὰ ἢ εἰς ἄλλην 7 τινὰ ἡδονὴν ἤθελε δαπανᾶν εἰς πόλεμον. οὕτω μὲν φιλοπόλεμος ἦν· πολεμικὸς δὲ αὐ ταύτῃ ἐδόκει εἶναι ὅτι φιλοκίνδυνός τε ἦν καὶ ἡμέρας καὶ νυκτὸς ἄγων ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους καὶ ἐν τοῖς δεινοῖς φρόνιμος, ὡς οἱ παρόντες πανταχοῦ πάν- 8 τες ὠμολόγουν. καὶ ἀρχικὸς δ' ἐλέγετο εἶναι ὡς

¹ ὥστε πολεμεῖν MSS.: Gem. brackets.

² After ὥσπερ Gem. inserts τις.

ephors changed their minds for some reason or other and, after he had already gone, tried to turn him back from the Isthmus of Corinth, at that point he declined to render further obedience, but went sailing off to the Hellespont. As a result he was condemned to death by the authorities at Sparta on the ground of disobedience to orders. Being now an exile he came to Cyrus, and the arguments whereby he persuaded Cyrus are recorded elsewhere;¹ at any rate, Cyrus gave him ten thousand darics, and he, upon receiving this money, did not turn his thoughts to comfortable idleness, but used it to collect an army and proceeded to make war upon the Thracians. He defeated them in battle and from that time on plundered them in every way, and he kept up the war until Cyrus wanted his army; then he returned, still for the purpose of making war, this time in company with Cyrus.

Now such conduct as this, in my opinion, reveals a man fond of war. When he may enjoy peace without dishonour or harm, he chooses war; when he may live in idleness, he prefers toil, provided it be the toil of war; when he may keep his money without risk, he elects to diminish it by carrying on war. As for Clearchus, just as one spends upon a loved one or upon any other pleasure, so he wanted to spend upon war—such a lover he was of war. On the other hand, he seemed to be fitted for war in that he was fond of danger, ready by day or night to lead his troops against the enemy, and self-possessed amid terrors, as all who were with him on all occasions agreed. He was likewise said to be fitted for command, so far

¹ But not in the *Anabasis* or in any of Xenophon's other works. Perhaps the author was writing under the impression that he had stated these arguments in I. i. 9.

δυνατὸν ἐκ τοῦ τοιούτου τρόπου οἶον κάκεινος
 εἶχεν. ἰκανὸς μὲν γὰρ ὡς τις καὶ ἄλλος φροντίζειν
 ἦν ὅπως ἔχοι ἢ στρατιὰ αὐτῷ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια καὶ
 παρασκευάζειν ταῦτα, ἰκανὸς δὲ καὶ ἐμποιῆσαι
 9 τοῖς παροῦσιν ὡς πειστέον εἶη Κλεάρχῳ. τοῦτο
 δ' ἐποίει ἐκ τοῦ χαλεπὸς εἶναι· καὶ γὰρ ὄραν
 στυγνὸς ἦν καὶ τῇ φωνῇ τραχύς, ἐκόλαζέ τε
 ἰσχυρῶς, καὶ ὀργῇ ἐνίοτε, ὡς καὶ αὐτῷ μεταμέλει
 10 ἔσθ' ὅτε. καὶ γνώμη δ' ἐκόλαζεν· ἀκολάστου
 γὰρ στρατεύματος οὐδὲν ἠγεῖτο ὄφελος εἶναι,
 ἀλλὰ καὶ λέγειν αὐτὸν ἔφασαν ὡς δέοι τὸν στρα-
 τιώτην φοβεῖσθαι μᾶλλον τὸν ἄρχοντα ἢ τοὺς
 πολεμίους, εἰ μέλλοι ἢ φυλακὰς φυλάξειν ἢ φίλων
 ἀφέξεσθαι ἢ ἀπροφασίστως ἰέναι πρὸς τοὺς πολε-
 11 μίους. ἐν μὲν οὖν τοῖς δεινοῖς ἠθέλον αὐτοῦ ἀκούειν
 σφόδρα καὶ οὐκ ἄλλον ἠροῦντο οἱ στρατιῶται·
 καὶ γὰρ τὸ στυγνὸν τότε φαιδρὸν¹ ἔφασαν φαίνε-
 σθαι καὶ τὸ χαλεπὸν ἐρρωμένον πρὸς τοὺς πολε-
 μίους ἐδόκει εἶναι, ὥστε σωτήριον, οὐκέτι χαλεπὸν
 12 ἐφαίνετο· ὅτε δ' ἔξω τοῦ δεινοῦ γένοιτο καὶ ἐξείη
 πρὸς ἄλλον ἀρξομένους ἀπιέναι, πολλοὶ αὐτὸν
 ἀπέλειπον· τὸ γὰρ ἐπίχαρι οὐκ εἶχεν, ἀλλ' αἰεὶ
 χαλεπὸς ἦν καὶ ὠμός· ὥστε διέκειντο πρὸς αὐτὸν
 οἱ στρατιῶται ὡσπερ παῖδες πρὸς διδάσκαλον.
 13 καὶ γὰρ οὖν φιλία μὲν καὶ εὐνοία ἐπομένους
 οὐδέποτε εἶχεν· οὔτινες δὲ ἢ ὑπὸ πόλεως τεταγ-
 μένοι ἢ ὑπὸ τοῦ δεῖσθαι ἢ ἄλλῃ τινὶ ἀνάγκῃ κατε-

¹ After φαιδρὸν the MSS. have αὐτοῦ ἐν τοῖς ἄλλοις προσώ-
 ποις: rejected by Gem. and Mar., following Cobet.

as that was possible for a man of such a disposition
 as his was. For example, he was competent, if ever
 a man was, in devising ways by which his army might
 get provisions and in procuring them, and he was
 competent also to impress it upon those who were
 with him that Clearchus must be obeyed. This result
 he accomplished by being severe; for he was gloomy
 in appearance and harsh in voice, and he used to
 punish severely, sometimes in anger, so that on
 occasion he would be sorry afterwards. Yet he also
 punished on principle, for he believed there was no
 good in an army that went without punishment; in
 fact, he used to say, it was reported, that a soldier
 must fear his commander more than the enemy if he
 were to perform guard duty or keep his hands from
 friends or without making excuses advance against
 the enemy. In the midst of dangers, therefore, the
 troops were ready to obey him implicitly and would
 choose no other to command them; for they said
 that at such times his gloominess appeared to be
 brightness, and his severity seemed to be resolution
 against the enemy, so that it appeared to betoken
 safety and to be no longer severity. But when they
 had got past the danger and could go off to serve
 under another commander, many would desert him;
 for there was no attractiveness about him, but he was
 always severe and rough, so that the soldiers had the
 same feeling toward him that boys have toward a
 schoolmaster. For this reason, also, he never had
 men following him out of friendship and good-will,
 but such as were under him because they had been
 put in his hands by a government or by their own
 need or were under the compulsion of any other

- χόμενοι παρέησαν αὐτῷ, σφόδρα πειθομένοις
 14 ἐχρήτο. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἄρξαιντο νικᾶν ξὺν αὐτῷ τοὺς
 πολεμίους, ἤδη μεγάλα ἦν τὰ χρησίμους ποιοῦντα
 εἶναι τοὺς ξὺν αὐτῷ στρατιώτας· τό τε γὰρ πρὸς
 τοὺς πολεμίους θαρραλέως ἔχειν παρῆν καὶ τὸ τὴν
 παρ' ἐκείνου τιμωρίαν φοβεῖσθαι εὐτάκτους ἐποίει.
 15 τοιοῦτος μὲν δὴ ἄρχων ἦν· ἄρχεσθαι δὲ ὑπὸ ἄλλων
 οὐ μάλα ἐθέλειν ἐλέγετο. ἦν δὲ ὅτε ἐτελεύτα ἀμφὶ
 τὰ πεντήκοντα ἔτη.
 16 Πρόξενος δὲ ὁ Βοιωτίας εὐθύς μὲν μειράκιον ὦν
 ἐπεθύμει γενέσθαι ἀνὴρ τὰ μεγάλα πράττειν
 ἱκανός· καὶ διὰ ταύτην τὴν ἐπιθυμίαν ἔδωκε
 17 Γοργία ἀργύριον τῷ Λεοντίνῳ. ἐπεὶ δὲ συνεγένετο
 ἐκείνῳ, ἱκανὸς νομίσας ἤδη εἶναι καὶ ἄρχειν καὶ φί-
 λος ὦν τοῖς πρώτοις μὴ ἠττάσθαι εὐεργετῶν, ἦλθεν
 εἰς ταύτας τὰς σὺν Κύρῳ πράξεις· καὶ ᾤετο κτή-
 σεσθαι ἐκ τούτων ὄνομα μέγα καὶ δύναμιν μεγάλην
 18 καὶ χρήματα πολλά· τοσούτων δ' ἐπιθυμῶν
 σφόδρα ἐνδηλον αὐτῷ καὶ τοῦτο εἶχεν, ὅτι τούτων
 οὐδὲν ἂν θέλοι κτᾶσθαι μετὰ ἀδικίας, ἀλλὰ σὺν
 τῷ δικαίῳ καὶ καλῷ ᾤετο δεῖν τούτων τυγχάνειν,
 19 ἄνευ δὲ τούτων μὴ· ἄρχειν δὲ καλῶν μὲν καὶ
 ἀγαθῶν δυνατὸς ἦν· οὐ μέντοι οὐτ' αἰδῶ τοῖς
 στρατιώταις ἑαυτοῦ οὔτε φόβον ἱκανὸς ἐμποιῆσαι,
 ἀλλὰ καὶ ἡσχύνετο μᾶλλον τοὺς στρατιώτας ἢ οἱ
 ἀρχόμενοι ἐκείνων· καὶ φοβούμενος μᾶλλον ἦν
 φανερόν τὸ ἀπεχθάνεσθαι τοῖς στρατιώταις ἢ οἱ
 20 στρατιῶται τὸ ἀπιστεῖν ἐκείνῳ. ᾤετο δὲ ἀρκεῖν

necessity, yielded him implicit obedience. And as soon as they began in his service to overcome the enemy, from that moment there were weighty reasons which made his soldiers efficient; for they had the feeling of confidence in the face of the enemy, and their fear of punishment at his hands kept them in a fine state of discipline. Such he was as a commander, but being commanded by others was not especially to his liking, so people said. He was about fifty years old at the time of his death.

Proxenus the Boeotian cherished from his earliest youth an eager desire to become a man capable of dealing with great affairs, and because of this desire he paid money to Gorgias of Leontini.¹ After having studied under him and reaching the conclusion that he had now become competent to rule and, through friendship with the foremost men of his day, to hold his own in conferring benefits, he embarked upon this enterprise with Cyrus, expecting to gain therefrom a famous name, great power, and abundant wealth; but while vehemently desiring these great ends, he nevertheless made it evident also that he would not care to gain any one of them unjustly; rather, he thought that he must secure them justly and honourably, or not at all. As a leader, he was qualified to command gentlemen, but he was not capable of inspiring his soldiers with either respect for himself or fear; on the contrary, he really stood in greater awe of his men than they, whom he commanded, did of him, and it was manifest that he was more afraid of incurring the hatred of his soldiers than they were of disobeying him. His idea was that, for a man to be

¹ A celebrated rhetorician and orator, whose enormous fee of 100 minae (£375 or \$1,800) was almost as famous as himself.

πρὸς τὸ ἀρχικὸν εἶναι καὶ δοκεῖν τὸν μὲν καλῶς ποιοῦντα ἐπαινεῖν, τὸν δὲ ἀδικοῦντα μὴ ἐπαινεῖν. τοιγαροῦν αὐτῷ οἱ μὲν καλοὶ τε καὶ ἀγαθοὶ τῶν συνόντων εὖνοι ἦσαν, οἱ δὲ ἀδικοὶ ἐπεβούλευον ὡς εὐμεταχειρίστῳ ὄντι. ὅτε δὲ ἀπέθνησκεν ἦν ἐτῶν ὡς τριάκοντα.

- 21 Μένων δὲ ὁ Θετταλὸς δῆλος ἦν ἐπιθυμῶν μὲν πλουτεῖν ἰσχυρῶς, ἐπιθυμῶν δὲ ἄρχειν, ὅπως πλείω λαμβάνοι, ἐπιθυμῶν δὲ τιμᾶσθαι, ἵνα πλείω κερδαῖνοι· φίλος τε ἐβούλετο εἶναι τοῖς μέγιστα δυναμένοις, ἵνα ἀδικῶν μὴ διδοίη δίκην.
- 22 ἐπὶ δὲ τὸ κατεργάζεσθαι ὧν ἐπιθυμοίη συντομοτάτην ᾤετο ὁδὸν εἶναι διὰ τοῦ ἐπιορκεῖν τε καὶ ψεύδεσθαι καὶ ἔξαπατᾶν, τὸ δ' ἀπλοῦν καὶ τὸ
- 23 ἀληθὲς τὸ αὐτὸ τῷ ἡλιθίῳ εἶναι. στέργων δὲ φανερὸς μὲν ἦν οὐδένα, ὅτῳ δὲ φαίη φίλος εἶναι, τούτῳ ἔνδηλος ἐγίγνετο ἐπιβουλεύων. καὶ πολεμίου μὲν οὐδενὸς κατεγέλα, τῶν δὲ συνόντων πάντων ὡς καταγελῶν αἰεὶ διελέ-
- 24 γετο. καὶ τοῖς μὲν τῶν πολεμίων κτήμασιν οὐκ ἐπεβούλευε· χαλεπὸν γὰρ ᾤετο εἶναι τὰ τῶν φυλαττομένων λαμβάνειν· τὰ δὲ τῶν φίλων μόνος ᾤετο εἰδέναι ῥᾶστον ὃν ἀφύλακτα
- 25 λαμβάνειν. καὶ ὅσους μὲν αἰσθάνοιτο ἐπιόρκους καὶ ἀδίκους ὡς εὖ ὀπλισμένους ἐφοβεῖτο, τοῖς δὲ ὁσίοις καὶ ἀλήθειαν ἀσκοῦσιν ὡς ἀνάνδρους
- 26 ἐπειρᾶτο χρῆσθαι. ὥσπερ δὲ τις ἀγάλλεται ἐπὶ

and to be thought fit to command, it was enough that he should praise the one who did right and withhold praise from the one who did wrong. Consequently all among his associates who were gentlemen were attached to him, but the unprincipled would plot against him in the thought that he was easy to deal with. At the time of his death he was about thirty years old.

Menon the Thessalian was manifestly eager for enormous wealth—eager for command in order to get more wealth and eager for honour in order to increase his gains; and he desired to be a friend to the men who possessed greatest power in order that he might commit unjust deeds without suffering the penalty. Again, for the accomplishment of the objects upon which his heart was set, he imagined that the shortest route was by way of perjury and falsehood and deception, while he counted straightforwardness and truth the same thing as folly. Affection he clearly felt for nobody, and if he said that he was a friend to anyone, it would become plain that this man was the one he was plotting against. He would never ridicule an enemy, but he always gave the impression in conversation of ridiculing all his associates. Neither would he devise schemes against his enemies' property, for he saw difficulty in getting hold of the possessions of people who were on their guard; but he thought he was the only one who knew that it was easiest to get hold of the property of friends—just because it was unguarded. Again, all whom he found to be perjurers and wrongdoers he would fear, regarding them as well armed, while those who were pious and practised truth he would try to make use of, regarding them as weaklings. And just as a man

θεοσεβεία καὶ ἀληθεία καὶ δικαιοσύνη, οὕτω Μένων ἠγάλλετο τῷ ἔξαπατᾶν δύνασθαι, τῷ πλάσασθαι ψεύδη, τῷ φίλους διαγελάειν τὸν δὲ μὴ πανοῦργον τῶν ἀπαιδευτῶν αἰεὶ ἐνόμιζεν εἶναι. καὶ παρ' οἷς μὲν ἐπεχείρει πρωτεύειν φιλία, διαβάλλων τοὺς πρώτους τοῦτο ᾤετο δεῖν κτή-
 27 σασθαι. τὸ δὲ πειθομένους τοὺς στρατιώτας παρέχεσθαι ἐκ τοῦ συναδικεῖν αὐτοῖς ἐμμηχανᾶτο. τιμᾶσθαι δὲ καὶ θεραπεύεσθαι ἠξίου ἐπιδεικνύμενος ὅτι πλεῖστα δύναται καὶ ἐθέλοι ἂν ἀδικεῖν εὐεργεσίαν δὲ κατέλεγεν, ὅποτε τις αὐτοῦ ἀφίσταται, ὅτι χρώμενος αὐτῷ οὐκ ἀπώλεσεν αὐτόν.

28 Καὶ τὰ μὲν δὴ ἀφανῆ ἔξεστι περὶ αὐτοῦ ψεύδεσθαι, ἃ δὲ πάντες ἴσασι τὰδ' ἐστί. παρὰ Ἀριστίππου μὲν ἔτι ὠραῖος ὢν στρατηγεῖν διεπράξατο τῶν ξένων, Ἀριαίῳ δὲ βαρβάρῳ ὄντι, ὅτι μειρακίοις καλοῖς ἤδετο, οἰκειότατος ἐγένετο, αὐτὸς δὲ παιδικὰ εἶχε Θαρύπαν ἀγένειος ὢν γενει-
 29 ὠντα. ἀποθνησκόντων δὲ τῶν συστρατῆγων ὅτι ἐστράτευσαν ἐπὶ βασιλέα ξὺν Κύρῳ, ταῦτα πεπονηκῶς οὐκ ἀπέθανε, μετὰ δὲ τὸν τῶν ἄλλων θάνατον στρατηγῶν τιμωρηθεὶς ὑπὸ βασιλέως ἀπέθανεν, οὐχ ὡσπερ Κλέαρχος καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι στρατηγοὶ ἀποτμηθέντες τὰς κεφαλὰς, ὅσπερ τάχιστος θάνατος δοκεῖ εἶναι, ἀλλὰ ζῶν αἰκισθεὶς

prides himself upon piety, truthfulness, and justice, so Menon prided himself upon ability to deceive, the fabrication of lies, and the mocking of friends; but the man who was not a rascal he always thought of as belonging to the uneducated. Again, if he were attempting to be first in the friendship of anybody, he thought that slandering those who were already first was the proper way of gaining this end. As for making his soldiers obedient, he managed that by bearing a share in their wrongdoing. He expected, indeed, to gain honour and attention by showing that he had the ability and would have the readiness to do the most wrongs; and he set it down as a kindness, whenever anyone broke off with him, that he had not, while still on terms with such a one, destroyed him.

To be sure, in matters that are doubtful one may be mistaken about him, but the facts which everybody knows are the following. From Aristippus¹ he secured, while still in the bloom of youth, an appointment as general of his mercenaries; with Ariaeus, who was a barbarian, he became extremely intimate for the reason that Ariaeus was fond of beautiful youths; and, lastly, he himself, while still beardless, had a bearded favourite named Tharypas. Now when his fellow-generals were put to death for joining Cyrus in his expedition against the King, he, who had done the same thing, was not so treated, but it was after the execution of the other generals that the King visited the punishment of death upon him; and he was not, like Clearchus and the rest of the generals, beheaded—a manner of death which is counted speediest—but, report says, was tortured

¹ See i. i. 10, ii. 1, and note on i. ii. 6.

ἐνιαυτὸν ὡς πονηρὸς λέγεται τῆς τελευτῆς
τυχεῖν.

30 Ἀγίας δὲ ὁ Ἀρκὰς καὶ Σωκράτης ὁ Ἀχαιοὺς
καὶ τούτῳ ἀπεθανέτην. τούτων δὲ οὔθ' ὡς ἐν
πολέμῳ κακῶν οὔδεις κατεγέλα οὔτ' εἰς φιλίαν
αὐτοὺς ἐμέμφετο. ἦσθη δὲ ἄμφω ἄμφι τὰ πέντε
καὶ τριάκοντα ἔτη ἀπὸ γενεᾶς.

alive for a year and so met the death of a
scoundrel.

Agias the Arcadian and Socrates the Achaean were
the two others who were put to death. No one
ever laughed at these men as weaklings in war or
found fault with them in the matter of friendship.
They were both about thirty-five years of age.

BOOK III

2 I. ¹ Ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ στρατηγοὶ συνειλημμένοι ἦσαν καὶ τῶν λοχαγῶν καὶ τῶν στρατιωτῶν οἱ συνεπισπόμενοι ἀπωλώλεσαν, ἐν πολλῇ δὴ ἀπορίᾳ ἦσαν οἱ Ἕλληνες, ἐννοούμενοι ὅτι ἐπὶ ταῖς βασιλέως θύραις ἦσαν, κύκλῳ δὲ αὐτοῖς πάντῃ πολλὰ καὶ ἔθνη καὶ πόλεις πολέμια ἦσαν, ἀγορὰν δὲ οὐδεὶς ἔτι παρέξειν ἔμελλεν, ἀπεῖχον δὲ τῆς Ἑλλάδος οὐ μείον ἢ μύρια στάδια, ἡγεμῶν δ' οὐδεὶς τῆς ὁδοῦ ἦν, ποταμοὶ δὲ διείργον ἀδιάβατοι ἐν μέσῳ τῆς οἴκαδε ὁδοῦ, προυνδεδώκεσαν δὲ αὐτοὺς καὶ οἱ σὺν Κύρῳ ἀναβάντες βάρβαροι, μόνου δὲ καταλειμμένοι ἦσαν οὐδὲ ἵππέα οὐδένα σύμμαχον ἔχοντες, ὥστε εὐδηλον ἦν ὅτι νικῶντες μὲν οὐδένα ἂν κατακάνοιεν, ἡττηθέντων δὲ αὐτῶν
3 οὐδεὶς ἂν λειφθείη· ταῦτ' ἐννοούμενοι καὶ ἀθύμως ἔχοντες ὀλίγοι μὲν αὐτῶν εἰς τὴν ἐσπέραν σίτου ἐγεύσαντο, ὀλίγοι δὲ πῦρ ἀνέκαυσαν, ἐπὶ δὲ τὰ ὄπλα πολλοὶ οὐκ ἦλθον ταύτην τὴν νύκτα, ἀνεπαύοντο δὲ ὅπου ἐτύγχανον ἕκαστος, οὐ δυνάμενοι καθεῦδειν ὑπὸ λύπης καὶ πόθου πατρίδων,

¹ The summary prefixed to Book III. (see note on II. i. 1) is as follows: "Ὅσα μὲν δὴ ἐν τῇ Κύρου ἀναβάσει οἱ Ἕλληνες ἔπραξαν μέχρι τῆς μάχης, καὶ ὅσα ἐπεὶ Κύρος ἐτελεύτησεν ἐγένετο ἀπιόντων τῶν Ἑλλήνων σὺν Τισσαφέρνει ἐν ταῖς σπονδαῖς, ἐν τῇ πρόσθεν λόγῳ δεδήλωται.

I. ¹ AFTER the generals had been seized and such of the captains and soldiers as accompanied them had been killed, the Greeks were naturally in great perplexity, reflecting that they were at the King's gates, that round about them on every side were many hostile tribes and cities, that no one would provide them a market any longer, that they were distant from Greece not less than ten thousand stadia, that they had no guide to show them the way, that they were cut off by impassable rivers which flowed across the homeward route, that the barbarians who had made the upward march with Cyrus had also betrayed them, and that they were left alone, without even a single horseman to support them, so that it was quite clear that if they should be victorious, they could not kill anyone,² while if they should be defeated, not one of them would be left alive. Full of these reflections and despondent as they were, but few of them tasted food at evening, few kindled a fire, and many did not come that night to their quarters, but lay down wherever they each chanced to be, unable to sleep for grief and longing for their native

¹ Summary (see opposite page): The preceding narrative has described all that the Greeks did in the course of the upward march with Cyrus until the time of the battle, and all that took place after the death of Cyrus while the Greeks were on the way back with Tissaphernes during the period of the truce. ² See II. iv. 6 and the note.

γονέων, γυναικῶν, παίδων, οὓς οὐποτ' ἐνόμιζον ἔτι ὄψεσθαι. οὕτω μὲν δὴ διακείμενοι πάντες ἀνεπαύοντο.

- 4 Ἦν δέ τις ἐν τῇ στρατιᾷ Ξενοφῶν Ἀθηναῖος, ὃς οὔτε στρατηγὸς οὔτε λοχαγὸς οὔτε στρατιώτης ὦν συνηκολούθει, ἀλλὰ Πρόξενος αὐτὸν μετεπέμψατο οἴκοθεν ξένος ὦν ἀρχαῖος· ὑπισχνεῖτο δὲ αὐτῷ, εἰ ἔλθοι, φίλον αὐτὸν Κύρῳ ποιήσῃν, ὃν αὐτὸς ἔφη κρείττω ἑαυτῷ νομίζειν τῆς πατρίδος.
- 5 ὁ μέντοι Ξενοφῶν ἀναγνοὺς τὴν ἐπιστολὴν ἀνακοινοῦται Σωκράτει τῷ Ἀθηναίῳ περὶ τῆς πορείας, καὶ ὁ Σωκράτης ὑποπτεύσας μὴ τι πρὸς τῆς πόλεως ὑπαίτιον εἶη Κύρῳ φίλον γενέσθαι, ὅτι ἐδόκει ὁ Κύρος προθύμως τοῖς Λακεδαιμονίοις ἐπὶ τὰς Ἀθήνας συμπολεμῆσαι, συμβουλεύει τῷ Ξενοφῶντι ἐλθόντα εἰς Δελφοὺς ἀνακοινῶσαι τῷ
- 6 θεῷ περὶ τῆς πορείας. ἐλθὼν δ' ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἐπήρετο τὸν Ἀπόλλω τίνι ἂν θεῶν θύων καὶ εὐχόμενος κάλλιστα καὶ ἄριστα ἔλθοι τὴν ὁδὸν ἣν ἐπινοεῖ καὶ καλῶς πράξας σωθείη. καὶ ἀνείλεν
- 7 αὐτῷ ὁ Ἀπόλλων θεοῖς οἷς ἔδει θύειν. ἐπεὶ δὲ πάλιν ἦλθε, λέγει τὴν μαντείαν τῷ Σωκράτει. ὁ δ' ἀκούσας ἠτιᾶτο αὐτὸν ὅτι οὐ τοῦτο πρῶτον ἠρώτα πότερον λῶον εἶη αὐτῷ πορεύεσθαι ἢ μένειν, ἀλλ' αὐτὸς κρίνας ἰτέον εἶναι τοῦτ' ἐπυθάνετο ὅπως ἂν κάλλιστα πορευθείη. ἐπεὶ μέντοι

¹ The philosopher, whose follower and friend Xenophon had been from his youth.

states and parents, their wives and children, whom they thought they should never see again. Such was the state of mind in which they all lay down to rest.

There was a man in the army named Xenophon, an Athenian, who was neither general nor captain nor private, but had accompanied the expedition because Proxenus, an old friend of his, had sent him at his home an invitation to go with him; Proxenus had also promised him that, if he would go, he would make him a friend of Cyrus, whom he himself regarded, so he said, as worth more to him than was his native state. After reading Proxenus' letter Xenophon conferred with Socrates,¹ the Athenian, about the proposed journey; and Socrates, suspecting that his becoming a friend of Cyrus might be a cause for accusation against Xenophon on the part of the Athenian government, for the reason that Cyrus was thought to have given the Lacedaemonians zealous aid in their war against Athens,² advised Xenophon to go to Delphi and consult the god in regard to this journey. So Xenophon went and asked Apollo to what one of the gods he should sacrifice and pray in order best and most successfully to perform the journey which he had in mind and, after meeting with good fortune, to return home in safety; and Apollo in his response told him to what gods he must sacrifice. When Xenophon came back from Delphi, he reported the oracle to Socrates; and upon hearing about it Socrates found fault with him because he did not first put the question whether it were better for him to go or stay, but decided for himself that he was to go and then asked the god as to the best way of going. "However," he added, "since

² See Introd., pp. 231-233.

οὕτως ἤρου, ταῦτ', ἔφη, χρῆ ποιεῖν ὅσα ὁ θεὸς ἐκέλευσεν.

- 8 Ὁ μὲν δὴ Ξενοφῶν οὕτω θυσάμενος οἷς ἀνείλεν ὁ θεὸς ἐξέπλει, καὶ καταλαμβάνει ἐν Σάρδεσι Πρόξενον καὶ Κῦρον μέλλοντας ἤδη ὁρμᾶν τὴν
9 ἄνω ὁδόν, καὶ συνεστάθη Κύρῳ. προθυμουμένον δὲ τοῦ Προξένου καὶ ὁ Κῦρος συμπροθυμεῖτο μείναι αὐτόν, εἶπε δὲ ὅτι ἐπειδὴν τάχιστα ἡ στρατεία λήξῃ, εὐθὺς ἀποπέμψει αὐτόν. ἐλέγετο
10 δὲ ὁ στόλος εἶναι εἰς Πισίδας. ἐστρατεύετο μὲν δὴ οὕτως ἐξαπατηθεῖς—οὐχ ὑπὸ Προξένου· οὐ γὰρ ἤδει τὴν ἐπὶ βασιλέα ὁρμῆν οὐδὲ ἄλλος οὐδεὶς τῶν Ἑλλήνων πλὴν Κλεάρχου· ἐπεὶ μέντοι εἰς Κιλικίαν ἦλθον, σαφὲς πᾶσιν ἤδη ἐδόκει εἶναι ὅτι ὁ στόλος εἶη ἐπὶ βασιλέα. φοβούμενοι δὲ τὴν ὁδὸν καὶ ἄκουτες ὁμῶς οἱ πολλοὶ δι' αἰσχύνην καὶ ἀλλήλων καὶ Κύρου συνηκολούθησαν ὧν εἰς καὶ Ξενοφῶν ἦν.
11 Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀπορία ἦν, ἐλυπεῖτο μὲν σὺν τοῖς ἄλλοις καὶ οὐκ ἐδύνατο καθεύδειν· μικρὸν δ' ὕπνου λαχὼν εἶδεν ὄναρ. ἔδοξεν αὐτῷ βροντῆς γενομένης σκηπτὸς πεσεῖν εἰς τὴν πατρῴαν οἰκίαν, καὶ
12 ἐκ τούτου λάμπεσθαι πᾶσα. περίφοβος δ' εὐθὺς ἀνηγέρθη, καὶ τὸ ὄναρ τῇ μὲν ἔκρινεν ἀγαθόν, ὅτι ἐν πόνοις ὦν καὶ κινδύνοις φῶς μέγα ἐκ Διὸς ἰδεῖν ἔδοξε· τῇ δὲ καὶ ἐφοβεῖτο, ὅτι ἀπὸ Διὸς μὲν

you did put the question in that way, you must do all that the god directed."

Xenophon, accordingly, after offering the sacrifices to the gods that Apollo's oracle prescribed, set sail, overtook Proxenus and Cyrus at Sardis as they were on the point of beginning the upward march, and was introduced to Cyrus. And not only did Proxenus urge him to stay with them, but Cyrus also joined in this request, adding that as soon as the campaign came to an end, he would send Xenophon home at once; and the report was that the campaign was against the Pisidians. It was in this way, then, that Xenophon came to go on the expedition, quite deceived about its purpose—not, however, by Proxenus, for he did not know that the attack was directed against the King, nor did anyone else among the Greeks with the exception of Clearchus; but by the time they reached Cilicia, it seemed clear to everybody that the expedition was really against the King. Then, although the Greeks were fearful of the journey and unwilling to go on, most of them did, nevertheless, out of shame before one another and before Cyrus, continue the march. And Xenophon was one of this number.

Now when the time of perplexity came, he was distressed as well as everybody else and was unable to sleep; but, getting at length a little sleep, he had a dream. It seemed to him that there was a clap of thunder and a bolt fell on his father's house, setting the whole house ablaze. He awoke at once in great fear, and judged the dream in one way an auspicious one, because in the midst of hardships and perils he had seemed to behold a great light from Zeus; but looking at it in another way he was fearful, since the

- βασιλέως τὸ ὄναρ ἐδόκει αὐτῷ εἶναι, κύκλω δὲ
 ἐδόκει λάμπειναι τὸ πῦρ, μὴ οὐ δύναίτο ἐκ τῆς
 13 χώρας ἐξελθεῖν τῆς βασιλέως, ἀλλ' εἴργοιτο πάν-
 τοθεν ὑπὸ τινῶν ἀποριῶν. ὁποῖόν τι μὲν δὴ
 ἐστὶ τὸ τοιοῦτον ὄναρ ἰδεῖν ἔξεστι σκοπεῖν ἐκ τῶν
 συμβάντων μετὰ τὸ ὄναρ. γίνεταί γὰρ τάδε.
 εὐθύς ἐπειδὴ ἀνηγέρθη πρῶτον μὲν ἔννοια αὐτῷ
 ἐμπίπτει τί κατάκειμαι; ἢ δὲ νύξ προβαίνει
 ἅμα δὲ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ εἰκὸς τοὺς πολεμίους ἤξειν. εἰ
 δὲ γενησόμεθα ἐπὶ βασιλεῖ, τί ἐμποδῶν μὴ οὐχὶ
 πάντα μὲν τὰ χαλεπώτατα ἐπιδύοντας, πάντα δὲ
 τὰ δεινότατα παθόντας ὑβριζομένους ἀποθανεῖν;
 14 ὅπως δ' ἀμυνόμεθα οὐδεὶς παρασκευάζεται οὐδὲ
 ἐπιμελεῖται, ἀλλὰ κατακείμεθα ὥσπερ ἔξον ἡσυ-
 χίαν ἄγειν. ἐγὼ οὖν τὸν ἐκ ποίας πόλεως στρα-
 τηγὸν προσδοκῶ ταῦτα πράξειν; ποίαν δ' ἡλικίαν
 ἔμαυτῷ ἐλθεῖν ἀναμείνω; οὐ γὰρ ἔγωγ' ἔτι πρεσ-
 βύτερος ἔσομαι, ἐὰν τήμερον προδῶ ἔμαυτὸν τοῖς
 πολεμίοις.
 15 Ἐκ τούτου ἀνίσταται καὶ συγκαλεῖ τοὺς Προ-
 ξένου πρῶτον λοχαγούς. ἐπεὶ δὲ συνῆλθον,
 ἔλεξεν. Ἐγὼ, ὦ ἄνδρες λοχαγοί, οὔτε καθεύδειν
 δύναμαι, ὥσπερ οἶμαι οὐδ' ὑμεῖς, οὔτε κατακεῖ-
 16 σθαι ἔτι, ὁρῶν ἐν οἷοις ἐσμέν. οἱ μὲν γὰρ πολεμιοὶ
 δῆλον ὅτι οὐ πρότερον πρὸς ἡμᾶς τὸν πόλεμον
 ἐξέφηναν πρὶν ἐνόμισαν καλῶς τὰ ἑαυτῶν παρα-
 σκευάσασθαι, ἡμῶν δ' οὐδεὶς οὐδὲν ἀντεπιμελεῖ-
 17 ται ὅπως ὡς κάλλιστα ἀγωνιούμεθα. καὶ μὴν εἰ

dream came, as he thought, from Zeus the King and the
 fire appeared to blaze all about, lest he might not be
 able to escape out of the King's country,¹ but might
 be shut in on all sides by various difficulties. Now
 what it really means to have such a dream one may
 learn from the events which followed the dream—and
 they were these: Firstly, on the moment of his
 awakening the thought occurred to him: "Why do
 I lie here? The night is wearing on, and at daybreak
 it is likely that the enemy will be upon us. And if
 we fall into the King's hands, what is there to prevent
 our living to behold all the most grievous sights and
 to experience all the most dreadful sufferings, and
 then being put to death with insult? As for defend-
 ing ourselves, however, no one is making preparations
 or taking thought for that, but we lie here just as if
 it were possible for us to enjoy our ease. What about
 myself, then? From what state am I expecting the
 general to come who is to perform these duties?
 And what age must I myself wait to attain? For
 surely I shall never be any older, if this day I give
 myself up to the enemy."

Then he arose and, as a first step, called together
 the captains of Proxenus. When they had gathered,
 he said: "Gentlemen, I am unable either to sleep, as I
 presume you are also, or to lie still any longer, when
 I see in what straits we now are. For the enemy
 manifestly did not begin open war upon us until the
 moment when they believed that their own prepar-
 ations had been adequately made; but on our side
 no one is planning any counter-measures at all
 to ensure our making the best possible fight. And

¹ King Zeus in the dream is the Persian King in the inter-
pretation.

- ὕψησόμεθα καὶ ἐπὶ βασιλεῖ γενησόμεθα, τί οἰόμεθα πείσεσθαι; ὃς καὶ τοῦ ὁμομητρίου ἀδελφοῦ καὶ τεθνηκότος ἤδη ἀποτεμῶν τὴν κεφαλὴν καὶ τὴν χεῖρα ἀνεσταύρωσεν· ἡμᾶς δέ, οἷς κηδεμῶν μὲν οὐδεὶς πάρεστιν, ἐστρατεύσαμεν δὲ ἐπ' αὐτὸν ὡς δούλον ἀντὶ βασιλέως ποιήσοντες καὶ ἀποκτε-
 18 νοῦντες εἰ δυναίμεθα, τί ἂν οἰόμεθα παθεῖν; ἄρ' οὐκ ἂν ἐπὶ πᾶν ἔλθοι ὡς ἡμᾶς τὰ ἔσχατα αἰκισάμενος πᾶσιν ἀνθρώποις φόβον παράσχοι τοῦ στρατεύσαι ποτε ἐπ' αὐτόν; ἀλλ' ὅπως τοι μὴ ἐπ' ἐκείνῳ γενησόμεθα πάντα ποιητέον.
- 19 Ἐγὼ μὲν οὖν ἔστε μὲν αἱ σπονδαὶ ἦσαν οὔποτε ἐπαυόμην ἡμᾶς μὲν οἰκτίρων, βασιλέα δὲ καὶ τοὺς σὺν αὐτῷ μακαρίζων, διαθεώμενος αὐτῶν ὅσην μὲν χώραν καὶ οἶαν ἔχοιεν, ὡς δὲ ἄφθονα τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, ὅσους δὲ θεράποντας, ὅσα δὲ κτήνην,
 20 χρυσὸν δέ, ἐσθήητα δέ· τὰ δ' αὖ τῶν στρατιωτῶν ὅποτε ἐνθυμοίμην, ὅτι τῶν μὲν ἀγαθῶν τούτων οὐδενὸς ἡμῖν μετεῖη, εἰ μὴ πριαίμεθα, ὅτου δ' ὠνησόμεθα ἦδειν ἔτι ὀλίγους ἔχοντας, ἄλλως δέ πως πορίζεσθαι τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἢ ὠνουμένους ὄρκους ἤδη¹ κατέχοντας ἡμᾶς· ταῦτ' οὖν λογιζόμενος ἐνίστε τὰς σπονδὰς μᾶλλον ἐφοβούμην ἢ νῦν τὸν
 21 πόλεμον. ἐπεὶ μέντοι ἐκείνοι ἔλυσαν τὰς σπονδὰς, λελύσθαι μοι δοκεῖ καὶ ἡ ἐκείνων ὕβρις καὶ ἡ ἡμετέρα ἀπορία.² ἐν μέσῳ γὰρ ἤδη κείται ταῦτα τὰ ἀγαθὰ ἄθλα ὁπότεροι ἂν ἡμῶν ἄνδρες

¹ ἤδη Gem., following Rehdantz: ἤδη MSS.

² ἀπορία Hude: ὑποψία MSS., Gem., Mar.: ἀσάφεια Hug.

yet if we submit and fall into the King's hands, what do we imagine our fate is to be? Even in the case of his own brother, and, yet more, when he was already dead, this man cut off his head and his hand and impaled them; as for ourselves, then, who have no one to intercede for us,¹ and who took the field against him with the intention of making him a slave rather than a king and of killing him if we could, what fate may we expect to suffer? Will he not do his utmost to inflict upon us the most outrageous tortures, and thus make all mankind afraid ever to undertake an expedition against him? We, then, must make every effort not to fall into his power.

“For my part, so long as the truce lasted I never ceased commiserating ourselves and congratulating the King and his followers; for I saw plainly what a great amount of fine land they possessed, what an abundance of provisions, what quantities of servants, cattle, gold, and apparel; but whenever I took thought of the situation of our own soldiers, I saw that we had no share in these good things, except we bought them, I knew there were but few of us who still had money wherewith to buy, and I knew that our oaths restrained us from getting provisions in any other way than by purchase. Hence, with these considerations in mind, I used sometimes to fear the truce more than I now fear war. But seeing that their own act has put an end to the truce, the end has likewise come, in my opinion, both of their arrogance and of our embarrassment. For now all these good things are offered as prizes for whichever of the two parties shall prove to be

¹ cp. I. i. 3 f.

- 22 ἀμείνονες ὄσιν, ἀγωνοθέται δ' οἱ θεοὶ εἰσιν, οἳ
 σὺν ἡμῖν, ὡς τὸ εἰκός, ἔσονται. οὔτοι μὲν γὰρ
 αὐτοὺς ἐπιωρκήκασιν· ἡμεῖς δὲ πολλὰ ὀρώντες
 ἀγαθὰ στερρώως αὐτῶν ἀπειχόμεθα διὰ τοὺς τῶν
 θεῶν ὄρκους· ὥστε ἐξεῖναι μοι δοκεῖ ἵεναι ἐπὶ τὸν
 23 ἀγῶνα πολὺ σὺν φρονήματι μείζονι ἢ τούτοις. ἔτι
 δ' ἔχομεν σώματα ἰκανώτερα τούτων καὶ ψύχη
 καὶ θάλπη καὶ πόνους φέρειν· ἔχομεν δὲ καὶ
 ψυχὰς σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς ἀμείνονας· οἳ δὲ ἄνδρες καὶ
 τρωτοὶ καὶ θνητοὶ μᾶλλον ἡμῶν, ἣν οἱ θεοὶ ὥσπερ
 τὸ πρόσθεν νίκην ἡμῖν διδώσιν.
 24 Ἄλλ' ἴσως γὰρ καὶ ἄλλοι ταῦτ' ἐνθυμούνται,
 πρὸς τῶν θεῶν μὴ ἀναμένωμεν ἄλλους ἐφ' ἡμᾶς
 ἐλθεῖν παρακαλοῦντας ἐπὶ τὰ κάλλιστα ἔργα,
 ἀλλ' ἡμεῖς ἄρξωμεν τοῦ ἐξορμῆσαι καὶ τοὺς ἄλ-
 λους ἐπὶ τὴν ἀρετήν· φάνητε τῶν λοχαγῶν ἄρι-
 στοὶ καὶ τῶν στρατηγῶν ἀξιοστρατηγότεροι.
 25 κἀγὼ δέ, εἰ μὲν ὑμεῖς ἐθέλετε ἐξορμᾶν ἐπὶ ταῦτα,
 ἔπεσθαι ὑμῖν βούλομαι, εἰ δ' ὑμεῖς τάττετ' ἐμὲ
 ἡγεῖσθαι, οὐδὲν προφασίζομαι τὴν ἡλικίαν, ἀλλὰ
 καὶ ἀκμάζειν ἡγοῦμαι ἐρύκειν ἀπ' ἐμαυτοῦ τὰ
 κακά.
 26 Ὁ μὲν ταῦτ' ἔλεξεν, οἳ δὲ ἀρχηγοὶ ἀκούσαντες
 ἡγεῖσθαι ἐκέλευον πάντες, πλὴν Ἀπολλωνίδης
 τις ἦν βοιωτιάζων τῇ φωνῇ· οὗτος δ' εἶπεν ὅτι
 φλυαροίη ὅστις λέγει ἄλλως πῶς σωτηρίας ἀν-
 τυχεῖν ἢ βασιλέα πείσας, εἰ δύναίτο, καὶ ἅμα
 27 ἤρχετο λέγειν τὰς ἀπορίας. ὁ μὲντοι Ξενοφῶν

the braver men; and the judges of the contest are the gods, who, in all likelihood, will be on our side. For our enemies have sworn falsely by them, while we, with abundant possessions before our eyes, have steadfastly kept our hands therefrom because of our oaths by the gods; hence we, I think, can go into the contest with far greater confidence than can our enemies. Besides, we have bodies more capable than theirs of bearing cold and heat and toil, and we likewise, by the blessing of the gods, have better souls; and these men are more liable than we to be wounded and killed, if the gods again, as on that former day, grant us victory.

"And now, since it may be that others also have these same thoughts in mind, let us not, in the name of the gods, wait for others to come to us and summon us to the noblest deeds, but let us take the lead ourselves and arouse the rest to valour. Show yourselves the best of the captains, and more worthy to be generals than the generals themselves. As for me, if you choose to set out upon this course, I am ready to follow you; but if you assign me the leadership, I do not plead my youth as an excuse; rather, I believe I am in the very prime of my power to ward off dangers from my own head."

Such were Xenophon's words; and upon hearing what he said the officers bade him take the lead, all of them except a man named Apollonides, who spoke in the Boeotian dialect. This man maintained that anyone who said he could gain safety in any other way than by winning the King's consent through persuasion, if possible, was talking nonsense; and at the same time he began to recite the difficulties of their situation. Xenophon, however, interrupted

- μεταξὺ ὑπολαβῶν ἔλεξεν ὧδε. Ὁ θαυμασιώτατε ἄνθρωπε, σύγε οὐδὲ ὀρῶν γιγνώσκεις οὐδὲ ἀκούων μέμνησαι. ἐν ταύτῳ γε μέντοι ἦσθα τούτοις ὅτε βασιλεύς, ἐπεὶ Κύρος ἀπέθανε, μέγα φρονήσας ἐπὶ τούτῳ πέμπων ἐκέλευε παραδιδόναι τὰ ὄπλα.
- 28 ἐπεὶ δὲ ἡμεῖς οὐ παραδόντες, ἀλλ' ἐξοπλισάμενοι ἐλθόντες παρεσκηνήσαμεν αὐτῷ, τί οὐκ ἐποίησε πρέσβεις πέμπων καὶ σπονδὰς αἰτῶν καὶ παρέ-
- 29 χων τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, ἔστε σπονδῶν ἔτυχεν; ἐπεὶ δ' αὖ οἱ στρατηγοὶ καὶ λοχαγοί, ὥσπερ δὴ σὺ κελεύεις, εἰς λόγους αὐτοῖς ἄνευ ὀπλων ἦλθον πιστεύσαντες ταῖς σπονδαῖς, οὐ νῦν ἐκεῖνοι παιόμενοι, κεντούμενοι, ὑβριζόμενοι οὐδὲ ἀποθανεῖν οἱ τλήμονες δύνανται, καὶ μάλ' οἶμαι ἐρῶντες τούτου; ἂ σὺ πάντα εἰδὼς τοὺς μὲν ἀμύνασθαι κελεύοντας φλυαρεῖν φῆς, πείθειν δὲ πάλιν κελεύεις
- 30 ἰόντας; ἐμοί, ὦ ἄνδρες, δοκεῖ τὸν ἄνθρωπον τούτου μήτε προσίεσθαι εἰς ταῦτ' ἡμῖν αὐτοῖς ἀφελομένους τε τὴν λοχαγίαν σκευὴ ἀναθέντας ὡς τοιοῦτῳ χρῆσθαι. οὗτος γὰρ καὶ τὴν πατρίδα καταισχύνει καὶ πᾶσαν τὴν Ἑλλάδα, ὅτι Ἕλληνας ὡν τοιοῦτός ἐστιν.
- 31 Ἐντεῦθεν ὑπολαβῶν Ἀγασίας Στυμφάλιος εἶπεν· Ἀλλὰ τούτῳ γε οὔτε τῆς Βοιωτίας προσήκει οὐδὲν οὔτε τῆς Ἑλλάδος παντάπασιν, ἐπεὶ ἐγὼ αὐτὸν εἶδον ὥσπερ Λυδὸν ἀμφοτέρα τὰ ὦτα
- 32 τετραπημένον. καὶ εἶχεν οὕτως. τούτον μὲν οὖν

¹ The Greeks considered it effeminate for a man to wear ear-rings. His bored ears, therefore, marked Apollonides as a barbarian.

him in the midst of his talk, and said: "You amazing fellow, you have eyes but still do not perceive, and you have ears but still do not remember. You were present, surely, with the rest of these officers at the time when the King, after the death of Cyrus and in his elation over that event, sent and ordered us to give up our arms. But when, instead of giving them up, we equipped ourselves with them, and went and encamped beside him, what means did he leave untried—sending ambassadors, begging for a truce, offering us provisions—until in the end he obtained a truce? When, however, our generals and captains, following precisely the plan that you are now urging, went unarmed to a conference with them, relying upon the truce, what happened in that case? are they not at this moment being beaten, tortured, insulted, unable even to die, hapless men that they are, even though they earnestly long, I imagine, for death? And do you, knowing all these things, say that they are talking nonsense who urge self-defence, and do you propose that we should again go and try persuasion? In my opinion, gentlemen, we should not simply refuse to admit this fellow to companionship with us, but should deprive him of his captaincy, lay packs on his back, and treat him as that sort of a creature. For the fellow is a disgrace both to his native state and to the whole of Greece, since, being a Greek, he is still a man of this kind."

Then Agasias, a Stymphalian, broke in and said: "For that matter, this fellow has nothing to do either with Boeotia or with any part of Greece at all, for I have noticed that he has both his ears bored,¹ like a Lydian's."² In fact, it was so. He, therefore,

² The Lydians were proverbially effeminate.

ἀπήλασαν· οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι παρὰ τὰς τάξεις ἰόντες ὅπου μὲν στρατηγὸς σῶος εἶη τὸν στρατηγὸν παρεκάλουν, ὁπόθεν δὲ οἴχοιτο τὸν ὑποστράτηγον, ὅπου δ' αὖ λοχαγὸς σῶος εἶη τὸν λοχαγόν.

33 ἐπεὶ δὲ πάντες συνήλθον, εἰς τὸ πρόσθεν τῶν ὅπλων ἐκαθέζοντο· καὶ ἐγένοντο οἱ συνελθόντες στρατηγοὶ καὶ λοχαγοὶ ἀμφὶ τοὺς ἑκατόν. ὅτε

34 δὲ ταῦτα ἦν σχεδὸν μέσαι ἡσαν νύκτες. ἐνταῦθα Ἱερώνυμος Ἡλείος πρεσβύτατος ὢν τῶν Προξένου λοχαγῶν ἤρχετο λέγειν ὧδε. Ἡμῖν, ὦ ἄνδρες στρατηγοὶ καὶ λοχαγοί, ὁρῶσι τὰ παρόντα ἔδοξε καὶ αὐτοῖς συνελθεῖν καὶ ὑμᾶς παρακαλέσαι, ὅπως βουλευσάμεθα εἴ τι δυναίμεθα ἀγαθόν. λέξον δ', ἔφη, καὶ νῦν,¹ ὦ Ξενοφῶν, ἅπερ καὶ πρὸς ἡμᾶς.

35 Ἐκ τούτου λέγει τάδε Ξενοφῶν· Ἄλλὰ ταῦτα μὲν δὴ πάντες ἐπιστάμεθα, ὅτι βασιλεὺς καὶ Τισσαφέρνης οὓς μὲν ἐδυνήθησαν συνειλήφασιν ἡμῶν, τοῖς δ' ἄλλοις δῆλον ὅτι ἐπιβουλεύουσιν, ὡς ἦν δύνωνται ἀπολέσωσιν. ἡμῖν δέ γε οἶμαι πάντα ποιητέα ὡς μήποτε ἐπὶ τοῖς βαρβάροις γενώμεθα,

36 ἀλλὰ μᾶλλον ἐκεῖνοι ἐφ' ἡμῖν. εὐ τοίνυν ἐπίστασθε ὅτι ὑμεῖς τοσοῦτοι ὄντες ὅσοι νῦν συνελθύθατε μέγιστον ἔχετε καιρόν. οἱ γὰρ στρατιῶται οὗτοι πάντες πρὸς ὑμᾶς βλέπουσι, κἂν μὲν ὑμᾶς ὁρῶσιν ἀθύμους, πάντες κακοὶ ἔσονται, ἂν δὲ

was driven away, but the others proceeded to visit the various divisions¹ of the army. Wherever a general was left alive, they would invite him to join them; where the general was gone, they invited the lieutenant-general; or, again, where only a captain was left, the captain. When all had come together, they seated themselves at the front of the encampment, and the generals and captains thus assembled amounted in number to about one hundred. By this time it was nearly midnight. Then Hieronymus the Elean, who was the eldest of Proxenus' captains, began to speak as follows: "Generals and captains, we have deemed it best, in view of the present situation, both to come together ourselves and to invite you to join us, in order that we may devise whatever good counsel we can. Repeat now, Xenophon," he added, "just what you said to us."

Thereupon Xenophon spoke as follows: "We all understand thus much, that the King and Tissaphernes have seized as many as they could of our number, and that they are manifestly plotting against the rest of us, to destroy us if they can. It is for us, then, in my opinion, to make every effort that we may never fall into the power of the barbarians, but that they may rather fall into our power. Be sure, therefore, that you, who have now come together in such numbers, have the grandest of opportunities. For all our soldiers here are looking to you; if they see that you are faint-hearted, all of them will be cowards; but if you not

¹ νῦν Gem., following Carnuth: σὺ MSS.

¹ The division (τάξις) was not a body of any specified size, but comprised the troops under the command of a single general (στρατηγός). See below.

ὑμεῖς αὐτοί τε παρασκευαζόμενοι φανεροὶ ἦτε ἐπὶ
 τοὺς πολεμίους καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους παρακαλήτε, εὖ
 ἴστε ὅτι ἔψονται ὑμῖν καὶ πειράσονται μιμεῖσθαι.
 37 ἴσως δέ τοι καὶ δίκαιόν ἐστιν ὑμᾶς διαφέρειν τι
 τούτων. ὑμεῖς γὰρ ἐστε στρατηγοί, ὑμεῖς ταξίαρ-
 χοὶ καὶ λοχαγοί· καὶ ὅτε εἰρήνη ἦν, ὑμεῖς καὶ
 χρήμασι καὶ τιμαῖς τούτων ἐπλεονεκτεῖτε· καὶ
 νῦν τοίνυν ἐπεὶ πόλεμός ἐστιν, ἀξιοῦν δεῖ ὑμᾶς
 αὐτοὺς ἀμείνους τε τοῦ πλήθους εἶναι καὶ προ-
 βουλεύειν τούτων καὶ προπονεῖν, ἣν που δέη.
 38 Καὶ νῦν πρῶτον μὲν οἶμαι ἂν ὑμᾶς μέγα
 ὠφελῆσαι τὸ στράτευμα, εἰ ἐπιμεληθείητε ὅπως
 ἀντὶ τῶν ἀπολωλότων ὡς τάχιστα στρατηγοὶ καὶ
 λοχαγοὶ ἀντικατασταθῶσιν. ἀνευ γὰρ ἀρχόντων
 οὐδὲν ἂν οὔτε καλὸν οὔτε ἀγαθὸν γένοιτο ὡς μὲν
 συνελόντι εἰπεῖν οὐδαμοῦ, ἐν δὲ δὴ τοῖς πολε-
 μικοῖς παντάπασιν. ἡ μὲν γὰρ εὐταξία σφάζειν
 δοκεῖ, ἡ δὲ ἀταξία πολλοὺς ἤδη ἀπολώλεκεν.
 39 ἐπειδὴν δὲ καταστήσησθε τοὺς ἄρχοντας ὅσους
 δεῖ, ἦν καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους στρατιώτας συλλέγητε
 καὶ παραθαρρύνητε, οἶμαι ἂν ὑμᾶς πάνυ ἐν
 40 καιρῷ ποιῆσαι. νῦν γὰρ ἴσως καὶ ὑμεῖς αισθά-
 νεσθε ὡς ἀθύμως μὲν ἦλθον ἐπὶ τὰ ὄπλα, ἀθύμως
 δὲ πρὸς τὰς φυλακάς· ὥστε οὕτω γ' ἐχόντων οὐκ
 οἶδα ὅ τι ἂν τις χρήσαιτο αὐτοῖς, εἴτε νυκτὸς δέοι
 41 εἴτε καὶ ἡμέρας. ἦν δὲ τις αὐτῶν τρέψῃ τὰς γνώ-
 μας, ὡς μὴ τοῦτο μόνον ἐννοῶνται τί πείσονται

only show that you are making preparations your-
 selves against the enemy, but call upon the rest to
 do likewise, be well assured that they will follow
 you and will try to imitate you. But perhaps it is
 really proper that you should somewhat excel them.
 For you are generals, you are lieutenant-generals
 and captains; while peace lasted, you had the
 advantage of them alike in pay and in standing;
 now, therefore, when a state of war exists, it is right
 to expect that you should be superior to the common
 soldiers, and that you should plan for them and toil
 for them whenever there be need.

"And now, firstly, I think you would do the army
 a great service if you should see to it that generals
 and captains are appointed as speedily as possible to
 take the places of those who are lost. For without
 leaders nothing fine or useful can be accomplished
 in any field, to put it broadly, and certainly not
 in warfare. For discipline, it seems, keeps men in
 safety, while the lack of it has brought many ere
 now to destruction. Secondly, when you have
 appointed all the leaders that are necessary, I think
 you would perform a very opportune act if you
 should gather together the rest of the soldiers also
 and try to encourage them. For, as matters stand
 now, perhaps you have observed for yourselves in
 what dejection they came to their quarters and in
 what dejection they proceeded to their picket duty;
 and so long as they are in this state, I know not
 what use one could make of them, if there should
 be need of them either by night or by day. If,
 however, we can turn the current of their minds,
 so that they shall be thinking, not merely of what
 they are to suffer, but likewise of what they are

ἀλλὰ καὶ τί ποιήσουσι, πολὺ εὐθυμότεροι ἔσονται.
 42 ἐπίστασθε γὰρ δὴ ὅτι οὔτε πληθὸς ἔστιν οὔτε
 ἰσχὺς ἢ ἐν τῷ πολέμῳ τὰς νίκας ποιούσα, ἀλλ'
 ὁπότεροι ἂν σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς ταῖς ψυχαῖς ἐρρωμενέ-
 στεροι ἴωσιν ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους, τούτους ὡς ἐπὶ
 43 τὸ πολὺ οἱ ἀντίοι οὐ δέχονται. ἐντεθύμημαι δ'
 ἔγωγε, ὦ ἄνδρες, καὶ τοῦτο, ὅτι ὁπόσοι μὲν μασ-
 τεύουσι ζῆν ἐκ παντὸς τρόπου ἐν τοῖς πολεμικοῖς,
 οὗτοι μὲν κακῶς τε καὶ αἰσχροῦς ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ πολὺ
 ἀποθνήσκουσιν, ὁπόσοι δὲ τὸν μὲν θάνατον ἐγνώ-
 κασι πᾶσι κοινὸν εἶναι καὶ ἀναγκαῖον ἀνθρώποις,
 περὶ δὲ τοῦ καλῶς ἀποθνήσκειν ἀγωνίζονται,
 τούτους ὀρῶ μᾶλλον πῶς εἰς τὸ γῆρας ἀφικνου-
 μένους καὶ ἕως ἂν ζῶσιν εὐδαιμονέστερον διάγον-
 44 τας. ἃ καὶ ἡμᾶς¹ δεῖ νῦν καταμαθόντας, ἐν τοιούτῳ
 γὰρ καιρῷ ἔσμεν, αὐτούς τε ἄνδρας ἀγαθοὺς εἶναι
 45 καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους παρακαλεῖν. ὁ μὲν ταῦτα εἰπὼν
 ἐπαύσατο.

Μετὰ δὲ τοῦτον εἶπε Χειρίσοφος· Ἀλλὰ πρό-
 σθεν μὲν, ὦ Ξενοφῶν, τοσοῦτον μόνον σε ἐγίγνω-
 σκον ὅσον ἤκουον Ἀθηναῖον εἶναι, νῦν δὲ καὶ
 ἐπαινώ σε ἐφ' οἷς λέγεις τε καὶ πράττεις καὶ
 βουλοίμην ἂν ὅτι πλείστους εἶναι τοιούτους·
 46 κοινὸν γὰρ ἂν εἶη τὸ ἀγαθόν. καὶ νῦν, ἔφη, μὴ
 μέλλωμεν, ὦ ἄνδρες, ἀλλ' ἀπελθόντες ἤδη αἰρείσθε
 οἱ δεόμενοι ἄρχοντας, καὶ ἐλόμενοι ἤκετε εἰς τὸ
 μέσον τοῦ στρατοπέδου καὶ τοὺς αἰρεθέντας ἄγετε·
 ἔπειτ' ἐκεῖ συγκαλοῦμεν² τοὺς ἄλλους στρατιώ-

¹ ἡμᾶς the inferior MSS., Gem.: ὑμᾶς the better MSS., Mar.

² συγκαλοῦμεν MSS., Mar.: συγκαλῶμεν Gem., following Nitsche.

going to do, they will be far more cheerful. For you understand, I am sure, that it is neither numbers nor strength which wins victories in war; but whichever of the two sides it be whose troops, by the blessing of the gods, advance to the attack with stouter hearts, against those troops their adversaries generally refuse to stand. And in my own experience, gentlemen, I have observed this other fact, that those who are anxious in war to save their lives in any way they can, are the very men who usually meet with a base and shameful death; while those who have recognized that death is the common and inevitable portion of all mankind and therefore strive to meet death nobly, are precisely those who are somehow more likely to reach old age and who enjoy a happier existence while they do live. We, then, taking to heart this lesson, so suited to the crisis which now confronts us, must be brave men ourselves and call forth bravery in our fellows." With these words Xenophon ceased speaking.

After him Cheirisophus said: "Hitherto, Xenophon, I have known you only to the extent of having heard that you were an Athenian, but now I commend you both for your words and your deeds, and I should be glad if we had very many of your sort; for it would be a blessing to the entire army. And now, gentlemen," he went on, "let us not delay; withdraw and choose your commanders at once, you who need them, and after making your choices come to the middle of the camp and bring with you the men you have selected; then we will call a meeting there of all the troops. And let

47 τας. παρέστω δ' ἡμῖν, ἔφη, καὶ Τολμίδης ὁ κήρυξ. καὶ ἅμα ταῦτ' εἰπὼν ἀνέστη, ὡς μὴ μέλλοιτο ἀλλὰ περαίνοιτο τὰ δέοντα. ἐκ τούτου ἡρέθησαν ἄρχοντες ἀντὶ μὲν Κλεάρχου Τιμασίων Δαρδανεύς, ἀντὶ δὲ Σωκράτους Ξανθικλῆς Ἀχαιός, ἀντὶ δὲ Ἀγίου Κλεάνωρ Ἀρκάς,¹ ἀντὶ δὲ Μένωνος Φιλήσιος Ἀχαιός, ἀντὶ δὲ Προξένου Ξενοφῶν Ἀθηναῖος.

II. Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἤρηντο, ἡμέρα τε σχεδὸν ὑπέβαινε καὶ εἰς τὸ μέσον ἦκου οἱ ἄρχοντες, καὶ ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς προφυλακὰς καταστήσαντας συγκαλεῖν τοὺς στρατιώτας. ἐπεὶ δὲ καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι στρατιῶται συνῆλθον, ἀνέστη πρῶτος μὲν Χειρίσοφος ὁ
2 Λακεδαιμόνιος καὶ ἔλεξεν ὧδε. "Ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, χαλεπὰ μὲν τὰ παρόντα, ὅποτε ἀνδρῶν στρατηγῶν τοιούτων στερόμεθα καὶ λοχαγῶν καὶ στρατιωτῶν, πρὸς δ' ἔτι καὶ οἱ ἀμφὶ Ἀριαῖον οἱ πρόσθεν σύμμαχοι ὄντες προδεδώκασιν ἡμᾶς.
3 ὅμως δὲ δεῖ ἐκ τῶν παρόντων ἀνδρας ἀγαθοὺς τελέθειν καὶ μὴ ὑφίσθαι, ἀλλὰ πειρᾶσθαι ὅπως ἦν μὲν δυνώμεθα καλῶς νικῶντες σφζώμεθα· εἰ δὲ μή, ἀλλὰ καλῶς γε ἀποθνήσκωμεν, ὑποχείριοι δὲ μηδέποτε γενώμεθα ζῶντες τοῖς πολεμίοις. οἶομαι γὰρ ἂν ἡμᾶς τοιαῦτα παθεῖν οἷα τοὺς ἐχθροὺς οἱ θεοὶ ποιήσειαν.

4 Ἐπὶ τούτῳ Κλεάνωρ ὁ Ὀρχομένιος ἀνέστη καὶ ἔλεξεν ὧδε. "Ἄλλ' ὁρᾶτε μὲν, ὦ ἄνδρες, τὴν βασιλέως ἐπιτορκίαν καὶ ἀσέβειαν, ὁρᾶτε δὲ τὴν Τισσαφέρηνος ἀπιστίαν, ὅστις λέγων ὡς γείτων τε

¹ Κλεάνωρ Ἀρκάς the inferior MSS., Mar.: Ἀρκάδος Κλεάνωρ ὁ Ὀρχομένιος the better MSS., which Gem. follows, bracketing Ἀρκάδος.

us make sure," he added, "that Tolmides, the herald, is present." With these words he got up at once, that there might be no delay in carrying out the needful measures. Thereupon the commanders were chosen, Timasion the Dardanian in place of Clearchus, Xanthicles the Achaean in place of Socrates, Cleanor the Arcadian in place of Agias, Philesius the Achaean in place of Menon, and Xenophon the Athenian in place of Proxenus.

II. When these elections had been completed, and as day was just about beginning to break, the commanders met in the middle of the camp; and they resolved to station outposts and then call an assembly of the soldiers. As soon as they had come together, Cheirisophus the Lacedaemonian arose first and spoke as follows: "Fellow-soldiers, painful indeed is our present situation, seeing that we are robbed of such generals and captains and soldiers, and, besides, that Ariaeus and his men, who were formerly our allies, have betrayed us; nevertheless, we must quit ourselves like brave men as well as may be in these circumstances, and must not yield, but rather try to save ourselves by glorious victory if we can; otherwise, let us at least die a glorious death, and never fall into the hands of our enemies alive. For in that case I think we should meet the sort of sufferings that I pray the gods may visit upon our foes."

Then Cleanor the Orchomenian arose and spoke as follows: "Come, fellow-soldiers, you see the perjury and impiety of the King; you see likewise the faithlessness of Tissaphernes. It was Tissaphernes who said¹ that he was a neighbour of Greece and that

¹ II. iii. 18.

- εἴη τῆς Ἑλλάδος καὶ περὶ πλείστου ἂν ποιήσαιτο
σῶσαι ἡμᾶς, καὶ ἐπὶ τούτοις αὐτὸς ὁμόσας ἡμῖν,
αὐτὸς δεξιὰς δούς, αὐτὸς ἑξαπατήσας συνέλαβε
τοὺς στρατηγούς, καὶ οὐδὲ Δία ξένιον ἠδέσθη,
ἀλλὰ Κλεάρχῳ καὶ ὁμοτράπεζος γενόμενος αὐτοῖς
τούτοις ἑξαπατήσας τοὺς ἄνδρας ἀπολώλεκεν.
- 5 Ἄριαῖος δέ, ὃν ἡμεῖς ἠθέλομεν βασιλέα καθι-
στάναι, καὶ ἐδώκαμεν καὶ ἐλάβομεν πιστὰ μὴ
προδώσειν ἀλλήλους, καὶ οὗτος οὔτε τοὺς θεοὺς
δείσας οὔτε Κύρον τεθνηκότα αἰδεσθεῖς, τιμώμενος
μάλιστα ὑπὸ Κύρου ζῶντος, νῦν πρὸς τοὺς
ἐκείνου ἐχθίστους ἀποστὰς ἡμᾶς τοὺς Κύρου
- 6 φίλους κακῶς ποιεῖν πειρᾶται. ἀλλὰ τούτους
μὲν οἱ θεοὶ ἀποτείσαιντο· ἡμᾶς δὲ δεῖ ταῦτα
ὀρῶντας μήποτε ἑξαπατηθῆναι ἔτι ὑπὸ τούτων,
ἀλλὰ μαχομένους ὡς ἂν δυνώμεθα κράτιστα τοῦτο
ὅ τι ἂν δοκῇ τοῖς θεοῖς πάσχειν.
- 7 Ἐκ τούτου Ξενοφῶν ἀνίσταται ἐσταλμένος ἐπὶ
πόλεμον ὡς ἐδύνατο κάλλιστα, νομίζων, εἴτε νίκην
διδοῖεν οἱ θεοί, τὸν κάλλιστον κόσμον τῷ νικᾶν
πρέπειν, εἴτε τελευτᾶν δέοι, ὀρθῶς ἔχειν τῶν
καλλίστων ἑαυτὸν ἀξιόσαντα ἐν τούτοις τῆς
τελευτῆς τυγχάνειν· τοῦ λόγου δὲ ἤρχετο ὧδε.
- 8 Τὴν μὲν τῶν βαρβάρων ἐπιορκίαν τε καὶ ἀπιστίαν
λέγει μὲν Κλεάνωρ, ἐπίστασθε δὲ καὶ ὑμεῖς οἶμαι.
εἰ μὲν οὖν βουλόμεθα πάλιν αὐτοῖς διὰ φιλίας
ἵεναι, ἀνάγκη ἡμᾶς πολλὴν ἀθυμίαν ἔχειν, ὀρῶντας

he would do his utmost to save us; it was none other than he who gave us his oaths to confirm these words; and then he, Tissaphernes, the very man who had given such pledges, was the very man who deceived and seized our generals. More than that, he did not even reverence Zeus, the god of hospitality; instead, he entertained Clearchus at his own table¹ and then made that very act the means of deceiving and destroying the generals. Ariaeus, too, whom we were ready to make king,² with whom we exchanged pledges³ not to betray one another, even he, showing neither fear of the gods nor honour for the memory of Cyrus dead, although he was most highly honoured by Cyrus living, has now gone over to the bitterest foes of that same Cyrus, and is trying to work harm to us, the friends of Cyrus. Well, may these men be duly punished by the gods; we, however, seeing their deeds, must never again be deceived by them, but must fight as stoutly as we can and meet whatever fortune the gods may please to send."

Hereupon Xenophon arose, arrayed for war in his finest dress. For he thought that if the gods should grant victory, the finest raiment was suited to victory; and if it should be his fate to die, it was proper, he thought, that inasmuch as he had accounted his office worthy of the most beautiful attire, in this attire he should meet his death. He began his speech as follows: "The perjury and faithlessness of the barbarians has been spoken of by Cleanor and is understood, I imagine, by the rest of you. If, then, it is our desire to be again on terms of friendship with them, we must needs feel great despondency

¹ II. v. 27.² II. i. 4.

II. ii. 8.

καὶ τοὺς στρατηγούς, οἱ διὰ πίστεως αὐτοῖς ἑαυτοὺς ἐνεχείρισαν, οἷα πεπόνθασιν· εἰ μὲντοι διανοούμεθα σὺν τοῖς ὅπλοις ὧν τε πεποιήκασι δίκην ἐπιθεῖναι αὐτοῖς καὶ τὸ λοιπὸν διὰ παντὸς πολέμου αὐτοῖς ἰέναι, σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς πολλαὶ ἡμῖν καὶ καλαὶ ἐλπίδες εἰσὶ σωτηρίας.

- 9 Τοῦτο δὲ λέγοντος αὐτοῦ πτάρνυταί τις· ἀκούσαντες δ' οἱ στρατιῶται πάντες μιᾷ ὀρμῇ προσέκύνησαν τὸν θεόν, καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν εἶπε· Δοκεῖ μοι, ὦ ἄνδρες, ἐπεὶ περὶ σωτηρίας ἡμῶν λεγόντων οἰωνὸς τοῦ Διὸς τοῦ σωτήρος ἐφάνη, εὐξασθαι τῷ θεῷ τούτῳ θύσειν σωτήρια ὅπου ἂν πρῶτον εἰς φιλίαν χώραν ἀφικώμεθα, συνευξασθαι δὲ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις θεοῖς θύσειν κατὰ δύναμιν. καὶ ὅτω δοκεῖ ταῦτ', ἔφη, ἀνατεινάτω τὴν χεῖρα. καὶ ἀνέτειναν ἅπαντες. ἐκ τούτου ἠῤῥξαντο καὶ ἐπαίνισαν. ἐπεὶ δὲ τὰ τῶν θεῶν καλῶς εἶχεν, ἤρχετο πάλιν ὧδε.
- 10 Ἐτύγχανον λέγων ὅτι πολλαὶ καὶ καλαὶ ἐλπίδες ἡμῖν εἶεν σωτηρίας. πρῶτον μὲν γὰρ ἡμεῖς μὲν ἐμπεδοῦμεν τοὺς τῶν θεῶν ὄρκους, οἱ δὲ πολέμοι ἐπιωρκήκασι τε καὶ τὰς σπονδὰς παρὰ τοὺς ὄρκους λελύκασιν. οὕτω δ' ἐχόντων εἰκὸς τοῖς μὲν πολεμίοις ἐναντίους εἶναι τοὺς θεοὺς, ἡμῖν δὲ συμμάχους, οἵπερ ἱκανοὶ εἰσι καὶ τοὺς μεγάλους ταχὺ μικροὺς ποιεῖν καὶ τοὺς μικροὺς κἂν ἐν δεινοῖς ὧσι σφάζειν εὐπετῶς, ὅταν βούλωνται.
- 11 ἔπειτα δὲ ἀναμνήσω γὰρ ὑμᾶς καὶ τοὺς τῶν προγόνων τῶν ἡμετέρων κινδύνους, ἵνα εἰδῆτε ὧς

¹ The sneeze was a lucky sign, and particularly lucky because it came at just the time when Xenophon was uttering the word *σωτηρίας*, "deliverance."

when we see the fate of our generals, who trustingly put themselves in their hands; but if our intention is to rely upon our arms, and not only to inflict punishment upon them for their past deeds, but henceforth to wage implacable war with them, we have—the gods willing—many fair hopes of deliverance."

As he was saying this a man sneezed,¹ and when the soldiers heard it, they all with one impulse made obeisance to the god;² and Xenophon said, "I move, gentlemen, since at the moment when we were talking about deliverance an omen from Zeus the Saviour was revealed to us, that we make a vow to sacrifice to that god thank-offerings for deliverance as soon as we reach a friendly land; and that we add a further vow to make sacrifices, to the extent of our ability, to the other gods also. All who are in favour of this motion," he said, "will raise their hands." And every man in the assembly raised his hand. Thereupon they made their vows and struck up the paean. These ceremonies duly performed, Xenophon began again with these words: "I was saying that we have many fair hopes of deliverance. For, in the first place, we are standing true to the oaths we took in the name of the gods, while our enemies have perjured themselves and, in violation of their oaths, have broken the truce. This being so, it is fair to assume that the gods are their foes and our allies—and the gods are able speedily to make the strong weak and, when they so will, easily to deliver the weak, even though they be in dire perils. Secondly, I would remind you of the perils of our own forefathers, to show you not only

² Zeus Soter, who was presumed (see below) to have sent the omen.

- ἀγαθοῖς τε ὑμῖν προσήκει εἶναι σφίζονται τε σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς καὶ ἐκ πάντων δεινῶν οἱ ἀγαθοί. ἐλθόντων μὲν γὰρ Περσῶν καὶ τῶν σὺν αὐτοῖς παμπληθεῖ στόλῳ ὡς ἀφανιούντων τὰς Ἀθήνας, ὑποστῆναι αὐτοὶ Ἀθηναῖοι τολμήσαντες ἐνίκησαν
- 12 αὐτούς. καὶ εὐξάμενοι τῇ Ἀρτέμιδι ὁπόσους κατακάνοιεν τῶν πολεμίων τοσαύτας χιμαῖρας καταθύσειν τῇ θεῷ, ἐπεὶ οὐκ εἶχον ἰκανὰς εὐρεῖν, ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς κατ' ἐνιαυτὸν πεντακοσίας θύειν,
- 13 καὶ ἔτι νῦν ἀποθύουσιν. ἔπειτα ὅτε Ξέρξης ὕστερον ἀγείρας τὴν ἀναρίθμητον στρατιὰν ἦλθεν ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα, καὶ τότε ἐνίκων οἱ ἡμέτεροι πρόγονοι τοὺς τούτων προγόνους καὶ κατὰ γῆν καὶ κατὰ θάλατταν. ὧν ἔστι μὲν τεκμήρια ὄραν τὰ τρόπαια, μέγιστον δὲ μαρτύριον ἡ ἐλευθερία τῶν πόλεων ἐν αἷς ὑμεῖς ἐγένεσθε καὶ ἐτράφητε· οὐδένα γὰρ ἄνθρωπον δεσπότην ἀλλὰ τοὺς θεοὺς προσκυνεῖτε. τοιούτων μὲν ἔστε προγόνων.
- 14 Οὐ μὲν δὴ τοῦτό γε ἐρῶ ὡς ὑμεῖς καταισχύνετε αὐτούς· ἀλλ' οὐ πολλὰ ἡμέραι ἀφ' οὗ ἀντιταξάμενοι τούτοις τοῖς ἐκείνων ἐκγόνοις πολλαπλασίους ὑμῶν αὐτῶν ἐνικᾶτε σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς.
- 15 καὶ τότε μὲν δὴ περὶ τῆς Κύρου βασιλείας ἄνδρες ἦτε ἀγαθοί· νῦν δ' ὁπότε περὶ τῆς ὑμετέρας σωτηρίας ὁ ἀγὼν ἔστι πολὺ δήπου ὑμᾶς προσήκει καὶ
- 16 ἀμείνονας καὶ προθυμότερους εἶναι. ἀλλὰ μὴν καὶ θαρραλεωτέρους νῦν πρέπει εἶναι πρὸς τοὺς

¹ In the battle of Marathon, 490 B.C.

² According to Herodotus (vi. 117) the Persian dead numbered 6,400.

³ Herodotus (vii. 185) puts the whole number of fighting men in Xerxes' armament at 2,641,610.

that it is your right to be brave men, but that brave men are delivered, with the help of the gods, even out of most dreadful dangers. For when the Persians and their followers came with a vast array to blot Athens out of existence, the Athenians dared, unaided, to withstand them, and won the victory.¹ And while they had vowed to Artemis that for every man they might slay of the enemy they would sacrifice a goat to the goddess, they were unable to find goats enough;² so they resolved to offer five hundred every year, and this sacrifice they are paying even to this day. Again, when Xerxes at a later time gathered together that countless³ host and came against Greece, then too our forefathers were victorious, both by land and by sea,⁴ over the forefathers of our enemies. As tokens of these victories we may, indeed, still behold the trophies, but the strongest witness to them is the freedom of the states in which you were born and bred; for to no human creature do you pay homage as master, but to the gods alone. It is from such ancestors, then, that you are sprung.

“Now I am far from intending to say that you disgrace them; in fact, not many days ago you set yourselves in array against these descendants of those ancient Persians and were victorious, with the aid of the gods, over many times your own numbers. And then, mark you, it was in Cyrus' contest for the throne that you proved yourselves brave men; but now, when the struggle is for your own safety, it is surely fitting that you should be far braver and more zealous. Furthermore, you ought now to be more

⁴ By sea at Salamis (480 B.C.) and by land at Plataea (479 B.C.).

πολεμίους. τότε μὲν γὰρ ἄπειροι ὄντες αὐτῶν, τὸ δὲ πλήθος ἄμετρον ὀρώντες, ὅμως ἐτολμήσατε σὺν τῷ πατρίῳ φρονήματι ἰέναι εἰς αὐτούς· νῦν δὲ ὅποτε καὶ πείραν ἤδη ἔχετε αὐτῶν ὅτι οὐ θέλουσι καὶ πολλαπλάσιοι ὄντες δέχεσθαι ὑμᾶς, τί ἔτι ὑμῖν προσήκει τούτους φοβεῖσθαι;

- 17 Μηδὲ μέντοι τοῦτο μείον δόξητε ἔχειν ὅτι οἱ Ἀριαίου¹ πρόσθεν σὺν ἡμῖν ταπτόμενοι νῦν ἀφεστήκασιν. ἔτι γὰρ οὗτοι κακίονές εἰσι τῶν ὑφ' ἡμῶν ἠττημένων· ἔφυγον γοῦν² ἐκείνους καταλιπόντες ἡμᾶς. τοὺς δὲ θέλοντας φυγῆς ἄρχειν πολὺ κρεῖττον σὺν τοῖς πολεμίοις ταπτομένους ἢ ἐν τῇ ἡμετέρᾳ τάξει ὄρᾶν.
- 18 Εἰ δὲ τις ὑμῶν ἀθυμεῖ ὅτι ἡμῖν μὲν οὐκ εἰσὶν ἱππεῖς, τοῖς δὲ πολεμίοις πολλοὶ πάρεισιν, ἐνθυμήθητε ὅτι οἱ μύριοι ἱππεῖς οὐδὲν ἄλλο ἢ μύριοι εἰσὶν ἄνθρωποι· ὑπὸ μὲν γὰρ ἵππου ἐν μάχῃ οὐδεὶς πώποτε οὔτε δηχθεὶς οὔτε λακτισθεὶς ἀπέθανεν, οἱ δὲ ἄνδρες εἰσὶν οἱ ποιοῦντες ὅ τι ἂν ἐν
- 19 ταῖς μάχαις γίγνηται. οὐκοῦν τῶν ἱππέων πολὺ ἡμεῖς ἐπ' ἀσφαλεστέρου ὀχήματός ἐσμεν· οἱ μὲν γὰρ ἐφ' ἵππων κρέμανται φοβούμενοι οὐχ ἡμᾶς μόνον ἀλλὰ καὶ τὸ καταπεσεῖν· ἡμεῖς δ' ἐπὶ γῆς βεβηκότες πολὺ μὲν ἰσχυρότερον παῖσομεν, ἢν τις προσίῃ, πολὺ δὲ μᾶλλον ὅτου ἂν βουλώμεθα τευξόμεθα. ἐνὶ δὲ μόνῳ προέχουσιν οἱ ἱππεῖς·
- 20 φεύγειν αὐτοῖς ἀσφαλέστερόν ἐστιν ἢ ἡμῖν. εἰ δὲ

confident in facing the enemy. For then you were unacquainted with them, you saw that their numbers were beyond counting, and you nevertheless dared, with all the spirit of your fathers, to charge upon them; but now, when you have already made actual trial of them and find that they have no desire, even though they are many times your number, to await your attack, what reason can remain for your being afraid of them?

“Again, do not suppose that you are the worse off because the followers of Ariaeus, who were formerly marshalled with us, have now deserted us. For they are even greater cowards than the men we defeated; at any rate they took to flight before them,¹ leaving us to shift for ourselves. And when we find men who are ready to set the example of flight, it is far better to see them drawn up with the enemy than on our own side.

“But if anyone of you is despondent because we are without horsemen while the enemy have plenty at hand, let him reflect that your ten thousand horsemen are nothing more than ten thousand men; for nobody ever lost his life in battle from the bite or kick of a horse, but it is the men who do whatever is done in battles. Moreover, we are on a far surer foundation than your horsemen: they are hanging on their horses' backs, afraid not only of us, but also of falling off; while we, standing upon the ground, shall strike with far greater force if anyone comes upon us and shall be far more likely to hit whomsoever we aim at. In one point alone your horsemen have the advantage—flight is safer for them than it is for us. Suppose, however, that you

¹ Ἀριαίου Gem., following Hug: Κόρειοι MSS.

² After γοῦν the MSS. have πρὸς: del. Hertlein.

¹ *cp.* I. ix. 31-x. 1.

δὴ τὰς μὲν μάχας θαρρεῖτε, ὅτι δὲ οὐκέτι ὑμῖν
 Τισσαφέρνῃς ἡγήσεται οὐδὲ βασιλεὺς ἀγορὰν
 παρέξει, τοῦτο ἄχθεσθε, σκέψασθε πότερον κρείτ-
 τον Τισσαφέρνῃν ἡγεμόνα ἔχειν, ὃς ἐπιβουλεύων
 ἡμῖν φανερός ἐστίν, ἢ οὐς ἂν ἡμεῖς ἄνδρας λαβόν-
 τες ἡγείσθαι κελεύωμεν, οἳ εἴσονται ὅτι ἦν τι
 21 καὶ σώματα ἀμαρτήσονται. τὰ δὲ ἐπιτήδεια
 πότερον ὠνεῖσθαι κρείττον ἐκ τῆς ἀγορᾶς ἢς οὗτοι
 παρῆχον μικρὰ μέτρα πολλοῦ ἀργυρίου, μηδὲ
 τοῦτο ἔτι ἔχοντας, ἢ αὐτοὺς λαμβάνειν, ἦν ἡπερ
 κρατῶμεν, μέτρῳ χρωμένους ὁπόσῳ ἂν ἕκαστος
 βούληται;

22 Εἰ δὲ ταῦτα μὲν γινώσκετε ὅτι κρείττονα,
 τοὺς δὲ ποταμοὺς ἄπορον νομίζετε εἶναι καὶ μεγά-
 λως ἡγείσθε ἐξαπατηθῆναι διαβάντες, σκέψασθε
 εἰ ἄρα τοῦτο καὶ μωρότατον πεποιήκασιν οἱ βάρ-
 βαροι. πάντες γὰρ ποταμοί, ἦν καὶ πρόσω
 τῶν πηγῶν ἄποροι ὦσι, προσιούσι πρὸς τὰς
 πηγὰς διαβατοὶ γίνονται οὐδὲ τὸ γόνυ βρέ-
 χοντες.

23 Εἰ δὲ μήθ' οἱ ποταμοὶ διήσουσιν ἡγεμόν τε
 μηδεὶς ἡμῖν φανείται, οὐδ' ὡς ἡμῖν γε ἀθυμητέον.

¹ e.g. the Tigris (II. iv. 13-24).

² viz. in leading the Greeks across (i.e. to the eastern bank of) the Tigris. For, Xenophon argues (see below), the

do not lack confidence about the fighting, but are troubled because you are no longer to have Tissaphernes to guide you or the King to provide a market. If this be the case, I ask you to consider whether it is better to have Tissaphernes for a guide, the man who is manifestly plotting against us, or such people as we may ourselves capture and may order to serve as guides, men who will know that if they make any mistake in aught that concerns us, they will be making a mistake in that which concerns their own lives and limbs. And as for provisions, is it the better plan to buy from the market which these barbarians have provided—small measures for large prices, when we have no money left, either—or to appropriate for ourselves, in case we are victorious, and to use as large a measure as each one of us pleases?

“But in these points, let us say, you realize that our present situation is better; you believe, however, that the rivers are a difficulty, and you think you were immensely deceived when you crossed them;¹ then consider whether this is not really a surpassingly foolish thing that the barbarians have done.² For all rivers, even though they be impassable at a distance from their sources, become passable, without even wetting your knees, as you approach toward the sources.

“But assume that the rivers will not afford us a crossing and that we shall find no one to guide us; even in that case we ought not to be despondent.

Greeks will now be compelled to march to the source of the river in order to cross, and hence will be living on the country so much the longer a time.

ἐπιστάμεθα γὰρ Μυσούς, οὓς οὐκ ἂν ἡμῶν φαίη-
 μεν βελτίους εἶναι, ὅτι¹ ἐν βασιλέως χώρα
 πολλάς τε καὶ εὐδαίμονας καὶ μεγάλας πόλεις
 οἰκοῦσιν, ἐπιστάμεθα δὲ Πισίδας ὡσαύτως, Λυ-
 κάονας δὲ καὶ αὐτοὶ εἶδομεν ὅτι ἐν τοῖς πεδίοις τὰ
 ἐρυμνὰ καταλαβόντες τὴν τούτων χώραν καρ-
 24 ποῦνται· καὶ ἡμᾶς δ' ἂν ἔφην ἔγωγε χρῆναι μήπω
 φανεροὺς εἶναι οἴκαδε ὠρμημένους, ἀλλὰ κατα-
 σκευάζεσθαι ὡς αὐτοῦ οἰκήσοντας. οἶδα γὰρ ὅτι
 καὶ Μυσοῖς βασιλεὺς πολλοὺς μὲν ἡγεμόνας ἂν
 δοίη, πολλοὺς δ' ἂν ὀμήρους τοῦ ἀδόλως ἐκπέμ-
 ψειν, καὶ ὁδοποιήσειέ γ' ἂν αὐτοῖς καὶ εἰ σὺν
 τεθρίπποις βούλονται ἀπιέναι. καὶ ἡμῖν γ' ἂν
 οἶδ' ὅτι τρισάσμενος ταῦτ' ἐποίει, εἰ ἑώρα ἡμᾶς
 25 μένειν κατασκευαζομένους. ἀλλὰ γὰρ δέδοικα
 μή, ἂν ἄπαξ μάθωμεν ἄργοι ζῆν καὶ ἐν ἀφθόνοις
 βιοτεύειν, καὶ Μήδων δὲ καὶ Περσῶν καλαῖς καὶ
 μεγάλαις γυναιξὶ καὶ παρθένοις ὀμιλεῖν, μὴ
 ὥσπερ οἱ λωτοφάγοι ἐπιλαθώμεθα τῆς οἴκαδε
 26 ὁδοῦ. δοκεῖ οὖν μοι εἰκὸς καὶ δίκαιον εἶναι πρῶ-
 τον εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα καὶ πρὸς τοὺς οἰκείους πει-
 ρᾶσθαι ἀφικνεῖσθαι καὶ ἐπιδειξαι τοῖς Ἑλλησιν
 ὅτι ἐκόντες πένονται, ἐξὸν αὐτοῖς τοὺς νῦν σκλη-
 ρῶς ἐκεῖ πολιτεύοντας ἐνθάδε κομισαμένους πλου-
 σίους ὄραν.

Ἄλλὰ γάρ, ὦ ἄνδρες, πάντα ταῦτα τὰγαθὰ

¹ After ὅτι, Mar. and some other edd. insert the words βασιλέως ἄκοντος, which appear in the margin of MS. C₁.

For we know that the Mysians,¹ whom we should not admit to be better men than ourselves, inhabit many large and prosperous cities in the King's territory, we know that the same is true of the Pisidians,¹ and as for the Lycaonians¹ we even saw with our own eyes that they had seized the strongholds in the plains and were reaping for themselves the lands of these Persians; so, in our case, my own view would be that we ought not yet to let it be seen that we have set out for home; we ought, rather, to be making our arrangements as if we intended to settle here. For I know that to the Mysians the King would not only give plenty of guides, but plenty of hostages, to guarantee a safe conduct for them out of his country; in fact, he would build a road for them, even if they wanted to take their departure in four-horse chariots. And I know that he would be thrice glad to do the same for us, if he saw that we were preparing to stay here. I really fear, however, that if we once learn to live in idleness and luxury, and to consort with the tall and beautiful women and maidens of these Medes and Persians, we may, like the lotus-eaters,² forget our homeward way. Therefore, I think it is right and proper that our first endeavour should be to return to our kindred and friends in Greece, and to point out to the Greeks that it is by their own choice that they are poor; for they could bring here the people who are now living a hard life at home, and could see them in the enjoyment of riches.

“It is really a plain fact, gentlemen, that all these

¹ Peoples of Asia Minor who were in almost constant rebellion against Persian authority; *cp.* esp. I. II. 19, II. v. 13.

² An allusion to *Odyssey*, ix. 94 ff.

- 27 δῆλον ὅτι τῶν κρατούντων ἐστὶ τοῦτο δὴ¹ δεῖ λέγειν, ὅπως ἂν πορευοίμεθά τε ὡς ἀσφαλέστατα καὶ εἰ μάχεσθαι δέοι ὡς κράτιστα μαχοίμεθα. πρῶτον μὲν τοίνυν, ἔφη, δοκεῖ μοι κατακαῦσαι τὰς ἀμάξας ἃς ἔχομεν, ἵνα μὴ τὰ ζεύγη ἡμῶν στρατηγῆ, ἀλλὰ πορευόμεθα ὅπη ἂν τῇ στρατιᾷ συμφέρη· ἔπειτα καὶ τὰς σκηναὺς συγκατακαῦσαι. αὐταὶ γὰρ αὐτὸ ὄχλον μὲν παρέχουσιν ἄγειν, συνωφελοῦσι δ' οὐδὲν οὔτε εἰς τὸ μάχεσθαι οὔτ' εἰς
- 28 τὸ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἔχειν. ἔτι δὲ καὶ τῶν ἄλλων σκευῶν τὰ περιττὰ ἀπαλλάξωμεν πλὴν ὅσα πολέμου ἕνεκεν ἢ σίτων ἢ ποτῶν ἔχομεν, ἵνα ὡς πλείστοι μὲν ἡμῶν ἐν τοῖς ὅπλοις ᾧσιν, ὡς ἐλάχιστοι δὲ σκευοφορῶσι. κρατουμένων μὲν γὰρ ἐπίστασθε ὅτι πάντα ἀλλότρια· ἦν δὲ κρατῶμεν, καὶ τοὺς πολεμίους δεῖ σκευοφόρους ἡμετέρους νομίζειν.
- 29 Λοιπὸν μοι εἰπεῖν ὅπερ καὶ μέγιστον νομίζω εἶναι. ὁρᾶτε γὰρ καὶ τοὺς πολεμίους ὅτι οὐ πρόσθεν ἐξευεγκεῖν ἐτόλμησαν πρὸς ἡμᾶς πόλεμον πρὶν τοὺς στρατηγοὺς ἡμῶν συνέλαβον, νομίζοντες ὄντων μὲν τῶν ἀρχόντων καὶ ἡμῶν πειθόμενων ἱκανοὺς εἶναι ἡμᾶς περιγενέσθαι τῷ πολέμῳ, λαβόντες δὲ τοὺς ἄρχοντας ἀναρχία ἂν καὶ ἀταξία
- 30 ἐνόμιζον ἡμᾶς ἀπολέσθαι. δεῖ οὖν πολὺ μὲν τοὺς ἄρχοντας ἐπιμελεστέρους γενέσθαι τοὺς νῦν τῶν πρόσθεν, πολὺ δὲ τοὺς ἀρχομένους εὐτακτοτέρους καὶ πειθομένους μᾶλλον τοῖς ἀρχουσι νῦν ἢ

¹ δὴ MSS., Mar. : δὲ Gem., following Castalio.

good things belong to those who have the strength to possess them; but I must go on to another point, how we can march most safely and, if we have to fight, can fight to the best advantage. In the first place, then," Xenophon proceeded, "I think we should burn up the wagons which we have, so that our cattle may not be our captains, but we can take whatever route may be best for the army. Secondly, we should burn up our tents also; for these, again, are a bother to carry, and no help at all either for fighting or for obtaining provisions. Furthermore, let us abandon all our other superfluous baggage, keeping only such articles as we use for war, or in eating and drinking, in order that we may have the largest possible number of men under arms and the least number carrying baggage. For when men are conquered, you are aware that all their possessions become the property of others; but if we are victorious, we may regard the enemy as our pack-bearers.

"It remains for me to mention the one matter which I believe is really of the greatest importance. You observe that our enemies did not muster up courage to begin hostilities against us until they had seized our generals; for they believed that so long as we had our commanders and were obedient to them, we were able to worst them in war, but when they had got possession of our commanders, they believed that the want of leadership and of discipline would be the ruin of us. Therefore our present commanders must show themselves far more vigilant than their predecessors, and the men in the ranks must be far more orderly and more obedient to their

- 31 πρόσθεν· ἦν δέ τις ἀπειθῆ, ψηφίσασθαι τὸν αἰὲ ὑμῶν ἐντυγχάνοντα σὺν τῷ ἄρχοντι κολάζειν· οὕτως οἱ πολέμοιοι πλείστον ἐψευσμένοι ἔσονται· τῆδε γὰρ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ μυρίους ὄψονται ἀνθ' ἐνὸς Κλεάρχους τοὺς οὐδενὶ ἐπιτρέψοντας κακῶ εἶναι.
- 32 ἀλλὰ γὰρ καὶ περαίνειν ἤδη ὥρα· ἴσως γὰρ οἱ πολέμοιοι αὐτίκα παρέσονται. ὅτ' οὖν ταῦτα δοκεῖ καλῶς ἔχειν, ἐπικυρωσάτω ὡς τάχιστα, ἵνα ἔργῳ περαίνηται. εἰ δέ τι ἄλλο βέλτιον ἢ ταύτη, τολμάτω καὶ ὁ ἰδιώτης διδάσκειν· πάντες γὰρ κοινῆς σωτηρίας δεόμεθα.
- 33 Μετὰ ταῦτα Χειρίσοφος εἶπεν· 'Ἄλλ' εἰ μὲν τινος ἄλλου δεῖ πρὸς τούτοις οἷς λέγει Ξενοφῶν, καὶ αὐτίκα ἐξέσται σκοπεῖν·¹ ἂ δὲ νῦν εἶρηκε δοκεῖ μοι ὡς τάχιστα ψηφίσασθαι ἄριστον εἶναι· καὶ ὅτ' δοκεῖ ταῦτα, ἀνατεινάτω τὴν χεῖρα· ἀνέτειναν πάντες.
- 34 'Ἀναστὰς δὲ πάλιν εἶπε Ξενοφῶν· 'Ὡ ἄνδρες, ἀκούσατε ὧν προσδοκεῖ μοι. δῆλον ὅτι πορεύεσθαι ἡμᾶς δεῖ ὅπου ἔξομεν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια· ἀκούω δὲ κώμας εἶναι καλὰς οὐ πλέον εἴκοσι σταδίων
- 35 ἀπεχούσας· οὐκ ἂν οὖν θαυμάζοιμεν εἰ οἱ πολέμοιοι, ὡς περ οἱ δειλοὶ κύνες τοὺς μὲν παριόντας διώκουσιν τε² καὶ δάκνουσιν, ἦν δύνωνται, τοὺς δὲ διώκοντας φεύγουσιν, εἰ καὶ αὐτοὶ ἡμῖν ἀπιούσιν

¹ σκοπεῖν Gem., following Schwartz: ποιεῖν MSS.

² διώκουσιν τε MSS. except C₁, Mar.: διώκοντες C₁, Gem.

commanders now than they used to be. We must pass a vote that, in case anyone is disobedient, whoever of you may be at hand at the time shall join with the officer in punishing him; in this way the enemy will find themselves mightily deceived; for to-day they will behold, not one Clearchus,¹ but ten thousand, who will not suffer anybody to be a bad soldier. But it is time now to be acting instead of talking; for perhaps the enemy will soon be at hand. Whoever, then, thinks that these proposals are good should ratify them with all speed, that they may be carried out in action. But if any other plan is thought better than mine, let anyone, even though he be a private soldier, feel free to present it; for the safety of all is the need of all."

After this Cheirisophus said: "We shall be able to consider presently whether we need to do anything else besides what Xenophon proposes, but on the proposals which he has already made I think it is best for us to vote as speedily as possible. Whoever is in favour of these measures, let him raise his hand." They all raised their hands.

Then Xenophon arose once more and said: "Give ear, gentlemen, to the further proposals I have to present. It is clear that we must make our way to a place where we can get provisions; and I hear that there are fine villages at a distance of not more than twenty stadia. We should not be surprised, then, if the enemy—after the fashion of cowardly dogs that chase passers-by and bite them, if they can, but run away from anyone who chases them—if the enemy in the same way should follow at our

¹ Clearchus was notoriously a stern disciplinarian; *cp.* II. vi. 8 ff.

36 ἐπακολουθοῖεν. ἴσως οὖν ἀσφαλέστερον ἡμῖν πορεύεσθαι πλαίσιον ποιησαμένους τῶν ὄπλων, ἵνα τὰ σκευοφόρα καὶ ὁ πολὺς ὄχλος ἐν ἀσφαλεστέρω εἴη. εἰ οὖν νῦν ἀποδειχθείη τίνας χρῆ ἡγεῖσθαι τοῦ πλαίσιου καὶ τὰ πρόσθεν κοσμεῖν καὶ τίνας ἐπὶ τῶν πλευρῶν ἐκατέρων εἶναι, τίνας δ' ὀπισθοφυλακεῖν, οὐκ ἂν ὁπότε οἱ πολέμοιοι ἔλθοιεν βουλευεσθαι ἡμᾶς δέοι, ἀλλὰ χρώμεθα ἂν εὐθὺς τοῖς τεταγμένοις. εἰ μὲν οὖν ἄλλο τις βέλτιον ὄρα, ἄλλως ἐχέτω· εἰ δὲ μή, Χειρίσοφος μὲν ἡγοῖτο, ἐπειδὴ καὶ Λακεδαιμόνιος ἐστὶ τῶν δὲ πλευρῶν ἐκατέρων δύο τῶν πρεσβυτάτω στρατηγῶν ἐπιμελοῖσθην· ὀπισθοφυλακοῦμεν δ' ἡμεῖς οἱ 38 νεώτατοι ἐγὼ καὶ Τιμασίων τὸ νῦν εἶναι. τὸ δὲ λοιπὸν πειρώμενοι ταύτης τῆς τάξεως βουλευσόμεθα ὅ τι ἂν ἀεὶ κράτιστον δοκῆ εἶναι. εἰ δὲ τις ἄλλο ὄρα βέλτιον, λεξάτω. ἐπεὶ δ' οὐδεὶς ἀντέλεγεν, εἶπεν· "Ὅτω δοκεῖ ταῦτα, ἀνατεινάτω τῆν 39 χεῖρα. ἔδοξε ταῦτα. Νῦν τοίνυν, ἔφη, ἀπιόντας ποιεῖν δεῖ τὰ δεδογμένα. καὶ ὅστις τε ὑμῶν τοὺς οἰκείους ἐπιθυμεῖ ἰδεῖν, μεμνήσθω ἀνὴρ ἀγαθὸς εἶναι· οὐ γὰρ ἔστιν ἄλλως τούτου τυχεῖν· ὅστις τε ζῆν ἐπιθυμεῖ, πειράσθω νικᾶν· τῶν μὲν γὰρ νικῶντων τὸ καίνειν, τῶν δὲ ἠττωμένων τὸ ἀποθνήσκειν ἐστὶ· καὶ εἴ τις δὲ χρημάτων ἐπιθυμεῖ, κρατεῖν πειράσθω· τῶν γὰρ νικῶντων ἐστὶ καὶ τὰ ἑαυτῶν σφάζειν καὶ τὰ τῶν ἠττωμένων λαμβάνειν.

heels as we retire. Hence it will be safer, perhaps, for us to march with the hoplites formed into a hollow square, so that the baggage train and the great crowd of camp followers may be in a safer place. If, then, it should be settled at once who are to lead the square and marshal the van, who are to be on either flank, and who to guard the rear, we should not need to be taking counsel at the time when the enemy comes upon us, but we should find our men at once in their places ready for action. Now if anyone sees another plan which is better, let us follow that plan; but if not, I propose that Cheirisophus take the lead, especially since he is a Lacedaemonian, that the two oldest generals have charge of the two flanks, and that, for the present, we who are the youngest, Timasion and I, command the rear. And for the future, as we make trial of this formation we can adopt whatever course may seem from time to time to be best. If anyone sees a better plan, let him present it." No one having any opposing view to express, Xenophon said: "Whoever is in favour of these measures, let him raise his hand." The motion was carried. "And now," he continued, "we must go back and put into execution what has been resolved upon. And whoever among you desires to see his friends again, let him remember to show himself a brave man; for in no other way can he accomplish this desire. Again, whoever is desirous of saving his life, let him strive for victory; for it is the victors that slay and the defeated that are slain. Or if anyone longs for wealth, let him also strive to conquer; for conquerors not only keep their own possessions, but gain the possessions of the conquered."

III. Τούτων λεχθέντων ἀνέστησαν καὶ ἀπελθόντες κατέκαιον τὰς ἀμάξας καὶ τὰς σκηνάς, τῶν δὲ περιπτῶν ὅτου μὲν δέοιτό τις μετεδίδοσαν ἀλλήλοις, τὰ δὲ ἄλλα εἰς τὸ πῦρ ἐρρίπτουν. ταῦτα ποιήσαντες ἤριστοποιοῦντο. ἀριστοποιουμένων δὲ αὐτῶν ἔρχεται Μιθραδάτης σὺν ἰππεῦσιν ὡς τριάκοντα, καὶ καλεσάμενος τοὺς στρατηγούς
 2 εἰς ἐπήκοον λέγει ὧδε. Ἐγώ, ὦ ἄνδρες Ἕλληνες, καὶ Κύρῳ πιστὸς ἦν, ὡς ὑμεῖς ἐπίστασθε, καὶ νῦν ὑμῖν εὖνους· καὶ ἐνθάδε δ' εἰμι σὺν πολλῷ φόβῳ διάγων. εἰ οὖν ὀρώην ὑμᾶς σωτήριόν τι βουλευομένων, ἔλθοιμι ἂν πρὸς ὑμᾶς καὶ τοὺς θεράποντας πάντας ἔχων. λέξατε οὖν πρὸς με τί ἐν νῷ ἔχετε ὡς φίλον τε καὶ εὖνουν καὶ βουλόμενον κοινῇ σὺν
 3 ὑμῖν τὸν στόλον ποιῆσθαι. βουλευομένοις τοῖς στρατηγοῖς ἔδοξεν ἀποκρίνασθαι τάδε· καὶ ἔλεγε Χειρίσοφος· Ἡμῖν δοκεῖ, εἰ μὲν τις ἐᾷ ἡμᾶς ἀπιέναι οἴκαδε, διαπορεύεσθαι τὴν χώραν ὡς ἂν δυνώμεθα ἀσινέστατα· ἦν δὲ τις ἡμᾶς τῆς ὁδοῦ ἀποκωλύη,¹ διαπολεμεῖν τούτῳ ὡς ἂν δυνώμεθα
 4 κράτιστα. ἐκ τούτου ἐπειρᾶτο Μιθραδάτης διδάσκειν ὡς ἄπορον εἶη βασιλέως ἄκοντος σωθῆναι. ἐνθα δὴ ἐγιγνώσκετο ὅτι ὑπόπεμπτos εἶη· καὶ γὰρ τῶν Τισσαφέρνους τις οἰκείων παρηκολουθήκει
 5 πίστεως ἕνεκα. καὶ ἐκ τούτου ἐδόκει τοῖς στρατηγοῖς βέλτιον εἶναι δόγμα ποιήσασθαι τὸν

¹ ἀποκωλύη MSS. except C₁, Mar.: ἐπικωλύη C₁, Gem.

III. After these words of Xenophon's the assembly arose, and all went back to camp and proceeded to burn the wagons and the tents. As for the superfluous articles of baggage, whatever anybody needed they shared with one another, but the rest they threw into the fire. When they had done all this, they set about preparing breakfast; and while they were so engaged, Mithradates¹ approached with about thirty horsemen, summoned the Greek generals within earshot, and spoke as follows: "Men of Greece, I was faithful to Cyrus, as you know for yourselves, and I am now friendly to you; indeed, I am tarrying here in great fear. Therefore if I should see that you were taking salutary measures, I should join you and bring all my retainers with me. Tell me, then, what you have in mind, in the assurance that I am your friend and well-wisher, and am desirous of making the journey in company with you." The generals held council and voted to return the following answer, Cheirisophus acting as spokesman: "It is our resolve, in case no one hinders our homeward march, to proceed through the country doing the least possible damage, but if anyone tries to prevent us from making the journey, to fight it out with him to the best of our power." Thereupon Mithradates undertook to show that there was no possibility of their effecting a safe return unless the King so pleased. Then it became clear to the Greeks that his mission was a treacherous one; indeed, one of Tissaphernes' relatives had followed along, to see that he kept faith. The generals consequently decided that it was best to pass a decree that there should be no negotiations with the enemy in this war

¹ cp. II. v. 35.

πόλεμον ἀκήρυκτον εἶναι ἔστ' ἐν τῇ πολεμίᾳ εἶεν·
 διέφθειρον γὰρ προσιόντες τοὺς στρατιώτας, καὶ
 ἓνα γε λοχαγὸν διέφθειραν Νίκαρχον Ἀρκάδα,
 καὶ ὄχλητο ἀπὼν νυκτὸς σὺν ἀνθρώποις ὡς εἴκοσι.
 6 Μετὰ ταῦτα ἀριστήσαντες καὶ διαβάντες τὸν
 Ζαπάταν ποταμὸν ἐπορεύοντο τεταγμένοι τὰ
 ὑποζύγια καὶ τὸν ὄχλον ἐν μέσῳ ἔχοντες. οὐ
 πολὺ δὲ προεληλυθότων αὐτῶν ἐπιφαίνεται
 πάλιν ὁ Μιθραδάτης, ἰππέας ἔχων ὡς διακοσίους
 καὶ τοξότας καὶ σφενδονήτας εἰς τετρακοσίους
 7 μάλα ἐλαφροὺς καὶ εὐζώνους. καὶ προσῆει μὲν
 ὡς φίλος ὦν πρὸς τοὺς Ἕλληνας· ἐπεὶ δ' ἐγγὺς
 ἐγένοντο, ἐξαπίνης οἱ μὲν αὐτῶν ἐτόξευον καὶ
 ἰππεῖς καὶ πεζοί, οἱ δ' ἐσφενδόνων, καὶ ἐτί-
 τρωσκον. οἱ δὲ ὀπισθοφυλακες τῶν Ἑλλήνων
 ἔπασχον μὲν κακῶς, ἀντεποιοῦν δ' οὐδέν· οἱ τε
 γὰρ Κρήτες βραχύτερα τῶν Περσῶν ἐτόξευον καὶ
 ἅμα ψιλοὶ ὄντες εἴσω τῶν ὄπλων κατεκέκλειντο,
 οἱ δὲ ἀκοντισταὶ βραχύτερα ἠκόντιζον ἢ ὡς
 8 ἐξικνεῖσθαι τῶν σφενδονητῶν. ἐκ τούτου Ξενο-
 φῶντι ἐδόκει διωκτέον εἶναι· καὶ ἐδίωκον τῶν
 ὀπλιτῶν καὶ τῶν πελταστῶν οἱ ἔτυχον σὺν αὐτῷ
 ὀπισθοφυλακοῦντες· διώκοντες δὲ οὐδένα κατε-
 9 λάμβανον τῶν πολεμίων. οὔτε γὰρ ἰππεῖς ἦσαν
 τοῖς Ἕλλησιν οὔτε οἱ πεζοὶ τοὺς πεζοὺς ἐκ
 πολλοῦ¹ φεύγοντας ἐδύναντο καταλαμβάνειν ἐν

so long as they should be in the enemy's country. For the barbarians kept coming and trying to corrupt the soldiers; in the case of one captain, Nicarchus the Arcadian, they actually succeeded, and he decamped during the night, taking with him about twenty men.

After this they took breakfast, crossed the Zapatas¹ river, and set out on the march in the formation decided upon,² with the baggage animals and the camp followers in the middle of the square. They had not proceeded far when Mithradates appeared again, accompanied by about two hundred horsemen and by bowmen and slingers—exceedingly active and nimble troops—to the number of four hundred. He approached the Greeks as if he were a friend, but when his party had got close at hand, on a sudden some of them, horse and foot alike, began shooting with their bows and others with slings, and they inflicted wounds. And the Greek rearguard, while suffering severely, could not retaliate at all; for the Cretan³ bowmen not only had a shorter range than the Persians, but besides, since they had no armour, they were shut in within the lines of the hoplites; and the Greek javelin-men could not throw far enough to reach the enemy's slingers. Xenophon consequently decided that they must pursue the Persians, and this they did, with such of the hoplites and peltasts as were guarding the rear with him; but in their pursuit they failed to catch a single man of the enemy. For the Greeks had no horsemen, and their foot-soldiers were not able to overtake the enemy's foot-soldiers—since the latter had a long start in their flight—within a short

¹ ἐκ πολλοῦ MSS. except C₁, Mar.: Gem. omits, following C₁.

¹ cp. II. v. 1.

² See ii. 36.

³ See I. ii. 9. The Cretans were the most famous archers of antiquity.

ὀλίγῳ χωρίῳ· πολὺ γὰρ οὐχ οἶόν τε ἦν ἀπὸ τοῦ
 10 ἄλλου στρατεύματος διώκειν· οἱ δὲ βάρβαροι
 ἰππεῖς καὶ φεύγοντες ἅμα ἐτίτρωσκον εἰς τοῦ-
 πισθεν τοξεύοντες ἀπὸ τῶν ἵππων, ὅποσον δὲ
 11 διώξειαν οἱ Ἕλληνες, τοσοῦτον πάλιν ἐπαναχω-
 ρεῖν μαχομένους ἔδει. ὥστε τῆς ἡμέρας ὅλης¹
 διήλθον οὐ πλέον πέντε καὶ εἴκοσι σταδίων, ἀλλὰ
 δείλης ἀφίκοντο εἰς τὰς κώμας.

Ἐνθα δὴ πάλιν ἀθυμία ἦν. καὶ Χειρίσοφος
 καὶ οἱ πρεσβύτατοι τῶν στρατηγῶν Ξενοφῶντα
 ἠτιῶντο ὅτι ἐδίωκεν ἀπὸ τῆς φάλαγγος καὶ αὐτός
 τε ἐκινδύνευε καὶ τοὺς πολεμίους οὐδὲν μᾶλλον
 12 ἐδύνατο βλάπτειν. ἀκούσας δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἔλεγεν
 ὅτι ὀρθῶς αἰτιῶντο καὶ αὐτὸ τὸ ἔργον αὐτοῖς
 μαρτυροίη. ἀλλ' ἐγώ, ἔφη, ἠναγκάσθη διώκειν,
 ἐπειδὴ ἐώρων ἡμᾶς ἐν τῷ μένειν κακῶς μὲν πᾶ-
 13 σχοντας, ἀντιποιεῖν δὲ οὐ δυναμένους. ἐπειδὴ δὲ
 ἐδίωκομεν, ἀληθῆ, ἔφη, ὑμεῖς λέγετε· κακῶς μὲν
 γὰρ ποιεῖν οὐδὲν μᾶλλον ἐδυνάμεθα τοὺς πολε-
 14 μίους, ἀνεχωροῦμεν δὲ παγχαλέπως. τοῖς οὖν
 θεοῖς χάρις ὅτι οὐ σὺν πολλῇ βῶμῃ ἀλλὰ σὺν
 ὀλίγοις ἦλθον, ὥστε βλάψαι μὲν μὴ μεγάλα,
 15 δηλῶσαι δὲ ὧν δεόμεθα. νῦν γὰρ οἱ πολέμιοι
 τοξεύουσι καὶ σφενδονῶσιν ὅσον οὔτε οἱ Κρήτες
 ἀντιτοξεύειν δύνανται οὔτε οἱ ἐκ χειρὸς βάλλοντες
 ἐξικνεῖσθαι· ὅταν δὲ αὐτοὺς διώκωμεν, πολὺ μὲν

¹ ὅλης MSS. except C₁, Mar.: Gem. omits, following C₁.

distance; and a long pursuit, far away from the main Greek army, was not possible. Again, the barbarian horsemen even while they were in flight would inflict wounds by shooting behind them from their horses; and whatever distance the Greeks might at any time cover in their pursuit, all that distance they were obliged to fall back fighting. The result was that during the whole day they travelled not more than twenty-five stadia. They did arrive, however, towards evening at the villages.¹

Here again there was despondency. And Cheiriosophus and the eldest of the generals found fault with Xenophon for leaving the main body of the army to undertake a pursuit, and thus endangering himself without being able, for all that, to do the enemy any harm. When Xenophon heard their words, he replied that they were right in finding fault with him, and that the outcome bore witness of itself for their view. "But," he continued, "I was compelled to pursue when I saw that by keeping our places we were suffering severely and were still unable to strike a blow ourselves. As to what happened, however, when we did pursue, you are quite right: we were no better able to inflict harm upon the enemy, and it was only with the utmost difficulty that we effected our own withdrawal. Let us thank the gods, therefore, that they came, not with a large force, but with a handful, so that without doing us any great damage they have revealed our needs. For at present the enemy can shoot arrows and sling stones so far that neither our Cretan bowmen nor our javelin-men can reach them in reply; and when we pursue them, a long chase,

¹ i.e. those mentioned in ii. 34.

οὐχ οἶόν τε χωριον ἀπὸ τοῦ στρατεύματος διώκειν,
 ἐν ὀλίγῳ δὲ οὐδ' εἰ ταχύς εἴη πεζὸς πεζὸν ἂν
 16 διώκων καταλαμβάνοι ἐκ τόξου ῥύματος. ἡμεῖς
 οὖν εἰ μέλλοιμεν τούτους εἶργειν ὥστε μὴ δύ-
 νασθαι βλάπτειν ἡμᾶς πορευομένους, σφενδονητῶν
 τὴν ταχίστην δεῖ καὶ ἰππέων. ἀκούω δ' εἶναι ἐν
 τῷ στρατεύματι ἡμῶν Ῥοδίους, ὧν τοὺς πολλοὺς
 φασιν ἐπίστασθαι σφενδονᾶν, καὶ τὸ βέλος αὐτῶν
 καὶ διπλάσιον φέρεσθαι τῶν Περσικῶν σφεν-
 17 δονῶν. ἐκεῖναι γὰρ διὰ τὸ χειροπληθέσι τοῖς
 λίθοις σφενδονᾶν ἐπὶ βραχὺ ἐξικνουῦνται, οἱ δὲ
 Ῥόδιοι καὶ ταῖς μολυβδίσι ἐπίστανται χρῆσθαι.
 18 ἦν οὖν αὐτῶν ἐπισκεψώμεθα τίνες πέπανται
 σφενδόνας, καὶ τούτοις¹ μὲν δῶμεν αὐτῶν ἀργύ-
 ριον, τῷ δὲ ἄλλας πλέκειν ἐθέλοντι ἄλλο ἀργύριον
 τελῶμεν, καὶ τῷ σφενδονᾶν ἐν τῷ τεταγμένῳ
 ἐθέλοντι ἄλλην τινὰ ἀτέλειαν εὐρίσκωμεν, ἴσως
 19 τινὲς φανοῦνται ἱκανοὶ ἡμᾶς ὠφελεῖν. ὁρῶ δὲ
 ἵππους ὄντας ἐν τῷ στρατεύματι, τοὺς μὲν τινας
 παρ' ἐμοί, τοὺς δὲ τῶν Κλεάρχου καταλελειμ-
 μένους, πολλοὺς δὲ καὶ ἄλλους αἰχμαλώτους
 σκευοφοροῦντας. ἂν οὖν τούτους πάντας ἐκλέ-
 ξαντες σκευοφόρα μὲν ἀντιδῶμεν, τοὺς δὲ ἵππους
 εἰς ἰππέας κατασκευάσωμεν, ἴσως καὶ οὐτοί τι
 20 τοὺς φεύγοντας ἀνιάσουσιν. ἔδοξε καὶ ταῦτα.

¹ τούτοις Cobet: τούτῳ MSS., followed doubtfully by Mar.: -φ Gem.

away from our main body, is out of the question, and in a short chase no foot-soldier, even if he is swift, can overtake another foot-soldier who has a bow-shot the start of him. Hence, if we should propose to put an end to the possibility of their harming us on our march, we need slingers ourselves at once, and horsemen also. Now I am told that there are Rhodians¹ in our army, that most of them understand the use of the sling, and that their missile carries no less than twice as far as those from the Persian slings. For the latter have only a short range because the stones that are used in them are as large as the hand can hold; the Rhodians, however, are versed also in the art of slinging leaden bullets. If, therefore, we should ascertain who among them possess slings, and should not only pay these people for their slings, but likewise pay anyone who is willing to plait new ones, and if, furthermore, we should devise some sort of exemption for the man who will volunteer to serve as a slinger at his appointed post, it may be that men will come forward who will be capable of helping us. Again, I observe that there are horses in the army—a few at my own quarters, others that made part of Clearchus' troop and were left behind,² and many others that have been taken from the enemy and are used as pack-animals. If, then, we should pick out all these horses, replacing them with mules, and should equip them for cavalry, it may be that this cavalry also will cause some annoyance to the enemy when they are in flight." These proposals also were

¹ Rhodian slingers were hardly less famous than Cretan bowmen.

² i.e. when Clearchus' troopers deserted to the King (ii. ii. 7).

καὶ ταύτης τῆς νυκτὸς σφενδονῆται μὲν εἰς διακοσίους ἐγένοντο, ἵπποι δὲ καὶ ἵππεῖς ἐδοκιμάσθησαν τῇ ὑστεραία εἰς πεντήκοντα, καὶ σπολάδες καὶ θώρακες αὐτοῖς ἐπορίσθησαν, καὶ ἵππαρχος ἐπεστάθη Λύκιος ὁ Πολυστράτου Ἀθηναῖος.

IV. Μείναντες δὲ ταύτην τὴν ἡμέραν τῇ ἄλλῃ ἐπορεύοντο πρωαίτερον ἀναστάντες· χαράδραν γὰρ ἔδει αὐτοὺς διαβῆναι ἐφ' ἣ ἐφοβοῦντο μὴ ἐπιθῶντο αὐτοῖς διαβαίνουσιν οἱ πολέμιοι.

2 διαβεβηκόσι δὲ αὐτοῖς πάλιν φαίνεται Μιθραδάτης, ἔχων ἵππεας χιλίους, τοξότας δὲ καὶ σφενδονήτας εἰς τετρακισχιλίους· τοσοῦτους γὰρ ἤτησε Τισσαφέρην, καὶ ἔλαβεν ὑποσχόμενος, ἂν τούτους λάβῃ, παραδώσειν αὐτῷ τοὺς Ἕλληνας, καταφρονήσας, ὅτι ἐν τῇ πρόσθεν προσβολῇ ὀλίγους ἔχων ἔπαθε μὲν οὐδέν, πολλὰ δὲ κακὰ

3 ἐνόμιζε ποιῆσαι. ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ Ἕλληνες διαβεβηκότες ἀπείχον τῆς χαράδρας ὅσον ὀκτῶ σταδίου, διέβαινε καὶ ὁ Μιθραδάτης ἔχων τὴν δύναμιν. παρήγγελτο δὲ τῶν τε πελταστῶν οὓς ἔδει διώκειν καὶ τῶν ὀπλιτῶν, καὶ τοῖς ἵππεῦσιν εἶρητο θαρροῦσι διώκειν ὡς ἐφεψομένης ἱκανῆς

4 δυνάμεως. ἐπεὶ δὲ ὁ Μιθραδάτης κατειλήφει, καὶ ἤδη σφενδόναι καὶ τοξεύματα ἐξικνούντο, ἐσήμηνε τοῖς Ἕλλησι τῇ σάλπιγγι, καὶ εὐθύς

adopted, and in the course of that night a company of two hundred slingers was organized, while on the following day horses and horsemen to the number of fifty were examined and accepted, and jerkins and cuirasses were provided for them; and Lycius, the son of Polystratus, an Athenian, was put in command of the troop.

IV. That day they remained quiet, but the next morning they set forth, after rising earlier than usual; for there was a gorge they had to cross, and they were afraid that the enemy might attack them as they were crossing. It was only after they had crossed it, however, that Mithradates appeared again, accompanied by a thousand horsemen and about four thousand bowmen and slingers. For these were the numbers he had requested from Tissaphernes, and these numbers he had obtained upon his promise that, if such a force were given him, he would deliver the Greeks into Tissaphernes' hands; for he had come to despise them, seeing that in his earlier attack with a small force he had done a great deal of harm, as he thought, without suffering any loss himself. When, accordingly, the Greeks were across the gorge and about eight stadia beyond it, Mithradates also proceeded to make the crossing with his troops. Now orders had already been given to such of the Greek peltasts and hoplites as were to pursue the enemy, and the horsemen had been directed to be bold in urging the pursuit, in the assurance that an adequate force would follow at their heels. As soon, then, as Mithradates had caught up, so that his sling-stones and arrows were just beginning to reach their marks, the trumpet gave its signal to the Greeks, and on

ἔθειον ὁμόσε οἷς εἶρητο καὶ οἱ ἵππεῖς ἤλαυνον· οἱ δὲ οὐκ ἐδέξαντο, ἀλλ' ἔφευγον ἐπὶ τῇ
 5 χαράδρῳ. ἐν ταύτῃ τῇ διώξει τοῖς βαρβάροις τῶν τε πεζῶν ἀπέθανον πολλοὶ καὶ τῶν ἵππέων ἐν τῇ χαράδρῳ ζωοὶ ἐλήφθησαν εἰς ὀκτωκαίδεκα. τοὺς δὲ ἀποθανόντας αὐτοκέλευστοι οἱ Ἕλληνες ἠκίσαντο, ὡς ὅτι φοβερῶτατον τοῖς πολεμίοις εἶη ὄραν.

6 Καὶ οἱ μὲν πολέμιοι οὕτω πράξαντες ἀπῆλθον, οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες ἀσφαλῶς πορευόμενοι τὸ λοιπὸν τῆς ἡμέρας ἀφίκοντο ἐπὶ τὸν Τίγρητα ποταμόν.
 7 ἐνταῦθα πόλις ἦν ἐρήμη μεγάλη, ὄνομα δ' αὐτῇ ἦν Λάρισα· ᾠκουν δ' αὐτὴν τὸ παλαιὸν Μῆδοι. τοῦ δὲ τείχους αὐτῆς ἦν τὸ εὖρος πέντε καὶ εἴκοσι πόδες, ὕψος δ' ἑκατόν· τοῦ δὲ κύκλου ἡ περίοδος δύο παρασάγγαι· ᾠκοδόμητο δὲ πλίνθοις κεραμαῖς· κρηπὶς δ' ὑπῆν λιθίνη τὸ ὕψος εἴκοσι
 8 ποδῶν. ταύτην βασιλεὺς Περσῶν ὅτε παρὰ Μήδων τὴν ἀρχὴν ἐλάμβανον Πέρσαι πολιορκῶν οὐδενὶ τρόπῳ ἐδύνατο ἐλεῖν· ἥλιον δὲ νεφέλην προκαλύψασα¹ ἠφάνισε μέχρι ἐξέλιπον οἱ ἄνθρωποι, καὶ οὕτως ἐάλω. παρὰ ταύτην τὴν πόλιν ἦν πυραμὶς λιθίνη, τὸ μὲν εὖρος ἐνὸς πλέθρου, τὸ δὲ ὕψος δύο πλέθρων. ἐπὶ ταύτης πολλοὶ τῶν βαρβάρων ἦσαν ἐκ τῶν πλησίων κωμῶν ἀποπεφευγότες.

10 Ἐντεῦθεν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν σταθμὸν ἓνα παρα-

¹ ἥλιον δὲ νεφέλην προκαλύψασα Mar., following Brodaeus: ἥλιος δὲ νεφέλην προκαλύψας MSS., Gem.

the instant the foot-soldiers who were under orders rushed upon the enemy and the horsemen charged; and the enemy did not await their attack, but fled towards the gorge. In this pursuit the barbarians had many of their infantry killed, while of their cavalry no less than eighteen were taken alive in the gorge. And the Greek troops, unbidden save by their own impulse, disfigured the bodies of the dead, in order that the sight of them might inspire the utmost terror in the enemy.

After faring thus badly the enemy departed, while the Greeks continued their march unmolested through the remainder of the day and arrived at the Tigris river. Here was a large deserted city¹; its name was Larisa, and it was inhabited in ancient times by the Medes. Its wall was twenty-five feet in breadth and a hundred in height, and the whole circuit of the wall was two parasangs. It was built of clay bricks, and rested upon a stone foundation twenty feet high. This city was besieged by the king² of the Persians at the time when the Persians were seeking to wrest from the Medes their empire, but he could in no way capture it. A cloud, however, overspread the sun and hid it from sight until the inhabitants abandoned their city; and thus it was taken. Near by this city was a pyramid of stone, a plethrum in breadth and two plethra in height; and upon this pyramid were many barbarians who had fled away from the neighbouring villages.

From this place they marched one stage, six

¹ This city, called by Xenophon "Larisa," was the great Assyrian city of Calah, mentioned in *Genesis*, x. 11, 12.

² Cyrus the Great (558-529 B.C.).

- σάγγας ἔξ πρὸς τεῖχος ἔρημον μέγα κείμενον ὄνομα δὲ ἦν τῇ πόλει Μέσπιλα· Μῆδοι δ' αὐτὴν ποτε ᾤκουν. ἦν δὲ ἡ μὲν κρηπὶς λίθου ξεστοῦ κογχυλιάτου, τὸ εὖρος πεντήκοντα ποδῶν καὶ τὸ ὕψος πεντήκοντα. ἐπὶ δὲ ταύτῃ ἐπωκοδόμητο πλίνθινον τεῖχος, τὸ μὲν εὖρος πεντήκοντα ποδῶν, τὸ δὲ ὕψος ἑκατόν· τοῦ δὲ τεύχους ἡ περίοδος ἔξ παρασάγγαι. ἐνταῦθα λέγεται Μήδεια γυνὴ βασιλέως καταφυγεῖν ὅτε ἀπώλλυσαν τὴν ἀρχὴν ὑπὸ Περσῶν Μῆδοι. ταύτην δὲ τὴν πόλιν πολιορκῶν ὁ Περσῶν βασιλεὺς οὐκ ἐδύνατο οὔτε χρόνῳ ἐλεῖν οὔτε βία· Ζεὺς δὲ βροντῇ κατέπληξε τοὺς ἐνοικοῦντας, καὶ οὕτως ἐάλω.
- 13 Ἐντεῦθεν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν σταθμὸν ἓνα παρασάγγας τέτταρας. εἰς τοῦτον δὲ τὸν σταθμὸν Τισσαφέρνης ἐπεφάνη, οὓς τε αὐτὸς ἰππέας ἤλθεν¹ ἔχων καὶ τὴν Ὀρόντα δύναμιν τοῦ τὴν βασιλέως θυγατέρα ἔχοντος καὶ οὓς Κῦρος ἔχων ἀνέβη βαρβάρους καὶ οὓς ὁ βασιλέως ἀδελφὸς ἔχων βασιλεῖ ἐβοήθει, καὶ πρὸς τούτοις ὅσους βασιλεὺς ἔδωκεν αὐτῷ, ὥστε τὸ στράτευμα πάμ-
- 14 πολὺ ἐφάνη. ἐπεὶ δ' ἐγγὺς ἐγένετο, τὰς μὲν τῶν

¹ ἤλθεν MSS., Mar.: ἤγαγεν Gem.

¹ The ruins which Xenophon saw here were those of Nineveh, the famous capital of the Assyrian Empire. It is curious to find him dismissing this great Assyrian city (as well as Calah above) with the casual and misleading statement that "it was once inhabited by the Medes." In fact, the capture of Nineveh by the Medes (c. 600 B.C.) was the precise event which closed the important period of its history, and it remained under the control of the Medes only

parasangs, to a great stronghold, deserted and lying in ruins. The name of this city was Mespila,¹ and it was once inhabited by the Medes. The foundation of its wall was made of polished stone full of shells, and was fifty feet in breadth and fifty in height. Upon this foundation was built a wall of brick, fifty feet in breadth and a hundred in height; and the circuit of the wall was six parasangs. Here, as the story goes, Medea, the king's² wife, took refuge at the time when the Medes were deprived of their empire by the Persians. To this city also the king of the Persians laid siege, but he was unable to capture it either by length of siege or by storm; Zeus, however, terrified the inhabitants with thunder, and thus the city was taken.

From this place they marched one stage, four parasangs. In the course of this stage Tissaphernes made his appearance, having under his command the cavalry which he had himself brought with him,³ the troops of Orontas,⁴ who was married to the King's daughter, the barbarians whom Cyrus had brought with him on his upward march, and those with whom the King's brother had come to the aid of the King⁵; besides these contingents Tissaphernes had all the troops that the King had given him; the result was, that his army appeared exceedingly large. When he got near the Greeks, he

during the succeeding half-century, i.e. until the Median Empire was in its turn overthrown by the Persians (549 B.C.). Xenophon, then, goes but one unimportant step backward in his historical note—perhaps because he did not care to go farther, perhaps because he was unable to do so.

² Astyages, the last king of Media.

³ i.e. from his province in Asia Minor, when he came to inform Artaxerxes of Cyrus' designs against him. See I. ii. 4.

⁴ cp. II. iv. 8. ⁵ cp. II. iv. 25.

- τάξεων ὀπισθεν καταστήσας, τὰς δὲ εἰς τὰ πλάγια παραγαγὼν ἐμβαλεῖν μὲν οὐκ ἐτόλμησεν οὐδ' ἐβούλετο διακινδυνεύειν, σφενδονᾶν δὲ παρ-
- 15 ἠγγεῖλε καὶ τοξεύειν. ἐπεὶ δὲ διαταχθέντες οἱ Ῥόδιοι ἐσφενδόνησαν καὶ οἱ τοξόται ἐτόξευσαν καὶ οὐδεὶς ἠμάρτανεν ἀνδρός (οὐδὲ γὰρ εἰ πάνυ προθυμεῖτο ῥάδιον ἦν), καὶ ὁ Τισσαφέρνης μάλα ταχέως ἔξω βελῶν ἀπεχώρει καὶ αἱ ἄλλαι τάξεις ἀπεχώρησαν.
- 16 Καὶ τὸ λοιπὸν τῆς ἡμέρας οἱ μὲν ἐπορεύοντο, οἱ δ' εἶποντο· καὶ οὐκέτι ἐσίνοντο οἱ βάρβαροι τῇ τότε ἀκροβολίσει· μακρότερον γὰρ οἷ γε Ῥόδιοι τῶν Περσῶν ἐσφενδόνων, καὶ τῶν τοξοτῶν.¹
- 17 μεγάλα δὲ καὶ τόξα τὰ Περσικά ἐστίν· ὥστε χρήσιμα ἦν ὅποσα ἀλίσκοιτο τῶν τοξευμάτων² τοῖς Κρησί, καὶ διετέλουν χρώμενοι τοῖς τῶν πολεμίων τοξεύμασι, καὶ ἐμελέτων τοξεύειν ἄνω ἰέντες μακράν. ἠύρισκετο δὲ καὶ νεῦρα πολλὰ ἐν ταῖς κώμαις καὶ μόλυβδος, ὥστε χρῆσθαι εἰς
- 18 τὰς σφενδόνας. καὶ ταύτη μὲν τῇ ἡμέρᾳ, ἐπεὶ κατεστρατοπεδεύοντο οἱ Ἕλληνες κώμαις ἐπιτυ-

¹ Mar. follows Madvig in regarding the text here as corrupt.

² τῶν τοξευμάτων MSS.: Gem. brackets.

¹ i.e. on account of the dense throng of the enemy.

² cp. iii. 7-10.

³ Xenophon remarks in iii. 17 upon the large size of the stones employed in the Persian slings. The word "also" (καὶ) can hardly refer back to that remark, but it may be

stationed some of his battalions in their rear and moved others into position on their flanks; then, although he could not muster up the courage to close with them and had no desire to risk a decisive battle, he ordered his men to discharge their slings and let fly their arrows. But when the Rhodian slingers and the bowmen, posted at intervals here and there, sent back an answering volley, and not a man among them missed his mark (for even if he had been very eager to do so, it would not have been easy),¹ then Tissaphernes withdrew out of range with all speed, and the other battalions followed his example.

For the rest of the day the one army continued its march and the other its pursuit. And the barbarians were no longer² able to do any harm by their skirmishing at long range; for the Rhodian slingers carried farther with their missiles than the Persians, farther even than the Persian bowmen. The Persian bows are also³ large, and consequently the Cretans could make good use of all the arrows that fell into their hands; in fact, they were continually using the enemy's arrows, and practised themselves in long-range work by shooting them into the air.⁴ In the villages, furthermore, the Greeks found gut in abundance and lead for the use of their slingers. As for that day's doings, when the Greeks came upon some villages and proceeded to encamp,

that some further observation of the same sort in the original text (see critical note) of the present passage served to introduce what Xenophon now goes on to say about the Persian bows. It is implied in "consequently" (ὥστε) that the Cretan bows were of approximately the same size as those of the Persians.

⁴ So that the arrows could be easily recovered.

χόντες, ἀπῆλθον οἱ βάρβαροι μείον ἔχοντες τῇ ἀκροβολίσει· τὴν δ' ἐπιούσαν ἡμέραν ἔμειναν οἱ Ἕλληνες καὶ ἐπεσιτίσαντο· ἦν γὰρ πολλὸς σίτος ἐν ταῖς κώμαις. τῇ δὲ ὑστεραία ἐπορεύοντο διὰ τοῦ πεδίου, καὶ Τισσαφέρνης εἶπετο ἀκροβολιζόμενος.

- 19 Ἐνθα δὲ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἔγνωσαν πλαίσιον ἰσόπλευρον ὅτι πονηρὰ τάξις εἶναι πολεμίων ἐπομένων. ἀνάγκη γάρ ἐστιν, ἦν συγκύπτῃ τὰ κέρατα τοῦ πλαίσιου ἢ ὁδοῦ στενοτέρας οὔσης ἢ ὁρέων ἀναγκαζόντων ἢ γεφύρας, ἐκθλίβεσθαι τοὺς ὀπίστας καὶ πορεύεσθαι πονήρως, ἅμα μὲν πιεζομένους, ἅμα δὲ ταραττομένους, ὥστε δυσχρήστους εἶναι
- 20 ἀτάκτους ὄντας· ὅταν δ' αὖ διάσχη τὰ κέρατα, ἀνάγκη διασπᾶσθαι τοὺς τότε ἐκθλιβομένους καὶ κενὸν γίγνεσθαι τὸ μέσον τῶν κεράτων, καὶ ἀθυμεῖν τοὺς ταῦτα πάσχοντας πολεμίων ἐπομένων. καὶ ὁπότε δέοι γέφυραν διαβαίνειν ἢ ἄλλην τινὰ διάβασιν, ἔσπενδεν ἕκαστος βουλόμενος φθάσαι πρῶτος· καὶ εὐεπίθετον ἦν ἐνταῦθα τοῖς πολε-
- 21 μίοις. ἐπεὶ δὲ ταῦτ' ἔγνωσαν οἱ στρατηγοί, ἐποίησαν ἕξ λόχους ἀνὰ ἑκατὸν ἄνδρας, καὶ λοχαγοὺς ἐπέστησαν καὶ ἄλλους πεντηκοντῆρας καὶ ἄλλους ἐνωμοτάρχους. οὗτοι δὲ πορευόμενοι, ὁπότε μὲν συγκύπτοι τὰ κέρατα, ὑπέμενον ὕστεροι,

¹ i.e. commanders of fifties and twenty-fives, or of half and quarter companies.

² The formation is a hollow square. Xenophon means by "wings" (κέρατα, here and above) the right and left ends of the division which formed the front of the square, and by

the barbarians withdrew, having had the worst of it in the skirmishing. The following day the Greeks remained quiet and collected supplies, for there was an abundance of corn in the villages. On the day thereafter they continued their march through the plain, and Tissaphernes hung upon their rear and kept up the skirmishing.

Then it was that the Greeks found out that a square is a poor formation when an enemy is following. For if the wings draw together, either because a road is unusually narrow or because mountains or a bridge make it necessary, it is inevitable that the hoplites should be squeezed out of line and should march with difficulty, inasmuch as they are crowded together and are likewise in confusion; the result is that, being in disorder, they are of little service. Furthermore, when the wings draw apart again, those who were lately squeezed out are inevitably scattered, the space between the wings is left unoccupied, and the men affected are out of spirits when an enemy is close behind them. Again, as often as the army had to pass over a bridge or make any other crossing, every man would hurry, in the desire to be the first one across, and that gave the enemy a fine chance to make an attack. When the generals came to realize these difficulties, they formed six companies of a hundred men each and put a captain at the head of each company, adding also platoon and squad commanders.¹ Then in case the wings drew together on the march,² these

"flanks" (πλευραί) the divisions which formed the sides of the square. Apparently three of the special companies were stationed at the middle of the front side of the square (cp. § 43 below) and the other three in the corresponding position at the rear.

- ὥστε μὴ ἐνοχλεῖν τοῖς κέρασι, τότε¹ δὲ παρήγον
 22 ἔξωθεν τῶν κεράτων. ὁπότε δὲ διάσχοιεν αἱ
 πλευραὶ τοῦ πλαισίου, τὸ μέσον ἂν ἐξεπίμπλα-
 σαν, εἰ μὲν στενότερον εἴη τὸ διέχον, κατὰ λό-
 χους, εἰ δὲ πλατύτερον, κατὰ πεντηκοστῆς, εἰ δὲ
 23 πάνυ πλατύ, κατ' ἐνωμοτίας· ὥστε αἰὲς ἔκπλεων
 εἶναι τὸ μέσον. εἰ δὲ καὶ διαβαίνειν τινὰ δέοι
 διάβασιν ἢ γέφυραν, οὐκ ἐταράττοντο, ἀλλ' ἐν
 τῷ μέρει οἱ λόχοι² διέβαινον· καὶ εἴ πού τις δέοι τι
 τῆς φάλαγγος, ἐπιπαρήσαν οὗτοι. τούτῳ τῷ
 τρόπῳ ἐπορεύθησαν σταθμοὺς τέτταρας.
 24 Ἦνίκα δὲ τὸν πέμπτον ἐπορεύοντο, εἶδον βασι-
 λειὸν τι καὶ περὶ αὐτὸ κώμας πολλὰς, τὴν δὲ
 ὁδὸν πρὸς τὸ χωρίον τοῦτο διὰ γηλόφων ὑψηλῶν
 γιγνομένην, οἱ καθῆκον ἀπὸ τοῦ ὄρους ὑφ' ᾧ ἦσαν
 αἱ κῶμαι.³ καὶ εἶδον μὲν τοὺς λόφους ἄσμενοι οἱ
 Ἕλληνας, ὡς εἰκὸς τῶν πολεμίων ὄντων ἰππέων·
 25 ἐπεὶ δὲ πορευόμενοι ἐκ τοῦ πεδίου ἀνέβησαν ἐπὶ
 τὸν πρῶτον γήλοφον καὶ κατέβαινον, ὡς ἐπὶ τὸν
 ἕτερον ἀναβαίνειν, ἐνταῦθα ἐπιγίγνονται οἱ βάρ-
 βαροι καὶ ἀπὸ τοῦ ὑψηλοῦ εἰς τὸ πρηνὲς ἔβαλ-

¹ τότε the inferior MSS., Mar.: τοὺς the better MSS. Gem., reading τοὺς, inserts οἱ μὲν before ὕστεροι, following Mangelsdorf. After ὕστεροι the MSS. have οἱ λοχαγοί, which Mar. and Gem. bracket.

² οἱ λόχοι Gem., following Valckenaer: οἱ λοχαγοὶ MSS.

³ ἦσαν αἱ κῶμαι Gem., following Schenkl: ἦν ἡ κώμη MSS.

¹ The squad, or quarter company, consisting of 25 men (i.e. 24 + the leader), normally marched three abreast, i.e. with a front of three and a depth of eight. The company

companies would drop back, so as not to interfere with the wings, and for the time being would move along behind the wings; and when the flanks of the square drew apart again, they would fill up the space between the wings, by companies in case this space was rather narrow, by platoons in case it was broader, or, if it was very broad, by squads¹—the idea being, to have the gap filled up in any event. Again, if the army had to make some crossing or to pass over a bridge, there was no confusion, but each company crossed over in its turn; and if any help was needed in any part of the army, these troops would make their way to the spot. In this fashion the Greeks proceeded four stages.

In the course of the fifth stage they caught sight of a palace of some sort, with many villages round about it, and they observed that the road to this place passed over high hills, which stretched down from the mountain at whose foot the villages were situated. And the Greeks were well pleased to see the hills, as was natural considering that the enemy's force was cavalry;² when, however, in their march out of the plain they had mounted to the top of the first hill, and were descending it, so as to ascend the next, at this moment the barbarians came upon them and down from the hilltop discharged their missiles

might be formed in any one of three ways: (a) one squad front and four deep, (b) two squads front and two deep, or (c) four squads front and one deep. Three companies ranged alongside one another in formation (a) would thus have a front of three squads or nine men, in formation (b) a front of eighteen men, and in formation (c) a front of thirty-six men. It is these three dispositions of the three special companies at the front of the square which Xenophon terms, respectively, "by companies," "by platoons," and "by squads."

¹ Which is most effective in a level country.

- 26 λον, ἐσφενδόνων, ἐτόξευον ὑπὸ μαστίγων, καὶ πολλοὺς ἐτίτρωσκον καὶ ἐκράτησαν τῶν Ἑλλήνων γυμνήτων καὶ κατέκλεισαν αὐτοὺς εἴσω τῶν ὀπλων· ὥστε παντάπασι ταύτην τὴν ἡμέραν ἀχρηστοὶ ἦσαν ἐν τῷ ὄχλῳ ὄντες καὶ οἱ σφενδο-
- 27 νῆται καὶ οἱ τοξόται. ἐπεὶ δὲ πιεζόμενοι οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐπεχείρησαν διώκειν, σχολῇ μὲν ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον ἀφικνούνται ὀπλίται ὄντες, οἱ δὲ πολέμιοι
- 28 ταχὺ ἀπεπήδων. πάλιν δὲ ὁπότε ἀπίοιεν πρὸς τὸ ἄλλο στράτευμα ταῦτὰ ἔπασχον, καὶ ἐπὶ τοῦ δευτέρου γηλόφου ταῦτὰ ἐγίγνετο, ὥστε ἀπὸ τοῦ τρίτου γηλόφου ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς μὴ κινεῖν τοὺς στρατιώτας πρὶν ἀπὸ τῆς δεξιᾶς πλευρᾶς τοῦ πλαισίου ἀνήγαγον πελταστὰς πρὸς τὸ ὄρος.
- 29 ἐπεὶ δ' οὗτοι ἐγένοντο ὑπὲρ τῶν ἐπομένων πολεμίων, οὐκέτι ἐπετίθεντο οἱ πολέμιοι τοῖς καταβαίνουσι, δεδοκότες μὴ ἀποτμηθείησαν καὶ ἀμ-
- 30 φοτέρωθεν αὐτῶν γένοιτο οἱ πολέμιοι. οὕτω τὸ λοιπὸν τῆς ἡμέρας πορευόμενοι, οἱ μὲν ἐν τῇ ὁδῷ κατὰ τοὺς γηλόφους, οἱ δὲ κατὰ τὸ ὄρος ἐπιπαριόντες, ἀφίκοντο εἰς τὰς κώμας· καὶ ἰατροὺς κατέστησαν ὀκτώ· πολλοὶ γὰρ ἦσαν οἱ τετρωμένοι.
- 31 Ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν ἡμέρας τρεῖς καὶ τῶν τετρωμένων ἕνεκα καὶ ἅμα ἐπιτιήδεια πολλὰ εἶχον, ἄλευρα, οἶνον, κριθὰς ἵπποις συμβεβλημένας

and sling-stones and arrows, fighting under the lash.¹ They not only inflicted many wounds, but they got the better of the Greek light troops and shut them up within the lines of the hoplites, so that these troops, being mingled with the non-combatants, were entirely useless throughout that day, slingers and bowmen alike. And when the Greeks, hard-pressed as they were, undertook to pursue the attacking force, they reached the hilltop but slowly, being heavy troops, while the enemy sprang quickly out of reach; and every time they returned from a pursuit to join the main army, they suffered again in the same way.² On the second hill the same experiences were repeated, and hence after ascending the third hill they decided not to stir the troops from its crest until they had led up a force of peltasts from the right flank of the square to a position on the mountain.³ As soon as this force had got above the hostile troops that were hanging upon the Greek rear, the latter desisted from attacking the Greek army in its descent, for fear that they might be cut off and find themselves enclosed on both sides by their foes. In this way the Greeks continued their march for the remainder of the day, the one division by the road leading over the hills while the other followed a parallel course along the mountain slope, and so arrived at the villages. There they appointed eight surgeons, for the wounded were many.

In these villages they remained for three days, not only for the sake of the wounded, but likewise because they had provisions in abundance—flour, wine, and great stores of barley that had been

¹ Like Xerxes' troops at Thermopylae (Herod. vii. 223).

² *i.e.* as described in §§ 25-26. ³ *cp.* § 24.

πολλάς. ταῦτα δὲ συνενηνευγμένα ἦν τῷ σατρα-
 πεύοντι τῆς χώρας. τετάρτη δ' ἡμέρα καταβαί-
 32 νουσιν εἰς τὸ πεδίον. ἐπεὶ δὲ κατέλαβεν αὐτοὺς
 Τισσαφέρνης σὺν τῇ δυνάμει, ἐδίδαξεν αὐτοὺς ἢ
 ἀνάγκη κατασκηνηῆσαι οὐ πρῶτον εἶδον κώμην
 καὶ μὴ πορεύεσθαι ἔτι μαχομένους· πολλοὶ γὰρ
 ἦσαν οἱ ἀπόμαχοι, οἳ τε τετρωμένοι καὶ οἱ ἐκεί-
 νους φέροντες καὶ οἱ τῶν φερόντων τὰ ὄπλα δεξά-
 33 μνοι. ἐπεὶ δὲ κατεσκήνησαν καὶ ἐπεχείρησαν
 αὐτοῖς ἀκροβολίζεσθαι οἱ βάρβαροι πρὸς τὴν
 κώμην προσιόντες, πολὺ περιήσαν οἱ Ἕλληες·
 πολὺ γὰρ διέφερεν ἐκ χώρας ὀρμῶντας ἀλέξασθαι
 ἢ πορευομένους ἐπιούσι τοῖς πολεμίοις μάχεσθαι.
 34 Ἡνίκα δ' ἦν ἤδη δέιλη, ὥρα ἦν ἀπιέναι τοῖς
 πολεμίοις· οὐποτε γὰρ μείον ἀπεστρατοπεδεύοντο
 οἱ βάρβαροι τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ ἐξήκοντα σταδίων,
 φοβούμενοι μὴ τῆς νυκτὸς οἱ Ἕλληες ἐπιθῶνται
 35 αὐτοῖς. πονηρὸν γὰρ νυκτὸς ἐστὶ στράτευμα
 Περσικόν. οἳ τε γὰρ ἵπποι αὐτοῖς δέδενται καὶ
 ὡς ἐπὶ πολὺν πεποδισμένοι εἰσὶ τοῦ μὴ φεύγειν
 ἔνεκα εἰ λυθείησαν, εἰάν τις θόρυβος γίγνηται,
 δεῖ ἐπιστάξαι τὸν ἵππον Πέρση ἀνδρὶ καὶ χαλι-
 νῶσαι, δεῖ καὶ θωρακισθέντα ἀναβῆναι ἐπὶ τὸν
 ἵππον. ταῦτα δὲ πάντα χαλεπὰ νύκτωρ καὶ
 θορύβου ὄντος. τούτου ἔνεκα πόρρω ἀπεσκή-
 νουν τῶν Ἑλλήνων.
 36 Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐγίγνωσκον αὐτοὺς οἱ Ἕλληες βουλο-
 μένους ἀπιέναι καὶ διαγγελλομένους, ἐκήρυξε τοῖς

collected for horses, all these supplies having been gathered together by the acting satrap of the district. On the fourth day they proceeded to descend into the plain. But when Tissaphernes and his command overtook them, necessity taught them to encamp in the first village they caught sight of, and not to continue the plan of marching and fighting at the same time; for a large number of the Greeks were *hors de combat*, not only the wounded, but also those who were carrying them and the men who took in charge the arms of these carriers. When they had encamped, and the barbarians, approaching toward the village, essayed to attack them at long range, the Greeks had much the better of it; for to occupy a position and therefrom ward off an attack was a very different thing from being on the march and fighting with the enemy as they followed after.

As soon as it came to be late in the afternoon, it was time for the enemy to withdraw. For in no instance did the barbarians encamp at a distance of less than sixty stadia from the Greek camp, out of fear that the Greeks might attack them during the night. For a Persian army at night is a sorry thing. Their horses are tethered, and usually hobbled also to prevent their running away if they get loose from the tether, and hence in case of any alarm a Persian has to put saddle-cloth and bridle on his horse, and then has also to put on his own breastplate and mount his horse—and all these things are difficult at night and in the midst of confusion. It was for this reason that the Persians encamped at a considerable distance from the Greeks.

When the Greeks became aware that they were desirous of withdrawing and were passing the word

- Ἑλλησι συσκευάζεσθαι ἀκούοντων τῶν πολεμίων. καὶ χρόνον μὲν τινα ἐπέσχον τῆς πορείας οἱ βάρβαροι, ἐπειδὴ δὲ ὄψε ἐγίγνετο, ἀπῆσαν· οὐ γὰρ ἐδόκει λύειν αὐτοὺς νυκτὸς πορεύεσθαι καὶ
- 37 κατὰγεσθαι ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον. ἐπειδὴ δὲ σαφῶς ἀπιόντας ἤδη ἑώρων οἱ Ἕλληνες, ἐπορεύοντο καὶ αὐτοὶ ἀναζεύξαντες καὶ διήλθον ὅσον ἑξήκοντα σταδίους. καὶ γίγνεται τοσοῦτον μεταξὺ τῶν στρατευμάτων ὥστε τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ οὐκ ἐφάνησαν οἱ πολέμιοι οὐδὲ τῇ τρίτῃ, τῇ δὲ τετάρτῃ νυκτὸς προελθόντες καταλαμβάνουσι χωρίον ὑπερδέξιον οἱ βάρβαροι, ἢ ἔμελλον οἱ Ἕλληνες παριέναι, ἀκρωνυχίαν ὄρους, ὑφ' ἣν ἡ κατάβασις ἦν εἰς τὸ πεδίον.
- 38 Ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἑώρα Χειρίσοφος προκατειλημμένην τὴν ἀκρωνυχίαν, καλεῖ Ξενοφῶντα ἀπὸ τῆς οὐρᾶς καὶ κελεύει λαβόντα τοὺς πελταστὰς παρα-
- 39 γενέσθαι εἰς τὸ πρόσθεν· ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν τοὺς μὲν πελταστὰς οὐκ ἤγε· ἐπιφαινόμενον γὰρ ἑώρα Τισσαφέρην καὶ τὸ στρατεύμα πᾶν· αὐτὸς δὲ προσελάσας ἠρώτα τί καλεῖς; ὁ δὲ λέγει αὐτῷ· Ἐξεστίν ὄραν· κατείληπται γὰρ ἡμῖν ὁ ὑπὲρ τῆς καταβάσεως λόφος, καὶ οὐκ ἔστι παρελθεῖν, εἰ μὴ τούτους
- 40 ἀποκόψομεν. ἀλλὰ τί οὐκ ἤγες τοὺς πελταστὰς; ὁ δὲ λέγει ὅτι οὐκ ἐδόκει αὐτῷ ἔρημα καταλιπεῖν τὰ ὀπισθεν πολεμίων ἐπιφαινομένων. Ἄλλὰ μὴν ὦρα γ', ἔφη, βουλευέσθαι πῶς τις τοὺς ἄνδρας
- 41 ἀπελᾶ ἀπὸ τοῦ λόφου. ἐνταῦθα Ξενοφῶν ὄρᾳ

along, the order to pack up luggage was proclaimed to the Greek troops within hearing of the enemy. For a time the barbarians delayed their setting out, but when it began to grow late, they went off; for they thought it did not pay to be on the march and arriving at their camp in the night. When the Greeks saw at length that they were manifestly departing, they broke camp and took the road themselves, and accomplished a march of no less than sixty stadia. Thus the two armies got so far apart that on the next day the enemy did not appear, nor yet on the third; on the fourth day, however, after pushing forward by night the barbarians occupied a high position on the right of the road by which the Greeks were to pass, a spur of the mountain, namely, along the base of which ran the route leading down into the plain.

As soon as Cheirisophus observed that the spur was already occupied, he summoned Xenophon from the rear, directing him to come to the front and bring the peltasts with him. Xenophon, however, would not bring the peltasts, for he could see Tissaphernes and his whole army coming into view;¹ but he rode forward himself and asked, "Why are you summoning me?" Cheirisophus replied, "It is perfectly evident; the hill overhanging our downward road has been occupied, and there is no getting by unless we dislodge these people. Why did you not bring the peltasts?" Xenophon answered that he had not thought it best to leave the rear unprotected when hostile troops were coming into sight. "Well, at any rate," said Cheirisophus, "it is high time to be thinking how we are to drive these fellows from the height." Then Xenophon observed that the

¹ i.e. from the rear.

τοῦ ὄρους τὴν κορυφὴν ὑπὲρ αὐτοῦ τοῦ ἑαυτῶν
 στρατεύματος οὖσαν, καὶ ἀπὸ ταύτης ἔφοδον ἐπὶ
 τὸν λόφον ἔνθα ἦσαν οἱ πολέμιοι, καὶ λέγει·
 Κράτιστον, ὦ Χειρίσοφε, ἡμῖν ἴεσθαι ὡς τάχιστα
 ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον· ἦν γὰρ τοῦτο λάβωμεν, οὐ δυνή-
 σονται μένειν οἱ ὑπὲρ τῆς ὁδοῦ. ἀλλὰ, εἰ βούλει,
 μένε ἐπὶ τῷ στρατεύματι, ἐγὼ δ' ἐθέλω πορεύ-
 εσθαι· εἰ δὲ χρήζεις, πορεύου ἐπὶ τὸ ὄρος, ἐγὼ
 42 δὲ μενῶ αὐτοῦ. Ἄλλὰ δίδωμί σοι, ἔφη ὁ Χειρί-
 σοφος, ὁπότερον βούλει ἐλέσθαι. εἰπὼν ὁ Ξενο-
 φῶν ὅτι νεώτερός ἐστιν αἰρεῖται πορεύεσθαι,
 κελεύει δὲ οἱ συμπέμψαι ἀπὸ τοῦ στόματος
 ἀνδρας· μακρὸν γὰρ ἦν ἀπὸ τῆς οὐρᾶς λαβεῖν.
 43 καὶ ὁ Χειρίσοφος συμπέμπει τοὺς ἀπὸ τοῦ στό-
 ματος πελταστάς, ἔλαβε δὲ τοὺς κατὰ μέσον
 πλαισίου. συνέπεσθαι δ' ἐκέλευσεν αὐτῷ¹ καὶ
 τοὺς τριακοσίους οὓς αὐτὸς εἶχε τῶν ἐπιλέκτων
 ἐπὶ τῷ στόματι τοῦ πλαισίου.
 44 Ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύοντο ὡς ἐδύναντο τάχιστα.
 οἱ δ' ἐπὶ τοῦ λόφου πολέμιοι ὡς ἐνόησαν αὐτῶν
 τὴν πορείαν ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον, εὐθὺς καὶ αὐτοὶ ὄρ-
 45 μησαν ἀμιλλᾶσθαι ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον. καὶ ἐνταῦθα
 πολλὴ μὲν κραυγὴ ἦν τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ στρατεύ-
 ματος διακελευομένων τοῖς ἑαυτῶν, πολλὴ δὲ
 46 κραυγὴ τῶν ἀμφὶ Τισσαφέρην τοῖς ἑαυτῶν δια-
 κελευομένων. Ξενοφῶν δὲ παρελαύνων ἐπὶ τοῦ
 ἵππου παρεκελεύετο· Ἄνδρες, νῦν ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλ-
 λάδα νομίζετε ἀμιλλᾶσθαι, νῦν πρὸς τοὺς παῖδας
 καὶ τὰς γυναῖκας, νῦν ὀλίγον πονήσαντες ἀμαχεῖ

¹ αὐτῷ the inferior MSS., Mar.: αὐτοῖς the better MSS.
 Gem. brackets αὐτοῖς, following Rehdantz.

summit of the mountain was close above their own
 army and that from this summit there was a way of
 approach to the hill where the enemy were; and he
 said, "Our best plan, Cheirisophus, is to drive with
 all speed for the mountain top; for if we once get
 possession of that, those men above our road will not
 be able to hold their position. If you choose, then,
 stay in command of the army, and I will go; or, if you
 prefer, you make for the mountain top, and I will
 stay here." "Well," said Cheirisophus, "I leave it
 to you to choose whichever part you wish." Then
 Xenophon, with the remark that he was the younger,
 elected to go, but he urged Cheirisophus to send
 with him some troops from the front; for it would
 have been too long a journey to bring up men from
 the rear. Cheirisophus accordingly sent with him
 the peltasts at the front, replacing them with those
 that were inside the square; he also ordered the
 three hundred picked men¹ under his own command
 at the front of the square to join Xenophon's force.

Then they set out with all possible speed. But
 no sooner had the enemy upon the hill observed
 their dash for the summit of the mountain than
 they also set off, to race with the Greeks for this
 summit. Then there was a deal of shouting from
 the Greek army as they urged on their friends, and
 just as much shouting from Tissaphernes' troops to
 urge on their men. And Xenophon, riding along
 the lines upon his horse, cheered his troops forward:
 "My good men," he said, "believe that now you
 are racing for Greece, racing this very hour back to
 your wives and children, a little toil for this one
 moment and no more fighting for the rest of our

¹ See §21 above and note 2 thereon.

47 τὴν λοιπὴν πορευσόμεθα. Σωτηρίδας δὲ ὁ
 Σικυώνιος εἶπεν· Οὐκ ἐξ ἴσου, ὦ Ξενοφῶν, ἐσμέν·
 σὺ μὲν γὰρ ἐφ' ἵππου ὀχῆ, ἐγὼ δὲ χαλεπῶς
 48 κάμνω τὴν ἀσπίδα φέρων. καὶ ὃς ἀκούσας
 ταῦτα καταπηδήσας ἀπὸ τοῦ ἵππου ὠθεῖται
 αὐτὸν ἐκ τῆς τάξεως καὶ τὴν ἀσπίδα ἀφελόμενος
 ὡς ἐδύνατο τάχιστα ἔχων ἐπορεύετο· ἐτύγγχανε
 δὲ καὶ θώρακα ἔχων τὸν ἱππικόν· ὥστ' ἐπιέζετο.
 καὶ τοῖς μὲν ἔμπροσθεν ὑπάγειν παρεκελεύετο,
 49 τοῖς δὲ ὀπίσθεν παριέναι μόλις ἐπόμενος. οἱ δ'
 ἄλλοι στρατιῶται παίουσι καὶ βάλλουσι καὶ
 λοιδοροῦσι τὸν Σωτηρίδα, ἔστε ἠνάγκασαν
 ἀναλαβόντα¹ τὴν ἀσπίδα πορεύεσθαι. ὁ δ'
 ἀναβάς, ἕως μὲν βάσιμα ἦν, ἐπὶ τοῦ ἵππου ἦγεν,
 ἐπεὶ δὲ ἄβατα ἦν, καταλιπὼν τὸν ἵππον ἔσπευδε
 πεζῆ. καὶ φθάνουσιν ἐπὶ τῷ ἄκρῳ γενόμενοι
 τοὺς πολεμίους.

V. Ἐνθα δὴ οἱ μὲν βάρβαροι στραφέντες
 ἔφευγον ἢ ἕκαστος ἐδύνατο, οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες εἶχον
 τὸ ἄκρον. οἱ δὲ ἀμφὶ Τισσαφέρην καὶ Ἀριαῖον
 ἀποτραπόμενοι ἄλλην ὁδὸν ᾤχοντο. οἱ δὲ ἀμφὶ
 Χειρίσοφον καταβάντες ἐστρατοπεδεύοντο ἐν
 κώμῃ μεστῇ πολλῶν ἀγαθῶν. ἦσαν δὲ καὶ ἄλλαι
 κῶμαι πολλαὶ πλήρεις πολλῶν ἀγαθῶν ἐν τούτῳ
 2 τῷ πεδίῳ παρὰ τὸν Τίγρητα ποταμόν. ἠνίκα
 δ' ἦν δεῖλη ἑξαπίνης οἱ πολέμιοι ἐπιφαίνονται ἐν
 τῷ πεδίῳ, καὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων κατέκοψάν τινὰς
 τῶν ἐσκεδασμένων ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ καθ' ἀρπαγῆν·

¹ ἀναλαβόντα Gem., following Bisschop : λαβόντα MSS.

journey." But Soteridas the Sicyonian said: "We are not on an equality, Xenophon; you are riding on horseback, while I am desperately tired with carrying my shield." When Xenophon heard that, he leaped down from his horse and pushed Soteridas out of his place in the line, then took his shield away from him and marched on with it as fast as he could; he had on also, as it happened, his cavalry breastplate, and the result was that he was heavily burdened. And he urged the men in front of him to keep going, while he told those who were behind to pass along by him, for he found it hard to keep up. The rest of the soldiers, however, struck and pelted and abused Soteridas until they forced him to take back his shield and march on. Then Xenophon remounted, and as long as riding was possible, led the way on horseback, but when the ground became too difficult, he left his horse behind and hurried forward on foot. And they reached the summit before the enemy.

V. Then it was that the barbarians turned about and fled, every man for himself, while the Greeks held possession of the summit. As for the troops under Tissaphernes and Ariaeus, they turned off by another road and were gone; and the army under Cheirisophus descended into the plain¹ and proceeded to encamp in a village stored with abundant supplies. There were likewise many other villages richly stored with supplies in this plain on the banks of the Tigris. When it came to be late in the day, all of a sudden the enemy appeared in the plain and cut to pieces some of the Greeks who were scattered about there in quest of plunder; in fact, many herds

¹ See iv. 37 *fin*.

καὶ γὰρ νομαὶ πολλαὶ βοσκημάτων διαβιβαζόμεναι εἰς τὸ πέραν τοῦ ποταμοῦ κατελήφθησαν.
 3 ἐνταῦθα Τισσαφέρνης καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ καίειν ἐπεχείρησαν τὰς κώμας. καὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων μάλα ἠθύμησάν τινες, ἐννοούμενοι μὴ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, εἰ
 4 καίοιεν, οὐκ ἔχοιεν ὀπόθεν λαμβάνοιεν. καὶ οἱ μὲν ἀμφὶ Χειρίσοφον ἀπῆσαν ἐκ τῆς βοηθείας· ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἐπεὶ κατέβη, παρελαύνων τὰς τάξεις ἠνίκα ἀπὸ τῆς βοηθείας ἀπήντησαν οἱ
 5 Ἕλληνες ἔλεγεν· Ὁρᾶτε, ὦ ἄνδρες Ἕλληνες, ὑφιέντας τὴν χώραν ἤδη ἡμετέραν εἶναι; ἃ γὰρ ὅτε ἐσπένδοντο διεπράττοντο, μὴ καίειν τὴν βασιλέως χώραν, νῦν αὐτοὶ καίουσιν ὡς ἄλλοτριαν. ἀλλ' εἴαν που καταλείπωσί γε αὐτοῖς ἐπιτήδεια, ὄψονται καὶ ἡμᾶς ἐνταῦθα πορευο-
 6 μένους. ἀλλ', ὦ Χειρίσοφε, ἔφη, δοκεῖ μοι βοηθεῖν ἐπὶ τοὺς καίοντας ὡς ὑπὲρ τῆς ἡμέτερας. ὁ δὲ Χειρίσοφος εἶπεν· Οὐκ οἶμαι μοιγε δοκεῖ· ἀλλὰ καὶ ἡμεῖς, ἔφη, καίωμεν, καὶ οὕτω θᾶπτον παύσονται.
 7 Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐπὶ τὰς σκηναὺς ἦλθον, οἱ μὲν ἄλλοι περὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἦσαν, στρατηγοὶ δὲ καὶ λοχαγοὶ συνησαν. καὶ ἐνταῦθα πολλὴ ἀπορία ἦν. ἔνθεν μὲν γὰρ ὄρη ἦν ὑπερύψηλα, ἔνθεν δὲ ὁ ποταμὸς τοσοῦτος βάθος ὡς μηδὲ τὰ δόρατα
 8 ὑπερέχειν πειρωμένοις τοῦ βάθους. ἀπορομένοις δ' αὐτοῖς προσελθὼν τις ἀνὴρ Ῥόδιος εἶπεν· Ἐγὼ θέλω, ὦ ἄνδρες, διαβιβάσαι ὑμᾶς

of cattle had been captured while they were being taken across to the other side of the river. Then Tissaphernes and his followers attempted to burn the villages; and some of the Greeks got exceedingly despondent, out of apprehension that they would not have a place from which to get provisions in case the enemy should succeed in this attempt. Meanwhile Cheirisophus and his men, who had gone to the rescue of the plunderers, were returning; and when Xenophon had come down from the mountain, he rode along the lines upon falling in with the Greeks of the rescuing party and said: "Do you observe, men of Greece, that they admit the country is now ours? For while they stipulated when they made the treaty that there should be no burning of the King's territory, now they are doing that very thing themselves, as though the land were another's. At any rate, if they leave supplies anywhere for their own use, they shall behold us also proceeding to that spot. But, Cheirisophus," he went on, "it seems to me that we ought to sally forth against these incendiaries, like men defending their own country." "Well, it doesn't seem so to me," said Cheirisophus; "rather, let us set about burning ourselves, and then they will stop the sooner."

When they had come to their quarters, the troops were busy about provisions, but the generals and captains gathered in council. And here there was great despondency. For on one side of them were exceedingly high mountains and on the other side a river so deep that not even their spears reached above water when they tried its depth. In the midst of their perplexity a Rhodian came to them and said: "I stand ready, gentlemen, to set you across

κατὰ τετρακισχιλίους ὀπλίτας, ἂν ἐμοὶ ὦν δέομαι
 ὑπηρετήσητε καὶ τάλαντον μισθὸν πορίσητε.
 9 ἐρωτώμενος δὲ ὅτου δέοιτο, Ἀσκῶν, ἔφη, δισχι-
 λίων δεήσομαι· πολλὰ δ' ὀρώ πρόβατα καὶ αἴγας
 καὶ βοῦς καὶ ὄνους, ἃ ἀποδαρέντα καὶ φυσηθέντα
 10 ῥαδίως ἂν παρέχοι τὴν διάβασιν. δεήσομαι δὲ
 καὶ τῶν δεσμῶν οἷς χρῆσθε περὶ τὰ ὑποζύγια·
 τούτοις ζεύξας τοὺς ἀσκούς πρὸς ἀλλήλους,
 ὀρμίσας ἕκαστον ἀσκὸν λίθους ἀρτήσας καὶ ἀφείδ
 ὥσπερ ἀγκύρας εἰς τὸ ὕδωρ, διαγαγῶν καὶ
 ἀμφοτέρωθεν δήσας ἐπιβαλῶ ὕλην καὶ γῆν
 11 ἐπιφορήσω· ὅτι μὲν οὖν οὐ καταδύσεσθε αὐτίκα
 μάλα εἴσεσθε· πᾶς γὰρ ἀσκὸς δὴ ἄνδρας ἔξει
 τοῦ μὴ καταδύναι. ὥστε δὲ μὴ ὀλισθάνειν ἢ ὕλη
 12 καὶ ἡ γῆ στήσει. ἀκούσασι ταῦτα τοῖς στρατη-
 γοῖς τὸ μὲν ἐνθύμημα χαρίεν ἐδόκει εἶναι, τὸ
 δ' ἔργον ἀδύνατον. ἦσαν γὰρ οἱ κωλύσοντες
 πέραν πολλοὶ ἵππεῖς, οἳ εὐθὺς τοῖς πρώτοις οὐδὲν
 ἂν ἐπέτρεπον τούτων ποιεῖν.
 13 Ἐνταῦθα τὴν μὲν ὑστεραίαν ἐπανεχώρουν¹ εἰς
 τοῦμπαλιν εἰς τὰς ἀκαύστους κώμας, κατακαύ-
 σαντες ἔνθεν ἐξῆσαν· ὥστε οἱ πολέμιοι οὐ προσή-
 λαυνον, ἀλλὰ ἐθεῶντο καὶ ὅμοιοι ἦσαν θαυμά-
 ζουσιν ὅποι ποτὲ τρέψονται οἱ Ἕλληνες καὶ τί ἐν
 14 νῶ ἔχοιεν. ἐνταῦθα οἱ μὲν ἄλλοι στρατιῶται

¹ ἐπανεχώρουν the inferior MSS., Gem.: ὑπανεχώρουν the better MSS., Mar.

the river, four thousand hoplites at a time, if you will provide me with the means that I require and give me a talent for pay." Upon being asked what his requirements were, he replied: "I shall need two thousand skins. I see plenty of sheep and goats and cattle and asses; take off their skins and blow them up, and they would easily provide the means of crossing.¹ I shall want also the girths which you use on the beasts of burden; with these I shall tie the skins to one another and also moor each skin by fastening stones to the girths and letting them down into the water like anchors; then I shall carry the line of skins across the river, make it fast at both ends, and pile on brushwood and earth. As for your not sinking, then, you may be sure in an instant on that point, for every skin will keep two men from sinking; and as regards slipping, the brushwood and the earth will prevent that." After hearing these words the generals thought that while the idea was a clever one, the execution of it was impossible. For there were people on the other side of the river to thwart it, a large force of horsemen, namely, who at the very outset would prevent the first comers from carrying out any part of the plan.

Under these circumstances they marched all the next day in the reverse direction, going back to the unburned villages,² after burning the one from which they withdrew. The result was that, instead of making an attack, the enemy merely gazed at the Greeks, and appeared to be wondering where in the world they would turn and what they had in mind. At the close of the day, while the rest of the army

¹ *cp.* I. v. 10, II. iv. 28.

² See §§ 1 and 3 above.

- ἐπὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἦσαν· οἱ δὲ στρατηγοὶ πάλιν
 συνήλθον, καὶ συναγαγόντες τοὺς ἐαλωκότας
 ἤλεγχον τὴν κύκλῳ πᾶσαν χώραν τίς ἐκάστη εἶη.
 15 οἱ δὲ ἔλεγον ὅτι τὰ πρὸς μεσημβρίαν τῆς ἐπὶ
 Βαβυλῶνα εἶη καὶ Μηδίαν, δι' ἧσπερ ἤκοιεν,
 ἢ δὲ πρὸς ἔω ἐπὶ Σοῦσά τε καὶ Ἐκβάτανα φέροι,
 ἔνθα θερίζειν λέγεται βασιλεύς, ἢ δὲ διαβάντι
 τὸν ποταμὸν πρὸς ἑσπέραν ἐπὶ Λυδίαν καὶ
 Ἰωνίαν φέροι, ἢ δὲ διὰ τῶν ὀρέων καὶ πρὸς
 ἄρκτον τετραμμένη ὅτι εἰς Καρδούχους ἄγοι.
 16 τούτους δὲ ἔφασαν οἰκεῖν ἀνὰ τὰ ὄρη καὶ πολε-
 μικοὺς εἶναι, καὶ βασιλέως οὐκ ἀκούειν, ἀλλὰ καὶ
 ἐμβαλεῖν ποτε εἰς αὐτοὺς βασιλικὴν στρατιὰν
 δώδεκα μυριάδας· τούτων δ' οὐδέν' ἀπονοστήσαι
 διὰ τὴν δυσχωρίαν. ὁπότε μέντοι πρὸς τὸν
 σατράπην ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ σπείσαιντο, καὶ ἐπιμει-
 γνύναι σφῶν τε πρὸς ἐκείνους καὶ ἐκείνων πρὸς
 ἑαυτούς.
 17 Ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἐκάθισαν
 χωρὶς τοὺς ἐκασταχόσε φάσκοντας εἰδέναι, οὐδέν
 δῆλον ποιήσαντες ὅποι πορεύεσθαι ἔμελλον.
 ἔδόκει δὲ τοῖς στρατηγοῖς ἀναγκαῖον εἶναι διὰ τῶν
 ὀρέων εἰς Καρδούχους ἐμβάλλειν· τούτους γὰρ
 διελθόντας ἔφασαν εἰς Ἀρμενίαν ἕξειν, ἧς
 Ὀρόντας ἦρχε πολλῆς καὶ εὐδαίμονος. ἐντεῦθεν
 18 εἰς εὐπορον ἔφασαν εἶναι ὅποι τις ἐθέλοι πορεύ-
 εσθαι. ἐπὶ τούτοις ἐθύσαντο, ὅπως ἠνίκα καὶ

went after provisions, the generals held another meet-
 ing, at which they brought together the prisoners
 that had been taken and enquired of them about
 each district of all the surrounding country. The
 prisoners said that the region to the south lay on
 the road towards Babylon and Media, the identical
 province they had just passed through; that the
 road to the eastward led to Susa and Ecbatana,
 where the King is said to spend his summers; across
 the river and on to the west was the way to Lydia
 and Ionia; while the route through the mountains
 and northward led to the country of the Carduchians.
 These Carduchians, they said, dwelt up among the
 mountains, were a warlike people, and were not
 subjects of the King; in fact, a royal army of one
 hundred and twenty thousand men had once in-
 vaded them, and, by reason of the ruggedness of the
 country, not a man of all that number came back.
 Still, whenever they made a treaty with the satrap
 in the plain, some of the people of the plain did
 have dealings with the Carduchians and some of the
 Carduchians with them.

After listening to these statements from the men
 who claimed to know the way in every direction, the
 generals caused them to withdraw, without giving
 them the least clue as to the direction in which they
 proposed to march. The opinion of the generals
 however, was that they must make their way through
 the mountains into the country of the Carduchians;
 for the prisoners said that after passing through this
 country they would come to Armenia, the large and
 prosperous province of which Orontas was ruler; and
 from there, they said, it was easy to go in any
 direction one chose. Thereupon the generals offered

δοκοίῃ τῆς ὥρας τὴν πορείαν ποιοῖντο· τὴν γὰρ ὑπερβολὴν τῶν ὁρέων ἐδεδοίκεσαν μὴ προκαταληφθεῖν· καὶ παρήγγειλαν, ἐπειδὴ δειπνήσαιεν, συσκευασαμένους πάντα ἀναπαύεσθαι, καὶ ἔπεσθαι ἡνίκ' ἂν τις παραγγέλλῃ.

sacrifice, so that they could begin the march at the moment they thought best¹—for they feared that the pass over the mountains might be occupied in advance; and they issued orders that when the troops had dined, every man should pack up his belongings and go to rest, and then fall into line as soon as the word of command was given.

¹ As a rule it was *immediately* before an army set out that sacrifice was offered.

BOOK IV

5 I. ¹ Ἡνίκα δ' ἦν ἀμφὶ τὴν τελευταίαν φυλακὴν
καὶ ἐλείπετο τῆς νυκτὸς ὅσον σκοταίους διελθεῖν
τὸ πεδίου, τηνικαῦτα ἀναστάντες ἀπὸ παρ-
αγγελσεως πορευόμενοι ἀφικνούνται ἅμα τῇ ἡμέρᾳ
6 πρὸς τὸ ὄρος. ἔνθα δὲ Χειρίσοφος μὲν ἡγεῖτο
τοῦ στρατεύματος λαβὼν τὸ ἀμφ' αὐτὸν καὶ τοὺς

¹ The summary prefixed to Book IV. (see note on II. i. 1) is as follows: "Ὅσα μὲν δὲ ἐν τῇ ἀναβάσει ἐγένετο μέχρι τῆς μάχης, καὶ ὅσα μετὰ τὴν μάχην ἐν ταῖς σπονδαῖς ἄς βασιλεὺς καὶ οἱ σὺν Κύρῳ ἀναβάντες Ἕλληνας ἐποίησαντο, καὶ ὅσα παραβάντος τὰς σπονδὰς βασιλέως καὶ Τισσαφέρνους ἐπολεμήθη πρὸς τοὺς Ἕλληνας ἐπακολουθοῦντος τοῦ Περσικοῦ στρατεύματος, ἐν τῷ πρόσθεν λόγῳ
2 δεδήλωται. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀφίκοντο ἔνθα ὁ μὲν Τίγρης ποταμὸς παντά-
πασιν ἄπορος ἦν διὰ τὸ βάθος καὶ μέγεθος, πάροδος δὲ οὐκ ἦν,
ἀλλὰ τὰ Καρδούχεια ὄρη ἀπτόμα ὑπὲρ αὐτοῦ τοῦ ποταμοῦ
ἐκρέματο, ἐδόκει δὲ τοῖς στρατηγοῖς διὰ τῶν ὀρέων πορευτέον
3 εἶναι. ἤκουον γὰρ τῶν ἀλισκομένων ὅτι εἰ διέλθοιεν τὰ Καρδού-
χεια ὄρη, ἐν τῇ Ἀρμενίᾳ τὰς πηγὰς τοῦ Τίγρητος ποταμοῦ, ἦν μὲν
βούλωνται, διαβήσονται, ἦν δὲ μὴ βούλωνται, περιάσι. καὶ τοῦ
Εὐφράτου δὲ τὰς πηγὰς ἐλέγετο οὐ πρόσω τοῦ Τίγρητος εἶναι,
4 καὶ ἔστιν οὕτως ἔχον. τὴν δ' εἰς τοὺς Καρδούχους ἐμβολὴν ὦδε
ποιοῦνται, ἅμα μὲν λαθεῖν πειρώμενοι, ἅμα δὲ φθάσαι πρὶν τοὺς
πολεμίους καταλαβεῖν τὰ ἄκρα.

¹ Summary (see above): The preceding narrative has described all that took place on the upward march until the time of the battle, all that happened after the battle

I. ¹ WHEN it was about the last watch, and enough of the night remained to allow them to cross the plain in the dark, at that time they arose upon the word of command and set out on their march; and they reached the mountain at daybreak. Here Cheirisophus, with his own division and all the

during the truce concluded by the King and the Greeks who had made the upward march in company with Cyrus, and likewise the whole course of the warfare carried on against the Greeks after the King and Tissaphernes had broken the truce, when the Persian army was hanging upon the Greek rear. When the Greeks finally reached a point where the Tigris river was quite impassable by reason of its depth and width, and where there was no passage-way alongside the river, since the Carduchian mountains hung sheer and close above it, the generals were forced to the conclusion that they must make their way through the mountains. For they heard from the prisoners who were taken that once they had passed through the Carduchian mountains and reached Armenia, they could there cross the headwaters of the Tigris river, if they so desired, or, if they preferred, could go round them. They were also informed that the headwaters of the Euphrates were not far from those of the Tigris,—and such is indeed the case. Now they conducted their invasion of the country of the Carduchians in the following way, since they were seeking not only to escape observation, but at the same time to reach the heights before the enemy could take possession of them.

γυμνήτας πάντας, Ξενοφῶν δὲ σὺν τοῖς ὀπισθο-
 φύλαξιν ὀπλίταις εἶπετο οὐδένα ἔχων γυμνήτα·
 οὐδεὶς γὰρ κίνδυνος ἐδόκει εἶναι μή τις ἄνω
 7 πορευομένων ἐκ τοῦ ὀπισθεν ἐπίσποιτο. καὶ ἐπὶ
 μὲν τὸ ἄκρον ἀναβαίνει Χειρίσοφος πρὶν τινὰς
 αἰσθέσθαι τῶν πολεμίων· ἔπειτα δ' ὑφηγεῖτο·
 ἐφείπετο δὲ αἰεὶ τὸ ὑπερβάλλον τοῦ στρατεύματος
 εἰς τὰς κώμας τὰς ἐν τοῖς ἄγκεσί τε καὶ μυχοῖς
 8 τῶν ὀρέων. ἔνθα δὴ οἱ μὲν Καρδοῦχοι ἐκλιπόντες
 τὰς οἰκίας ἔχοντες καὶ γυναῖκας καὶ παῖδας
 ἔφευγον ἐπὶ τὰ ὄρη. τὰ δὲ ἐπιτήδεια πολλὰ ἦν
 λαμβάνειν, ἦσαν δὲ καὶ χαλκώμασι παμπόλλοις
 κατεσκευασμένοι αἱ οἰκίαι, ὧν οὐδὲν ἔφερον οἱ
 Ἕλληνες, οὐδὲ τοὺς ἀνθρώπους ἐδίωκον, ὑποφει-
 δόμενοι, εἴ πως ἐθελήσειαν οἱ Καρδοῦχοι διέναι
 αὐτοὺς ὡς διὰ φιλίας τῆς χώρας, ἐπεὶ περ βασιλεῖ
 9 πολέμοι ἦσαν· τὰ μέντοι ἐπιτήδεια ὅτῳ τις
 ἐπιτυγχάνοι ἐλάμβανεν· ἀνάγκη γὰρ ἦν. οἱ δὲ
 Καρδοῦχοι οὔτε καλούντων ὑπήκουον οὔτε ἄλλο
 10 φιλικὸν οὐδὲν ἐποίουν. ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ τελευταῖοι τῶν
 Ἑλλήνων κατέβαινον εἰς τὰς κώμας ἀπὸ τοῦ
 ἄκρου ἤδη σκοταῖοι — διὰ γὰρ τὸ στενὴν εἶναι
 τὴν ὁδὸν ὅλην τὴν ἡμέραν ἢ ἀνάβασις αὐτοῖς
 ἐγένετο καὶ κατάβασις — τότε δὴ συλλεγόντες
 τινὲς τῶν Καρδοῦχων τοῖς τελευταίοις ἐπετίθεντο,
 καὶ ἀπέκτεινάν τινὰς καὶ λίθοις καὶ τοξεύμασι
 κατέτρωσαν, ὀλίγοι ὄντες· ἐξ ἀπροσδοκίτου γὰρ

¹ It will be remembered that light troops had proved more serviceable than hoplites in the recent skirmishes with the Persians. *cp.* III. iv. 15-17, 24-30, 38-43.

light-armed troops, led the van, while Xenophon followed behind with the hoplites of the rearguard, but without any light troops at all; for there seemed to be no danger of any pursuit from behind while they were proceeding uphill.¹ And Cheiriosophus reached the summit of the pass before any of the enemy perceived him; then he led on slowly, and each division of the army as it passed over the summit followed along to the villages which lay in the hollows and nooks of the mountains. Then it was that the Carduchians abandoned their houses and fled to the mountains with their wives and children. As for provisions, there was an abundance for the Greeks to take, and the houses were also supplied with bronze vessels in great numbers; the Greeks, however, did not carry off any of these, and did not pursue the people themselves, refraining from harshness on the chance that the Carduchians might perhaps be willing to let them pass through their country in friendship, seeing that they also were enemies of the King; but they did take whatever they chanced upon in the way of provisions, for that was necessary. The Carduchians, however, would neither listen when they called to them nor give any other sign of friendliness. And when the rearguard of the Greeks was descending from the summit of the pass to the villages—and by this time it was dark, for on account of the road being narrow their ascent and descent lasted through the entire day—at this moment some of the Carduchians gathered together and attacked the hindmost Greeks; and they killed some and wounded others severely with stones and arrows, though they were themselves but few in number; for the Greek army

- 11 αὐτοῖς ἐπέπεσε τὸ Ἑλληνικόν. εἰ μέντοι τότε πλείους συνελέγησαν, ἐκινδύνευσεν ἂν διαφθάρῃναι πολὺ τοῦ στρατεύματος. καὶ ταύτην μὲν τὴν νύκτα οὕτως ἐν ταῖς κώμαις ἠύλισθησαν· οἱ δὲ Καρδοῦχοι πυρὰ πολλὰ ἔκαιον κύκλῳ ἐπὶ τῶν ὀρέων καὶ συνεβόων¹ ἀλλήλους.
- 12 " Ἀμα δὲ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ συνελθοῦσι τοῖς στρατηγοῖς καὶ λοχαγοῖς τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἔδοξε τῶν τε ὑποζυγίων τὰ ἀναγκαῖα καὶ δυνατώτατα ἔχοντας πορεύεσθαι, καταλιπόντας τὰλλα, καὶ ὅσα ἦν νεωστὶ αἰχμάλωτα ἀνδράποδα ἐν τῇ στρατιᾷ
- 13 πάντα ἀφεῖναι. σχολαίαν γὰρ ἐποιοῦν τὴν πορείαν πολλὰ ὄντα τὰ ὑποζύγια καὶ τὰ αἰχμάλωτα, πολλοὶ δὲ οἱ ἐπὶ τούτοις ὄντες ἀπόμαχοι ἦσαν, διπλάσιά τε ἐπιτήδεια ἔδει πορίζεσθαι καὶ φέρεσθαι πολλῶν τῶν ἀνθρώπων ὄντων. δόξαν δὲ ταῦτα ἐκήρυξαν οὕτω ποιεῖν.
- 14 Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀριστήσαντες ἐπορεύοντο, ὑποστήσαντες ἐν τῷ στενῷ οἱ στρατηγοί, εἴ τι εὐρίσκοιεν τῶν εἰρημένων μὴ ἀφειμένον, ἀφηροῦντο, οἱ δ' ἐπεΐθοντο, πλὴν εἴ τις ἔκλεψεν, οἶον ἢ παιδὸς ἐπιθυμήσας ἢ γυναικὸς τῶν εὐπρεπῶν. καὶ ταύτην μὲν τὴν ἡμέραν οὕτως ἐπορεύθησαν, τὰ
- 15 μὲν τι μαχόμενσι τὰ δέ τι ἀναπανόμενοι. εἰς δὲ τὴν ὑστεραίαν γίγνεται χειμῶν πολὺς, ἀναγκαῖον δ' ἦν πορεύεσθαι· οὐ γὰρ ἦν ἰκανὰ τὰπιτήδεια. καὶ ἠγείτο μὲν Χειρίσοφος, ὠπισθοφυλάκει δὲ
- 16 Ξενοφῶν. καὶ οἱ πολέμιοι ἰσχυρῶς ἐπετίθεντο,

¹ συνεβόων Gem., following Lüdgers: συνεώων MSS., Mar

had come upon them unexpectedly. If, however, a larger number of them had gathered together at that time, a great part of the army would have been in danger of being destroyed. Thus the Greeks bivouacked for that night in the villages, while the Carduchians kindled many fires round about upon the mountains and kept shouting to one another.

At daybreak the generals and captains of the Greeks came together and resolved to keep with them on the march only the indispensable and most powerful baggage animals and to leave the rest behind; likewise, to let go all the newly-taken captives that were in the army, to the last man. For the baggage animals and the captives, numerous as they were, made the march slow, and the large number of men who had charge of them were thus taken out of the fighting line; besides, with so many people to feed it was necessary to procure and to carry twice the amount of provisions. This decision once reached, they published the order to carry it into effect.

When they had breakfasted and were setting out upon the march, the generals quietly stationed men in the defile and proceeded to take away from the troops such of the things specified as had not been given up if they found any; and the soldiers submitted, except in cases where a man had smuggled through a handsome boy or woman, for example, that he had set his heart upon. So they went on for that day, now fighting a little and now resting. On the next day there was a heavy storm, but they had to continue their march, for they had not an adequate supply of provisions; and Cheirisophus led the way while Xenophon commanded the rearguard. Here the

καὶ στενῶν ὄντων τῶν χωρίων ἐγγύς προσιόντες
 ἐτόξευον καὶ ἐσφενδόνων· ὥστε ἠναγκάζοντο οἱ
 Ἕλληνες ἐπιδιώκοντες καὶ πάλιν ἀναχάζοντες
 σχολῇ πορεύεσθαι· καὶ θαμινὰ παρήγγελλεν ὁ
 Ξενοφῶν ὑπομένειν, ὅτε οἱ πολέμοιοι ἰσχυρῶς
 17 ἐπικέοιντο. ἐνταῦθα ὁ Χειρίσοφος ἄλλοτε μὲν ὅτε
 παρεγγυῶτο ὑπέμενε, τότε δὲ οὐχ ὑπέμενε, ἀλλ'
 ἦγε ταχέως καὶ παρηγγύα ἔπεσθαι, ὥστε δῆλον
 ἦν ὅτι πρᾶγμα τι εἶη· σχολῇ δ' οὐκ ἦν ἰδεῖν
 παρελθόντι τὸ αἴτιον τῆς σπουδῆς· ὥστε ἡ
 πορεία ὁμοία φυγῇ ἐγένετο τοῖς ὀπισθοφύλαξι.
 18 καὶ ἐνταῦθα ἀποθνήσκει ἀνὴρ ἀγαθὸς Λακωνικὸς
 Λεώνυμος τοξευθεὶς διὰ τῆς ἀσπίδος καὶ τῆς
 σπολάδος εἰς τὰς πλευράς, καὶ Βασίας Ἀρκὰς
 διαμπερὲς τὴν κεφαλὴν.
 19 Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀφίκοντο ἐπὶ σταθμόν, εὐθύς ὥσπερ
 εἶχεν ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἐλθὼν πρὸς τὸν Χειρίσοφον
 ἠτιᾶτο αὐτὸν ὅτι οὐχ ὑπέμενε, ἀλλ' ἠναγκάζοντο
 φεύγοντες ἅμα μάχεσθαι. καὶ νῦν δύο καλῶ τε
 καὶ ἀγαθῶ ἀνδρε τέθνατον καὶ οὔτε ἀνελέσθαι
 20 οὔτε θάψαι ἐδυνάμεθα. ἀποκρίνεται ὁ Χειρί-
 σοφος· Βλέψον, ἔφη, πρὸς τὰ ὄρη καὶ ἰδὲ ὡς
 ἄβατα πάντα ἐστί· μία δ' αὕτη ὁδὸς ἦν ὄρᾳς
 ὀρθία, καὶ ἐπὶ ταύτῃ ἀνθρώπων ὄρᾳν ἔξεστί σοι
 ὄχλον τοσοῦτον, οἱ κατειληφότες φυλάττουσι
 21 τὴν ἔκβασιν. ταῦτ' ἐγὼ ἔσπευδον καὶ διὰ τοῦτό

enemy began a vigorous attack, and in the narrow places on the road came close up to discharge their bows and slings. The result was that the Greeks were forced to give chase and then fall back, and hence made but slow progress; and time after time, when the enemy pressed them hard, Xenophon would send word to Cheirisophus to wait a little. Now while Cheirisophus was accustomed to wait whenever such word was given, on this occasion he did not do so, but led on rapidly and passed back the order to keep up with him. It was evident, therefore, that something was the matter, but there was no time to go forward and find out the reason for his haste; consequently the progress of the rearguard became more like a flight than a march. Then it was that a brave man was killed, Leonymus the Laconian, who was pierced in the side by an arrow that went through his shield and cuirass; also Basias the Arcadian, who was shot clean through the head.

As soon as they reached a halting place, Xenophon went straight to Cheirisophus, just as he was, and proceeded to reproach him for not waiting, but compelling them to flee and fight at the same time; "and now," he went on, "two fine, brave fellows have lost their lives, and we were not able to pick up their bodies or bury them." Cheirisophus' reply was, "Take a look," said he, "at the mountains, and observe how impassable all of them are. The only road is the one there, which you see, a steep one, too, and on that you can see the great crowd of people who have taken possession of it and are guarding our way out. That's the reason why I was hurrying and why I would not wait for you, for I

σε οὐχ ὑπέμενον, εἴ πως δυναίμην φθάσαι πρὶν
κατειληφθαι τὴν ὑπερβολήν· οἱ δ' ἡγεμόνες οὐδ'
22 ἔχομεν οὐ φασι εἶναι ἄλλην ὁδόν. ὁ δὲ Ξενο-
φῶν λέγει· Ἄλλ' ἐγὼ ἔχω δύο ἄνδρας. ἐπεὶ γὰρ
ἡμῖν πράγματα παρῆχον, ἐνηδρεύσαμεν, ὅπερ
ἡμᾶς καὶ ἀναπνεῦσαι ἐποίησε, καὶ ἀπεκτείναντες
τινας αὐτῶν, καὶ ζῶντας προθυμήθημεν λαβεῖν
αὐτοῦ τούτου ἕνεκα ὅπως ἡγεμόσιν εἰδόσι τὴν
χώραν χρησαίμεθα.

23 Καὶ εὐθὺς ἀγαγόντες τοὺς ἀνθρώπους ἤλεγχον
διαλαβόντες εἴ τινα εἰδεῖεν ἄλλην ὁδὸν ἢ τὴν
φανερὰν. ὁ μὲν οὖν ἕτερος οὐκ ἔφη μάλα πολλῶν
φόβων προσαγομένων· ἐπεὶ δὲ οὐδὲν ὠφέλιμον
24 ἔλεγεν, ὁρῶντος τοῦ ἑτέρου κατεσφάγη. ὁ δὲ
λοιπὸς ἔλεξεν ὅτι οὗτος μὲν οὐ φαίη διὰ ταῦτα
εἰδέναι, ὅτι αὐτῷ ἐτύγχανε θυγάτηρ ἐκεῖ παρ'
ἀνδρὶ ἐκδεδομένη· αὐτὸς δ' ἔφη ἡγήσασθαι
25 δυνατὴν καὶ ὑποζυγίοις πορεύεσθαι ὁδόν. ἐρω-
τώμενος δ' εἰ εἴη τι ἐν αὐτῇ δυσπάριτον χωρίον,
ἔφη εἶναι ἄκρον ὃ εἰ μὴ τις προκαταλήψοιτο,
ἀδύνατον ἔσεσθαι παρελθεῖν.

26 Ἐνταῦθα δ' ἐδόκει συγκαλέσαντας λοχαγοὺς
καὶ πελταστὰς καὶ τῶν ὀπλιτῶν λέγειν τε τὰ
παρόντα καὶ ἐρωτᾶν εἴ τις αὐτῶν ἔστιν ὅστις
ἀνὴρ ἀγαθὸς ἐθέλοι ἂν γενέσθαι καὶ ὑποστὰς
27 ἐθελουτῆς πορεύεσθαι. ὑφίσταται τῶν μὲν ὀπλι-

hoped to reach the pass and occupy it before they did. The guides that we have say there is no other road." And Xenophon answered, "Well, I also have two men. For at the time when the enemy were giving us trouble, we set an ambush. It allowed us, for one thing, to catch our breath; but, besides, we killed a number of them, and we took especial pains to get some prisoners for this very purpose, of being able to employ as guides men who know the country."

They brought up the two men at once and questioned them separately as to whether they knew any other road besides the one that was in plain sight. The first man said he did not, despite all the numerous threats that were made to him; and since he would give no information, he was slaughtered before the eyes of the second one. The latter now said that the reason why this first man had maintained that he did not know any other road, was because he chanced to have a daughter living in that neighbourhood with a husband to whom he had given her; but as for himself, he said that he would lead the Greeks by a road that could be traversed even by baggage animals. Upon being asked whether there was any point on it which was difficult to pass, he replied that there was a height which they could not possibly pass unless they should seize it beforehand.

Thereupon it was decided to call together the captains, both of peltasts and hoplites, to set forth to them the existing situation, and to ask if there was any one among them who would like to prove himself a brave man and to undertake this expedition as a volunteer. Volunteers came forward, from the

τῶν Ἀριστώνυμος Μεθυδριεύς καὶ Ἀγασίας Στυμφάλιος, ἀντιστασιάζων δὲ αὐτοῖς Καλλίμαχος Παρράσιος ἔφη ἐθέλειν πορεύεσθαι προσλαβὼν ἐθελοντὰς ἐκ παντὸς τοῦ στρατεύματος· ἐγὼ γάρ, ἔφη, οἶδα ὅτι ἔψονται πολλοὶ τῶν νέων
 28 ἐμοῦ ἡγουμένου. ἐκ τούτου ἐρωτῶσιν εἴ τις καὶ τῶν γυμνήτων ταξιάρχων ἐθέλοι συμπορεύεσθαι. ὑφίσταται Ἀριστεάς Χίος, ὃς πολλαχοῦ πολλοῦ ἄξιός τῃ στρατιᾷ εἰς τὰ τοιαῦτα ἐγένετο.

II. Καὶ ἦν μὲν δειλὴ, οἱ δ' ἐκέλευον αὐτοὺς ἐμφαγόντας πορεύεσθαι. καὶ τὸν ἡγεμόνα δῆσαντες παραδιδόασιν αὐτοῖς, καὶ συντίθενται τὴν μὲν νύκτα, ἣν λάβωσι τὸ ἄκρον, τὸ χωρίον φυλάττειν, ἅμα δὲ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ τῇ σάλπιγγι σημαίνειν· καὶ τοὺς μὲν ἄνω ὄντας ἰέναι ἐπὶ τοὺς κατέχοντας τὴν φανερὰν ἔκβασιν, αὐτοὶ δὲ συμβοηθήσειν ἐκβαίνοντες ὡς ἂν δύνωνται τάχιστα. ταῦτα συνθέμενοι οἱ μὲν ἐπορεύοντο πλήθος ὡς δισχίλιοι καὶ ὕδωρ πολὺ ἦν ἐξ οὐρανοῦ· Ξενοφῶν δὲ ἔχων τοὺς ὀπισθοφύλακας ἡγείτο πρὸς τὴν φανερὰν ἔκβασιν, ὅπως ταύτῃ τῇ ὁδῷ οἱ πολέμοι προσέχοιεν τὸν νοῦν καὶ ὡς μάλιστα λάθοιεν οἱ
 3 περιούντες. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦσαν ἐπὶ χαράδρᾳ οἱ ὀπισθοφύλακες ἦν ἔδει διαβάντας πρὸς τὸ ὄρθιον ἐκβαίνειν, τῆνικαῦτα ἐκκλίνδουν οἱ βάρβαροι ὀλοιστρόχους ἀμαξιαίους καὶ μείζους καὶ ἐλάττους,¹

¹ καὶ ἐλάττους MSS. : Gem. brackets.

¹ See i. 20.

² *i. e.* the volunteers.

hoplites Aristonymus of Methydrium and Agasias of Stymphalus, while in rivalry with them Callimachus of Parrhasia said that he was ready to make the expedition and take with him volunteers from the entire army; "for I know," he continued, "that many of the young men will follow if I am in the lead." Then they asked whether any one among the captains of light troops wanted to join in the march. The volunteer was Aristetas of Chios, who on many occasions proved himself valuable to the army for such services.

II. It was now late afternoon, and they ordered the volunteers to take a snatch of food and set out. They also bound the guide and turned him over to the volunteers, and made an agreement with them that in case they should capture the height, they were to guard it through the night and give a signal at daybreak with the trumpet; then those on the height were to proceed against the Carduchians who were holding the visible way out,¹ while the main army was to come to their support, pushing forward as fast as it could. This agreement concluded, the volunteers, about two thousand in number, set out on their march; and there was a heavy downpour of rain; at the same time Xenophon with the rearguard began advancing toward the visible way out, in order that the enemy might be giving their attention to that road and that the party² taking the roundabout route might, so far as possible, escape observation. But as soon as the troops of the rearguard were at a gorge which they had to cross before marching up the steep hill, at that moment the barbarians began to roll down round stones large enough for a wagon-load, with larger

οὐ φερόμενοι πρὸς τὰς πέτρας παίοντες διεσφεν-
 δονῶντο· καὶ παντάπασιν οὐδὲ πελάσαι οἶόν τ'
 4 ἦν τῇ εἰσόδῳ. ἔνιοι δὲ τῶν λοχαγῶν, εἰ μὴ
 ταύτῃ δύναιντο, ἄλλη ἐπειρῶντο· καὶ ταῦτα
 ἐποίουν μέχρι σκότος ἐγένετο· ἐπεὶ δὲ ᾤοντο
 ἀφανεῖς εἶναι ἀπιόντες, τότε ἀπήλθον ἐπὶ τὸ
 δεῖπνον· ἐτύγχανον δὲ καὶ ἀνάριστοι ὄντες.¹ οἱ
 μέντοι πολέμιοι οὐδὲν ἐπαύσαντο δι' ὅλης τῆς
 νυκτὸς κυλινοῦντες τοὺς λίθους· τεκμαίρεσθαι δ'
 ἦν τῷ ψόφῳ.
 5 Οἱ δ' ἔχοντες τὸν ἡγεμόνα κύκλῳ περιόοντες
 καταλαμβάνουσι τοὺς φύλακας ἀμφὶ πῦρ καθη-
 μένους· καὶ τοὺς μὲν κατακαίνοντες τοὺς δὲ
 καταδιώξαντες αὐτοὶ ἐνταῦθ' ἔμενον ὡς τὸ ἄκρον
 6 κατέχοντες. οἱ δ' οὐ κατείχον, ἀλλὰ μαστὸς ἦν
 ὑπὲρ αὐτῶν παρ' ὃν ἦν ἡ στενὴ αὕτη ὁδὸς ἐφ' ἣ
 ἐκάθηντο οἱ φύλακες. ἔφοδος μέντοι αὐτόθεν ἐπὶ
 τοὺς πολέμιους ἦν οἷ ἐπὶ τῇ φανερᾷ ὁδῷ ἐκάθηντο.
 7 καὶ τὴν μὲν νύκτα ἐνταῦθα διήγαγον· ἐπεὶ δ'
 ἡμέρα ὑπέφαιεν, ἐπορεύοντο σιγῇ συντεταγμένοι
 ἐπὶ τοὺς πολέμιους· καὶ γὰρ ὁμίχλη ἐγένετο, ὥστ'
 ἔλαθον ἐγγὺς προσελθόντες. ἐπεὶ δὲ εἶδον ἀλλή-
 λους, ἣ τε σάλπιγξ ἐφθέγγετο καὶ ἀλαλάξαντες
 ἴεντο ἐπὶ τοὺς ἀνθρώπους. οἱ δὲ οὐκ ἐδέξαντο,
 ἀλλὰ λιπόντες τὴν ὁδὸν φεύγοντες ὀλίγοι ἀπέβην·

¹ After ὄντες the MSS. have αὐτῶν οἱ ὀπισθοφυλακήσαντες :
 Gem. brackets.

¹ *i. e.* "the guards" whom they expected to find upon
 "the" height mentioned (i. 25, ii. 1). See below.

² *i. e.* the one mentioned in i. 20, 23, ii. 1.

³ The signal agreed upon (§ 1 above).

and smaller ones also; they came down with a
 crash upon the rocks below and the fragments of
 them flew in all directions, so that it was quite
 impossible even to approach the ascending road.
 Then some of the captains, unable to proceed by
 this route, would try another, and they kept this
 up until darkness came on. It was not until they
 imagined that their withdrawal would be unob-
 served that they went back to dinner—and it
 chanced that they had had no breakfast either.
 The enemy, however, never stopped rolling down
 their stones all through the night, as one could
 judge from the noise.

Meanwhile the party with the guide, proceeding
 by a roundabout route, found the guards¹ sitting
 around a fire, and after killing some of them and
 chasing away the others they remained at the post
 themselves, supposing that they held the height.
 In fact, they were not holding it, for it was a round
 hill above them and past it ran this narrow road
 upon which the guards had been sitting. Neverthe-
 less, from the place they did hold there was a way
 of approach to the spot, upon the visible road,²
 where the main body of the enemy were stationed.
 At this place, then, they passed the night, and
 when day was beginning to break, they took up
 their march silently in battle array against the
 enemy; for there was a mist, and consequently
 they got close up to them without being observed.
 When they did catch sight of one another, the
 trumpet³ sounded and the Greeks raised the battle
 cry and rushed upon the enemy. And the Car-
 duchians did not meet their attack, but abandoned
 the road and took to flight; only a few of them,

8 σκον· εὐζωνοὶ γὰρ ἦσαν. οἱ δὲ ἀμφὶ Χειρίσοφον ἀκούσαντες τῆς σάλπιγγος εὐθὺς ἴεντο ἄνω κατὰ τὴν φανερὰν ὁδόν· ἄλλοι δὲ τῶν στρατηγῶν κατὰ ἀτριβεῖς ὁδοὺς ἐπορεύοντο ἢ ἔτυχον ἕκαστοι ὄντες, καὶ ἀναβάντες ὡς ἐδύναντο ἀνίμων ἀλλήλους
9 τοῖς δόρασι. καὶ οὗτοι πρῶτοι συνέμειξαν τοῖς προκαταλαβοῦσι τὸ χωρίον.

Ξενοφῶν δὲ ἔχων τῶν ὀπισθοφυλάκων τοὺς ἡμίσεις ἐπορεύετο ἥπερ οἱ τὸν ἡγεμόνα ἔχοντες· εὐοδοτάτη γὰρ ἦν τοῖς ὑποζυγίοις· τοὺς δὲ
10 ἡμίσεις ὀπισθεν τῶν ὑποζυγίων ἔταξε. πορευόμενοι δ' ἐντυγχάνουσι λόφῳ ὑπὲρ τῆς ὁδοῦ κατειλημμένῳ ὑπὸ τῶν πολεμίων, οὓς ἢ ἀποκόψαι ἦν ἀνάγκη ἢ διεξεῦχθαι ἀπὸ τῶν ἄλλων Ἑλλήνων. καὶ αὐτοὶ μὲν ἂν ἐπορεύθησαν ἥπερ οἱ ἄλλοι, τὰ
11 δὲ ὑποζύγια οὐκ ἦν ἄλλη ἢ ταύτη ἐκβῆναι. ἔνθα δὴ παρακελευσάμενοι ἀλλήλοις προσβάλλουσι πρὸς τὸν λόφον ὀρθίοις τοῖς λόχοις, οὐ κύκλῳ ἀλλὰ καταλιπόντες ἄφοδον τοῖς πολεμίοις, εἰ
12 βούλονται φεύγειν. καὶ τέως μὲν αὐτοὺς ἀναβαίνοντας ὅπη ἐδύναντο ἕκαστος οἱ βάρβαροι ἐτόξευον καὶ ἔβαλλον, ἐγγὺς δ' οὐ προσίεντο, ἀλλὰ φυγῇ λείπουσι τὸ χωρίον. καὶ τοῦτόν τε παρεληλύθεσαν οἱ Ἕλληνας καὶ ἕτερον ὁρῶσιν

¹ Cheirisophus and his command.

² Which "could be traversed even by baggage animals," i. 24.

however, were killed, for they were agile fellows. Meanwhile Cheirisophus and his command, hearing the trumpet, charged immediately up the visible road; and some of the other generals made their way without following any road from the points where they severally chanced to be and, clambering up as best they could, pulled one another up with their spears; and it was they who were first to join the troops that had already gained possession of the place.

But Xenophon with half the rearguard set out by the same route which the party with the guide had followed, because this was the easiest route for the baggage animals; and behind the baggage animals he posted the other half of the rearguard. As they proceeded they came upon a hill above the road which had been seized by the enemy, and found themselves compelled either to dislodge them or be completely separated from the rest of the Greeks; and while, so far as the troops themselves were concerned, they might have taken the same route that the rest¹ followed, the baggage animals could not get through by any other road than this one² by which Xenophon was proceeding. Then and there, accordingly, with words of cheer to one another, they charged upon the hill with their companies in column, not surrounding it, but leaving the enemy a way of retreat in case they chose to use it. For a while, as the Greeks were climbing up by whatever way they severally could, the barbarians discharged arrows and other missiles upon them; they did not let them get near, however, but took to flight and abandoned the place. No sooner had the Greeks passed by this hill, than they saw a second one

- 13 ἔμπροσθεν λόφον κατεχόμενον ἐπὶ τοῦτον αὐθις ἔδοκει πορεύεσθαι. ἐννοήσας δ' ὁ Ξενοφῶν μὴ, εἰ ἔρημον καταλίποι τὸν ἠλωκότα λόφον, πάλιν λαβόντες οἱ πολέμιοι ἐπιθοῖντο τοῖς ὑποζυγίοις παριούσιν—ἐπὶ πολὺ δ' ἦν τὰ ὑποζύγια ἅτε διὰ στενῆς τῆς ὁδοῦ πορευόμενα—καταλείπει ἐπὶ τοῦ λόφου λοχαγούς Κηφισόδωρον Κηφισοφῶντος Ἀθηναίου καὶ Ἀμφικράτην Ἀμφιδήμου Ἀθηναίου καὶ Ἀρχαγόραν Ἀργεῖον φυγάδα, αὐτὸς δὲ σὺν τοῖς λοιποῖς ἐπορεύετο ἐπὶ τὸν δεύτερον λόφον, καὶ τῷ αὐτῷ τρόπῳ καὶ τοῦτον αἰρούσιν.
- 14 Ἔτι δὲ αὐτοῖς τρίτος μαστὸς λοιπὸς ἦν πολὺ ὀρθιώτατος ὁ ὑπὲρ τῆς ἐπὶ τῷ πυρὶ καταληφθείσης φυλακῆς τῆς νυκτὸς ὑπὸ τῶν ἐθελοντῶν.
- 15 ἐπεὶ δ' ἐγγὺς ἐγένοντο οἱ Ἕλληνες, λείπουσιν οἱ βάρβαροι ἀμαχητὶ τὸν μαστόν, ὥστε θυμαστόν πᾶσι γενέσθαι καὶ ὑπώπτεον δέισαντας αὐτοὺς μὴ κυκλωθέντες πολιορκοῖντο ἀπολιπεῖν. οἱ δ' ἄρα ἀπὸ τοῦ ἄκρου καθορῶντες τὰ ὀπισθεν γυγνόμενα πάντες ἐπὶ τοὺς ὀπισθοφύλακας ἐχώρου.
- 16 καὶ Ξενοφῶν μὲν σὺν τοῖς νεωτάτοις ἀνέβαινεν ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον, τοὺς δὲ ἄλλους ἐκέλευσεν ὑπάγειν, ὅπως οἱ τελευταῖοι λόχοι προσμείξαιαν, καὶ προελθόντας κατὰ τὴν ὁδὸν ἐν τῷ ὀμαλῷ θέσθαι τὰ ὄπλα εἶπε.
- 17 Καὶ ἐν τούτῳ τῷ χρόνῳ ἦλθεν Ἀρχαγόρας ὁ Ἀργεῖος πεφευγὼς καὶ λέγει ὡς ἀπεκόπησαν ὑπὸ

¹ The one originally mentioned by the Carduchian guide. See i. 25, ii. 6.

² *i. e.* the three companies left upon the first hill, which the main body of Xenophon's troops had now passed by. See below.

ahead similarly occupied by the enemy, and decided to proceed against this one in its turn. Xenophon, however, becoming apprehensive lest, if he should leave unoccupied the hill he had just captured, the enemy might take possession of it again and attack the baggage train as it passed (and the train stretched out a long way because of the narrowness of the road it was following), left three captains upon the hill, Cephisodorus, son of Cephisophon, an Athenian, Amphicrates, son of Amphidemus, also an Athenian, and Archagoras, an Argive exile; while he himself with the rest of the troops proceeded against the second hill, which they captured in the same fashion as the first.

There still remained a third round hill,¹ far the steepest of them all, the one that rose above the guard post, by the fire, which had been captured during the night by the volunteers. But when the Greeks got near this hill, the barbarians abandoned it without striking a blow, so that everybody was filled with surprise and imagined that they had quit the place out of fear that they might be surrounded and blockaded. As it proved, however, they had seen, looking down from their height, what was going on farther back, and were all setting out to attack the Greek rearguard.² Meanwhile Xenophon proceeded to climb the abandoned height with his youngest troops, ordering the rest to move on slowly in order that the hindmost companies might catch up; then they were to advance along the road and halt under arms on the plateau³ at the top of the pass.

At this time Archagoras the Argive came up in flight and reported that the Greeks had been dis-

³ Into which the *ἐκβασις*, or "way out," ultimately led.

τοῦ λόφου καὶ ὅτι τεθνᾶσι Κηφισόδωρος καὶ
 Ἀμφικράτης καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι ὅσοι μὴ ἀλάμενοι κατὰ
 τῆς πέτρας πρὸς τοὺς ὀπισθοφύλακας ἀφίκοντο.
 18 ταῦτα δὲ διαπραξάμενοι οἱ βάρβαροι ἤκουον ἐπ'
 ἀντίπορον λόφον τῷ μαστῷ· καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν
 διελέγετο αὐτοῖς δι' ἑρμηνέως περὶ σπονδῶν καὶ
 19 τοὺς νεκροὺς ἀπῆτει. οἱ δὲ ἔφασαν ἀποδώσειν
 ἐφ' ᾧ μὴ καίειν τὰς οἰκίας. συνωμολόγει ταῦτα
 ὁ Ξενοφῶν. ἐν ᾧ δὲ τὸ μὲν ἄλλο στράτευμα
 παρῆει, οἱ δὲ ταῦτα διελέγοντο, πάντες οἱ ἐκ
 τούτου τοῦ τόπου συνερρήσαν ἐνταῦθα οἱ πολέ-
 20 μιοι.¹ καὶ ἐπεὶ ἤρξαντο καταβαίνειν ἀπὸ τοῦ
 μαστοῦ πρὸς τοὺς ἄλλους ἔνθα τὰ ὄπλα ἔκειντο,
 ἴεντο δὴ οἱ πολέμοι πολλῶ πληθεὶ καὶ θορύβῳ·
 καὶ ἐπεὶ ἐγένοντο ἐπὶ τῆς κορυφῆς τοῦ μαστοῦ
 ἀφ' οὗ Ξενοφῶν κατέβαινεν, ἐκυλίνδουν πέτρους·
 καὶ ἐνὸς μὲν κατέαξαν τὸ σκέλος, Ξενοφῶντα δὲ
 21 ὁ ὑπασπιστῆς ἔχων τὴν ἀσπίδα ἀπέλιπεν. Εὐρύ-
 λοχος δὲ Λουσιεὺς προσέδραμεν αὐτῷ ὀπλίτης,
 καὶ πρὸ ἀμφοῖν προβεβλημένος ἀπεχώρει, καὶ οἱ
 ἄλλοι πρὸς τοὺς συντεταγμένους ἀπῆλθον.
 22 Ἐκ δὲ τούτου πᾶν ὁμοῦ ἐγένετο τὸ Ἑλληνικόν,
 καὶ ἐσκήνησαν αὐτοῦ ἐν πολλαῖς καὶ καλαῖς
 οἰκίαις καὶ ἐπιτηδεῖοις δαψιλέσι· καὶ γὰρ οἶνος
 23 πολλὸς ἦν, ὥστε ἐν λάκκοις κονιατοῖς εἶχον. Ξενο-
 φῶν δὲ καὶ Χειρίσοφος διεπράξαντο ὥστε λα-

¹ ἐνταῦθα οἱ πολέμοι C₁: ἐνταῦθα ἴσταντο οἱ πολ. the other MSS. Gem. omits ἴσταντο and brackets οἱ πολέμοι, following Schneider, while Mar. condemns the entire phrase ἐνταῦθα—πολέμοι

¹ In this case the reference is manifestly to the division behind the baggage train (§ 9). ² See § 14 above.

lodged from the first hill, that Cephisodorus and Amphicrates had been killed, and likewise all the rest except such as had leaped down the rocks and reached the rearguard.¹ After accomplishing this achievement the barbarians came to a hill opposite the round hill,² and Xenophon, through an interpreter, held a colloquy with them in regard to a truce and asked them to give back the bodies of the Greek dead. They replied that they would give them back on condition that the Greeks should not burn their houses. To this Xenophon agreed. But while the rest of the army was passing by and they were engaged in this conference, all the enemy from that neighbourhood had streamed together to the spot; and as soon as Xenophon and his men began to descend from the round hill, in order to join the rest of the Greeks at the place where they were halted under arms, the enemy took this opportunity to rush upon them in great force and with a great deal of uproar. When they had reached the crest of the hill from which Xenophon was descending, they proceeded to roll down stones. They broke one man's leg, and Xenophon found himself deserted by the servant who was carrying his shield; but Eurylochus of Lusi, a hoplite, ran up to him and, keeping his shield held out in front of them both, fell back with him; and the rest also made good their retreat to the main array.

Then the entire Greek army united, and the troops took up quarters there in many fine houses and in the midst of abundant supplies; for the inhabitants had wine in such quantities that they kept it in cemented cisterns. Meanwhile Xenophon and Cheirisophus effected an arrangement by which they

βόντες τοὺς νεκροὺς ἀπέδωσαν τὸν ἡγεμόνα· καὶ πάντα ἐποίησαν τοῖς ἀποθανούσιν ἐκ τῶν δυνατῶν ὥσπερ νομίζεται ἀνδράσιν ἀγαθοῖς.

24 Τῇ δὲ ὑστεραίᾳ ἄνευ ἡγεμόνος ἐπορεύοντο μαχόμενοι δ' οἱ πολέμιοι καὶ ὄπη εἶη στενὸν χωρίον προκαταλαμβάνοντες ἐκώλουν τὰς παρόδους.

25 ὁπότε μὲν οὖν τοὺς πρώτους κωλύοιεν, Ξενοφῶν ὀπισθεν ἐκβαίνων πρὸς τὰ ὄρη ἔλυσεν τὴν ἀπόφραξιν τῆς ὁδοῦ τοῖς πρώτοις ἀνωτέρω πειρώμενος

26 γίγνεσθαι τῶν κωλούντων, ὁπότε δὲ τοῖς ὀπισθεν ἐπιθοῖντο, Χειρίσοφος ἐκβαίνων καὶ πειρώμενος ἀνωτέρω γίγνεσθαι τῶν κωλούντων ἔλυσεν τὴν ἀπόφραξιν τῆς παρόδου τοῖς ὀπισθεν· καὶ αἰεὶ οὕτως ἐβοήθουν ἀλλήλοις καὶ ἰσχυρῶς ἀλλήλων

27 ἐπεμέλοντο. ἦν δὲ καὶ ὁπότε αὐτοῖς τοῖς ἀναβᾶσι πολλὰ πράγματα παρείχον οἱ βάρβαροι πάλιν καταβαίνουσιν· ἐλαφροὶ γὰρ ἦσαν ὥστε καὶ ἐγγύθεν φεύγοντες ἀποφεύγειν· οὐδὲν γὰρ εἶχον

28 ἄλλο ἢ τόξα καὶ σφενδόνας. ἄριστοι δὲ καὶ τοξόται ἦσαν· εἶχον δὲ τόξα ἐγγύς τριπήχη, τὰ δὲ τοξεύματα πλέον ἢ διπήχη· εἰλκον δὲ τὰς νευρὰς ὁπότε τοξεύοιεν πρὸς τὸ κάτω τοῦ τόξου τῷ ἀριστερῷ ποδὶ προσβαίνοντες. τὰ δὲ τοξεύματα ἐχώρει διὰ τῶν ἀσπίδων καὶ διὰ τῶν θωράκων. ἐχρῶντο δὲ αὐτοῖς οἱ Ἕλληνες, ἐπεὶ λάβοιεν, ἀκοντίοις ἐναγκυλώντες. ἐν τούτοις τοῖς χωρίοις

recovered the bodies of their dead and gave back the guide; and they rendered to the dead, so far as their means permitted, all the usual honours that are paid to brave men.

On the next day they continued their march without a guide, while the enemy, by fighting and by seizing positions in advance wherever the road was narrow, tried to prevent their passage. Accordingly, whenever they blocked the march of the van, Xenophon would push forward from the rear to the mountains and break the blockade of the road for the van by trying to get higher than those who were halting it, and whenever they attacked the rear, Cheirisophus would sally forth and, by trying to get higher than the obstructing force, would break the blockade of the passage-way for the rear; in this way they continually aided one another and took zealous care for one another. There were times, indeed, when the barbarians caused a great deal of trouble even to the troops who had climbed to a higher position, when they were coming down again; for their men were so agile that even if they took to flight from close at hand, they could escape; for they had nothing to carry except bows and slings. As bowmen they were most excellent; they had bows nearly three cubits long and their arrows were more than two cubits, and when they shot, they would draw their strings by pressing with the left foot against the lower end of the bow; and their arrows would go straight through shields and breastplates.¹ Whenever they got hold of them, the Greeks would use these arrows as javelins, fitting them with thongs. In these regions

¹ See i. 18.

οἱ Κρήτες χρησιμώτατοι ἐγένοντο. ἤρχε δὲ αὐτῶν Στρατοκλῆς Κρής.

- III. Ταύτην δ' αὖ τὴν ἡμέραν ἠύλισθησαν ἐν ταῖς κώμαις ταῖς ὑπὲρ τοῦ πεδίου παρὰ τὸν Κεντρίτην ποταμόν, εὖρος ὡς δίπλεθρον, ὃς ὀρίζει τὴν Ἀρμενίαν καὶ τὴν τῶν Καρδούχων χώραν. καὶ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐνταῦθα ἀνέπνευσαν ἄσμενοι ἰδόντες πεδίον ἀπέιχε δὲ τῶν ὄρέων ὁ ποταμὸς ἕξ ἢ ἑπτὰ στάδια τῶν Καρδαύχων.
- 2 τότε μὲν οὖν ἠύλισθησαν μάλα ἠδέως καὶ τάπι-
τήδεια ἔχοντες καὶ πολλὰ τῶν παρεληλυθότων
πόνων μνημονεύοντες. ἑπτὰ γὰρ ἡμέρας ὄσασπερ
ἐπορεύθησαν διὰ τῶν Καρδούχων πάσας μαχό-
μενοι διετέλεσαν, καὶ ἔπαθον κακὰ ὅσα οὐδὲ τὰ
σύμπαντα ὑπὸ βασιλέως καὶ Τισσαφέρνους. ὡς
οὖν ἀπηλλαγμένοι τούτων ἠδέως ἐκοιμήθησαν.
- 3 Ἄμα δὲ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ ὄρωσιν ἰππέας που πέραν
τοῦ ποταμοῦ ἐξωπλισμένους ὡς κωλύσοντας
διαβαίνειν, πεζοὺς δ' ἐπὶ ταῖς ὄχθαις παρατεταγ-
μένους ἄνω τῶν ἰππέων ὡς κωλύσοντας εἰς τὴν
- 4 Ἀρμενίαν ἐκβαίνειν. ἦσαν δ' οὗτοι Ὀρόντα καὶ
Ἀρτούχα Ἀρμένιοι καὶ Μάρδοι καὶ Χαλδαῖοι
μισθοφόροι. ἐλέγοντο δὲ οἱ Χαλδαῖοι ἐλεύθεροί
τε καὶ ἄλκιμοι εἶναι ὅπλα δ' εἶχον γέρρα μακρὰ
- 5 καὶ λόγχας. αἱ δὲ ὄχθαι αὐταὶ ἐφ' ὧν παρα-
τεταγμένοι οὗτοι ἦσαν τρία ἢ τέτταρα πλέθρα

¹ On the preceding night also they had been quartered in villages (ii. 22).

the Cretans made themselves exceedingly useful. They were commanded by a Cretan named Stratocles.

III. For that day again¹ they found quarters in the villages that lie above the plain bordering the Centrites river, which is about two plethra in width and separates Armenia and the country of the Carduchians. There the Greeks took breath, glad to behold a plain; for the river was distant six or seven stadia from the mountains of the Carduchians. At the time, then, they went into their quarters very happily, for they had provisions and likewise many recollections of the hardships that were now past. For during all the seven days of their march through the land of the Carduchians they were continually fighting, and they suffered more evils than all which they had suffered taken together at the hands of the King and Tissaphernes. In the feeling, therefore, that they were rid of these troubles they lay down happily to rest.

At daybreak, however, they caught sight of horsemen at a place across the river, fully armed and ready to dispute their passage, and likewise foot-soldiers drawn up in line of battle upon the bluffs above the horsemen, to prevent their pushing up into Armenia. All these were the troops of Orontas² and Artuchas,³ and consisted of Armenians, Mardians, and Chaldaean mercenaries. The Chaldaeans were said to be an independent and valiant people; they had as weapons long wicker shields and lances. Now the bluffs just mentioned, upon which these troops were drawn up, were distant

² Satrap of Armenia. cp. II. iv. 8, 9; III. iv. 13, v. 17.

³ A Persian general.

ἀπὸ τοῦ ποταμοῦ ἀπεΐχον· ὁδὸς δὲ μία ὀρωμένη
 ἦν ἄγουσα ἄνω ὡσπερ χειροποίητος· ταύτη ἐπει-
 6 ρῶντο διαβαίνειν οἱ Ἕλληνες. ἐπεὶ δὲ πειρωμέ-
 νοις τό τε ὕδωρ ὑπὲρ τῶν μαστῶν ἐφαίνετο, καὶ
 τραχὺς ἦν ὁ ποταμὸς μεγάλοις λίθοις καὶ ὀλι-
 σθηροῖς, καὶ οὐτ' ἐν τῷ ὕδατι τὰ ὄπλα ἦν ἔχειν
 εἰ δὲ μή, ἤρπαζεν ὁ ποταμὸς· ἐπὶ τε τῆς κεφαλῆς
 τὰ ὄπλα εἴ τις φέροι, γυμνοὶ ἐγίγνοντο πρὸς
 τὰ τοξεύματα καὶ τᾶλλα βέλη· ἀνεχώρησαν καὶ
 αὐτοῦ ἐστρατοπεδεύσαντο παρὰ τὸν ποταμὸν.
 7 ἔνθα δὲ αὐτοὶ τὴν πρόσθεν νύκτα ἦσαν ἐπὶ τοῦ
 ὄρους ἐώρων τοὺς Καρδούχους πολλοὺς συνειλεγ-
 μένους ἐν τοῖς ὄπλοις. ἐνταῦθα δὴ πολλὴ ἀθυμία
 ἦν τοῖς Ἕλλησιν, ὀρώσι μὲν τοῦ ποταμοῦ τὴν
 δυσπορίαν, ὀρώσι δὲ τοὺς διαβαίνειν κωλύσοντας,
 ὀρώσι δὲ τοῖς διαβαίνουσιν ἐπικεισομένους τοὺς
 Καρδούχους ὀπισθεν.
 8 Ταύτην μὲν οὖν τὴν ἡμέραν καὶ νύκτα ἔμειναν
 ἐν πολλῇ ἀπορίᾳ ὄντες. Ξενοφῶν δὲ ὄναρ εἶδεν·
 ἔδοξεν ἐν πέδαις δεδέσθαι, αὐταὶ δὲ αὐτῷ αὐτό-
 μαται περιρρυῆναι, ὥστε λυθῆναι καὶ διαβαίνειν
 ὅποσον ἐβούλετο. ἐπεὶ δὲ ὄρθρος ἦν, ἔρχεται
 πρὸς τὸν Χειρίσοφον καὶ λέγει ὅτι ἐλπίδας ἔχει
 9 καλῶς ἔσεσθαι, καὶ διηγείται αὐτῷ τὸ ὄναρ. ὁ
 δὲ ἤδετό τε καὶ ὡς τάχιστα ἕως ὑπέβαινον ἐθύ-
 οντο πάντες παρόντες οἱ στρατηγοί. καὶ τὰ ἱερά
 καλὰ ἦν εὐθύς ἐπὶ τοῦ πρώτου, καὶ ἀπιόντες ἀπὸ

¹ *i. e.* opposite this road, where they naturally expected to find a practicable ford.

² διαβαίνειν, which also means "to cross" a river (see above). Here lay the good omen of the dream.

three or four plethra from the river, and there was only one road to be seen that led up them, apparently an artificial road; so at this point¹ the Greeks undertook to cross the river. When they made the attempt, however, the water proved to be more than breast deep and the river bed was rough with large, slippery stones; furthermore, they could not carry their shields in the water, for if they tried that, the current would snatch them away, while if a man carried them on his head, his body was left unprotected against arrows and other missiles; so they turned back and went into camp there by the side of the river. Meanwhile, at the point where they had themselves spent the previous night, on the mountain side, they could see the Carduchians gathered together under arms in great numbers. Then it was that deep despondency fell upon the Greeks, as they saw before them a river difficult to cross, beyond it troops that would obstruct their crossing, and behind them the Carduchians, ready to fall upon their rear when they tried to cross.

That day and night, accordingly, they remained there, in great perplexity. But Xenophon had a dream; he thought that he was bound in fetters, but that the fetters fell off from him of their own accord, so that he was released and could take as long steps² as he pleased. When dawn came, he went to Cheirisophus, told him he had hopes that all would be well, and related to him his dream. Cheirisophus was pleased, and as soon as day began to break, all the generals were at hand and proceeded to offer sacrifices. And with the very first victim the omens were favourable. Then the generals

τῶν ἱερῶν οἱ στρατηγοὶ καὶ λοχαγοὶ¹ παρήγγελλον τῇ στρατιᾷ ἀριστοποιεῖσθαι.

- 10 Καὶ ἀριστῶντι τῷ Ξενοφῶντι προσέτρεχον δύο νεανίσκω· ἤδεσαν γὰρ πάντες ὅτι ἐξείη αὐτῷ καὶ ἀριστῶντι καὶ δειπνοῦντι προσελθεῖν καὶ εἰ καθεύδοι ἐπεγείραντα εἰπεῖν, εἴ τίς τι ἔχοι τῶν
- 11 πρὸς τὸν πόλεμον. καὶ τότε ἔλεγον ὅτι τυγχάνοιεν φρύγανα συλλέγοντες ὡς ἐπὶ πῦρ, κάπειτα κατίδοιεν ἐν τῷ πέραν ἐν πέτραις καθηκούσαις ἐπ' αὐτὸν τὸν ποταμὸν γέροντά τε καὶ γυναῖκα καὶ παιδίσκας ὥσπερ μαρσίπους ἱματίων κατα-
- 12 τιθεμένους ἐν πέτρᾳ ἀνθρώδει. ἰδοῦσι δὲ σφίσι δόξαι ἀσφαλὲς εἶναι διαβῆναι· οὐδὲ γὰρ τοῖς πολεμίοις ἰππεῦσι προσβατὸν εἶναι κατὰ τοῦτο. ἐκδύντες δ' ἔφασαν ἔχοντες τὰ ἐγχειρίδια γυμνοὶ ὡς νευσόμενοι διαβαίνειν· πορευόμενοι δὲ πρόσθεν διαβῆναι πρὶν βρέξαι τὰ αἰδοῖα· καὶ διαβάντες, λαβόντες τὰ ἱμάτια πάλιν ἤκειν.
- 13 Εὐθὺς οὖν Ξενοφῶν αὐτὸς τε ἔσπευδε καὶ τοῖς νεανίσκοις ἐγγεῖν ἐκέλευε καὶ εὐχεσθαι τοῖς φήνασι θεοῖς τὰ τε ὀνείρατα καὶ τὸν πόρον καὶ τὰ λοιπὰ ἀγαθὰ ἐπιτελέσαι. σπείσας δ' εὐθὺς ἤγε τοὺς νεανίσκους παρὰ τὸν Χειρίσοφον, καὶ διηγοῦνται ταῦτά. ἀκούσας δὲ καὶ ὁ Χειρίσοφος
- 14 σπονδὰς ἐποίει. σπείσαντες δὲ τοῖς μὲν ἄλλοις παρήγγελλον συσκευάζεσθαι, αὐτοὶ δὲ συγκαλέ-

¹ καὶ λοχαγοὶ Gem. brackets, following Schenkl.

¹ Especially a safe crossing and a safe return to Greece.

and captains withdrew from the sacrifice and gave orders to the troops to get their breakfasts.

While Xenophon was breakfasting, two young men came running up to him; for all knew that they might go to him whether he was breakfasting or dining, and that if he were asleep, they might awaken him and tell him whatever they might have to tell that concerned the war. In the present case the young men reported that they had happened to be gathering dry sticks for the purpose of making a fire, and that while so occupied they had descried across the river, among some rocks that reached down to the very edge of the river, an old man and a woman and some little girls putting away what looked like bags of clothes in a cavernous rock. When they saw this proceeding, they said, they made up their minds that it was safe for them to cross, for this was a place that was not accessible to the enemy's cavalry. They accordingly stripped, keeping only their daggers, and started across naked, supposing that they would have to swim; but they went on and got across without wetting themselves up to the middle; once on the other side, they took the clothes and came back again.

Upon hearing this report Xenophon immediately proceeded to pour a libation himself, and directed his attendants to fill a cup for the young men and to pray to the gods who had revealed the dream and the ford, to bring to fulfilment the other blessings also.¹ The libation accomplished, he at once led the young men to Cheirisophus, and they repeated their story to him. And upon hearing it Cheirisophus also made libation. Thereafter they gave orders to the troops to pack up their baggage, while they

- σαντες τους στρατηγους ἐβουλεύοντο ὅπως ἂν κάλιστα διαβαίεν καὶ τοὺς τε ἔμπροσθεν νικῶεν καὶ
- 16 ὑπὸ τῶν ὀπισθεν μηδὲν πάσχοιεν κακόν. καὶ ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς Χειρίσοφον μὲν ἡγεῖσθαι καὶ διαβαίνειν ἔχοντα τὸ ἥμισυ τοῦ στρατεύματος, τὸ δ' ἥμισυ ἔτι ὑπομένειν σὺν Ξενοφῶντι, τὰ δὲ ὑποζύγια καὶ τὸν ὄχλον ἐν μέσῳ τούτων διαβαίνειν.
- 16 Ἐπεὶ δὲ ταῦτα καλῶς εἶχεν ἐπορεύοντο ἡγοῦντο δ' οἱ νεανίσκοι ἐν ἀριστερᾷ ἔχοντες τὸν ποταμόν· ὁδὸς δὲ ἦν ἐπὶ τὴν διάβασιν ὡς τέττα-
- 17 ρες στάδιοι. πορευομένων δ' αὐτῶν ἀντιπαρήσαν αἱ τάξεις τῶν ἰππέων. ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἦσαν κατὰ τὴν διάβασιν¹ τοῦ ποταμοῦ, ἔθεντο τὰ ὄπλα, καὶ αὐτὸς πρῶτος Χειρίσοφος στεφανωσάμενος καὶ ἀποδὺς ἐλάμβανε τὰ ὄπλα καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις πᾶσι παρήγγελλε, καὶ τοὺς λοχαγοὺς ἐκέλευεν ἄγειν τοὺς λόχους ὀρθίους, τοὺς μὲν ἐν ἀριστερᾷ τοὺς δ' ἐν δεξιᾷ ἑαυτοῦ. καὶ οἱ μὲν μάντεις ἐσφαγιά-
- 18 ζοντο εἰς τὸν ποταμόν· οἱ δὲ πολέμοι ἐτόξευον
- 19 καὶ ἐσφενδόνων· ἀλλ' οὐπω ἐξικνούντο· ἐπεὶ δὲ καλὰ ἦν τὰ σφάγια, ἐπαιάνιζον πάντες οἱ στρατιῶται καὶ ἀνηλάλαζον, συνωλόλυζον δὲ καὶ αἱ γυναῖκες ἅπασαι. πολλαὶ γὰρ ἦσαν ἑταῖραι ἐν τῷ στρατεύματι.
- 20 Καὶ Χειρίσοφος μὲν ἐνέβαινε καὶ οἱ σὺν ἐκείνῳ· ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν τῶν ὀπισθοφυλάκων λαβὼν τοὺς εὐζωνοτάτους ἔθει ἀνὰ κράτος πάλιν ἐπὶ τὸν

¹ After διάβασιν the MSS. have καὶ τὰς ὄχθας: Gem. brackets.

themselves called together the generals and took counsel as to how they might best effect a crossing so as to defeat the enemy in front without suffering any harm from those in their rear. The decision was, that Cheirisophus should take the lead with half the army and attempt a crossing, that the other half with Xenophon should stay behind for a while, and that the baggage animals and camp followers should cross between the two divisions.

When these arrangements had been satisfactorily made, they set out, the young men leading the way and keeping the river on the left; and the distance to the ford was about four stadia. As they proceeded, the squadrons of the enemy's cavalry kept along opposite to them. When they reached the ford, they halted under arms, and Cheirisophus put a wreath upon his head,¹ threw off his cloak, and took up his arms, giving orders to all the others to do the same; he also directed the captains to lead their companies in column, part of them upon his left and the rest upon his right. Meanwhile the soothsayers were offering sacrifice to the river, and the enemy were shooting arrows and discharging slings, but not yet reaching their mark; and when the sacrifices proved favourable, all the soldiers struck up the pæan and raised the war shout, while the women, everyone of them, joined their cries with the shouting of the men—for there were a large number of women in the camp.

Then Cheirisophus and his division proceeded into the river; but Xenophon took the nimblest troops of the rearguard and began running back at full

¹ As the Spartans were accustomed to do when going into battle. cp. I. iv. 2-3.

- 21 *πάρου τον κατὰ τὴν ἔκβασιν τὴν εἰς τὰ τῶν Ἀρμενίων ὄρη, προσποιούμενος ταύτη διαβάς ἀποκλείσει τοὺς παρὰ τὸν ποταμὸν ἰππέας. οἱ δὲ πολέμιοι ὄρωντες μὲν τοὺς ἀμφὶ Χειρίσοφον εὐπετῶς τὸ ὕδωρ περῶντας, ὄρωντες δὲ τοὺς ἀμφὶ Ξενοφῶντα θέοντας εἰς τοῦμπαλι, δεισαύτες μὴ ἀποληφθείησαν φεύγουσιν ἀνὰ κράτος ὡς πρὸς τὴν τοῦ ποταμοῦ ἄνω ἔκβασιν. ἐπεὶ δὲ κατὰ τὴν*
 22 *ὁδὸν ἐγένοντο, ἔτεινον ἄνω πρὸς τὸ ὄρος. Λύκιος δ' ὁ τὴν τάξι ἔχων τῶν ἰππέων καὶ Αἰσχίνης ὁ τὴν τάξι τῶν πελταστῶν τῶν ἀμφὶ Χειρίσοφον ἐπεὶ ἐώρων ἀνὰ κράτος φεύγοντας, εἶποντο· οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται ἐβόων μὴ ἀπολείπεσθαι, ἀλλὰ συνεκ-*
 23 *βαίνειν ἐπὶ τὸ ὄρος. Χειρίσοφος δ' αὐτὸν ἐπεὶ διέβη, τοὺς ἰππέας οὐκ ἐδίωκεν, εὐθὺς δὲ κατὰ τὰς προσηκούσας ὄχθας ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμὸν ἐξέβαινε ἐπὶ τοὺς ἄνω πολεμίους. οἱ δὲ ἄνω, ὄρωντες μὲν τοὺς ἑαυτῶν ἰππέας φεύγοντας, ὄρωντες δ' ὀπίστας σφίσι ἐπιόντας, ἐκλείπουσι τὰ ὑπὲρ τοῦ ποταμοῦ ἄκρα.*
 24 *Ξενοφῶν δ' ἐπεὶ τὰ πέραν ἐώρα καλῶς γιγνόμενα, ἀπεχώρει τὴν ταχίστην πρὸς τὸ διαβαίνειν στρατεύμα· καὶ γὰρ οἱ Καρδοῦχοι φανεροὶ ἤδη ἦσαν εἰς τὸ πεδίου καταβαίνοντες ὡς ἐπιθησόμενοι τοῖς*
 25 *τελευταίοις. καὶ Χειρίσοφος μὲν τὰ ἄνω κατεῖχε, Λύκιος δὲ σὺν ὀλίγοις ἐπιχειρήσας ἐπιδιώξει ἔλαβε τῶν σκευοφόρων τὰ ὑπολειπόμενα καὶ μετὰ*
 26 *τούτων ἐσθῆτά τε καλὴν καὶ ἐκπώματα. καὶ τὰ*

¹ *i. e.* the original ford, which had proved impracticable (§§ 5-6).

² *i. e.* by attacking them on the flank. — ³ See § 3 above.

⁴ Which numbered only fifty men (III. iii. 20).

speed to the ford¹ that was opposite the road which led out into the Armenian mountains, pretending that he meant to cross at that point and thus cut off² the horsemen who were by the side of the river. The enemy thereupon, when they saw Cheirisophus and his division crossing the river without difficulty and likewise saw Xenophon and his men running back, were seized with fear that they might be cut off, and they fled at full speed to reach the road which led up from the river. This road once gained, they hastened on upward in the direction of the mountain. Then Lycius, who commanded the squadron of Greek cavalry, and Aeschines, commander of the battalion of peltasts that was with Cheirisophus, upon seeing the enemy in full flight set off in pursuit, while the rest of the Greek troops shouted to them not to fall behind, but to follow the fugitives right up to the mountain. As for Cheirisophus, after getting across he chose not to pursue the hostile cavalry, but immediately pushed up over the bluffs that reached down to the river against the infantry on top of them.³ And these troops, seeing their own cavalry in flight and hoplites advancing upon them, abandoned the heights above the river.

Xenophon no sooner saw that all was going well on the other side than he started back with all speed to join the troops that were crossing, for by this time the Carduchians could be seen descending into the plain with the manifest intention of attacking the hindmost. Meanwhile Cheirisophus was in possession of the bluffs, and Lycius, venturing a pursuit with his small squadron,⁴ had captured the straggling portion of the enemy's baggage train, and with it fine apparel and drinking cups. And now,

μὲν σκευοφόρα τῶν Ἑλλήνων καὶ ὁ ὄχλος ἀκμὴν
 διέβαινε, Ξενοφῶν δὲ στρέψας πρὸς τοὺς Καρδοῦ-
 χους ἀντία τὰ ὄπλα ἔθετο, καὶ παρήγγειλε τοῖς
 λοχαγοῖς κατ' ἐνωμοτίας ποιήσασθαι ἕκαστον
 τὸν ἑαυτοῦ λόχον, παρ' ἀσπίδα παραγαγόντας
 τὴν ἐνωμοτίαν ἐπὶ φάλαγγος· καὶ τοὺς μὲν λοχα-
 γοὺς καὶ τοὺς ἐνωμοτάρχους πρὸς τῶν Καρδούχων
 ἰέναι, οὐραγοὺς δὲ καταστήσασθαι πρὸς τοῦ
 27 ποταμοῦ. οἱ δὲ Καρδοῦχοι ὡς ἐώρων τοὺς ὀπι-
 σθοφύλακας τοῦ ὄχλου ψιλουμένους καὶ ὀλίγους
 ἤδη φαινομένους, θᾶπτον δὴ ἐπήσαν ὥδᾳς τινας
 ἄδοντες. ὁ δὲ Χειρίσοφος, ἐπεὶ τὰ παρ' αὐτῷ ἀσφα-
 λῶς εἶχε, πέμπει παρὰ Ξενοφῶντα τοὺς πελταστὰς
 καὶ σφενδονήτας καὶ τοξότας καὶ κελεύει ποιεῖν
 28 ὅ τι ἂν παραγγέλλῃ. ἰδὼν δ' αὐτοὺς διαβαίνοντας
 Ξενοφῶν πέμψας ἄγγελον κελεύει αὐτοῦ μείναι
 ἐπὶ τοῦ ποταμοῦ μὴ διαβάντας· ὅταν δ' ἄρξων-
 ται αὐτοὶ διαβαίνειν, ἐναντίους ἔνθεν καὶ ἔνθεν
 σφῶν ἐμβαίνειν ὡς διαβησομένους, διηγκυλωμέ-
 νους τοὺς ἀκουτιστὰς καὶ ἐπιβεβλημένους τοὺς
 τοξότας· μὴ πρόσω δὲ τοῦ ποταμοῦ προβαίνειν.
 29 τοῖς δὲ παρ' ἑαυτῷ παρήγγειλεν, ἐπειδὴν σφενδόνῃ
 ἐξικνῆται καὶ ἀσπίς ψοφῆ, παιανίσαντας θεῖν
 εἰς τοὺς πολεμίους, ἐπειδὴν δ' ἀναστρέψωσιν οἱ
 πολέμοι καὶ ἐκ τοῦ ποταμοῦ ὁ σαλπικτῆς σημήνη
 τὸ πολεμικόν, ἀναστρέψαντας ἐπὶ δόρυ ἠγεῖσθαι
 μὲν τοὺς οὐραγοὺς, θεῖν δὲ πάντα καὶ διαβαίνειν

¹ See III. iv. 21-22, and note thereon.

² In order to deceive the enemy.

with the Greek baggage train and the camp followers
 in the very act of crossing, Xenophon wheeled his
 troops so that they took a position facing the
 Carduchians, and gave orders to the captains that
 each man of them should form his own company by
 squads,¹ moving each squad by the left into line of
 battle; then the captains and squad leaders were to
 face toward the Carduchians and station file closers
 on the side next to the river. But as soon as the
 Carduchians saw the rearguard stripped of the
 crowd of camp followers and looking now like a
 small body, they advanced to the attack all the
 more rapidly, singing a kind of songs. As for
 Cheirisophus, since everything was safe on his side,
 he sent back to Xenophon the peltasts, slingers,
 and bowmen, and directed them to do whatever
 Xenophon might order. But when he saw them
 beginning to cross, Xenophon sent a messenger and
 directed them to stay where they were, on the bank
 of the river, without crossing; at the moment, how-
 ever, when his own men should begin to cross, they
 were to enter the river opposite them, on this side
 and that, as though they were going to cross it, the
 javelin men with hand on the thong and the bow-
 men with arrow on the string; but they were not
 to proceed far into the river. The orders he gave
 to his own men were, that when sling-stones reached
 them and shields rang, they were to strike up
 the paean and charge upon the enemy, and when the
 enemy turned to flight and the trumpeter on the
 river-bank sounded the charge,² they were to face
 about to the right, the file closers were to take
 the lead, and all of them were to run and cross
 as fast as they could with every man keeping his

ὅτι τάχιστα ἢ ἕκαστος τὴν τάξιν εἶχεν, ὡς μὴ ἐμποδίξειν ἀλλήλους· ὅτι οὗτος ἄριστος ἔσοιτο ὃς ἂν πρῶτος ἐν τῷ πέραν γένηται.

- 30 Οἱ δὲ Καρδοῦχοι ὀρώντες ὀλίγους ἤδη τοὺς λοιπούς—πολλοὶ γὰρ καὶ τῶν μένειν τεταγμένων ὄχοντο ἐπιμελόμενοι οἱ μὲν ὑποζυγίων, οἱ δὲ σκευῶν, οἱ δ' ἑταιρῶν—ἐνταῦθα δὴ ἐπέκειντο
- 31 θρασέως καὶ ἤρχοντο σφενδονᾶν καὶ τοξεύειν. οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες παιανίσαντες ὄρμησαν δρόμῳ ἐπ' αὐτούς· οἱ δὲ οὐκ ἐδέξαντο· καὶ γὰρ ἦσαν ὀπλισμένοι ὡς μὲν ἐν τοῖς ὄρεσιν ἰκανῶς πρὸς τὸ ἐπιδραμεῖν καὶ φεύγειν, πρὸς δὲ τὸ εἰς χεῖρας
- 32 δέχεσθαι οὐχ ἰκανῶς. ἐν τούτῳ σημαίνει ὁ σαλπικτής· καὶ οἱ μὲν πολέμοι ἔφευγον πολὺ ἔτι θάπτον, οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες τὰναντία στρέψαντες
- 33 ἔφευγον διὰ τοῦ ποταμοῦ ὅτι τάχιστα. τῶν δὲ πολεμίων οἱ μὲν τινες αἰσθόμενοι πάλιν ἔδραμον ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμὸν καὶ τοξεύοντες ὀλίγους ἔτρωσαν, οἱ δὲ πολλοὶ καὶ πέραν ὄντων τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἔτι
- 34 φανεροὶ ἦσαν φεύγοντες. οἱ δὲ ὑπαντήσαντες ἀνδριζόμενοι καὶ προσωτέρω τοῦ καιροῦ προϊόντες ὕστερον τῶν μετὰ Ξενοφώντος διέβησαν πάλιν· καὶ ἐτρώθησάν τινες καὶ τούτων.

IV. Ἐπεὶ δὲ διέβησαν, συνταξάμενοι ἀμφὶ μέσον ἡμέρας ἐπορεύθησαν διὰ τῆς Ἀρμενίας πεδίου ἅπαν καὶ λείους γηλόφους οὐ μείον ἢ πέντε παρασάγγας· οὐ γὰρ ἦσαν ἐγγὺς τοῦ ποταμοῦ κῶμαι διὰ τοὺς πολέμους τοὺς πρὸς τοὺς

2 Καρδούχους. εἰς δὲ ἦν ἀφίκοντο κώμην μεγάλη

proper place in the line, so that they should not interfere with one another; and he that got to the other side first would be the best man.

Now the Carduchians, seeing that those who were left were by this time few in number (for many even of those detailed to stay had gone off to look after pack animals or baggage or women, as the case might be), at that moment proceeded to press upon them boldly and began to sling stones and shoot arrows. Then the Greeks struck up the paean and charged at them on the run, and they did not meet the attack; for while they were equipped well enough for attack and retreat in the mountains, their equipment was not adequate for hand-to-hand fighting. At that instant the Greek trumpeter sounded his signal; and while the enemy began to flee much faster than before, the Greeks turned about and set out on their own flight through the river at top speed. Some few of the enemy, perceiving this movement, ran back to the river and wounded a few Greeks with arrows, but most of them, even when the Greeks were on the other side, could still be seen continuing their flight. But the troops that came to meet Xenophon, behaving like men and advancing farther than they should have gone, crossed back again in the rear of Xenophon's command; and some of them also were wounded.

IV. When they had accomplished the crossing, they formed in line of battle about midday and marched through Armenia, over entirely level country and gently sloping hills, not less than five parasangs; for there were no villages near the river because of the wars between the Armenians and Carduchians. The village which they finally reached was a large

τε ἦν καὶ βασιλείου εἶχε τῷ σατράπῃ καὶ
 ἐπὶ ταῖς πλείσταις οἰκίαις τύρσεις ἐπήσαν· ἐπι-
 3 τήδεια δ' ἦν δαφυλῆ. ἐντεύθεν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν
 σταθμούς δύο παρασάγγας δέκα μέχρι ὑπερήλθον
 τὰς πηγὰς τοῦ Τίγρητος ποταμοῦ. ἐντεύθεν δ'
 ἐπορεύθησαν σταθμούς τρεῖς παρασάγγας πεντε-
 καίδεκα ἐπὶ τὸν Τηλεβόαν ποταμόν. οὗτος δ' ἦν
 4 καλὸς μὲν, μέγας δ' οὐ· κῶμαι δὲ πολλαὶ περὶ
 τὸν ποταμόν ἦσαν. ὁ δὲ τόπος οὗτος Ἀρμενία
 ἐκαλεῖτο ἢ πρὸς ἑσπέραν. ὑπαρχος δ' ἦν αὐτῆς
 Τιρίβαζος, ὁ καὶ βασιλεῖ φίλος γινόμενος, καὶ
 ὁπότε παρείη, οὐδεὶς ἄλλος βασιλέα ἐπὶ τὸν
 5 ἵππον ἀνέβαλλεν. οὗτος προσήλασεν ἱππέας ἔχων,
 καὶ προπέμψας ἑρμηνέα εἶπεν ὅτι βούλοιο δια-
 λεχθῆναι τοῖς ἄρχουσι. τοῖς δὲ στρατηγοῖς ἔδοξεν
 ἀκούσαι καὶ προσελθόντες εἰς ἐπήκοον ἡρώτων
 6 τί θέλει. ὁ δὲ εἶπεν ὅτι σπείσασθαι βούλοιο ἐφ'
 ᾧ μήτε αὐτὸς τοὺς Ἕλληνας ἀδικεῖν μήτε ἐκείνους
 καίειν τὰς οἰκίας, λαμβάνειν τε τὰ πιτήδεια ὅσων
 δέοιντο. ἔδοξε ταῦτα τοῖς στρατηγοῖς καὶ ἑσπει-
 σαντο ἐπὶ τούτοις.
 7 Ἐντεύθεν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν σταθμούς τρεῖς διὰ
 πεδίου παρασάγγας πεντεκαίδεκα· καὶ Τιρίβαζος
 παρηκολούθει ἔχων τὴν ἑαυτοῦ δύναμιν ἀπέχων
 ὡς δέκα σταδίους· καὶ ἀφίκοντο εἰς βασιλεία καὶ
 8 κώμας περίξ πολλὰς πολλῶν τῶν ἐπιτηδείων
 τῆς νυκτὸς χιῶν πολλή· καὶ ἔωθεν ἔδοξε δια-
 σκηνηῆσαι τὰς τάξεις καὶ τοὺς στρατηγοὺς κατὰ

¹ Subordinate to the satrap of all Armenia, Orontas. See iii. 4, and note thereon.

² It was now late in November.

one and had a palace for the satrap, while most of
 the houses were surmounted by turrets; and pro-
 visions were plentiful. From there they marched
 two stages, ten parasangs, until they passed the
 headwaters of the Tigris river. From there they
 marched three stages, fifteen parasangs, to the
 Teleboas river. This was a beautiful river, though
 not a large one, and there were many villages about
 it. This region was called Western Armenia. Its
 lieutenant-governor¹ was Tiribazus, who had proved
 himself a friend to the King and, so often as he was
 present, was the only man permitted to help the
 King mount his horse. He rode up to the Greeks
 with a body of horsemen, and sending forward an
 interpreter, said that he wished to confer with their
 commanders. The generals decided to hear what he
 had to say, and, after approaching within hearing
 distance, they asked him what he wanted. He
 replied that he wished to conclude a treaty with
 these conditions, that he on his side would not harm
 the Greeks, and that they should not burn the
 houses, but might take all the provisions they
 needed. This proposition was accepted by the
 generals, and they concluded a treaty on these
 terms.

From there they marched three stages, fifteen
 parasangs, through level country, Tiribazus and his
 command following along at a distance of about
 ten stadia from them; and they reached a palace
 with many villages round about it full of provisions
 in abundance. While they were in camp there,
 there was a heavy fall of snow² during the night,
 and in the morning they decided to quarter the
 several divisions of the army, with their commanders,

- τὰς κώμας· οὐ γὰρ ἐώρων πολέμιον οὐδένα καὶ ἀσφαλὲς ἐδόκει εἶναι διὰ τὸ πλῆθος τῆς χιόνος.
- 9 ἐνταῦθα εἶχον τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ὅσα ἐστὶν ἀγαθὰ, ἱερεῖα, σῖτον, οἴνους παλαιούς εὐώδεις, ἀσταφίδας, ὄσπρια παντοδαπά. τῶν δὲ ἀποσκεδαννυμένων τινὲς ἀπὸ τοῦ στρατοπέδου ἔλεγον ὅτι κατίδοιεν
- 10 νύκτωρ πολλὰ πυρὰ φαίνοντα. ἐδόκει δὴ τοῖς στρατηγοῖς οὐκ ἀσφαλὲς εἶναι διασκηνοῦν, ἀλλὰ συναγαγεῖν τὸ στράτευμα πάλιν. ἐντεῦθεν συν-
- 11 ἦλθον· καὶ γὰρ ἐδόκει διαιθριάζειν. νυκτερευόντων δ' αὐτῶν ἐνταῦθα ἐπιπίπτει χιῶν ἄπλετος, ὥστε ἀπέκρυψε καὶ τὰ ὄπλα καὶ τοὺς ἀνθρώπους κατακειμένους· καὶ τὰ ὑποζύγια συνεπόδισεν ἢ χιῶν· καὶ πολὺς ὄκνος ἦν ἀνίστασθαι· κατακειμένων γὰρ ἀλεεινὸν ἦν ἢ χιῶν ἐπιπεπτωκυῖα
- 12 ὅτῳ μὴ παραρρνεῖη. ἐπεὶ δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἐτόλμησε γυμνὸς ἀναστὰς σχίζειν ξύλα, τάχ' ἀναστὰς τις καὶ ἄλλος ἐκείνου ἀφελόμενος ἔσχιζεν. ἐκ δὲ τούτου καὶ ἄλλοι ἀναστάντες πῦρ ἔκαιον καὶ
- 13 ἐχρίοντο· πολὺ γὰρ ἐνταῦθα ἠύρισκετο χρίμα, ᾧ ἐχρῶντο ἀντ' ἐλαίου, σύειον καὶ σησάμινον καὶ ἀμυγδάλινον ἐκ τῶν πικρῶν καὶ τερμίνθινον. ἐκ δὲ τῶν αὐτῶν τούτων καὶ μύρον ἠύρισκετο.
- 14 Μετὰ ταῦτα ἐδόκει πάλιν διασκηνητέον εἶναι εἰς τὰς κώμας¹ εἰς στέγας. ἐνθα δὴ οἱ στρατιῶται σὺν πολλῇ κραυγῇ καὶ ἡδονῇ ἦσαν ἐπὶ τὰς στέγας

¹ εἰς τὰς κώμας Gem. and Mar. bracket, following Krüger.

in the different villages; for there was no enemy within sight, and the plan seemed to be a safe one by reason of the great quantity of snow. There they had all possible good things in the way of supplies—animals for sacrifice, grain, old wines with a fine bouquet, dried grapes, and beans of all sorts. But some men who straggled away from their quarters reported that they saw in the night the gleam of a great many fires. The generals accordingly decided that it was unsafe to have their divisions in separate quarters, and that they must bring all the troops together again; so they came together, especially as the storm seemed to be clearing up. But there came such a tremendous fall of snow while they were bivouacked there that it completely covered both the arms and the men as they slept, besides hampering the baggage animals; and everybody was very reluctant to get up, for as the men lay there the snow that had fallen upon them—in case it did not slip off—was a source of warmth. But once Xenophon had mustered the courage to get up without his cloak and set about splitting wood, another man also speedily got up, took the axe away from him, and went on with the splitting. Thereupon still others got up and proceeded to build fires and anoint themselves; for they found ointment there in abundance which they used in place of olive oil—made of pork fat, sesame, bitter almonds, or turpentine. They found also a fragrant oil made out of these same ingredients.

After this it was deemed necessary to distribute the troops again to quarters in the houses of the several villages. Then followed plenty of joyful shouting as the men went back to their houses

καὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια· ὅσοι δὲ ὅτε τὸ¹ πρότερον ἀπήσαν τὰς οἰκίας ἐνέπρησαν² ὑπὸ ἀτασθαλίας, δίκην
 15 ἐδίδοσαν κακῶς σκηνοῦντες. ἐντεῦθεν ἐπεμφαν νυκτὸς Δημοκράτην Τημνίτην ἄνδρα δόντες ἐπὶ τὰ ὄρη ἔνθα ἔφασαν οἱ ἀποσκεδαννύμενοι καθορᾶν τὰ πυρά· οὗτος γὰρ ἐδόκει καὶ πρότερον πολλὰ ἤδη ἀληθεύσαι τοιαῦτα, τὰ ὄντα τε ὡς ὄντα καὶ
 16 τὰ μὴ ὄντα ὡς οὐκ ὄντα. πορευθεῖς δὲ τὰ μὲν πυρὰ οὐκ ἔφη ἰδεῖν, ἄνδρα δὲ συλλαβῶν ἦκεν ἄγων ἔχοντα τόξον Περσικὸν καὶ φαρέτραν καὶ
 17 σάγαριν οἴανπερ καὶ Ἀμαζόνες ἔχουσιν. ἐρωτώμενος δὲ ποδαπὸς εἶη Πέρσης μὲν ἔφη εἶναι, πορεύεσθαι δ' ἀπὸ τοῦ Τιριβάζου στρατοπέδου, ὅπως ἐπιτήδεια λάβοι. οἱ δὲ ἠρώτων αὐτὸν τὸ στρατεύμα ὅποσον τ' εἶη καὶ ἐπὶ τίνι συνειλεγμένον.
 18 ὁ δὲ εἶπεν ὅτι Τιριβάζος εἶη ἔχων τήν τε αὐτοῦ δύναμιν καὶ μισθοφόρους Χάλυβας καὶ Ταόχους· παρεσκευάσθαι δὲ αὐτὸν ἔφη ὡς ἐπὶ τῇ ὑπερβολῇ τοῦ ὄρους ἐν τοῖς στενοῖς ἦπερ μοναχῇ εἶη πορεία, ἐνταῦθα ἐπιθησόμενον τοῖς Ἕλλησιν.
 19 Ἀκούσασι τοῖς στρατηγοῖς ταῦτα ἔδοξε τὸ στρατεύμα συναγαγεῖν· καὶ εὐθὺς φύλακας καταλιπόντες καὶ στρατηγὸν ἐπὶ τοῖς μένουσι Σοφαίνετον Στυμφάλιον ἐπορεύοντο ἔχοντες ἡγεμόνα τὸν
 20 ἀλόντα ἄνθρωπον. ἐπειδὴ δὲ ὑπερέβαλλον τὰ ὄρη, οἱ πελτασταὶ προϊόντες καὶ κατιδόντες τὸ στρατόπεδον οὐκ ἔμειναν τοὺς ὀπίστας, ἀλλ'

¹ ὅτε τὸ Mar., following MS. D: the other MSS. and Gem. omit.

² ἐνέπρησαν MSS., Mar.: ἐμπρήσαντες Gem. with MS. D.

and provisions, and all those who just before had wantonly burned the houses they were leaving, paid the penalty by getting poor quarters. After this they sent Democrates of Temnus with a body of troops during the night to the mountains where the stragglers said they had seen the fires; for this Democrates enjoyed the reputation of having made accurate reports in many previous cases of the same sort, describing what were facts as facts and what were fictions as fictions. Upon his return he stated that he had not seen the fires; he had captured, however, and brought back with him a man with a Persian bow and quiver and a battle-axe of the same sort that Amazons carry. When this man was asked from what country he came, he said he was a Persian and was on his way from the camp of Tiribazus to get provisions. They asked him how large Tiribazus' army was and for what purpose it had been gathered. He replied that it was Tiribazus with his own forces and Chalybian and Taochian mercenaries, and that he had made his preparations with the idea of taking a position upon the mountain pass, in the defile through which ran the only road, and there attacking the Greeks.

When the generals heard these statements, they resolved to bring the troops together into a camp; then, after leaving a garrison and Sophanetus the Stymphalian as general in command of those who stayed behind, they set out at once, with the captured man as guide. As soon as they had begun to cross the mountains, the peltasts, pushing on ahead and descrying the enemy's camp, did not wait for the hoplites, but raised a shout and charged upon

21 ἀνακραγόντες ἔθεον ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον. οἱ δὲ
 βάρβαροι ἀκούσαντες τὸν θόρυβον οὐχ ὑπέμειναν,
 ἀλλ' ἔφευγον· ὁμῶς δὲ καὶ ἀπέθανον τινες τῶν
 βαρβάρων καὶ ἵπποι ἐάλωσαν εἰς εἴκοσι καὶ ἡ
 σκηνὴ ἢ Τιριβάζου ἐάλω καὶ ἐν αὐτῇ κλῖναι ἀργυ-
 ρόποδες καὶ ἐκπώματα καὶ οἱ ἀρτοκόποι καὶ οἱ
 22 οἰνοχόοι φάσκοντες εἶναι. ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἐπύθοντο
 ταῦτα οἱ τῶν ὀπλιτῶν στρατηγοί, ἐδόκει αὐτοῖς
 ἀπιέναι τὴν ταχίστην ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον, μὴ τις
 ἐπίθεσις γένοιτο τοῖς καταλελειμμένοις. καὶ
 εὐθὺς ἀνακαλεσάμενοι τῇ σάλπιγγι ἀπήσαν, καὶ
 ἀφίκοντο αὐθημερὸν ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον.

V. Τῇ δ' ὑστεραία ἐδόκει πορευτέον εἶναι ὅπη
 δύναιντο τάχιστα πρὶν ἢ συλλεγῆναι τὸ στράτευμα
 πάλιν καὶ καταλαβεῖν τὰ στενά. συσκευασάμενοι
 δ' εὐθὺς ἐπορεύοντο διὰ χιόνος πολλῆς ἠγεμόνας
 ἔχοντες πολλούς· καὶ αὐθημερὸν ὑπερβαλόντες
 τὸ ἄκρον ἐφ' ᾧ ἔμελλεν ἐπιτίθεσθαι Τιριβάζος
 2 κατεστρατοπεδεύσαντο. ἐντεῦθεν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν
 σταθμοὺς ἐρήμους τρεῖς παρασάγγας πεντεκαίδεκα
 ἐπὶ τὸν Εὐφράτην ποταμὸν, καὶ διέβαινον αὐτὸν
 βρεχόμενοι πρὸς τὸν ὀμφαλόν. ἐλέγοντο δ' οὐδ'
 αἱ πηγαὶ πρόσω εἶναι.

3 Ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύοντο διὰ χιόνος πολλῆς καὶ
 πεδίου σταθμοὺς τρεῖς παρασάγγας¹ τρεῖς καὶ
 δέκα. ὁ δὲ τρίτος ἐγένετο χαλεπὸς καὶ ἄνεμος
 βορρᾶς ἐναντίος ἔπνει παντάπασιν ἀποκαίων
 4 πάντα καὶ πηγνύς τοὺς ἀνθρώπους. ἐνθα δὲ τῶν
 μάντεών τις εἶπε σφαγιάσασθαι τῷ ἀνέμῳ, καὶ

¹ τρεῖς παρασάγγας added by Gem.: σταθμοὺς τρισκαίδεκα C₁,
 while C₂ adds in margin παρασάγγας πέντε καὶ: Mar. reads

the camp. When the barbarians heard the uproar, they did not wait to offer resistance, but took to flight; nevertheless, some of them were killed, about twenty horses were captured, and likewise Tiribazus' tent, with silver-footed couches in it, and drinking cups, and people who said they were his bakers and his cup-bearers. As soon as the generals of the hoplites learned of these results, they deemed it best to go back as speedily as possible to their own camp, lest some attack might be made upon those they had left behind. So they immediately sounded the recall with the trumpet and set out on the return journey, arriving at their camp on the same day.

V. On the next day it seemed that they must continue their march with all speed, before the hostile army could be gathered together again and take possession of the narrow passes. They accordingly packed up and set out at once, marching through deep snow with a large number of guides; and before the day ended they crossed over the summit at which Tiribazus was intending to attack them and went into camp. From there they marched three stages through desert country, fifteen parasangs, to the Euphrates river, and crossed it, wetting themselves up to the navel; and report was that the sources of the river were not far distant.

From there they marched over a plain and through deep snow three stages, thirteen parasangs. The third stage proved a hard one, with the north wind, which blew full in their faces, absolutely blasting everything and freezing the men. Then it was that one of the soothsayers bade them offer sacrifice to

σταθμοὺς τρεῖς παρασάγγας † πεντεκαίδεκα †: Krüger στ. τρ.
 παρ. δέκα.

σφαγιάζεται· και πᾶσι δὴ περιφανῶς ἔδοξεν
 λῆξαι τὸ χαλεπὸν τοῦ πνεύματος. ἦν δὲ τῆς
 χιόνος τὸ βάθος ὀργυά· ὥστε και τῶν ὑποζυγίων
 και τῶν ἀνδραπόδων πολλὰ ἀπόλετο και τῶν
 5 στρατιωτῶν ὡς τριάκοντα. διεγένοντο δὲ τὴν
 νύκτα πῦρ καίοντες· ξύλα δ' ἦν ἐν τῷ σταθμῷ
 πολλά. οἱ δὲ ὄψε προσιόντες ξύλα οὐκ εἶχον· οἱ
 οὖν πάλαι ἦκοντες και πῦρ καίοντες οὐ προσίεσαν
 πρὸς τὸ πῦρ τοὺς ὀψίζοντας, εἰ μὴ μεταδοῖεν αὐτοῖς
 6 πυροὺς ἢ ἄλλο εἴ τι ἔχοιεν βρωτόν. ἔνθα δὲ
 μετεδίδοσαν ἀλλήλοις ὧν εἶχον ἕκαστοι. ἔνθα
 δὲ τὸ πῦρ ἐκαίετο, διατηκομένης τῆς χιόνος βόθροι
 ἐγένοντο μεγάλοι ἔστε ἐπὶ τὸ δάπεδον· οὐδὲ παρῆν
 μετρεῖν τὸ βάθος τῆς χιόνος.
 7 Ἐντεῦθεν δὲ τὴν ἐπιούσαν ἡμέραν ὄλην ἐπορεύ-
 οντο διὰ χιόνος, και πολλοὶ τῶν ἀνθρώπων ἐβου-
 λιμιάσαν. Ξενοφῶν δ' ὀπισθοφυλακῶν και κατα-
 λαμβάνων τοὺς πίπτοντας τῶν ἀνθρώπων ἠγνόει
 8 ὅτι τὸ πάθος εἶη. ἐπειδὴ δὲ εἶπέ τις αὐτῷ τῶν
 ἐμπείρων ὅτι σαφῶς βουλιμιῶσι κἄν τι φάγωσιν
 ἀναστήσονται, περιῶν περὶ τὰ ὑποζύγια, εἴ πού
 τι ὀρώη βρωτόν, διεδίδου και διέπεμπε διδόντας
 τοὺς δυναμένους παρατρέχειν¹ τοῖς βουλιμιῶσιν.
 9 ἐπειδὴ δὲ τι ἐμφάγοιεν, ἀνίσταντο και ἐπορεύοντο.
 Πορευομένων δὲ Χειρίσοφος μὲν ἀμφὶ κνέφας

¹ παρατρέχειν MSS., Gem. : περιτρέχειν Mar.

the wind, and sacrifice was offered; and it seemed quite clear to everybody that the violence of the wind abated. But the depth of the snow was a fathom, so that many of the baggage animals and slaves perished, and about thirty of the soldiers. They got through that night by keeping up fires, for there was wood in abundance at the halting-place; those who came up late, however, had none, and consequently the men who had arrived early and were keeping a fire would not allow the late comers to get near it unless they gave them a share of their wheat or anything else they had that was edible. So then they shared with one another what they severally possessed. Now where the fire was kindled the snow melted, and the result was great holes clear down to the ground; and there, of course, one could measure the depth of the snow.

From there they marched all the following day through snow, and many of the men fell ill with hunger-faintness. And Xenophon, with the rear-guard, as he came upon the men who were falling by the way, did not know what the trouble was. But as soon as a person who was acquainted with the disease had told him that they manifestly had hunger-faintness, and if they were given something to eat would be able to get up, he went around among the baggage animals, and wherever he saw anything that was edible, he would distribute it among the sick men, or send hither and thither people who had the strength to run along the lines, to give it to them. And when they had eaten something, they would get up and continue the march.

As the army went on, Cheirisophus reached a

- πρὸς κώμην ἀφικνεῖται, καὶ ὑδροφορούσας ἐκ τῆς κώμης πρὸς τῇ κρήνῃ γυναῖκας καὶ κόρας κατα-
- 10 λαμβάνει ἔμπροσθεν τοῦ ἐρύματος. αὐται ἠρώτων αὐτοὺς τίνας εἶεν. ὁ δ' ἑρμηνεὺς εἶπε περσιστὶ ὅτι παρὰ βασιλέως πορεύονται πρὸς τὸν σατράπην. αἱ δὲ ἀπεκρίναντο ὅτι οὐκ ἐνταῦθα εἶη, ἀλλ' ἀπέχει ὅσον παρασάγγην. οἱ δ', ἐπεὶ ὄψε ἦν, πρὸς τὸν κώμαρχον συνεισέρχονται εἰς τὸ ἔρυμα
- 11 σὺν ταῖς ὑδροφόροις. Χειρίσοφος μὲν οὖν καὶ ὅσοι ἐδυνήθησαν τοῦ στρατεύματος ἐνταῦθα ἐστρατοπεδεύσαντο, τῶν δ' ἄλλων στρατιωτῶν οἱ μὴ δυνάμενοι διατελέσαι τὴν ὁδὸν ἐνυκτέρευσαν ἄσιτοι καὶ ἀνευ πυρός· καὶ ἐνταῦθά τινες ἀπώλοντο τῶν στρατιωτῶν.
- 12 Ἐφείποντο δὲ τῶν πολεμίων συνειλεγμένοι τινὲς καὶ τὰ μὴ δυνάμενα τῶν ὑποζυγίων ἤρπαζον καὶ ἀλλήλοις ἐμάχοντο περὶ αὐτῶν. ἐλείποντο δὲ τῶν στρατιωτῶν οἳ τε διεφθαρμένοι ὑπὸ τῆς χιόνος τοὺς ὀφθαλμοὺς οἳ τε ὑπὸ τοῦ ψύχους
- 13 τοὺς δακτύλους τῶν ποδῶν ἀποσεσηπότες. ἦν δὲ τοῖς μὲν ὀφθαλμοῖς ἐπικούρημα τῆς χιόνος εἴ τις μέλαν τι ἔχων πρὸ τῶν ὀφθαλμῶν ἐπορεύετο, τῶν δὲ ποδῶν εἴ τις κινοῖτο καὶ μηδέποτε ἤσυχίαν
- 14 ἔχοι καὶ εἰς τὴν νύκτα ὑπολύοιτο· ὅσοι δὲ ὑποδεδεμένοι ἐκοιμῶντο, εἰσεδύοντο εἰς τοὺς πόδας οἱ ἰμάντες καὶ τὰ ὑποδήματα περιεπήγγυνντο· καὶ γὰρ ἦσαν, ἐπειδὴ ἐπέλιπε τὰ ἀρχαῖα ὑποδήματα, καρβάτιναι πεποιημέναι ἐκ τῶν νεοδάρτων βοῶν.
- 15 Διὰ τὰς τοιαύτας οὖν ἀνάγκας ὑπελείποντό τινες τῶν στρατιωτῶν· καὶ ἰδόντες μέλαν τι χωρίου

village about dusk, and found at the spring outside the wall women and girls who had come from the village to fetch water. They asked the Greeks who they were, and the interpreter replied in Persian that they were on their way from the King to the satrap. The women answered that he was not there, but about a parasang away. Then, inasmuch as it was late, the Greeks accompanied the water-carriers within the wall to visit the village chief. So it was that Cheirisophus and all the troops who could muster strength enough to reach the village, went into quarters there, but such of the others as were unable to complete the journey spent the night in the open without food or fire; and in this way some of the soldiers perished.

Meanwhile they were being followed by the enemy, some of whom had banded together and were seizing such of the pack animals as lacked the strength to go on, and fighting over them with one another. Some of the soldiers likewise were falling behind—those whose eyes had been blinded by the snow, or whose toes had rotted off by reason of the cold. It was a protection to the eyes against the snow if a man marched with something black in front of them, and a protection to the feet if one kept moving and never quiet, and if he took off his shoes for the night; but in all cases where men slept with their shoes on, the straps sunk into their flesh and the shoes froze on their feet; for what they were wearing, since their old shoes had given out, were brogues made of freshly flayed ox-hides.

It was under compulsion of such difficulties that some of the soldiers were falling behind; and espying a spot that was dark because the snow

διὰ τὸ ἐκλελοιπέναι αὐτόθι τὴν χιόνα ἤκαζον
 τετηκέσαι· καὶ ἐτετήκει διὰ κρήνην τινὰ ἢ πλησίον
 ἦν ἀτμίζουσα ἐν νάπη· ἐνταῦθ' ἐκτραπόμενοι
 16 ἐκάθηντο καὶ οὐκ ἔφασαν πορεύεσθαι. ὁ δὲ
 Ξενοφῶν ἔχων ὀπισθοφύλακας ὡς ἦσθετο, ἐδεῖτο
 αὐτῶν πάσῃ τέχνῃ καὶ μηχανῇ μὴ ἀπολείπεσθαι,
 λέγων ὅτι ἔπονται πολλοὶ πολέμοιοι συνειλεγμένοι,
 καὶ τελευτῶν ἐχαλέπαιεν. οἱ δὲ σφάττειν ἐκέ-
 17 λεινον· οὐ γὰρ ἂν δύνασθαι πορευθῆναι. ἐνταῦθα
 ἔδοξε κράτιστον εἶναι τοὺς ἐπομένους πολεμίους
 φοβῆσαι, εἴ τις δύναιτο, μὴ ἐπίοιεν τοῖς κάμνουσι.
 καὶ ἦν μὲν σκότος ἤδη, οἱ δὲ προσῆσαν πολλῶ
 18 θορύβῳ ἀμφὶ ὧν εἶχον διαφερόμενοι. ἔνθα δὴ οἱ
 ὀπισθοφύλακες ἄτε ὑγιαίνοντες ἐξαναστάντες
 ἔδραμον εἰς τοὺς πολεμίους· οἱ δὲ κάμνοντες ἀνα-
 κραγόντες ὅσον ἐδύναντο μέγιστον τὰς ἀσπίδας
 πρὸς τὰ δόρατα ἐκρουσαν. οἱ δὲ πολέμοιοι δει-
 σαντες ἤκαν αὐτοὺς κατὰ τῆς χιόνος εἰς τὴν
 νάπην, καὶ οὐδεὶς ἔτι οὐδαμοῦ ἐφθέγγετο.
 19 Καὶ Ξενοφῶν μὲν καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ εἰπόντες
 τοῖς ἀσθενούσιν ὅτι τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ ἤξουσὶ τινες ἐπ'
 αὐτούς, πορευόμενοι πρὶν τέτταρα στάδια διελ-
 θεῖν ἐντυγχάνουσιν ἐν τῇ ὁδῷ ἀναπανομένοις
 ἐπὶ τῆς χιόνος τοῖς στρατιώταις ἐγκεκαλυμμένοις,
 καὶ οὐδὲ φυλακὴ οὐδεμία καθειστήκει· καὶ ἀν-
 ἴστασαν αὐτούς. οἱ δ' ἔλεγον ὅτι οἱ ἔμπροσθεν
 20 οὐχ ὑποχωροῖεν. ὁ δὲ παριῶν καὶ παραπέμπων
 τῶν πελταστῶν τοὺς ἰσχυροτάτους ἐκέλευε σκέ-
 ψασθαι τί εἴη τὸ κωλύον. οἱ δὲ ἀπήγγελλον ὅτι

just there had disappeared, they surmised that it
 had melted; and in fact it had melted, on account
 of a spring which was near by, steaming in a dell;
 here they turned aside and sat down, refusing to go
 any farther. But when Xenophon with some of the
 rearguard observed them, he begged them by all
 manner of means not to be left behind, telling them
 that a large body of the enemy had gathered and
 were pursuing, and finally he became angry. They
 told him, however, to kill them, for they could not
 go on. In this situation it seemed to be best to
 frighten the pursuing enemy, if they could, in order
 to prevent their falling upon the sick men. It was
 dark by this time, and the enemy were coming on
 with a great uproar, quarrelling over the booty they
 had. Then the men of the rearguard, since they
 were sound and well, started up and charged upon
 the enemy, while the invalids raised as big a shout
 as they could and clashed their shields against their
 spears. And the enemy, seized with fear, threw
 themselves down over the snow into the dell, and
 not a sound was heard from them afterwards.

Thereupon Xenophon and his men, after telling
 the invalids that on the next day people would come
 back after them, continued their march, but before
 they had gone four stadia they came upon their
 comrades lying down in the road upon the snow,
 wrapped up in their cloaks, and without so much
 as a single guard posted. They tried to get them
 up, but the men said that the troops in front would
 not make way for them. Xenophon accordingly
 passed along and, sending forward the strongest of
 the peltasts, directed them to see what the hindrance
 was. They reported back that the whole army was

- 21 ὅλον οὕτως ἀναπαύοιτο τὸ στράτευμα. ἐνταῦθα καὶ οἱ περὶ Ξενοφῶντα ἠϋλίσθησαν αὐτοῦ ἀνευ πυρὸς καὶ ἀδειπνοί, φυλακὰς οἷας ἐδύναντο καταστήσασθαι. ἐπεὶ δὲ πρὸς ἡμέραν ἦν, ὁ μὲν Ξενοφῶν πέμψας πρὸς τοὺς ἀσθενοῦντας τοὺς νεωτάτους ἀναστήσαντας ἐκέλευεν ἀναγκάζειν προϊέναι.
- 22 Ἐν δὲ τούτῳ Χειρίσοφος πέμπει τῶν ἐκ τῆς κώμης σκεψομένους πῶς ἔχοιεν οἱ τελευταῖοι. οἱ δὲ ἄσμενοι ἰδόντες τοὺς μὲν ἀσθενοῦντας τούτοις παρέδωσαν κομίζειν ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον, αὐτοὶ δὲ ἐπορεύοντο, καὶ πρὶν εἴκοσι στάδια διεληλυθέναι ἦσαν πρὸς τῇ κώμῃ ἔνθα Χειρίσοφος ἠϋλίζετο.
- 23 ἐπεὶ δὲ συνεγένοντο ἀλλήλοις, ἔδοξε κατὰ τὰς κώμας ἀσφαλὲς εἶναι τὰς τάξεις σκηνοῦν. καὶ Χειρίσοφος μὲν αὐτοῦ ἔμενευ, οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι διαλαχόντες ἅς ἐώρων κώμας ἐπορεύοντο ἕκαστοι τοὺς
- 24 ἑαυτῶν ἔχοντες. ἔνθα δὲ Πολυκράτης Ἀθηναῖος λοχαγὸς ἐκέλευσεν ἀφιέναι ἑαυτὸν καὶ λαβὼν τοὺς εὐζώνους, θέων ἐπὶ τὴν κώμην ἣν εἰλήχει Ξενοφῶν καταλαμβάνει πάντας ἔνδον τοὺς κωμήτας καὶ τὸν κωμάρχον, καὶ πῶλους εἰς δασμὸν βασιλεῖ τρεφομένους ἑπτακαίδεκα, καὶ τὴν θυγατέρα τοῦ κωμάρχου ἐνάτην ἡμέραν ἡγεγαμημένην ὃ δ' ἀνὴρ αὐτῆς λαγῶς ὄχετο θηράσων καὶ οὐχ ἑάλω ἐν τῇ κώμῃ.
- 25 Αἱ δ' αἰκίαι ἦσαν κατάγειοι, τὸ μὲν στόμα ὡσπερ φρέατος, κάτω δ' εὐρείαι· αἱ δὲ εἴσοδοι τοῖς μὲν ὑποζυγίοις ὀρυκταί, οἱ δὲ ἄνθρωποι κατέ-

resting in this way. Thereupon Xenophon also and his party bivouacked where they were, without a fire and without dinner, after stationing such guards as they could. When it came toward morning, Xenophon sent the youngest of his troops to the sick men with orders to make them get up and force them to proceed.

Meanwhile Cheirisophus sent some of the troops quartered in the village to find out how the people at the rear were faring. Xenophon's party were glad enough to see them, and turned over the invalids to them to carry on to the camp, while they themselves continued their journey, and before completing twenty stadia reached the village where Cheirisophus was quartered. When all had come together, the generals decided that it was safe for the different divisions of the army to take up quarters in the several villages. Cheirisophus accordingly remained where he was, while the other generals distributed by lot the villages within sight, and all set off with their respective commands. Then it was that Polycrates, an Athenian captain, asked to be detached from his division; and with an active group of men he ran to the village which had fallen to Xenophon's lot and there took possession of all the villagers, the village chief included, seventeen colts which were being reared for tribute to the King, and the village chief's daughter, who had been married eight days before; her husband, however, was off hunting hares, and was not taken in the village.

The houses here were underground, with a mouth like that of a well, but spacious below; and while entrances were tunnelled down for the beasts of burden, the human inhabitants descended by a

- βαινον ἐπὶ κλίμακος. ἐν δὲ ταῖς οἰκίαις ἦσαν αἶγες, οἰες, βόες, ὄρνιθες, καὶ τὰ ἔκγονα τούτων·
- 26 τὰ δὲ κτήνη πάντα χιλῶ ἔνδον ἐτρέφοντο. ἦσαν δὲ καὶ πυροὶ καὶ κριθαὶ καὶ ὄσπρια καὶ οἶνος κριθίνος ἐν κρατήρσιν. ἐνήσαν δὲ καὶ αὐταὶ αἱ κριθαὶ ἰσοχειλεῖς, καὶ κάλαμοι ἐνέκειντο, οἱ μὲν
- 27 μείζους οἱ δὲ ἐλάττους, γόνατα οὐκ ἔχοντες· τούτους ἔδει ὅποτε τις διψῶν λαβύοντα εἰς τὸ στόμα μύζειν. καὶ πάνυ ἄκρατος ἦν, εἰ μὴ τις ὕδωρ ἐπιχέοι· καὶ πάνυ ἠδὺ συμμαθόντι τὸ πῶμα ἦν.
- 28 Ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν τὸν ἄρχοντα τῆς κώμης ταύτης σύνδειπνον ἐποίησατο καὶ θαρρεῖν αὐτὸν ἐκέλευε λέγων ὅτι οὔτε τῶν τέκνων στερήσοιτο τὴν τε οἰκίαν αὐτοῦ ἀντεμπλήσαντες τῶν ἐπιτηδείων ἀπίασιν, ἢ ἀγαθὸν τι τῷ στρατεύματι ἐξηγησάμενος φαίνεται ἔστ' ἂν ἐν ἄλλῳ ἔθνει γένωνται.
- 29 ὁ δὲ ταῦτα ὑπισχνεῖτο, καὶ φιλοφρονούμενος οἶνον ἔφρασεν ἔνθα ἦν κατορωρυγμένος. ταύτην μὲν τὴν νύκτα διασκεπήσαντες οὕτως ἐκοιμήθησαν ἐν πᾶσιν ἀφθόνοις πάντες οἱ στρατιῶται, ἐν φυλακῇ ἔχοντες τὸν κώμαρχον καὶ τὰ τέκνα αὐτοῦ ὁμοῦ ἐν ὀφθαλμοῖς.
- 30 Τῇ δ' ἐπιούσῃ ἡμέρᾳ Ξενοφῶν λαβὼν τὸν κώμαρχον πρὸς Χειρίσοφον ἐπορεύετο· ὅπου δὲ παρῖοι κώμην, ἐτρέπετο πρὸς τοὺς ἐν ταῖς κώμαις καὶ κατελάμβανε πανταχοῦ εὐωχουμένους καὶ εὐθυμουμένους, καὶ οὐδαμόθεν ἀφίεσαν πρὶν
- 31 παραθεῖναι αὐτοῖς ἄριστον· οὐκ ἦν δ' ὅπου οὐ παρετίθεσαν ἐπὶ τὴν αὐτὴν τράπεζαν κρέα ἄρνεια,

¹ Such underground villages are still to be found in Modern Armenia.

ladder.¹ In the houses were goats, sheep, cattle, fowls, and their young; and all the animals were reared and took their fodder there in the houses. Here were also wheat, barley, and beans, and barley-wine in large bowls. Floating on the top of this drink were the barley-grains and in it were straws, some larger and others smaller, without joints; and when one was thirsty, he had to take these straws into his mouth and suck. It was an extremely strong drink unless one diluted it with water, and extremely good when one was used to it.

Xenophon made the chief man of this village his guest at dinner and bade him be of good cheer, telling him that he should not be deprived of his children, and that before they went away they would fill his house with provisions by way of reward in case he should prove to have given the army good guidance until they should reach another tribe. He promised to do this, and in a spirit of kindness told them where there was wine buried. For that night, then, all Xenophon's soldiers, in this village where they were thus separately quartered, went to bed amid an abundance of everything, keeping the village chief under guard and his children all together within sight.

On the next day Xenophon took the village chief and set out to visit Cheirisophus; whenever he passed a village, he would turn aside to visit the troops quartered there, and everywhere he found them faring sumptuously and in fine spirits; there was no place from which the men would let them go until they had served them a luncheon, and no place where they did not serve on the same table lamb,

32 ἐρίφεια, χοίρεια, μόσχεια, ὀρνίθεια, σὺν πολλοῖς
 ἀρτοῖς τοῖς μὲν πυρίνοις τοῖς δὲ κριθίνοις. ὅποτε
 δέ τις φιλοφρονούμενός τῳ βούλοιτο προπιεῖν,
 εἶλκεν ἐπὶ τὸν κρατῆρα, ἔνθεν ἐπικύψαντα ἔδει
 ῥοφούντα πίνειν ὡς περ βούν. καὶ τῷ κωμάρχῳ
 ἐδίδοσαν λαμβάνειν ὅ τι βούλοιτο. ὁ δὲ ἄλλο
 μὲν οὐδὲν ἐδέχετο, ὅπου δέ τινα τῶν συγγενῶν
 33 ἴδοι, πρὸς ἑαυτὸν αἰεὶ ἐλάμβανεν. ἐπεὶ δ' ἦλθον
 πρὸς Χειρίσοφον, κατελάμβανον κάκεινους σκη-
 νοῦντας ἐστεφανωμένους τοῦ ξηροῦ χιλοῦ στε-
 φάνοις, καὶ διακονοῦντας Ἀρμενίους παῖδας σὺν
 ταῖς βαρβαρικαῖς στολαῖς· τοῖς δὲ παισὶν ἐδεί-
 κνυσαν ὡς περ ἐνεοῖς ὅ τι δέοι ποιεῖν.
 34 Ἐπεὶ δ' ἀλλήλους ἐφιλοφρονήσαντο Χειρίσοφος
 καὶ Ξενοφῶν, κοινῇ δὴ ἀνηρώτων τὸν κωμάρχον
 διὰ τοῦ περσίζοντος ἑρμηνέως τίς εἶη ἡ χώρα. ὁ
 δ' ἔλεγεν ὅτι Ἀρμενία. καὶ πάλιν ἠρώτων τίνοι
 οἱ ἵπποι τρέφονται. ὁ δ' ἔλεγεν ὅτι βασιλεῖ
 35 δασμός· τὴν δὲ πλησίον χώραν ἔφη εἶναι Χάλυ-
 βασ, καὶ τὴν ὁδὸν ἔφραζεν ἢ εἶη. καὶ αὐτὸν
 τότε μὲν ᾤχετο ἄγων ὁ Ξενοφῶν πρὸς τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ
 οἰκέτας, καὶ ἵππον ὃν εἰλήφει παλαιότερον δίδωσι
 τῷ κωμάρχῳ ἀναθρέψαντι καταθῦσαι, ὅτι ἤκουεν
 αὐτὸν ἱερὸν εἶναι τοῦ Ἥλιου, δεδιὼς μὴ ἀποθάνῃ·
 ἐκεκᾶκωτο γὰρ ὑπὸ τῆς πορείας· αὐτὸς δὲ τῶν
 πῶλων λαμβάνει, καὶ τῶν ἄλλων λοχαγῶν¹ ἔδω-
 36 κεν ἐκάστῳ πῶλον. ἦσαν δ' οἱ ταύτη ἵπποι
 μείονες μὲν τῶν Περσικῶν, θυμοειδέστεροι δὲ

¹ Before λοχαγῶν the MSS. have στρατηγῶν καὶ: Gem. brackets, following Matthias: Schenkl deletes καὶ λοχαγῶν.

¹ See § 24 above.

kid, pork, veal, and poultry, together with many loaves of bread, some of wheat and some of barley. And whenever a man wanted out of good fellowship to drink another's health, he would draw him to the bowl, and then one had to stoop over and drink from it, sucking like an ox. To the village chief they offered the privilege of taking whatever he wanted. He declined for the most part to accept anything, but whenever he caught sight of one of his kinsmen, he would always take the man to his side. Again, when they reached Cheirisophus, they found his troops also feasting in their quarters, crowned with wreaths of hay and served by Armenian boys in their strange, foreign dress; and they were showing the boys what to do by signs, as if they were deaf and dumb.

As soon as Cheirisophus and Xenophon had exchanged warm greetings, they together asked the village chief, through their Persian-speaking interpreter, what this land was. He replied that it was Armenia. They asked him again for whom the horses were being reared. He answered, as tribute for the King; and he said that the neighbouring country was that of the Chalybians, and told them where the road was. Then Xenophon took the village chief back for the time to his own household, and gave him a horse that he had got when it was rather old, to fatten up and sacrifice, for he understood that it was sacred to the Sun-god. He did this out of fear that the horse might die, for it had been injured by the journey; and he took for himself one of the colts¹ and gave his captains also a colt apiece. The horses of this region were smaller than the Persian horses, but very much more

πολύ. ἐνταῦθα δὴ καὶ διδάσκει ὁ κωμάρχης περι-
τοὺς πόδας τῶν ἵππων καὶ τῶν ὑποζυγίων σακία
περιελεῖν, ὅταν διὰ τῆς χιόνος ἄγωσιν· ἄνευ
γὰρ τῶν σακίων κατεδύνοντο μέχρι τῆς γαστροῦ.

- VI. Ἐπεὶ δ' ἡμέρα ἦν ὀγδόη, τὸν μὲν ἡγεμόνα
παραδίδωσι Χειρισόφῳ, τοὺς δὲ οἰκέτας κατα-
λείπει¹ πλὴν τοῦ υἱοῦ τοῦ ἄρτι ἠβάσκοντος.
τοῦτον δὲ Πλεισθένην Ἀμφιπολίτην δίδωσι φυλάτ-
τειν, ὅπως εἰ καλῶς ἡγήσοιτο, ἔχων καὶ τοῦτον
ἀπίοι. καὶ εἰς τὴν οἰκίαν αὐτοῦ εἰσεφόρησαν ὡς
ἐδύναντο πλείστα, καὶ ἀναζεύξαντες ἐπορεύοντο.
2 ἡγεῖτο δ' αὐτοῖς ὁ κωμάρχης λελυμένος διὰ χιόνος·
καὶ ἤδη τε ἦν ἐν τῷ τρίτῳ σταθμῷ, καὶ Χειρί-
σοφος αὐτῷ ἐχαλεπάνθη ὅτι οὐκ εἰς κώμας ἤγα-
γεν. ὁ δ' ἔλεγεν ὅτι οὐκ εἶεν ἐν τῷ τόπῳ τούτῳ.
3 ὁ δὲ Χειρισόφος αὐτὸν ἔπαισεν, ἔδῃσε δ' οὐ. ἐκ
δὲ τούτου ἐκείνος τῆς νυκτὸς ἀποδρὰς ὄχρητο κα-
ταλιπὼν τὸν υἱόν. τοῦτό γε δὴ Χειρισόφῳ καὶ
Ξενοφῶντι μόνον διάφορον ἐν τῇ πορείᾳ ἐγένετο,
ἢ τοῦ ἡγεμόνος κάκωσις καὶ ἀμέλεια. Πλεισθένης
δὲ ἠράσθη τοῦ παιδὸς καὶ οἴκαδε κομίσας πιστο-
τάτῳ ἐχρήτητο.
4 Μετὰ τοῦτο ἐπορεύθησαν ἐπτὰ σταθμοὺς ἀνὰ
πέντε παρασάγγας τῆς ἡμέρας παρὰ τὸν Φᾶσιν
5 ποταμόν, εὖρος πλεθριαῖον· ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύ-
θησαν σταθμοὺς δύο παρασάγγας δέκα· ἐπὶ δὲ
τῇ εἰς τὸ πεδίου ὑπερβολῇ ἀπήντησαν αὐτοῖς

¹ After καταλείπει the MSS. have τῷ κωμάρχη: Gem. brackets, following Rehdantz.

¹ See § 28 above

² Op. ii. 1.

spirited. It was here also that the village chief instructed them about wrapping small bags round the feet of their horses and beasts of burden when they were going through the snow; for without these bags the animals would sink in up to their bellies.

VI. When seven days had passed, Xenophon gave over the village chief to Cheirisophus to act as guide, leaving his family behind with the exception of his son, who was just coming into the prime of youth; this son he gave into the keeping of Pleisthenes of Amphipolis, in order that the father, if he should serve them well as guide, might take him also back with him. Then, after putting into his house as large a quantity of supplies as they could,¹ they broke camp and set out upon the march. The village chief, who was not bound,² guided their way through the snow; but by the time they were on the third stage Cheirisophus got angry with him for not leading them to villages. He replied that there were none in this region. Then Cheirisophus struck him, but neglected to bind him. The result was that he stole away during the night, leaving his son behind. And this was the only cause of difference between Cheirisophus and Xenophon during the course of the march, this ill-treatment of the guide and carelessness in not guarding him. Pleisthenes, however, fell in love with the boy, took him home with him, and found him absolutely faithful.

After this they marched seven stages at the rate of five parasangs a day to the Phasis river, which was a plethrum in width. From there they marched two stages, ten parasangs; and on the pass leading over to the plain they encountered a body of

- 6 Χάλυβες καὶ Τάοχοι καὶ Φασιανοί. Χειρίσοφος δ' ἐπεὶ κατείδε τοὺς πολεμίους ἐπὶ τῇ ὑπερβολῇ, ἐπαύσατο πορευόμενος, ἀπέχων εἰς τριάκοντα σταδίους, ἵνα μὴ κατὰ κέρας ἄγων πλησιάσῃ τοῖς πολεμίσι· παρήγγειλε δὲ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις παράγειν τοὺς λόχους, ὅπως ἐπὶ φάλαγγος γέ-
 7 νοιτο τὸ στράτευμα. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦλθον οἱ ὀπισθοφύλακες, συνεκάλεσε στρατηγούς καὶ λοχαγούς, καὶ ἔλεξεν ὧδε. Οἱ μὲν πολέμοι, ὡς ὁρᾶτε, κατέχουσι τὰς ὑπερβολὰς τοῦ ὄρους· ὧρα δὲ βουλευ-
 8 εσθαι ὅπως ὡς κάλλιστα ἀγωνιούμεθα. ἐμοὶ μὲν οὖν δοκεῖ παραγγεῖλαι μὲν ἀριστοποιεῖσθαι τοῖς στρατιώταις, ἡμᾶς δὲ βουλευέσθαι εἴτε τήμε-
 9 ρον εἴτε αὐριον δοκεῖ ὑπερβάλλειν τὸ ὄρος. Ἐμοὶ δέ γε, ἔφη ὁ Κλεάνωρ, δοκεῖ, ἐπὶν τάχιστα ἀριστήσωμεν, ἐξοπλισαμένους ὡς κράτιστα ἵνα ἐπὶ τοὺς ἀνδρας. εἰ γὰρ διατρέψωμεν τὴν τήμερον ἡμέραν, οἱ τε νῦν ἡμᾶς ὀρώντες πολέμοι θαρραλεώτεροι ἔσονται καὶ ἄλλους εἰκὸς τούτων θαρρούντων πλείους προσγενέσθαι.
- 10 Μετὰ τοῦτον Ξενοφῶν εἶπεν· Ἐγὼ δ' οὕτω γιγνώσκω. εἰ μὲν ἀνάγκη ἐστὶ μάχεσθαι, τοῦτο δεῖ παρασκευάσασθαι ὅπως ὡς κράτιστα μαχοῦμεθα· εἰ δὲ βουλόμεθα ὡς ῥᾶστα ὑπερβάλλειν, τοῦτό μοι δοκεῖ σκεπτέον εἶναι ὅπως ὡς ἐλάχιστα μὲν τραύματα λάβωμεν, ὡς ἐλάχιστα δὲ σώματα
 11 ἀνδρῶν ἀποβάλλωμεν. τὸ μὲν οὖν ὄρος ἐστὶ τὸ ὀρώμενον πλεον ἢ ἐφ' ἐξήκοντα στάδια, ἄνδρες δ' οὐδαμοῦ φυλάττοντες ἡμᾶς φανεροί εἰσιν ἄλλ'

¹ *i. e.* to bring companies which had been marching in column, viz. one behind another, into line abreast of one another.

Chalybians, Taochians, and Phasians. As soon as Cheirisophus caught sight of the enemy on the pass, he halted, while still at a distance of about thirty stadia, in order not to get near the enemy while his troops were marching in column; and he gave orders to the other officers also to move along their companies so as to bring the army into line of battle.¹ When the rearguard had come up, he called generals and captains together and spoke as follows: "The enemy, as you see, are in possession of the pass over the mountain, and it is time for us to take counsel as to how we can best make our fight. My own view is, that we should give orders to the soldiers to get their breakfast while we ourselves consider whether it is best to attempt to cross over the mountain to-day or to-morrow." "My opinion is," said Cleanor, "that as soon as we have breakfasted, we should arm ourselves and advance upon these men with all the strength we have. For if we waste this day, not only will the enemy who are now looking at us become bolder, but others, in greater numbers, when these are once emboldened, are likely to join them."

After Cleanor had spoken, Xenophon said: "And I think this way: if it is necessary for us to fight, our preparation should have this end in view, to make the strongest possible fight; but if we wish to effect a passage in the easiest way we can, then, in my opinion, our consideration should be on this point, how we may sustain the fewest wounds and sacrifice the fewest lives. Now this mountain—or the part of it that we see—extends over more than sixty stadia, but as for men to guard it against us, none are to be seen anywhere except on the

ἢ κατ' αὐτὴν τὴν ὁδὸν· πολὺ οὖν κρεῖττον τοῦ
 ἐρήμου ὄρους καὶ κλέψαι τι πειρᾶσθαι λαθόντας
 ἢ ἀρπάσαι φθάσαντας, ἢ δυναίμεθα, μᾶλλον ἢ
 πρὸς ἰσχυρὰ χωρία καὶ ἀνθρώπους παρεσκευ-
 12 ασμένους μάχεσθαι. πολὺ γὰρ ῥᾶρον ὄρθιον ἀμαχεῖ
 ἰέναι ἢ ὀμαλὲς ἔνθεν καὶ ἔνθεν πολεμίων ὄντων,
 καὶ νύκτωρ ἀμαχεῖ μᾶλλον ἂν τὰ πρὸ ποδῶν
 ὀρῶν τις ἢ μεθ' ἡμέραν μαχόμενος, καὶ ἡ τραχεῖα¹
 ἀμαχεῖ ἰούσιν εὐμενεστέρα ἢ ἡ ὀμαλὴ τὰς κεφα-
 13 λὰς βαλλομένοις. καὶ κλέψαι δ' οὐκ ἀδύνατόν
 μοι δοκεῖ εἶναι, ἐξὸν μὲν νυκτὸς ἰέναι, ὡς μὴ ὀρᾶ-
 σθαι, ἐξὸν δ' ἀπελθεῖν τοσοῦτον ὡς μὴ αἰσθησιν
 παρέχειν. δοκοῦμεν δ' ἂν μοι ταύτῃ προσποιού-
 μενοι προσβαλεῖν ἐρημοτέρῳ ἂν τῷ ὄρει χρῆσθαι·
 μένοιεν γὰρ ἂν αὐτοῦ μᾶλλον ἀθρόοι οἱ πολέμοιοι.
 14 ἀτὰρ τί ἐγὼ περὶ κλοπῆς συμβάλλομαι; ὑμᾶς
 γὰρ ἔγωγε, ὦ Χειρίσοφε, ἀκούω τοὺς Λακεδαι-
 μονίους ὅσοι ἐστὲ τῶν ὁμοίων εὐθύς καὶ ἐκ παι-
 δων κλέπτειν μελετᾶν, καὶ οὐκ αἰσχρὸν εἶναι
 15 ἀλλὰ καλὸν κλέπτειν ὅσα μὴ κωλύει νόμος. ὅπως
 δὲ ὡς κράτιστα κλέπτητε² καὶ πειρᾶσθε λανθά-
 νειν, νόμιμον παρ'³ ὑμῖν ἐστίν, ἐὰν ληφθῆτε κλέ-
 πτοντες, μαστιγοῦσθαι. νῦν οὖν μάλα σοι καιρὸς
 ἐστίν ἐπιδείξασθαι τὴν παιδείαν, καὶ φυλάξασθαι

¹ After *τραχεῖα* the MSS. have *τοῖς ποσίν*: Gem. brackets, following Bisschop.

² *κράτιστα κλέπτητε* vulg., Mar.: *τάχιστα κλέπτειν τε* (καὶ *πειρᾶσθαι*) MSS.: *τάχιστα κλέπτοντες* Gem.

³ *παρ'* Gem., following Rehdantz: *μὲν γὰρ* (or *γὰρ*) the better MSS.: *ἄρα* the inferior MSS., Mar.

road above; it is far better, therefore, to turn to the unoccupied part of the mountain and try either to steal a position by eluding the enemy's observation or to seize it by getting ahead of them, in whatever way we can, rather than to fight against strong places and men prepared. For it is far easier to march uphill without fighting than over level ground with enemies on this side and that; one can see what is in front of him more easily by night if he is not fighting than by day if he is fighting; and the rough road is more comfortable to men who are going over it without fighting than the smooth road to men who are being pelted on the head. And as for stealing a position, that does not seem to me impossible, for we can go during the night so as not to be seen, and we can get far enough away from the enemy so as not to be heard. I do think, however, that if we should make a feint of attacking here, we should find the rest of the mountain all the more deserted, for the enemy would be more likely to remain in a body where they are. But why should I be the man to make suggestions about stealing? For, as I hear, Cheirisophus, you Lacedaemonians, at least those among you who belong to the peers,¹ practise stealing even from childhood, and count it not disgraceful but honourable to steal anything that the law does not prevent you from taking. And in order that you may steal with all possible skill and may try not to be caught at it, it is the law of your land that, if you are caught stealing, you are flogged. Now, therefore, is just the time for you to display your training, and to take care that

¹ The Dorian aristocracy of Sparta.

- μη ληφθῶμεν κλέπτοντες τοῦ ὄρους, ὡς μη πληγὰς λάβωμεν.
- 16 Ἄλλα μέντοι, ἔφη ὁ Χειρίσοφος, καὶ γὰρ ὑμᾶς τοὺς Ἀθηναίους ἀκούω δεινοὺς εἶναι κλέπτειν τὰ δημόσια, καὶ μάλα ὄντος δεινοῦ κινδύνου τῷ κλέπτοντι, καὶ τοὺς κρατίστους μέντοι μάλιστα, εἶπερ ὑμῖν οἱ κράτιστοι ἄρχειν ἀξιοῦνται ὥστε
- 17 ὦρα καὶ σοὶ ἐπιδείκνυσθαι τὴν παιδείαν. Ἐγὼ μὲν τοίνυν, ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν, ἔτοιμός εἰμι τοὺς ὀπισθοφύλακας ἔχων, ἐπειδὴν δειπνήσωμεν, ἵεναι καταληψόμενος τὸ ὄρος. ἔχω δὲ καὶ ἡγεμόνας· οἱ γὰρ γυμνήτες τῶν ἐπομένων ἡμῖν κλωπῶν ἔλαβόν τινας ἐνεδρεύσαντες· τούτων καὶ πυνθάνομαι ὅτι οὐκ ἄβατόν ἐστι τὸ ὄρος, ἀλλὰ νέμεται αἰξὶ καὶ βουσίν· ὥστε ἂν περ ἄπαξ λάβωμέν τι τοῦ
- 18 ὄρους, βατὰ καὶ τοῖς ὑποζυγίοις ἔσται. ἐλπίζω δὲ οὐδὲ τοὺς πολεμίους μενεῖν ἔτι, ἐπειδὴν ἴδωσιν ἡμᾶς ἐν τῷ ὁμοίῳ ἐπὶ τῶν ἄκρων· οὐδὲ γὰρ νῦν
- 19 ἐθέλουσι καταβαίνειν εἰς τὸ ἴσον ἡμῖν. ὁ δὲ Χειρίσοφος εἶπε· Καὶ τί δεῖ σὲ ἵεναι καὶ λιπεῖν τὴν ὀπισθοφυλακίαν; ἀλλὰ ἄλλους πέμψον, ἂν
- 20 μὴ τινες ἐθέλοντες ἀγαθοὶ¹ φαίνωνται. ἐκ τούτου Ἀριστώνυμος Μεθυδριεύς ἔρχεται ὀπλίτας ἔχων καὶ Ἀριστεάς ὁ Χίος γυμνήτας καὶ Νικόμαχος Οἰταῖος γυμνήτας· καὶ σύνθημα ἐποίησαντο, ὅποτε ἔχοιεν τὰ ἄκρα, πυρὰ καίειν πολλά.
- 21 ταῦτα συνθέμενοι ἡρίστων· ἐκ δὲ τοῦ ἀρίστου προήγαγεν ὁ Χειρίσοφος τὸ στράτευμα πᾶν ὡς

¹ ἐθέλοντες ἀγαθοὶ C₁, Mar.: ἐθελοῦσιοι the other MSS., Gem.

we do not get caught stealing any of the mountain, so that we shall not get a beating."

"Well, for all that," said Cheirisophus, "I hear on my side that you Athenians are terribly clever at stealing the public funds, even though it is terribly dangerous for the stealer, and, in fact, that your best people do it most, at least if they really are your best who are deemed worthy to rule; hence it is time for you also to be displaying your training." "Well," said Xenophon, "I am ready to set out with the rearguard, as soon as we have dined, to seize possession of the mountain. And I have guides, too; for the light troops set an ambush and captured some of the stealing rascals who are following us. From these fellows I also learn that the mountain is not impassable, but is pastured with goats and cattle; therefore if we once get possession of any part of the mountain, our pack animals also will find it passable. And I hope that the enemy will remove themselves from our way as soon as they see us on a level with them upon the heights; for they are not willing now to come down and meet us on our level." Then Cheirisophus said: "But why should you be the one to go, and leave your post with the rearguard? Send others rather, unless some good men offer themselves as volunteers." At that, Aristonymus of Methydrium, commanding hoplites, came forward, and Aristreas the Chian with light troops, and Nicomachus the Oetaean with light troops; and they made an agreement that as soon as they were in possession of the heights, they would kindle a number of fires. This agreement concluded, they proceeded to take breakfast; and immediately after breakfast Cheirisophus led

δέκα σταδίους πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους, ὅπως ὡς μά-
λιστα δοκοίη ταύτη προσάξειν.

- 22 Ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἐδείπνησαν καὶ νύξ ἐγένετο, οἱ μὲν
ταχθέντες ἀπήρχοντο,¹ καὶ καταλαμβάνουσι τὸ
ὄρος, οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι αὐτοῦ ἀνεπαύοντο. οἱ δὲ πολέ-
μιοι ἐπεὶ ἤσθοντο τὸ ὄρος ἐχόμενον, ἐγρηγόρεσαν
23 καὶ ἔκαιον πυρὰ πολλὰ διὰ νυκτός. ἐπειδὴ δὲ
ἡμέρα ἐγένετο Χειρίσοφος μὲν θυσάμενος ἤγε
κατὰ τὴν ὁδόν, οἱ δὲ τὸ ὄρος καταλαμβάνοντες κατὰ
24 τὰ ἄκρα ἐπήσαν. τῶν δὲ πολεμίων τὸ μὲν πολὺ
ἔμενεν ἐπὶ τῇ ὑπερβολῇ τοῦ ὄρους, μέρος δ' αὐτῶν
ἀπῆντα τοῖς κατὰ τὰ ἄκρα. πρὶν δὲ ὁμοῦ εἶναι
τοὺς πολλοὺς ἀλλήλων, συμμειγνύασιν οἱ κατὰ
τὰ ἄκρα, καὶ νικῶσιν οἱ Ἕλληνες καὶ διώκουσιν.
25 ἐν τούτῳ δὲ καὶ οἱ ἐκ τοῦ πεδίου οἱ μὲν πελτασταὶ
τῶν Ἑλλήνων δρόμῳ ἔθεον πρὸς τοὺς παρα-
τεταγμένους, Χειρίσοφος δὲ βάδην ταχὺ ἐφείπετο
26 σὺν τοῖς ὀπλίταις. οἱ δὲ πολέμιοι οἱ ἐπὶ τῇ ὁδῷ
ἐπειδὴ τὸ ἄνω ἑώρων ἠττώμενον, φεύγουσι καὶ
ἀπέθανον μὲν οὐ πολλοὶ αὐτῶν, γέρρα δὲ πάμ-
πολλα ἐλήφθη· ἃ οἱ Ἕλληνες ταῖς μαχαίραις
27 κόπτοντες ἀχρεῖα ἐποίουν. ὡς δ' ἀνέβησαν,
θύσαντες καὶ τρόπαιον στησάμενοι κατέβησαν
εἰς τὸ πεδίου, καὶ εἰς κώμας πολλῶν καὶ ἀγαθῶν
γεμούσας ἦλθον.

VII. Ἐκ δὲ τούτων ἐπορεύθησαν εἰς Ταόχους
σταθμοὺς πέντε παρασάγγας τριάκοντα· καὶ τὰ

¹ ἀπήρχοντο the better MSS., Gem. : ἔρχοντο the inferior
MSS., Mar.

the whole army forward about ten stadia toward the
enemy, in order to make them quite certain that he
was going to advance upon them by this road.

After they had had dinner and night had come on,
the men appointed to the task set forward and gained
possession of the mountain, while the remainder of
the troops rested where they were. And when the
enemy perceived that the mountain was occupied,
they staid awake and kept many fires burning
through the night. As soon as day came Cheirisophus
offered sacrifice and led the army forward along the
road, while the party that had seized the mountain
advanced along the heights. As for the enemy, the
majority remained at the pass over the mountain,
but a part of them went to meet the detachment on
the heights. Now before the two main bodies got
near one another, those upon the heights came to
close combat, and the Greeks were victorious and
began their pursuit. Meanwhile the main body of
the Greeks was moving upward from the plain, the
peltasts charging at a run upon the enemy's battle-
line and Cheirisophus following at a quick-step with
the hoplites. But the enemy on the road no sooner
saw their detachment on the heights being defeated
than they took to flight; and while not many of
them were killed, a great number of wicker shields
were captured, which the Greeks rendered useless
by slashing them with their sabres. When they had
climbed to the top of the pass, after offering sacrifice
and setting up a trophy they descended into the
plain on the farther side, and reached villages full
of many good things.

VII. After this they marched into the country of
the Taochians five stages, thirty parasangs; and

ἐπιτήδεια ἐπέλειπε· χωρία γὰρ ᾠκουν ἰσχυρὰ οἱ
 2 Τάοχοι, ἐν οἷς καὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἅπαντα εἶχον
 ἀνακεκομισμένοι. ἐπεὶ δ' ἀφίκοντο πρὸς χωρίον
 ὃ πόλιν μὲν οὐκ εἶχεν οὐδ' οἰκίας—συνεληλυθότες
 δ' ἦσαν αὐτόσε καὶ ἄνδρες καὶ γυναῖκες καὶ κτήνη
 πολλά—Χειρίσοφος μὲν οὖν πρὸς τοῦτο προσέ-
 βαλλεν εὐθύς ἤκων· ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἡ πρώτη τάξις
 ἀπέκαμνεν, ἄλλη προσήει καὶ αὐθις ἄλλη· οὐ
 γὰρ ἦν ἀθρόοις περιστῆναι, ἀλλ' ἀπότομον ἦν
 κύκλω.

3 Ἐπειδὴ δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἦλθε σὺν τοῖς ὀπισθοφύ-
 λαξι καὶ πελτασταῖς καὶ ὀπλίταις, ἐνταῦθα δὴ
 λέγει Χειρίσοφος· Εἰς καλὸν ἤκετε· τὸ γὰρ
 χωρίον αἰρετέον· τῇ γὰρ στρατιᾷ οὐκ ἔστι τὰ
 4 ἐπιτήδεια, εἰ μὴ ληψόμεθα τὸ χωρίον. ἐνταῦθα
 δὴ κοινῇ ἐβουλεύοντο· καὶ τοῦ Ξενοφῶντος
 ἐρωτῶντος τί τὸ κωλύον εἴη εἰσελθεῖν, εἶπεν ὁ
 Χειρίσοφος· Μία αὕτη πάροδος ἔστιν ἣν ὀρᾷς·
 ὅταν δέ τις ταύτη πειρᾶται παριέναι, κυλινδοῦσι
 λίθους ὑπὲρ ταύτης τῆς ὑπερεχούσης πέτρας· ὃς
 δ' ἂν καταληφθῇ, οὕτω διατίθεται. ἅμα δ' ἔδειξε
 5 συντετριμμένους ἀνθρώπους καὶ σκέλη καὶ πλευ-
 ρας. Ἦν δὲ τοὺς λίθους ἀναλώσωσιν, ἔφη ὁ
 Ξενοφῶν, ἄλλο τι ἢ οὐδὲν κωλύει παριέναι; οὐ
 γὰρ δὴ ἐκ τοῦ ἐναντίου ὀρῶμεν εἰ μὴ ὀλίγους τού-
 6 τους ἀνθρώπους, καὶ τούτων δύο ἢ τρεῖς ὀπλισμέ-
 νους. τὸ δὲ χωρίον, ὡς καὶ σὺ ὀρᾷς, σχεδὸν τρία
 ἡμίπλευρά ἐστιν ὃ δεῖ βαλλομένους διελθεῖν· τού-
 του δὲ ὅσον πλέθρον δασὺ πίτυσι διαλειπούσαις

their provisions were running low, for the Taochians dwelt in strongholds, and in these strongholds they kept all their provisions stored away. Now when the Greeks arrived at one of them which contained no town nor houses, but was only a place where men and women and a great number of cattle were gathered, Cheirisophus proceeded to attack this stronghold as soon as he reached it; and when his first battalion grew weary, another advanced to the attack, and yet another; for it was not possible for them to surround the place in continuous line, because its sides were precipitous.

The moment Xenophon came up with the rear-guard, consisting of both peltasts and hoplites, Cheirisophus said to him: "You have come in the nick of time; for the place must be captured; for the army has no provisions unless we capture this place." Then they took counsel together, and when Xenophon asked what it was that prevented their effecting an entrance, Cheirisophus replied: "There is this one way of approach which you see, but when one tries to go along by this way, they roll down stones from this overhanging rock; and whoever gets caught, is served in this fashion"—and with the words he pointed out men with their legs and ribs crushed. "But suppose they use up their stones," said Xenophon, "there is nothing then, is there, to hinder one's passing? For surely there is nothing we can see on the other side except a few men yonder, and only two or three of them are armed. Furthermore, as you can see for yourself, the distance we must traverse under attack is about a plethrum and a half. Now as much as a plethrum of that distance is covered with tall, scattered pine

- μεγάλαις, ἀνθ' ὧν ἐστηκότες ἄνδρες τί ἂν πάσχοιεν ἢ ὑπὸ τῶν φερομένων λίθων ἢ ὑπὸ τῶν κυλιδομένων; τὸ λοιπὸν οὖν γίγνεται ὡς ἡμίπλεθρον, ὃ δεῖ ὅταν λωφήσωσιν οἱ λίθοι παραδραμεῖν.
- 7 Ἀλλὰ εὐθύς, ἔφη ὁ Χειρίσοφος, ἐπειδὴν ἀρξώμεθα εἰς τὸ δασὺ προσιέναι, φέρονται οἱ λίθοι πολλοί. Αὐτὸ ἂν, ἔφη, τὸ δέον εἶη· θάπτον γὰρ ἀναλώσουσι τοὺς λίθους. ἀλλὰ πορευώμεθα ἔνθεν ἡμῖν μικρὸν τι παραδραμεῖν ἔσται, ἣν δυνώμεθα, καὶ ἀπελθεῖν ῥάδιον, ἣν βουλώμεθα.
- 8 Ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύοντο Χειρίσοφος καὶ Ξενοφῶν καὶ Καλλίμαχος Παρράσιος λοχαγός· τούτου γὰρ ἡγεμονία ἦν τῶν ὀπισθοφυλάκων λοχαγῶν ἐκείνη τῇ ἡμέρᾳ· οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι λοχαγοὶ ἔμενον ἐν τῷ ἀσφαλεῖ. μετὰ τοῦτο οὖν ἀπήλθον ὑπὸ τὰ δένδρα ἄνθρωποι ὡς ἑβδομήκοντα, οὐχ ἄθροοι ἀλλὰ καθ' ἓνα, ἕκαστος φυλαττόμενος ὡς ἐδύνατο.
- 9 Ἀγασίας δὲ ὁ Στυμφάλιος καὶ Ἀριστώνυμος Μεθυδριεύς, καὶ οὗτοι τῶν ὀπισθοφυλάκων λοχαγοὶ ὄντες, καὶ ἄλλοι δέ, ἐφέστασαν ἔξω τῶν δένδρων· οὐ γὰρ ἦν ἀσφαλῶς ἐν τοῖς δένδροις
- 10 ἐστάναι πλεον ἢ τὸν ἓνα λόχον. ἔνθα δὲ Καλλίμαχος μηχανᾷται τι· προὔτρεχεν ἀπὸ τοῦ δένδρου ὑφ' ᾧ ἦν αὐτὸς δύο ἢ τρία βήματα· ἐπειδὴ δὲ οἱ λίθοι φέροντο, ἀνέχαζεν εὐπετῶς· ἐφ' ἐκάστης δὲ τῆς προδρομῆς πλεον ἢ δέκα ἅμαξαι πετρῶν
- 11 ἀνηλίσκοντο. ὁ δὲ Ἀγασίας ὡς ὄρα τὸν Καλλίμαχον ἃ ἐποίει, τὸ στράτευμα πᾶν θεώμενον, δείσας μὴ οὗτος¹ πρῶτος παραδράμη εἰς τὸ

¹ οὗτος Gem., following Voigtländer: οὐ MSS., Mar.

¹ viz. Callimachus' company.

trees, and if men should stand behind them, what harm could they suffer either from the flying stones or the rolling ones? The remaining space, then, amounts to about half a plethrum, and that we must cross on the run at a moment when the stones stop coming." "But," said Cheirisophus, "the very moment we begin to push out toward the trees, the stones fly in quantities." "Precisely the thing we want," said Xenophon, "for they will use up their stones the sooner. But let us make our way to a spot from which we shall have only a short distance to run across, in case we can do that, and an easy retreat, in case we choose to come back."

Thereupon Cheirisophus and Xenophon set forth, and with them Callimachus of Parrhasia, a captain; for he was the officer of the day in command of the captains of the rearguard; and the other captains remained in a place of safety. Following this lead about seventy men got out under shelter of the trees, not all together, but one by one, each protecting himself as best he could. But Agasias of Stymphalus and Aristonymus of Methydrium, who were likewise captains of the rearguard, and others also, took places outside the cover of the trees, for not more than the one company¹ could stand among them with safety. At that moment Callimachus hit upon a scheme: he would run forward two or three steps from the particular tree he was under and, when the stones began to fly, would draw back without any trouble; and at every one of his dashes more than ten cart-loads of stones would be used up. But when Agasias saw what Callimachus was doing, with the whole army for spectators, he became fearful that the other would be the first to make the run

χωρίον, οὐ¹ τὸν Ἀριστώνυμον πλησίον ὄντα παρακαλέσας οὐδὲ Εὐρύλοχον τὸν Λουσιέα ἐταίρους ὄντας οὐδὲ ἄλλον οὐδένα χωρεῖ αὐτός,
 12 καὶ παρέρχεται πάντας. ὁ δὲ Καλλίμαχος ὡς ὄρᾳ αὐτὸν παριόντα, ἐπιλαμβάνεται αὐτοῦ τῆς ἵτιος· ἐν δὲ τούτῳ παραθεῖ αὐτοὺς Ἀριστώνυμος Μεθυδριεύς, καὶ μετὰ τούτον Εὐρύλοχος Λουσιεύς· πάντες γὰρ οὗτοι ἀντεποιοῦντο ἀρετῆς καὶ διηγωνίζοντο πρὸς ἀλλήλους· καὶ οὕτως ἐρίζοντες αἰροῦσι τὸ χωρίον. ὡς γὰρ ἅπαξ εἰσέδραμον, οὐδεὶς πέτρος ἀνωθεν ἠνέχθη.

13 Ἐνταῦθα δὴ δεινὸν ἦν θέαμα. αἱ γὰρ γυναῖκες ῥίπτουσαι τὰ παιδία εἶτα ἑαυτὰς ἐπικατερρίπτουν, καὶ οἱ ἄνδρες ὡσαύτως. ἐνταῦθα δὴ καὶ Αἰνείας Στυμφάλιος λοχαγὸς ἰδὼν τινα θέοντα ὡς ῥίψοντα ἑαυτὸν στολὴν ἔχοντα καλὴν ἐπιλαμβάνεται ὡς
 14 κωλύσων· ὁ δὲ αὐτὸν ἐπισπᾶται, καὶ ἀμφότεροι ᾤχοντο κατὰ τῶν πετρῶν φερόμενοι καὶ ἀπέθανον. ἐντεῦθεν ἄνθρωποι μὲν πάνυ ὀλίγοι ἐλήφθησαν, βόες δὲ καὶ ὄνοι πολλοὶ καὶ πρόβατα.

15 Ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύθησαν διὰ Χαλύβων σταθμοὺς ἐπτὰ παρασάγγας πεντήκοντα. οὗτοι ἦσαν ὦν διήλθου ἀλκιμώτατοι, καὶ εἰς χεῖρας ἦσαν. εἶχον δὲ θώρακας λινοῦς μέχρι τοῦ ἤτρου, ἀντὶ δὲ τῶν
 16 πτερύγων σπάρτα πυκνὰ ἐστραμμένα. εἶχον δὲ καὶ κνημίδας καὶ κράνη καὶ παρὰ τὴν ζώνην μαχαίριον ὅσον ξυήλην Λακωνικὴν, ᾧ ἔσφαττον

¹ οὐ Gem., following Rehdantz: οὐδὲ MSS., Mar.

across to the stronghold; so without asking Aristonymus or Eurylochus of Lusi (though the former was close by and both were his friends) or any one else to join him, he dashed forward himself and proceeded to go past everybody. Callimachus, however, when he saw him going by, seized the rim of his shield; and at that moment Aristonymus of Methydrium ran past both of them, and upon his heels Eurylochus of Lusi. For all these four were rivals in valour and continually striving with one another; and in thus contending they captured the stronghold, for once they had rushed in not a stone came down from above.

Then came a dreadful spectacle: the women threw their little children down from the rocks and then threw themselves down after them, and the men did likewise. In the midst of this scene Aeneas of Stymphalus, a captain, catching sight of a man, who was wearing a fine robe, running to cast himself down, seized hold of him in order to stop him; but the man dragged Aeneas along after him, and both went flying down the cliffs and were killed. In this stronghold only a very few human beings were captured, but they secured cattle and asses in large numbers and sheep.

From there they marched through the land of the Chalybians seven stages, fifty parasangs. These were the most valiant of all the peoples they passed through, and would come to hand-to-hand encounter. They had corselets of linen reaching down to the groin, with a thick fringe of plaited cords instead of flaps. They had greaves also and helmets, and at the girdle a knife about as long as a Laconian dagger, with which they would slaughter whomever

ὧν κρατεῖν δύναιντο, καὶ ἀποτέμνοντες ἂν τὰς κεφαλὰς ἔχοντες ἐπορεύοντο, καὶ ἦδον καὶ ἐχόρευον ὅποτε οἱ πολέμοι αὐτοὺς ὄψεσθαι ἐμελλον. εἶχον δὲ καὶ δόρυ ὡς πέντε¹ πήχεων
 17 μίαν λόγχην ἔχον. οὗτοι ἐνέμενον ἐν τοῖς πολίσμασιν· ἐπεὶ δὲ παρέλθοιεν οἱ Ἕλληνες, εἶποντο αἰεὶ μαχοῦμενοι. ὄκουν δὲ ἐν τοῖς ὄχυροῖς, καὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἐν τούτοις ἀνακεκομισμένοι ἦσαν ὥστε μηδὲν λαμβάνειν αὐτόθεν τοὺς Ἕλληνας, ἀλλὰ διετράφησαν τοῖς κτήνεσιν ἃ ἐκ τῶν Ταόχων
 18 ἔλαβον. ἐκ τούτων οἱ Ἕλληνες ἀφίκοντο ἐπὶ Ἄρπασον ποταμόν, εὖρος τεττάρων πλέθρων. ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύθησαν διὰ Σκυθινῶν σταθμοὺς τέτταρας παρασάγγας εἴκοσι διὰ πεδίου εἰς κώμας· ἐν αἷς ἔμειναν ἡμέρας τρεῖς καὶ ἐπεσιτίσαντο.
 19 Ἐντεῦθεν διήλθον σταθμοὺς τέτταρας παρασάγγας εἴκοσι πρὸς πόλιν μεγάλην καὶ εὐδαίμονα καὶ οἰκουμένην ἣ ἐκαλεῖτο Γυμνιάς. ἐκ ταύτης ὁ τῆς χώρας ἄρχων² τοῖς Ἕλλησιν ἡγεμόνα πέμπει, ὅπως διὰ τῆς ἑαυτῶν πολεμίας χώρας
 20 ἄγοι αὐτοὺς. ἐλθὼν δ' ἐκεῖνος λέγει ὅτι ἄξει αὐτοὺς πέντε ἡμερῶν εἰς χωρίον ὅθεν ὄψονται θάλατταν· εἰ δὲ μή, τεθνάναι ἐπηγγείλατο. καὶ ἡγούμενος ἐπειδὴ ἐνέβαλλεν εἰς τὴν πολεμίαν, παρεκελεύετο αἰθεῖν καὶ φθείρειν τὴν χώραν

¹ πέντε Gem., following Pätzolt: πεντεκαίδεκα MSS., Mar.

² ὁ τῆς χώρας ἄρχων Gem., following Schneider: τῆς χώρας ὁ ἄρχων MSS., which Mar. follows, though marking the passage as corrupt.

they might be able to vanquish; then they would cut off their heads and carry them along on their march, and they would sing and dance whenever they were likely to be seen by the enemy. They carried also a spear about five cubits long, with a point at only one end.¹ These people would stay within their towns, and when the Greeks had passed by, they would follow them, always ready to fight. Their dwellings were in strongholds, and therein they had stored away all their provisions; hence the Greeks could get nothing in this country, but they subsisted on the cattle they had taken from the Taochians. Leaving this land, the Greeks arrived at the Harpasus river, which was four plethra in width. From there they marched through the territory of the Scythinians four stages, twenty parasangs, over a level plain, and they arrived at some villages, and there remained for three days and collected provisions.

From there they journeyed four stages, twenty parasangs, to a large and prosperous inhabited city which was called Gymnias. From this city the ruler of the land sent the Greeks a guide, in order to lead them through territory that was hostile to his own. When the guide came, he said that he would lead them within five days to a place from which they could see the sea;² if he failed to do so, he was ready to accept death. Thus taking the lead, as soon as he had brought them into the hostile territory, he kept urging them to spread abroad fire and ruin, thereby making it clear that it

¹ Xenophon doubtless remarks this fact because the Greek spear had a sharp point at the butt, to stick in the ground.
² i. e. the Euxine.

ᾧ καὶ δῆλον ἐγένετο ὅτι τούτου ἕνεκα ἔλθοι, οὐ
 21 τῆς τῶν Ἑλλήνων εὐνοίας. καὶ ἀφικνοῦνται ἐπὶ
 τὸ ὄρος τῇ πέμπτῃ ἡμέρᾳ· ὄνομα δὲ τῷ ὄρει ἦν
 Θήχης. ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ πρῶτοι ἐγένοντο ἐπὶ τοῦ
 22 ὄρους,¹ κραυγὴ πολλὴ ἐγένετο. ἀκούσας δὲ ὁ
 Ξενοφῶν καὶ οἱ ὀπισθοφύλακες ᾤθησαν ἔμπρο-
 σθεν ἄλλους ἐπιτίθεσθαι πολεμίους· εἶποντο γὰρ
 ὀπισθεν ἐκ τῆς καιομένης χώρας, καὶ αὐτῶν οἱ
 ὀπισθοφύλακες ἀπέκτεινάν τε τινὰς καὶ ἐξώ-
 γρησαν ἐνέδραν ποιησάμενοι, καὶ γέρρα ἔλαβον
 23 δασειῶν βοῶν ὠμοβοεῖα ἀμφὶ τὰ εἴκοσιν. ἐπειδὴ
 δὲ βοὴ πλείων τε ἐγίγνετο καὶ ἐγγύτερον καὶ οἱ
 αἰεὶ ἐπιόντες ἔθεον δρόμῳ ἐπὶ τοὺς αἰεὶ βοῶντας
 καὶ πολλῶ μείζων ἐγίγνετο ἢ βοὴ ὅσῳ δὴ πλείους
 ἐγίγνοντο, ἐδόκει δὴ μείζον τι εἶναι τῷ Ξενοφῶντι,
 24 καὶ ἀναβὰς ἐφ' ἵππον καὶ Λύκιον καὶ τοὺς ἱππέας
 ἀναλαβὼν παρεβόηθει· καὶ τάχα δὴ ἀκούουσι
 βοῶντων τῶν στρατιωτῶν Θάλαττα θάλαττα
 καὶ παρεγγυόντων. ἔνθα δὲ ἔθεον πάντες καὶ οἱ
 ὀπισθοφύλακες, καὶ τὰ ὑποζύγια ἠλαύνετο καὶ
 25 οἱ ἵπποι. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀφίκοντο πάντες ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον,
 ἐνταῦθα δὲ περιέβαλλον ἀλλήλους καὶ στρα-
 τηγούς καὶ λοχαγούς δακρύοντες. καὶ ἐξαπίνης
 ὅτου δὴ παρεγγυήσαντος οἱ στρατιῶται φέρουσι
 26 λίθους καὶ ποιοῦσι κολωνὸν μέγαν. ἐνταῦθα
 ἀνέτιθεσαν δερμάτων πλήθος ὠμοβοεῖων καὶ
 βακτηρίας καὶ τὰ αἰχμάλωτα γέρρα, καὶ ὁ ἠγεμὼν

¹ After ὄρους all the MSS. except C₁ add καὶ κατεῖδον τὴν θάλατταν, which Mar. retains.

¹ The mountain which Xenophon seems to think he has already mentioned, as having been referred to by the guide.

was with this end in view that he had come, and
 not out of good-will toward the Greeks. On the
 fifth day they did in fact reach the mountain;¹ its
 name was Theches. Now as soon as the vanguard got
 to the top of the mountain, a great shout went up.
 And when Xenophon and the rearguard heard it,
 they imagined that other enemies were attacking
 in front; for enemies were following behind them
 from the district that was in flames, and the rear-
 guard had killed some of them and captured others
 by setting an ambush, and had also taken about
 twenty wicker shields covered with raw, shaggy
 ox-hides. But as the shout kept getting louder and
 nearer, as the successive ranks that came up all
 began to run at full speed toward the ranks ahead
 that were one after another joining in the shout,
 and as the shout kept growing far louder as the
 number of men grew steadily greater, it became
 quite clear to Xenophon that here was something of
 unusual importance; so he mounted a horse, took
 with him Lycius and the cavalry, and pushed ahead
 to lend aid; and in a moment they heard the
 soldiers shouting, "The Sea! The Sea!" and passing
 the word along. Then all the troops of the rear-
 guard likewise broke into a run, and the pack
 animals began racing ahead and the horses. And
 when all had reached the summit, then indeed they
 fell to embracing one another, and generals and
 captains as well, with tears in their eyes. And on
 a sudden, at the bidding of some one or other, the
 soldiers began to bring stones and to build a great
 cairn. Thereon they placed as offerings a quantity
 of raw ox-hides and walking-sticks and the captured
 wicker shields; and the guide not only cut these

αὐτός τε κατέτεμνε τὰ γέρρα καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις
 27 διεκελεύετο. μετὰ ταῦτα τὸν ἡγεμόνα οἱ Ἕλληνες
 ἀποπέμπουσι δῶρα δόντες ἀπὸ κοινοῦ ἵππον καὶ
 φιάλην ἀργυρᾶν καὶ σκευὴν Περσικὴν καὶ δαρει-
 κούς δέκα· ἦπει δὲ μάλιστα τοὺς δακτυλίους, καὶ
 ἔλαβε πολλοὺς παρὰ τῶν στρατιωτῶν. κώμην
 δὲ δείξας αὐτοῖς οὐ σκηνήσουσι καὶ τὴν ὁδὸν ἦν
 πορεύονται εἰς Μάκρωνας, ἐπεὶ ἑσπέρα ἐγένετο,
 ὄχετο¹ ἀπιών.

VIII. Ἐντεῦθεν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν οἱ Ἕλληνες
 διὰ Μακρῶνων σταθμοὺς τρεῖς παρασάγγας δέκα.
 τῇ πρώτῃ δὲ ἡμέρᾳ ἀφίκοντο ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμὸν
 ὃς ὠρίζε τὴν τῶν Μακρῶνων καὶ τὴν τῶν
 2 Σκυθινῶν. εἶχον δ' ὑπὲρ δεξιῶν χωρίου οἴου
 χαλεπώτατον καὶ ἐξ ἀριστερᾶς ἄλλον ποταμὸν,
 εἰς ὃν ἐνέβαλλεν ὁ ὀρίζων, δι' οὗ ἔδει διαβῆναι.
 ἦν δὲ οὗτος δασὺς δένδρεσι παχέσι μὲν οὐ,
 πυκνοῖς δέ. ταῦτ' ἐπεὶ προσῆλθον οἱ Ἕλληνες
 ἔκοπτον, σπεύδοντες ἐκ τοῦ χωρίου ὡς τάχιστα
 3 ἐξελθεῖν. οἱ δὲ Μάκρωνες ἔχοντες γέρρα καὶ
 λόγχας καὶ τριχίνους χιτῶνας κατ' ἀντιπέραν
 τῆς διαβάσεως παρατεταγμένοι ἦσαν καὶ ἀλλή-
 λους διεκελεύοντο καὶ λίθους εἰς τὸν ποταμὸν
 ἔρριπτον· ἐξικνούντο γὰρ οὐ οὐδ' ἔβλαπτον
 οὐδέν.

4 Ἐνθα δὲ προσέρχεται Ξενοφῶντι τῶν πελτα-
 στῶν ἀνὴρ Ἀθήνησι φάσκων δεδουλευκέναι, λέγων
 ὅτι γιγνώσκῃ τὴν φωνὴν τῶν ἀνθρώπων. καὶ
 οἶμαι, ἔφη, ἐμὴν ταύτην πατρίδα εἶναι· καὶ εἰ

¹ After ὄχετο the MSS. have τῆς νυκτὸς: Gem. brackets, following Cobet.

shields to pieces himself, but urged the others to do so.¹ After this the Greeks dismissed the guide with gifts from the common stock—a horse, a silver cup, a Persian dress, and ten darics; but what he particularly asked the men for was their rings, and he got a considerable number of them. Then he showed them a village to encamp in and the road they were to follow to the country of the Macronians, and, as soon as evening came, took his departure.

VIII. From there the Greeks marched through the country of the Macronians three stages, ten parasangs. On the first of these days they reached the river which separated the territory of the Macronians from that of the Scythinians. There they had on the right, above them, an exceedingly difficult bit of ground, and on the left another river, into which the boundary stream that they had to cross emptied. Now this stream was fringed with trees, not large ones, but of thick growth, and when the Greeks came up, they began felling them in their haste to get out of the place as speedily as possible. But the Macronians, armed with wicker shields and lances and hair tunics, were drawn up in line of battle opposite the place where the Greeks must cross, and they were cheering one another on and throwing stones, which fell into the stream; for they never reached the Greeks or did them any harm.

At this moment one of the peltasts came up to Xenophon, a man who said that he had been a slave at Athens, with word that he knew the language of these people; "I think," he went on, "that this is my native country, and if there is nothing to hinder,

¹ Still trying to fulfil his real mission of harming his people's enemies. Cp. §§ 19-20 above.

5 μή τι κωλύει, ἐθέλω αὐτοῖς διαλεχθῆναι. Ἄλλ' οὐδὲν κωλύει, ἔφη, ἀλλὰ διαλέγου καὶ μάθε πρῶτον τίνες εἰσίν. οἱ δ' εἶπον ἐρωτήσαντος ὅτι Μάκρωνες. Ἐρώτα τοίνυν, ἔφη, αὐτοὺς τί ἀντιτετάχεται καὶ χρήξουσιν ἡμῖν πολέμιοι εἶναι.

6 οἱ δ' ἀπεκρίναντο ὅτι ὑμεῖς¹ ἐπὶ τὴν ἡμετέραν χώραν ἔρχεσθε. λέγειν ἐκέλευον οἱ στρατηγοὶ ὅτι οὐ κακῶς γε ποιήσοντες, ἀλλὰ βασιλεῖ πολέμησαντες ἀπερχόμεθα εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα, καὶ ἐπὶ

7 θάλατταν βουλόμεθα ἀφικέσθαι. ἡρώτων ἐκείνοι εἰ δοίεν ἂν τούτων τὰ πιστά. οἱ δ' ἔφασαν καὶ δοῦναι καὶ λαβεῖν ἐθέλειν. ἐντεῦθεν διδόασιν οἱ Μάκρωνες βαρβαρικὴν λόγχην τοῖς Ἕλλησιν, οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες ἐκείνοις Ἑλληνικὴν ταῦτα γὰρ ἔφασαν πιστὰ εἶναι θεοὺς δ' ἐπεμαρτύραντο ἀμφότεροι.²

8 Μετὰ δὲ τὰ πιστὰ εὐθὺς οἱ Μάκρωνες τὰ δένδρα συνεξέκοπτον τὴν τε ὁδὸν ὠδοποιοῦν ὡς διαβιβάσοντας ἐν μέσοις ἀναμεμειγμένοι τοῖς Ἕλλησι, καὶ ἀγορὰν οἴαν ἐδύναντο παρεῖχον, καὶ παρήγαγον ἐν τρισὶν ἡμέραις ἕως ἐπὶ τὰ Κόλχων

9 ὄρια κατέστησαν τοὺς Ἕλληνας. ἐνταῦθα ἦν ὄρος μέγα³ καὶ ἐπὶ τούτου οἱ Κόλχοι παρατεταγμένοι ἦσαν. καὶ τὸ μὲν πρῶτον οἱ Ἕλληνες ἀντιπαρετάξαντο φάλαγγα, ὡς οὕτως ἄξοντες πρὸς τὸ ὄρος· ἔπειτα δὲ ἔδοξε τοῖς στρατηγοῖς βουλευσασθαι συλλεγεῖσιν ὅπως ὡς κάλλιστα ἀγωνιοῦνται.

¹ ὑμεῖς C₁, Gem.: καὶ ὑμεῖς the other MSS., Mar.

² ἀμφότεροι is omitted in C₁, which Gem. follows.

³ μέγα C₁, Gem.: μέγα, προσβατὸν δὲ the other MSS., Mar.

I should like to have a talk with them." "Well, there is nothing to hinder," said Xenophon; "so talk with them, and learn, to begin with, who they are." In reply to his inquiry they said, "Macronians." "Well, then," said Xenophon, "ask them why they are arrayed against us and want to be our enemies." They replied, "Because you are coming against our land." The generals directed the man to say, "We have not come to do you any harm whatever, but we have been at war with the King and are on our way back to Greece, and we want to reach the sea." The Macronians asked whether they would give pledges to this effect. They replied that they were ready both to give and to receive pledges. Thereupon the Macronians gave the Greeks a barbarian lance and the Greeks gave them a Greek lance, for the Macronians said that these were pledges; and both sides called the gods to witness.

After this exchange of pledges the Macronians at once began to help the Greeks cut down the trees and to build the road in order to get them across, mingling freely with the Greeks; and they supplied as good a market¹ as they could, and conducted the Greeks on their way for three days, until they brought them to the boundaries of the Colchians. At this place was a great mountain, and upon this mountain the Colchians were drawn up in line of battle. At first the Greeks formed an opposing line of battle, with the intention of advancing in this way upon the mountain, but afterwards the generals decided to gather together and take counsel as to how they could best make the contest.

¹ See note on I. ii. 18.

- 10 Ἐλεξεν οὖν Ξενοφῶν ὅτι δοκοίη παύσαντας τὴν φάλαγγα λόχους ὀρθίους ποιῆσαι· ἡ μὲν γὰρ φάλαγξ διασπασθήσεται εὐθύς· τῇ μὲν γὰρ ἄνοδον τῇ δὲ εὐοδον εὐρήσομεν τὸ ὄρος· καὶ εὐθύς τοῦτο ἀθυμίαν ποιήσει ὅταν τεταγμένοι εἰς φά-
- 11 λαγγα ταύτην διεσπασμένην ὀρώσιν. ἔπειτα ἂν μὲν ἐπὶ πολλῶν τεταγμένοι προσάγωμεν, περιττεύσουσιν ἡμῶν οἱ πολέμοι καὶ τοῖς περιττοῖς χρήσονται ὅ τι ἂν βούλωνται· εἰ δὲ ἐπ' ὀλίγων τεταγμένοι ὦμεν, οὐδὲν ἂν εἴη θαυμαστὸν εἰ διακοπήν ἡμῶν ἢ φάλαγξ ὑπὸ ἀθρόων καὶ βελῶν καὶ ἀνθρώπων¹ πολλῶν ἐμπεσόντων· εἰ δέ πη τοῦτο
- 12 ἔσται, τῇ ὅλῃ φάλαγγι κακὸν ἔσται. ἀλλὰ μοι δοκεῖ ὀρθίους τοὺς λόχους ποιησαμένους τοσοῦτον χωρίον κατασχεῖν διαλιπόντας τοῖς λόχοις ὅσον ἔξω τοὺς ἐσχάτους λόχους γενέσθαι τῶν πολεμίων κεράτων· καὶ οὕτως ἐσόμεθα τῆς τε τῶν πολεμίων φάλαγγος ἔξω,² καὶ ὀρθίους ἄγοντες οἱ κράτιστοι ἡμῶν πρῶτοι προσίασιν, ἧ τε ἂν
- 13 εὐοδον ἧ, ταύτῃ ἕκαστος ἄξει ὁ λοχαγός.³ καὶ εἷς τε τὸ διαλείπον οὐ ῥάδιον ἔσται τοῖς πολεμοῖς εἰσελθεῖν ἔνθεν καὶ ἔνθεν λόχων ὄντων, διακόψαι τε οὐ ῥάδιον ἔσται λόχον ὀρθίον προσιόντα· ἂν τέ τις πιέζηται τῶν λόχων, ὁ πλησίον βοηθήσει. ἦν τε εἰς πη δυνηθῆ τῶν λόχων ἐπὶ τὸ

¹ καὶ ἀνθρώπων is omitted in C₁, which Gem. follows.

² After ἔξω the MSS. have οἱ ἐσχατοὶ λόχοι : Gem. and Mar. bracket, following Cobet.

³ ὁ λοχαγός Gem., following Krüger : the MSS. have ὁ λόχος, which Mar. retains but brackets.

Xenophon accordingly said that in his opinion they should give up the line of battle and form the companies in column.¹ "For the line," he continued, "will be broken up at once; for we shall find the mountain hard to traverse at some points and easy at others; and the immediate result will be discouragement, when men who are formed in line of battle see the line broken up. Furthermore, if we advance upon them formed in a line many ranks deep, the enemy will outflank us, and will use their outflanking wing for whatever purpose they please; on the other hand, if we are formed in a line a few ranks deep, it would be nothing surprising if our line should be cut through by a multitude both of missiles and men falling upon us in a mass; and if this happens at any point, it will be bad for the whole line. But it seems to me we should form the companies in column and, by leaving spaces between them, cover enough ground so that the outermost companies should get beyond the enemy's wings; in this way not only shall we outflank the enemy's line, but advancing in column our best men will be in the van of the attack, and wherever it is good going, there each captain will lead forward his men. And it will not be easy for the enemy to push into the space between the columns when there are companies on this side and that, and not any easier for him to cut through a company that is advancing in column. Again, if any one of the companies is hard pressed, its neighbour will come to its aid; and if one single company can somehow climb to the

¹ See vi. 6, and note. Of course it is the opposite movement that is now in contemplation.

ἄκρον ἀναβῆναι, οὐδεὶς μηκέτι μείνη τῶν πολεμίων.

- 14 Ταῦτα ἔδοξε, καὶ ἐποίουν ὀρθίους τοὺς λόχους. Ξενοφῶν δὲ ἀπιὼν ἐπὶ τὸ εὐώνυμον ἀπὸ τοῦ δεξιοῦ ἔλεγε τοῖς στρατιώταις· "Ἄνδρες, οὗτοί εἰσιν οὓς ὀράτε μόνοι ἔτι ἡμῖν ἐμποδῶν τὸ μὴ ἤδη εἶναι ἔνθα πάλαι σπεύδομεν· τούτους, ἣν πως δυνώμεθα, καὶ ὤμους δεῖ καταφαγεῖν.
- 15 Ἐπεὶ δ' ἐν ταῖς χώραις ἕκαστοι ἐγένοντο καὶ τοὺς λόχους ὀρθίους ἐποίησαντο, ἐγένοντο μὲν λόχοι τῶν ὀπλιτῶν ἀμφὶ τοὺς ὀγδοήκοντα, ὁ δὲ λόχος ἕκαστος σχεδὸν εἰς τοὺς ἑκατὸν· τοὺς δὲ πελταστάς καὶ τοὺς τοξότας τριχῆ ἐποίησαντο, τοὺς μὲν τοῦ εὐωνύμου ἕξω, τοὺς δὲ τοῦ δεξιοῦ, τοὺς
- 16 δὲ κατὰ μέσον, σχεδὸν ἑξακοσίους ἑκάστους. ἐκ τούτου παρηγγύησαν οἱ στρατηγοὶ εὐχεσθαι εὐξάμενοι δὲ καὶ παιανίσαντες ἐπορεύοντο. καὶ Χειρίσοφος μὲν καὶ Ξενοφῶν καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτοῖς πελτασταὶ τῆς τῶν πολεμίων φάλαγγος ἕξω
- 17 γενόμενοι ἐπορεύοντο· οἱ δὲ πολέμιοι ὡς εἶδον αὐτούς, ἀντιπαραθέοντες οἱ μὲν ἐπὶ τὸ δεξιὸν οἱ δὲ ἐπὶ τὸ εὐώνυμον διεσπάρθησαν, καὶ πολὺ τῆς αὐτῶν φάλαγγος ἐν τῷ μέσῳ κενὸν ἐποίησαν.
- 18 οἱ δὲ κατὰ τὸ Ἀρκαδικὸν πελτασταί, ὧν ἦρχεν Αἰσχίνης ὁ Ἀκαρνάν, νομίσαντες φεύγειν ἀνακρα-

¹ Cheirisophus was commander of the van, Xenophon of the rear. The van of an army on the march became the right wing of the line of battle and the rear the left wing. It was at Cheirisophus' post, on the right, that the council was held.

² A phrase as old as Homer (Δ 35).

³ A total of 8000 as compared with an original strength of 11,700.

summit, not a man of the enemy will stand any longer."

This plan was decided upon, and they proceeded to form the companies in column. And as Xenophon was going back from the right wing to the left,¹ he said to the troops: "Soldiers, these men yonder whom you see are the only ones who still stand in the way of our being forthwith at the place we have long been striving to reach; if we possibly can, we must simply eat these fellows raw."²

When the officers had got to their several positions and had formed their companies in column, the result was about eighty companies of hoplites with each company numbering close upon one hundred;³ the peltasts and the bowmen, on the other hand, they formed in three divisions, one beyond the left wing of the hoplites, the second beyond the right, and the third in the centre, each division numbering about six hundred men.⁴ After this the generals passed along the order to offer prayer, and when they had prayed and sung the paean they set forth. Now Cheirisophus and Xenophon⁵ and the peltasts with them got beyond the wings of the enemy's line in their advance; and when the enemy saw this, they ran out, some to the right and others to the left, to confront them, with the result that their line was pulled apart and a large portion of it in the centre was left deserted. Then the peltasts of the Arcadian division, who were commanded by Aeschines the Acarnanian, getting the idea that the

⁴ One thousand eight hundred as compared with an original 2300.

⁵ On the right and left wings respectively. See note on § 14 above.

γόντες ἔθεον· καὶ οὗτοι πρῶτοι ἐπὶ τὸ ὄρος ἀναβαίνουσι· συνεφείπετο δὲ αὐτοῖς καὶ τὸ Ἄρκαδικὸν ὀπλιτικόν, ὧν ἦρχε Κλεάνωρ ὁ Ὀρχομένιος.
 19 οἱ δὲ πολέμιοι, ὡς ἤρξαντο θεῖν, οὐκέτι ἔστησαν, ἀλλὰ φυγῇ ἄλλος ἄλλῃ ἐτράπετο.

Οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες ἀναβάντες ἐστρατοπεδεύοντο ἐν πολλαῖς κώμαις καὶ τὰπιτήδεια πολλὰ ἐχούσαις· καὶ τὰ μὲν ἄλλα οὐδὲν ὅ τι καὶ ἐθαύμασαν· τὰ δὲ σμήνη πολλὰ ἦν αὐτόθι, καὶ τῶν κηρίων ὅσοι ἔφαγον τῶν στρατιωτῶν πάντες ἄφρονές τε ἐγίνοντο καὶ ἤμουν καὶ κάτω διεχώρει αὐτοῖς καὶ ὀρθὸς οὐδεὶς ἐδύνατο ἵστασθαι, ἀλλ' οἱ μὲν ὀλίγον ἐδηδοκότες σφόδρα μεθύουσιν ἐώκεσαν, οἱ δὲ πολὺ μαινομένοις, οἱ δὲ καὶ
 21 ἀποθνήσκουσιν· ἐκειντο δὲ οὕτω πολλοὶ ὥσπερ τροπῆς γεγενημένης, καὶ πολλὴ ἦν ἀθυμία· τῇ δ' ὑστεραία ἀπέθανε μὲν οὐδεὶς, ἀμφὶ δὲ τὴν αὐτὴν πῶς ὥραν ἀνεφρόνουν· τρίτῃ δὲ καὶ τετάρτῃ ἀνίσταντο ὥσπερ ἐκ φαρμακοποσίας.

Ἐντεῦθεν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν δύο σταθμοὺς παρασάγγας ἐπτά, καὶ ἦλθον ἐπὶ θάλατταν εἰς Τραπεζοῦντα πόλιν Ἑλληνίδα οἰκουμένην ἐν τῷ Εὐξεινῷ Πόντῳ, Σινοπέων ἀποικίαν ἐν τῇ Κόλχων χώρα· ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν ἡμέρας ἀμφὶ τὰς τριάκοντα ἐν
 23 ταῖς τῶν Κόλχων κώμαις· κἀντεῦθεν ὀρμώμενοι ἐλήζοντο τὴν Κολχίδα· ἀγορὰν δὲ παρείχον τῷ στρατοπέδῳ Τραπεζοῦντιοι, καὶ ἐδέξαντό τε τοὺς Ἕλληνας καὶ ξένια ἔδωσαν βοῦς καὶ ἄλφιστα καὶ

enemy were in flight, set up a shout and began to run; and they were the first to reach the summit of the mountain, while following close after them came the Arcadian division of hoplites, under the command of Cleanor of Orchomenus. As for the enemy, once the peltasts began to run they no longer stood their ground, but betook themselves hither and thither in flight.

After accomplishing the ascent the Greeks took up quarters in numerous villages, which contained provisions in abundance. Now for the most part there was nothing here which they really found strange; but the swarms of bees in the neighbourhood were numerous, and the soldiers who ate of the honey all went off their heads, and suffered from vomiting and diarrhoea, and not one of them could stand up, but those who had eaten a little were like people exceedingly drunk, while those who had eaten a great deal seemed like crazy, or even, in some cases, dying men. So they lay there in great numbers as though the army had suffered a defeat, and great despondency prevailed. On the next day, however, no one had died, and at approximately the same hour as they had eaten the honey they began to come to their senses; and on the third or fourth day they got up, as if from a drugging.

From there they marched two stages, seven parasangs, and reached the sea at Trapezus, an inhabited Greek city on the Euxine Sea, a colony of the Sinopeans in the territory of Colchis. There they remained about thirty days in the villages of the Colchians, and from these as a base plundered Colchis. And the Trapezuntians supplied a market for the army, received the Greeks kindly, and gave them oxen, barley-meal, and wine as gifts of

- 24 οἶνον. συνδιεπράττοντο δὲ καὶ ὑπὲρ τῶν πλησίον Κόλχων τῶν ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ μάλιστα οἰκούντων, καὶ ξένια καὶ παρ' ἐκείνων ἦλθον βόες.
- 25 Μετὰ δὲ τοῦτο τὴν θυσίαν ἣν ἠΰξαντο παρεσκευάζοντο· ἦλθον δ' αὐτοῖς ἱκανοὶ βόες ἀποθύσαι τῷ Διὶ σωτήρια¹ καὶ τῷ Ἡρακλεῖ ἡγεμόσυνα καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις θεοῖς ἃ ἠΰξαντο. ἐποίησαν δὲ καὶ ἀγῶνα γυμνικὸν ἐν τῷ ὄρει ἔνθα περ ἔσκηρουν. εἶλοντο δὲ Δρακόντιον Σπαρτιάτην, ὃς ἔφυγε παῖς ὦν οἴκοθεν, παῖδα ἄκων κατακανὼν ξυήλη πατάξας, δρόμου τ' ἐπιμεληθῆναι καὶ τοῦ
- 26 ἀγῶνος προστατῆσαι. ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἡ θυσία ἐγένετο, τὰ δέρματα παρέδοσαν τῷ Δρακοντίῳ, καὶ ἡγεῖσθαι ἐκέλευον ὅπου τὸν δρόμον πεποιηκῶς εἴη. ὁ δὲ δείξας οὐπερ ἐστηκότες ἐτύγγανον Οὗτος ὁ λόφος, ἔφη, κάλλιστος τρέχειν ὅπου ἂν τις βούληται. Πῶς οὖν, ἔφασαν, δυνήσονται παλαίειν ἐν σκληρῷ καὶ δασεῖ οὕτως; ὁ δ' εἶπε· Μᾶλλον
- 27 τι ἀνιάσεται ὁ καταπεσών. ἡγωνίζοντο δὲ παῖδες μὲν στάδιον τῶν αἰχμαλώτων οἱ πλείστοι, δόλιχον δὲ Κρήτες πλείους ἢ ἑξήκοντα,² πάλην δὲ καὶ πυγμὴν καὶ παγκράτιον,³ καὶ καλλὴ θέα ἐγένετο.

¹ σωτήρια Gem., following Cobet: τῷ σωτήρι MSS.

² After ἑξήκοντα the MSS. have ἔθειον: Gem. brackets, following Krüger.

³ After παγκράτιον MS. C has ἕτεροι, which Mar. prints, but regards as corrupt: Gem. reads Ἀρκάδες, following Matthias.

¹ See III. ii. 9.

² The hides of the sacrificial victims, which were to be offered as prizes in the games. *Cp. Iliad*, x 159.

³ The regular short race in the Greek games, corresponding closely to our 220 yards dash.

hospitality. They likewise took part in negotiations with the Greeks in behalf of the near-by Colchians, who dwelt for the most part on the plain, and from these people also the Greeks received hospitable gifts of oxen.

After this they made ready the sacrifice which they had vowed;¹ and a sufficient number of oxen had come to them so that they could pay their thank-offerings to Zeus for deliverance, to Heracles for guidance, and to the other gods according as they had vowed. They instituted also athletic games on the mountain side, just where they were encamped; and they chose Dracontius, a Spartan, who had been exiled from home as a boy because he had accidentally killed another boy with the stroke of a dagger, to look out for a race-course and to act as manager of the games. When, accordingly, the sacrifice had been completed, they turned over the hides² to Dracontius and bade him lead the way to the place he had fixed upon for his race-course. He pointed out the precise spot where they chanced to be standing, and said, "This hill is superb for running, wherever you please." "How, then," they said, "can men wrestle on ground so hard and overgrown as this is?" And he replied, "The one that is thrown will get hurt a bit more." The events were, a stadium race³ for boys, most of them belonging to the captives, a long race,⁴ in which more than sixty Cretans took part, wrestling, boxing, and the pancratium;⁵ and it made a fine spectacle; for

⁴ The δόλιχος seems to have varied from six to twenty-four stadia.

⁵ A combination of boxing and wrestling.

πολλοὶ γὰρ κατέβησαν καὶ ἄτε θεωμένων τῶν
 28 ἐταίρων πολλὴ φιλονικία ἐγίγνετο. ἔθεον δὲ καὶ
 ἵπποι καὶ ἔδει αὐτοὺς κατὰ τοῦ πρανοῦς ἐλάσαν-
 τας ἐν τῇ θαλάττῃ ἀποστρέψαντας πάλιν πρὸς
 τὸν βωμὸν ἄγειν. καὶ κάτω μὲν οἱ πολλοὶ ἐκυλιν-
 δοῦντο· ἄνω δὲ πρὸς τὸ ἰσχυρῶς ὄρθιον μόγις
 βάδην ἐπορεύοντο οἱ ἵπποι· ἐνθα πολλὴ κραυγὴ
 καὶ γέλως καὶ παρακέλευσις ἐγίγνετο.

¹ The altar on which the sacrifices had been offered served as a starting-point for the races.

there were a great many entries and, inasmuch as the comrades of the contestants were looking on, there was a great deal of rivalry. There were horse-races also, and the riders had to drive their horses down the steep slope, turn them around on the shore, and bring them back again to the altar.¹ And on the way down most of the horses rolled over and over, while on the way up, against the exceedingly steep incline, they found it hard to keep on at a walk; so there was much shouting and laughter and cheering.

BOOK V

2 I. ¹ Ἐκ δὲ τούτου ξυνελθόντες ἐβουλεύοντο
περὶ τῆς λοιπῆς πορείας· ἀνέστη δὲ πρῶτος Λέων
Θούριος καὶ ἔλεξεν ὧδε. Ἐγὼ μὲν τοίνυν, ἔφη,
ὦ ἄνδρες, ἀπείρηκα ἤδη ξυσκευαζόμενος καὶ
βαδίζων καὶ τρέχων καὶ τὰ ὄπλα φέρων καὶ
ἐν τάξει ὦν καὶ φυλακὰς φυλάττων καὶ μαχό-
μενος, ἐπιθυμῶ δὲ ἤδη παυσάμενος τούτων τῶν
πόνων, ἐπεὶ θάλατταν ἔχομεν, πλεῖν τὸ λοιπὸν
καὶ ἐκταθεῖς ὡς περ Ὀδυσσεὺς ἀφικέσθαι εἰς
3 τὴν Ἑλλάδα. ταῦτα ἀκούσαντες οἱ στρατιῶται
ἀνεθορύβησαν ὡς εὖ λέγει· καὶ ἄλλος ταῦτα
ἔλεγε, καὶ πάντες οἱ παριόντες. ἔπειτα δὲ
4 Χειρίσοφος ἀνέστη καὶ εἶπεν ὧδε. Φίλος μοί
ἐστίν, ὦ ἄνδρες, Ἀναξίβιος, ναυαρχῶν δὲ καὶ
τυγχάνει. ἦν οὖν πέμψητέ με, οἶομαι ἂν ἐλθεῖν
καὶ τριήρεις ἔχων καὶ πλοῖα τὰ ἡμᾶς ἄξοντα·
ὑμεῖς δὲ εἶπερ πλεῖν βούλεσθε, περιμένετε ἔστ'

¹ The summary prefixed to Book V. (see note on II. i. 1) is as follows: "Ὅσα μὲν δὴ ἐν τῇ ἀναβάσει τῇ μετὰ Κύρου ἐπραξαν οἱ Ἕλληνες, καὶ ἐν τῇ πορείᾳ τῇ μέχρι ἐπὶ θάλατταν τὴν ἐν τῷ Εὐξεινῷ Πόντῳ, καὶ ὡς εἰς Τραπεζοῦντα Ἑλληνίδα πόλιν ἀφίκοντο, καὶ ὡς ἀπέθυσαν ἃ ἤβησαν σωτήρια θύσειν ἔνθα πρῶτον εἰς φίλιαν γῆν ἀφίκοντο, ἐν τῷ πρόσθεν λόγῳ δεδήλωται."

I. ¹ AFTER this they gathered together and proceeded to take counsel in regard to the remainder of their journey; and the first man to get up was Leon of Thurii, who spoke as follows: "Well, I, for my part, gentlemen," he said, "am tired by this time of packing up and walking and running and carrying my arms and being in line and standing guard and fighting, and what I long for now is to be rid of these toils, since we have the sea, and to sail the rest of the way, and so reach Greece stretched out on my back, like Odysseus."² Upon hearing these words the soldiers shouted out that he was quite right; and another man said the same thing, and in fact all who rose to speak. Then Cheirisophus got up and spoke as follows: "I have a friend Anaxibius, gentlemen, and he happens also to be Admiral.³ So if you will send me to him, I presume I can bring back with me ships of war and merchant vessels to carry us; for yourselves, if you really wish to go by sea, wait until I return; and I

¹ Summary (see opposite page): The preceding narrative has described all that the Greeks did on their upward march with Cyrus and on their journey to the shore of the Euxine Sea, how they arrived at the Greek city of Trapezus, and how they paid the thankofferings for deliverance which they had vowed to sacrifice at the place where they should first reach a friendly land.

² See *Odyssey*, v 75-118.

³ Not "an" admiral, for *ναύαρχος* was the distinctive title of the commanding officer of the Lacedaemonian fleet.

ἀν ἐγὼ ἔλθω· ἤξω δὲ ταχέως. ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα οἱ στρατιῶται ἠσθησάν τε καὶ ἐψηφίσαντο πλεῖν αὐτὸν ὡς τάχιστα.

- 5 Μετὰ τοῦτον Ξενοφῶν ἀνέστη καὶ ἔλεξεν ὧδε. Χειρίσοφος μὲν δὴ ἐπὶ πλοῖα στέλλεται, ἡμεῖς δὲ ἀναμενούμεν. ὅσα μοι οὖν δοκεῖ καιρὸς εἶναι
- 6 ποιεῖν ἐν τῇ μονῇ, ταῦτα ἐρῶ. πρῶτον μὲν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια δεῖ πορίζεσθαι ἐκ τῆς πολεμίας· οὔτε γὰρ ἀγορὰ ἔστιν ἰκανὴ οὔτε ὅτου ὠνησόμεθα εὐπορία εἰ μὴ ὀλίγοις τισίν· ἡ δὲ χώρα πολεμία· κίνδυνος οὖν πολλοὺς ἀπόλλυσθαι, ἣν ἀμελῶς τε καὶ ἀφυλάκτως πορεύησθε ἐπὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια.
- 7 ἀλλὰ μοι δοκεῖ σὺν προνομαῖς λαμβάνειν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, ἄλλως δὲ μὴ πλαυᾶσθαι, ὡς σφύζησθε, ἡμᾶς δὲ τούτων ἐπιμελεῖσθαι. ἔδοξε ταῦτα.
- 8 "Ἐπι τοῖνυν ἀκούσατε καὶ τάδε. ἐπὶ λείαν γὰρ ὑμῶν ἐκπορεύονται τινες. οἴομαι οὖν βέλτιστον εἶναι ἡμῖν εἰπεῖν τὸν μέλλοντα ἐξιέναι, φράζειν δὲ καὶ ὅποι, ἵνα καὶ τὸ πλῆθος εἰδῶμεν τῶν ἐξιόντων καὶ τῶν μενόντων καὶ ξυμπαρασκευάζωμεν, εἴαν τι δέη, κἂν βοηθῆσαί τισι καιρὸς ᾗ, εἰδῶμεν ὅποι δεήσει βοηθεῖν, καὶ εἴαν τις τῶν ἀπειροτέρων ἐγχειρῇ ποι, ξυμβουλευόμεν πειρώμενοι εἰδέναι τὴν δύναμιν ἐφ' οὗς ἀν ἴωσιν. ἔδοξε καὶ ταῦτα.
- 9 Ἐννοεῖτε δὲ καὶ τόδε, ἔφη. σχολὴ τοῖς πολε-

shall return speedily." When they heard this, the soldiers were delighted, and voted that Cheirisophus should set sail with all speed.

After him Xenophon rose and spoke as follows: "Cheirisophus, then, is setting off after ships, and we are to stay here; I am going to speak, therefore, of all the things that it seems to me proper for us to be doing while we wait. In the first place, we must obtain provisions from hostile territory, for we neither have an adequate market, nor have we, with some few exceptions, the means wherewith to buy; but the territory is hostile, and hence there is danger that many of you will perish if you set out after provisions carelessly and unguardedly. Rather, it seems to me that you ought to get your provisions in foraging parties and not roam about at random, in order that you may be kept safe, and that we generals ought to have charge of this matter." This proposal was adopted.

"Listen, then, to this further point. Some of you are to journey forth after plunder. Now I think it is best for the man who is going out to inform us of the fact and to tell us also whither he is going, in order that we may know the number of men who are going out and the number who are staying behind; then we can help, if need be, in making preparations, and if there be occasion to go to any one's assistance, we shall know whither we are to go with such assistance, and if a man who is without experience is making an attempt in any quarter, we can advise him by trying to ascertain the strength of those against whom he may be going." This proposal also was adopted.

"Then," he said, "consider this matter also. Our

μίοις λήζεσθαι, καὶ δικαίως ἡμῖν ἐπιβουλεύουσιν· ἔχομεν γὰρ τὰ ἐκείνων· ὑπερκάθηται δὲ ἡμῶν. φυλακὰς δὴ μοι δοκεῖ δεῖν περὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον εἶναι· ἐὰν οὖν κατὰ μέρος φυλάττωμεν καὶ σκοπῶμεν, ἦπτον ἂν δύναιτο ἡμᾶς θηρᾶν οἱ πολέμοιοι.

10 Ἔτι τοίνυν τάδε ὀράτε. εἰ μὲν ἠπιστάμεθα σαφῶς ὅτι ἤξει πλοῖα Χειρίσοφος ἄγων ἱκανά, οὐδὲν ἂν ἔδει ὦν μέλλω λέγειν· νῦν δ' ἐπεὶ τοῦτο ἄδηλον, δοκεῖ μοι πειρᾶσθαι πλοῖα συμπαρασκευάζειν καὶ αὐτόθεν. ἦν μὲν γὰρ ἄγη,¹ ὑπαρχόντων ἐνθάδε ἐν ἀφθουωτέροις πλευσόμεθα· ἂν

11 δὲ μὴ ἄγη, τοῖς ἐνθάδε χρησόμεθα. ὀρῶ δὲ ἐγὼ πλοῖα πολλάκις παραπλέοντα· εἰ οὖν αἰτησάμενοι παρὰ Τραπεζουντίων μακρὰ πλοῖα κατάγοιμεν καὶ φυλάττοιμεν αὐτά, τὰ² πηδάλια παραλυόμενοι, ἕως ἂν ἱκανὰ τὰ ἄξοντα γένηται, ἴσως ἂν οὐκ ἀπορήσαιμεν κομιδῆς οἴας δεόμεθα. ἔδοξε καὶ ταῦτα.

12 Ἐννοήσατε δ', ἔφη, εἰ εἰκὸς καὶ τρέφειν ἀπὸ κοινοῦ οὓς ἂν κατάγωμεν ὅσον ἂν χρόνον ἡμῶν ἔνεκεν μένωσι, καὶ ναῦλον ξυνθέσθαι, ὅπως ὠφελούντες καὶ ὠφελῶνται. ἔδοξε καὶ ταῦτα.

13 Δοκεῖ τοίνυν μοι, ἔφη, ἦν ἄρα καὶ ταῦτα ἡμῖν μὴ ἐκπεραίνηται ὥστε ἀρκεῖν πλοῖα, τὰς ὁδοὺς ἄς

¹ ἄγη Gem., following Eberhard: ἔληγ MSS., Mar.

² αὐτὰ τὰ the inferior MSS., Mar: αὐτὰ the better MSS.: τὰ Gem., following Hartman.

enemies have leisure for plundering and they are plotting against us—quite properly, seeing that we have appropriated what was theirs; and they are posted up above us. So it seems to me that we ought to have guards around our camp; supposing, then, that we take turns in standing guard and keeping watch, the enemy would be less able to harry us.

“Here is still another point to note. If we knew beyond doubt that Cheirisophus would bring back with him an adequate number of ships, there would be no need of what I am about to say; but since in fact that is uncertain, I think we should try to do our part by procuring ships here also. For if he does bring enough, then with those at hand here we shall have a more abundant supply to sail in, while if he does not, we shall use those which we have here. Now I see ships sailing past frequently, and if we can get the Trapezuntians to give us men-of-war and so bring these ships into port and keep them under guard, unshipping their rudders meanwhile, until we get enough to carry us, perhaps we should not lack such means of transport as we need.” This proposal also was adopted.

“Again,” he said, “do you not think it reasonable that we should maintain from our common fund the sailors we thus bring into port for as long a time as they may be waiting for our sakes, and that we should agree upon a price for our passage, so that in conferring a benefit upon us they may also benefit themselves?” This proposal also was adopted.

“Now it seems to me,” he continued, “that if perchance this plan also shall fail to provide us with enough ships, we must turn to the roads, which we

δυσπόρους ἀκούομεν εἶναι ταῖς παρὰ θάλατταν οἰκούσαις πόλεσιν ἐντείλασθαι ὁδοποιεῖν· πείσονται γὰρ καὶ διὰ τὸ φοβεῖσθαι καὶ διὰ τὸ βούλεσθαι ἡμῶν ἀπαλλαγῆναι.

- 14 Ἐνταῦθα δὲ ἀνέκραγον ὡς οὐ δέοι ὁδοιπορεῖν. ὁ δὲ ὡς ἔγνω τὴν ἀφροσύνην αὐτῶν, ἐπεψήφισε μὲν οὐδέν, τὰς δὲ πόλεις ἐκούσας ἔπεισεν ὁδοποιεῖν, λέγων ὅτι θάπτον ἀπαλλάσσονται, ἢν εὐποροὶ γέ-
 15 νωνται αἱ ὁδοί. ἔλαβον δὲ καὶ πεντηκόντορον παρὰ τῶν Τραπεζουντίων, ἣ ἐπέστησαν Δέξιππον Λάκωνα περίοικον. οὗτος ἀμελήσας τοῦ ξυλλέγειν πλοῖα ἀποδρὰς ᾤχετο ἔξω τοῦ Πόντου, ἔχων τὴν ναῦν. οὗτος μὲν οὖν δίκαια ἔπαθεν ὕστερον· ἐν
 16 Θράκῃ γὰρ παρὰ Σεύθῃ πολυπραγμονῶν τι ἀπέθανεν ὑπὸ Νικάνδρου τοῦ Λάκωνος. ἔλαβον δὲ καὶ τριακόντορον, ἣ ἐπεστάθη Πολυκράτης Ἀθηναῖος, ὃς ὅποσα λαμβάνοι πλοῖα κατήγεεν ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον. καὶ τὰ μὲν ἀγώγιμα εἴ τι ἦγον ἐξαιρούμενοι φύλακας καθίστασαν, ὅπως σῶα εἴη, τοῖς
 17 δὲ πλοίοις χρήσαιντο¹ εἰς παραγωγὴν. ἐν ᾧ δὲ ταῦτα ἦν ἐπὶ λείαν ἐξῆσαν οἱ Ἕλληνες, καὶ οἱ μὲν ἐλάμβανον, οἱ δὲ καὶ οὐ. Κλεαίνετος δὲ ἐξαγαγὼν καὶ τὸν ἑαυτοῦ καὶ ἄλλον λόχον πρὸς χωρίον χαλεπὸν αὐτός τε ἀπέθανε καὶ ἄλλοι πολλοὶ τῶν σὺν αὐτῷ.

II. Ἐπεὶ δὲ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια οὐκέτι ἦν λαμβάνειν

¹ χρήσαιντο the better MSS., Gem. : ἐχρήσαντο the inferior MSS., Mar.

¹ The perioeci were the inhabitants of the outlying Laconian towns; they were free, but not Spartan citizens.

² See VII. ii. 31-34.

hear are difficult to travel, and direct the cities that are situated along the sea to repair them; for they will obey, not only from fear, but also from the desire to be rid of us."

At this the soldiers set up a shout, saying that they did not want to go by land. And Xenophon, realizing their foolishness, did not put any proposal regarding this matter to vote, but persuaded the cities to repair the roads voluntarily, urging that they would be rid of the army the more quickly if the roads should be made easy to travel. Furthermore, they got a fifty-oared warship from the Trapezuntians, and put it under the command of Dexippus, a Laconian perioecus.¹ This fellow, however, paying no heed to the duty of collecting vessels, slipped away with his man-of-war and left the Euxine. He did indeed get his deserts afterwards; for while engaged in some intrigue at the court of Seuthes² in Thrace he was killed by Nicander the Laconian. They also got a thirty-oared galley, and put it under the command of Polycrates the Athenian, who brought in to the camp all the merchant vessels that he captured. And they would unload the cargoes, in case the ships had any, and put them under guard, in order to keep these safe and to use the vessels themselves for transport service. While these things were going on, the Greeks were making forays in quest of booty, and while some parties would secure it, others did not. And in one case, when Cleaenetus led forth his own company and another against a difficult stronghold, the commander himself was killed and many of his men besides.

II. The time came when it was no longer possible

ὥστε ἀπαυθημερίζειν ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον, ἐκ
 τούτου λαβὼν Ξενοφῶν ἡγεμόνας τῶν Τραπε-
 ζουντίων ἐξάγει εἰς Δρίλας τὸ ἥμισυ τοῦ στρατεύ-
 ματος, τὸ δὲ ἥμισυ κατέλιπε φυλάττειν τὸ στρα-
 τόπεδον οἱ γὰρ Κόλχοι, ἅτε ἐκπεπτωκότες τῶν
 οἰκιῶν, πολλοὶ ἦσαν ἀθρόοι καὶ ὑπερεκάθητο ἐπὶ
 2 τῶν ἄκρων. οἱ δὲ Τραπεζούντιοι ὀπόθεν μὲν τὰ
 ἐπιτήδεια ῥάδιον ἦν λαβεῖν οὐκ ἦγον· φίλοι γὰρ
 αὐτοῖς ἦσαν· εἰς δὲ τοὺς Δρίλας προθύμως ἦγον,
 ὑφ' ὧν κακῶς ἔπασχον, εἰς χωρία τε ὀρεινὰ καὶ
 δύσβατα καὶ ἀνθρώπους πολεμικωτάτους τῶν ἐν
 τῷ Πόντῳ.
 3 Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦσαν ἐν τῇ ἄνω χώρα οἱ Ἕλληνες,
 ὅποια τῶν χωρίων τοῖς Δρίλαις ἀλώσιμα εἶναι
 ἐδόκει ἐμπιμπράντες ἀπῆσαν· καὶ οὐδὲν ἦν λαμ-
 βάνειν εἰ μὴ ὑς ἢ βοῦς ἢ ἄλλο τι κτήνος τὸ πῦρ
 διαπεφευγός· ἐν δὲ ἦν χωρίον μητρόπολις αὐτῶν·
 εἰς τοῦτο πάντες ξυνερρῆκεσαν· περὶ δὲ τοῦτο
 ἦν χαράδρα ἰσχυρῶς βαθεῖα, καὶ πρόσοδοι χα-
 4 λεπταὶ πρὸς τὸ χωρίον· οἱ δὲ πελτασταὶ προδρα-
 μόντες στάδια πέντε ἢ ἕξ τῶν ὀπλιτῶν, διαβάντες
 τὴν χαράδραν, ὀρῶντες πρόβατα πολλὰ καὶ ἄλλα
 χρήματα προσέβαλλον πρὸς τὸ χωρίον· ξυνεί-
 5 ποντο δὲ καὶ δορυφόροι πολλοὶ οἱ ἐπὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια
 ἐξωρμημένοι· ὥστε ἐγένοντο οἱ διαβάντες πλείους
 ἢ εἰς χιλίους ἀνθρώπους.¹ ἐπεὶ δὲ μαχόμενοι οὐκ
 ἐδύναντο λαβεῖν τὸ χωρίον, καὶ γὰρ τάφρος ἦν

¹ εἰς χιλίους ἀνθρώπους Gem., following a single MS.: δισχί-
 λους ἀνθρώπους the better MSS.: δισχίλιοι ἄνθρωποι Mar.,
 following Matthias.

to obtain provisions and return to the camp on the
 same day. Then Xenophon took some Trapezuntians
 for guides and led forth half the army to the country
 of the Drilae, leaving the other half behind to guard
 the camp—because the Colchians, since they had
 been driven out of their houses, were now gathered
 together in one great body and had taken a position
 on the heights above the camp. For the Trapezun-
 tians would not lead the Greeks to districts from
 which provisions could be secured easily, because
 they were friendly to the people of those districts;
 but they were eager to lead them into the territory
 of the Drilae, at whose hands they were continually
 suffering losses, though their country was mountain-
 ous and difficult to traverse and its inhabitants the
 most warlike of all that dwell upon the Euxine.

When the Greeks had reached the highlands, the
 Drilae set fire to such of their strongholds as seemed
 to them easy to capture, and fell back; and the
 Greeks could secure nothing except an occasional
 pig or ox or other animal that had escaped the fire.
 There was one stronghold, however, which was their
 metropolis, and into this they had all streamed.
 Around it was an exceedingly deep ravine, and the
 approaches to the place were difficult. Now the
 peltasts, who had run five or six stadia ahead of the
 hoplites, crossed this ravine and, seeing quantities of
 sheep and other property, essayed an attack upon
 the stronghold; in their train there followed a con-
 siderable number of spearmen who had set out after
 provisions, so that the party that crossed the ravine
 amounted to more than a thousand men. But when
 they found themselves unable with all their fighting
 to capture the place (for there was a wide trench

περὶ αὐτὸ εὐρεία ἀναβεβλημένη καὶ σκόλοπες ἐπὶ τῆς ἀναβολῆς καὶ τύρσεις πυκναὶ ξύλιναί πεποιημέναι, ἀπιέναι δὴ ἐπεχείρουν· οἱ δὲ ἐπέ-
 6 κειντο αὐτοῖς. ὡς δὲ οὐκ ἐδύναντο ἀποτρέχειν, ἦν γὰρ ἐφ' ἐνὸς ἢ κατὰβασις ἐκ τοῦ χωρίου εἰς τὴν χαράδραν, πέμπουσι πρὸς Ξενοφῶντα· ὁ δὲ ἠγεῖτο
 7 τοῖς ὀπλίταις. ὁ δὲ ἐλθὼν λέγει ὅτι ἔστι χωρίον χρημάτων πολλῶν μεστόν· τοῦτο οὔτε λαβεῖν δυνάμεθα· ἰσχυρὸν γάρ ἐστιν· οὔτε ἀπελθεῖν ῥάδιον· μάχονται γὰρ ἐπεξεληλυθότες καὶ ἡ ἀφοδος χαλεπή.
 8 Ἀκούσας ταῦτα ὁ Ξενοφῶν προσαγαγὼν πρὸς τὴν χαράδραν τοὺς μὲν ὀπλίτας θέσθαι ἐκέλευσε τὰ ὄπλα, αὐτὸς δὲ διαβὰς σὺν τοῖς λοχαγοῖς ἐσκοπεῖτο πότερον εἴη κρεῖττον ἀπαγαγεῖν καὶ τοὺς διαβεβηκότας ἢ καὶ τοὺς ὀπλίτας διαβιβάζειν, ὡς
 9 ἀλόντος ἂν τοῦ χωρίου. ἐδόκει γὰρ τὸ μὲν ἀπαγαγεῖν οὐκ εἶναι ἄνευ πολλῶν νεκρῶν, ἐλεῖν δ' ἂν ᾤοντο καὶ οἱ λοχαγοὶ τὸ χωρίον, καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν ξυνεχώρησε τοῖς ἱεροῖς πιστεύσας· οἱ γὰρ μάντις ἀποδεδειγμένοι ἦσαν ὅτι μάχη μὲν ἔσται,
 10 τὸ δὲ τέλος καλὸν τῆς ἐξόδου. καὶ τοὺς μὲν λοχαγοὺς ἔπεμπε διαβιβάσσοντας τοὺς ὀπλίτας, αὐτὸς δ' ἔμενεν ἀναχωρίσας ἅπαντας τοὺς πελτα-
 11 στάς, καὶ οὐδένα εἶα ἀκροβολίζεσθαι. ἐπεὶ δ' ἤκουσεν οἱ ὀπλίται, ἐκέλευσε τὸν λόχον ἕκαστον ποιῆσαι τῶν λοχαγῶν ὡς ἂν κράτιστα οἴηται

around it, backed by a rampart, and upon the rampart palisades had been set and wooden towers constructed at frequent intervals), their next move was to try to withdraw; and then the enemy pressed hard upon them. To get away by running proved impossible, inasmuch as the descent from the stronghold to the ravine only allowed them to go in single file, and they accordingly sent a messenger to Xenophon, who was at the head of the hoplites. The messenger came and reported: "There is a stronghold full of all kinds of stores. We cannot capture it, for it is strong; and we cannot easily get away, for the defenders rush out and attack us, and the road that leads back is a difficult one."

Upon hearing this message Xenophon led on to the ravine, ordered the hoplites to halt there under arms, and himself crossed over with the captains and looked about to see whether it was better to withdraw the troops that had already crossed, or to lead over the hoplites also, on the presumption that the stronghold could be captured. The withdrawal, it seemed clear, could not be accomplished without the loss of many lives, while the capture of the place, in the opinion of the captains, was feasible, and Xenophon fell in with their opinion, in reliance upon his sacrifices; for the seers had declared that while there would be fighting to do, the issue of the expedition would be fortunate. Accordingly he sent the captains to bring over the hoplites, while he himself remained on the further side, having drawn back the entire body of peltasts and forbidding any one to shoot at long range. Upon the arrival of the hoplites he ordered each of the captains to form his company in the way he thought it would fight most

ἀγωνιείσθαι ἦσαν γὰρ οἱ λοχαγοὶ πλησίον ἀλλήλων οἱ πάντα τὸν χρόνον ἀλλήλοις περὶ ἀνδρα-
 12 γαθίας ἀντεποιοῦντο. καὶ οἱ μὲν ταῦτ' ἐποίουν·
 ὁ δὲ τοῖς πελτασταῖς πᾶσι παρήγγειλε διηγκυ-
 λωμένους ἵνα, ὡς ὁπότεν σημήνη ἀκοντίζειν, καὶ
 τοὺς τοξότας ἐπιβεβλησθαι ἐπὶ ταῖς νευραῖς, ὡς
 ὁπότεν σημήνη τοξεύειν,¹ καὶ τοὺς γυμνήτας λίθων
 ἔχειν μεστὰς τὰς διφθέρας· καὶ τοὺς ἐπιτηδεῖους
 ἐπέμψε τούτων ἐπιμεληθῆναι.

13 Ἐπεὶ δὲ πάντα παρεσκεύαστο καὶ οἱ λοχαγοὶ
 καὶ οἱ ὑπολόχαγοι καὶ οἱ ἀξιούντες τούτων μὴ
 χείρους εἶναι πάντες παρατεταγμένοι ἦσαν, καὶ
 ἀλλήλους μὲν δὴ ξυνεώρων· μνηοειδῆς γὰρ διὰ
 14 τὸ χωρίον ἢ τάξις ἦν· ἐπεὶ δ' ἐπαιάνισαν καὶ ἡ
 σάλπιγξ ἐφθέγγετο, ἅμα τε τῷ Ἐνναλίῳ ἠλέλιξαν
 καὶ ἔθεον δρόμῳ οἱ ὀπλίται, καὶ τὰ βέλη ὁμοῦ
 ἐφέρετο, λόγχοι, τοξεύματα, σφενδόνας, πλείστοι
 δ' ἐκ τῶν χειρῶν λίθοι, ἦσαν δὲ οἱ καὶ πῦρ προσέ-
 15 φερουν. ὑπὸ δὲ τοῦ πλήθους τῶν βελῶν ἔλιπον
 οἱ πολέμοι τὰ τε σταυρώματα καὶ τὰς τύρσεις·
 ὥστε Ἀγασίας Στυμφάλιος καταθέμενος τὰ ὄπλα
 ἐν χιτῶνι μόνον ἀνέβη, καὶ ἄλλον² εἶλκε, καὶ
 ἄλλος ἀνεβεβήκει, καὶ ἐαλῶκει τὸ χωρίον, ὡς
 ἐδόκει.

16 Καὶ οἱ μὲν πελτασταὶ καὶ οἱ ψιλοὶ ἐσδραμόντες
 ἤρπαζον ὅ τι ἕκαστος ἐδύνατο· ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν

¹ After *τοξεύειν* the MSS. have *δεῖσον*: Gem. brackets, following Rehdantz.

² ἄλλον the better MSS., Gem.: ἄλλος ἄλλον the inferior MSS., Mar.

¹ A formation which the captains judged to be the "most effective" (§ 11 above).

effectively; for near one another were the captains who had all the time been vying with one another in valour. This order they proceeded to carry out, and meanwhile Xenophon passed word to all the peltasts to advance with hand on the thong, so that they could discharge their javelins when the signal should be given, to the bowmen to have their arrows upon the string, ready to shoot upon the signal, and to the slingers to have their bags full of stones; and he despatched the proper persons to look after all these things.

When all preparations had been made and the captains, lieutenants, and those among the men who claimed to be not inferior to them in bravery were all grouped together in the line¹ and, moreover, watching one another (for the line was crescent-shaped, to conform with the position they were attacking), then they struck up the paean and the trumpet sounded, and then, at the same moment, they raised the war cry to Enyalios, the hoplites charged forward on the run, and the missiles began to fly all together—spears, arrows, sling-stones, and very many stones thrown by hand, while some of the men employed firebrands also. By reason of the quantity of the missiles the enemy abandoned both their ramparts and their towers, so that Agasias the Stymphalian, putting aside his arms and clad only in his tunic, climbed up, then pulled up another man, and meanwhile another had made the climb, so that the capture of the stronghold was accomplished, as it seemed.

Thereupon the peltasts and the light troops rushed in and proceeded to snatch whatever plunder they severally could; but Xenophon, taking his stand at

- στὰς κατὰ τὰς πύλας ὀπόσους ἐδύνατο κατε-
 κώλυσε τῶν ὀπλιτῶν ἔξω· πολέμοιο γὰρ ἄλλοιο
 17 ἐφαίνοντο ἐπ' ἄκροιο τισὶν ἰσχυροῖο. οὐ πολλοῦ
 δὲ χρόνου μεταξὺ γενομένου κραυγὴ τε ἐγένετο
 ἔνδοιο καὶ ἔφευγον οἱ μὲν καὶ ἔχοντες ἅ ἔλαβον,
 τάχα δὲ τιο καὶ τετρωμένος· καὶ πολλὸς ἦν ὠθι-
 σμός ἀμφὶ τὰ θύρετρα. καὶ ἐρωτώμενοι οἱ ἐκπί-
 πτοντες ἔλεγον ὅτι ἄκρα τέ ἐστὶν ἔνδοιο καὶ οἱ
 18 πολέμοιο πολλοῖο, οἱ παίουσιν ἐκδεδραμηκότες
 τοὺς ἔνδοιο ἀνθρώποιο. ἐνταῦθα ἀνειπεῖν ἐκέλευσε
 Τολμίδην τὸν κήρυκα ἰέναι εἴσω τὸν βουλόμενόν
 τι λαμβάνειν. καὶ ἴενται πολλοῖο εἴσω, καὶ νικῶσι
 τοὺς ἐκπίπτοντας οἱ εἴσωθούμενοι καὶ κατα-
 κλείουσι τοὺς πολεμίοιο πάλιν εἰς τὴν ἄκραν.
 19 καὶ τὰ μὲν ἔξω τῆο ἄκραο πάντα διηρπᾶσθη, καὶ
 ἔξεκομίσαντο οἱ Ἕλληνοιο· οἱ δὲ ὀπλίται ἔθεντο τὰ
 ὄπλα, οἱ μὲν περὶ τὰ σταυρώματα, οἱ δὲ κατὰ τὴν
 20 ὁδὸν τὴν ἐπὶ τὴν ἄκραν φέρουσαν. ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν
 καὶ οἱ λοχαγοῖο ἐσκόπουν εἰ οἶόν τε εἶη τὴν ἄκραν
 λαβεῖν ἦν γὰρ οὕτω σωτηρία ἀσφαλῆο, ἄλλωο
 δὲ πάνυ χαλεπὸν ἐδόκει εἶναι ἀπελθεῖν· σκοπου-
 μένοιο δὲ αὐτοῖο ἔδοξε παντάπασι ἀνάλωτον
 εἶναι τὸ χωρίοιο.
 21 Ἐνταῦθα παρεσκευάζοντο τὴν ἀφοδοιο, καὶ τοὺο
 μὲν σταυροὺο ἕκαστοιο τοὺο καθ' αὐτοὺο διήρουν,
 καὶ τοὺο ἀχρείοιο καὶ φορτία ἔχοντας ἐξεπέμ-
 ποντο καὶ τῶν ὀπλιτῶν τὸ πλῆθος καταλιπόντες
 22 οἱ λοχαγοῖο οἰο ἕκαστοο ἐπίστευεν. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦρ-

the gates, kept out as many as he could of the hoplites, for the reason that other enemies were coming into view upon certain strong heights. After no long interval a shout arose within and men came pouring forth in flight, some carrying with them what they had seized, then soon a number of men that were wounded; and there was a deal of pushing about the gates. When those who were tumbling out were questioned, they said that there was a citadel within, that the enemy were numerous, and that they had sallied forth and were dealing blows upon the men inside. Then Xenophon ordered Tolmides the herald to proclaim that whoever wanted to get any plunder should go in. At that many proceeded to rush into the gates, and the crowd that was pushing in overcame the crowd that was tumbling out and shut up the enemy again in their citadel. So everything outside the citadel was seized and carried off by the Greeks, and the hoplites took up their position, some about the ramparts, others along the road leading up to the citadel. Meanwhile Xenophon and the captains were looking to see whether it was possible to capture the citadel, for in that case their safety was secured, while otherwise they thought it would be very difficult to effect their withdrawal; but the upshot of their consideration was, that the place was quite impregnable.

Then they made preparations for the withdrawal: they tore down the palisades, each division taking those on its own front, and sent off the men who were unfit for service or were carrying burdens, and likewise the greater part of the hoplites, the captains keeping behind only those troops that they each relied upon. But the moment they began to retire,

ξαντο ἀποχωρεῖν, ἐπεξέθεον ἔνδοθεν πολλοὶ γέρρα
καὶ λόγχας ἔχοντες καὶ κνημίδας καὶ κράνη
Παφλαγονικά, καὶ ἄλλοι ἐπὶ τὰς οἰκίας ἀνέβαι-
νον τὰς ἔνθεν καὶ ἔνθεν τῆς εἰς τὴν ἄκραν φερού-
23 σης ὁδοῦ· ὥστε οὐδὲ διώκειν ἀσφαλὲς ἦν κατὰ
τὰς πύλας τὰς εἰς τὴν ἄκραν φερούσας. καὶ γὰρ
ξύλα μεγάλα ἐπερρίπτουν ἄνωθεν, ὥστε χαλεπὸν
ἦν καὶ μένειν καὶ ἀπιέναι· καὶ ἡ νύξ φοβερὰ ἦν
ἐπιούσα.

24 Μαχομένων δὲ αὐτῶν καὶ ἀπορουμένων θεῶν
τις αὐτοῖς μηχανὴν σωτηρίας δίδωσιν. ἐξαπίνης
γὰρ ἀνέλαμψεν οἰκία τῶν ἐν δεξιᾷ ὅτου δὴ ἐνά-
ψαντος. ὡς δ' αὕτη ξυνέπιπτεν, ἔφευγον οἱ ἀπὸ
25 τῶν ἐν δεξιᾷ οἰκιῶν. ὡς δὲ ἔμαθεν ὁ Ξενοφῶν
τοῦτο παρὰ τῆς τύχης, ἐνάπτειν ἐκέλευε καὶ τὰς
ἐν ἀριστερᾷ οἰκίας, αἱ ξύλιναι ἦσαν, ὥστε καὶ
ταχὺ ἐκαίοντο. ἔφευγον οὖν καὶ οἱ ἀπὸ τούτων
26 τῶν οἰκιῶν. οἱ δὲ κατὰ στόμα δὴ ἔτι μόνον
ἐλύπουν καὶ δῆλοι ἦσαν ὅτι ἐπικείσονται ἐν τῇ
ἐξόδῳ τε καὶ καταβάσει. ἐνταῦθα παραγγέλλει
φορεῖν ξύλα ὅσοι ἐτύγγανον ἔξω ὄντες τῶν βελῶν
εἰς τὸ μέσον ἑαυτῶν καὶ τῶν πολεμίων. ἐπεὶ δὲ
ικανὰ ἤδη ἦν, ἐνήψαν· ἐνήπτου δὲ καὶ τὰς παρ'
αὐτὸ τὸ χανάκωμα οἰκίας, ὅπως οἱ πολέμιοι
27 ἀμφὶ ταῦτα ἔχοιεν. οὕτω μόλις ἀπήλθον ἀπὸ τοῦ

there rushed out upon them from within a great crowd of men armed with wicker shields, spears, greaves, and Paphlagonian helmets, while others set about climbing to the tops of the houses that were on either side of the road leading up to the citadel. The result was that even a pursuit in the direction of the gates that led into the citadel was unsafe; for they would hurl down great logs from above, so that it was difficult either to remain or to retire. And the approach of night was also a cause for fear.

In the midst of their fighting and perplexity some god gave to the Greeks a means of salvation. For of a sudden one of the houses on the right, set on fire by somebody or other, broke into a blaze; and as it began to fall in, there began a general flight from the other houses on the right side of the road. The moment Xenophon grasped this lesson which chance had given him, he gave orders to set fire to the houses on the left also, which were of wood and so fell to burning very quickly. The result was that the people in these houses likewise took to flight. It was only the enemy in their front who were now left to trouble the Greeks and manifestly intended to attack them as they passed out and down the hill. At this stage Xenophon sent out orders that all who chanced to be out of range of the missiles should set about bringing up logs and put them in the open space between their own forces and the enemy. As soon as enough logs had been collected, they set fire to them; and meanwhile they set fire also to the houses which were close along the palisade, so that the enemy's attention might be occupied with these. It was in this way that they effected, with difficulty,

χωρίου, πῦρ ἐν μέσῳ ἑαυτῶν καὶ τῶν πολεμίων ποιησάμενοι. καὶ κατεκαύθη πᾶσα ἡ πόλις καὶ αἱ οἰκίαι καὶ αἱ τύρσεις καὶ τὰ σταυρώματα καὶ τὰλλα πάντα πλὴν τῆς ἄκρας.

28 Τῇ δὲ ὑστεραίᾳ ἀπήσαν οἱ Ἕλληνες ἔχοντες τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. ἐπεὶ δὲ τὴν κατάβασιν ἐφοβοῦντο τὴν εἰς Τραπεζοῦντα, πρηνῆς γὰρ ἦν καὶ στενὴ,
29 ψευδενέδραν ἐποίησαντο· καὶ ἀνὴρ Μυσὸς καὶ τοῦνομα τοῦτο ἔχων τῶν Κρητῶν λαβὼν δέκα ἔμενεν ἐν λασίῳ χωρίῳ καὶ προσεποιεῖτο τοὺς πολεμίους πειρᾶσθαι λανθάνειν· αἱ δὲ πέλται αὐτῶν ἄλλοτε καὶ ἄλλοτε διεφαίνοντο χαλκαῖ
30 οὔσαι. οἱ μὲν οὖν πολέμοι ταῦτα διορῶντες ἐφοβοῦντο ὡς ἐνέδραν οὔσαν· ἡ δὲ στρατιὰ ἐν τούτῳ κατέβαινε. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐδόκει ἤδη ἱκανὸν ὑπεληλυθέναι, τῷ Μυσῷ ἐσήμηκε φεύγειν ἀνὰ κράτος·
31 καὶ ὃς ἐξαναστὰς φεύγει καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ. καὶ οἱ μὲν ἄλλοι Κρήτες, ἀλίσκεσθαι γὰρ ἔφασαν τῷ δρόμῳ, ἐκπεσόντες ἐκ τῆς ὁδοῦ εἰς ὕλην κατὰ τὰς
32 νάπας καλινδούμενοι ἐσώθησαν, ὁ Μυσὸς δὲ κατὰ τὴν ὁδὸν φεύγων ἐβόα βοηθεῖν· καὶ ἐβοήθησαν αὐτῷ, καὶ ἀνέλαβον τετρωμένον. καὶ αὐτοὶ ἐπὶ πόδα ἀνεχώρουν βαλλόμενοι οἱ βοηθήσαντες καὶ ἀντιτοξεύοντές τινες τῶν Κρητῶν. οὕτως ἀφίκοντο ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον πάντες σῶοι ὄντες.

III. Ἐπεὶ δὲ οὔτε Χειρίσοφος ἦκεν οὔτε πλοῖα ἱκανὰ ἦν οὔτε τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἦν λαμβάνειν ἔτι,

¹ Which itself means "Mysian"—just as "English" might be the family name of an Englishman.

² See i. 4.

³ i. 10-16.

their withdrawal from the stronghold, by putting fire between themselves and the enemy. And the whole city was burned down, houses, towers, palisades, and everything else except the citadel.

On the next day the Greeks were for returning to camp with their provisions. But inasmuch as they feared the descent to Trapezus (for the way was steep and narrow), they laid a sham ambush: a man of Mysia, who likewise bore the name of Mysus,¹ took ten of the Cretans, stayed behind in a bit of undergrowth, and pretended to be trying to keep out of sight of the enemy; but their shields, which were of bronze, would now and then gleam through the bushes. So the enemy, catching glimpses of these proceedings, were fearful that it was an ambush; and meanwhile the Greek army was making its descent. When it seemed that they had got down far enough, a signal was given to the Mysian to flee at the top of his speed, and he and his companions arose and took to flight. The Cretans of the party (finding, as they said, that they were like to be overtaken in the running) plunged out of the road into the woods, and by tumbling down through the ravines made their escape, but the Mysian held to the road in his flight and kept shouting for help; and they did go to his aid, and picked him up wounded. Then the rescuers in their turn proceeded to retreat, faces to the front, while the enemy kept throwing missiles at them and some of the Cretans replied with their arrows. In this way they all reached the camp safe and sound.

III. And now, seeing that Cheirisophus was not returned,² that they had not an adequate number of ships,³ and that it was no longer possible to get

ἐδόκει ἀπιτέον εἶναι. καὶ εἰς μὲν τὰ πλοῖα τοὺς
 τε ἀσθενούντας ἐνεβίβασαν καὶ τοὺς ὑπὲρ τετρα-
 ράκοντα ἔτη καὶ παῖδας καὶ γυναῖκας καὶ τῶν
 σκευῶν ὅσα μὴ ἀνάγκη ἦν ἔχειν. καὶ Φιλήσιον
 καὶ Σοφαίνετον τοὺς πρεσβυτάτους τῶν στρα-
 τηγῶν εἰσβιβάσαντες τούτων ἐκέλευον ἐπιμελεῖ-
 2 σθαι· οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι ἐπορεύοντο· ἡ δὲ ὁδὸς ὠδο-
 ποιημένη ἦν. καὶ ἀφικνοῦνται πορευόμενοι εἰς
 Κερασοῦντα τριταῖοι πόλιν Ἑλληνίδα ἐπὶ θαλάτ-
 τη Σινωπέων ἀποικον ἐν τῇ Κολχίδι χώρα.
 3 ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν ἡμέρας δέκα· καὶ ἐξέτασις σὺν
 τοῖς ὄπλοις ἐγένετο καὶ ἀριθμὸς, καὶ ἐγένοντο
 ὀκτακισχίλιοι καὶ ἑξακόσιοι. οὗτοι ἐσώθησαν.
 οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι ἀπώλοντο ὑπὸ τε τῶν πολεμίων καὶ
 χιόνος καὶ εἴ τις νόσφ.
 4 Ἐνταῦθα καὶ διαλαμβάνουσι τὸ ἀπὸ τῶν
 αἰχμαλώτων ἀργύριον γενόμενον. καὶ τὴν δεκά-
 την, ἣν τῷ Ἀπόλλωνι ἐξείλον καὶ τῇ Ἐφεσῖα
 Ἀρτέμιδι, διέλαβον οἱ στρατηγοὶ τὸ μέρος ἕκα-
 στος φυλάττειν τοῖς θεοῖς· ἀντὶ δὲ Χειρισόφου
 5 Νέων ὁ Ἀσιναῖος ἔλαβε. Ξενοφῶν οὖν τὸ μὲν
 τοῦ Ἀπόλλωνος ἀνάθημα ποιησάμενος ἀνατίθησιν
 εἰς τὸν ἐν Δελφοῖς τῶν Ἀθηναίων θησαυρὸν καὶ
 ἐπέγραψε τό τε αὐτοῦ ὄνομα καὶ τὸ Προξένου,
 ὃς σὺν Κλεάρχῳ ἀπέθανεν· ξένος γὰρ ἦν αὐτοῦ.
 6 τὸ δὲ τῆς Ἀρτέμιδος τῆς Ἐφεσίας, ὅτ' ἀπῆει σὺν
 Ἀγησιλάῳ ἐκ τῆς Ἀσίας τὴν εἰς Βοιωτοὺς ὁδόν,

provisions, they resolved to depart by land. On
 board the ships they embarked the sick, those who
 were more than forty years of age, the women and
 children, and all the baggage which they did not
 need to keep with them. They put aboard also
 Philesius and Sophaenetus, the eldest of the generals,
 and bade them take charge of the enterprise; then
 the rest took up the march, the road having been
 already constructed.¹ And on the third day of their
 journey they reached Cerasus, a Greek city on the
 sea, being a colony planted by the Sinopeans in the
 territory of Colchis. There they remained ten days;
 and the troops were reviewed under arms and
 numbered, and there proved to be eight thousand
 six hundred men.² So many were left alive. The
 rest had perished at the hands of the enemy or in
 the snow, a few also by disease.

There, also, they divided the money received from
 the sale of the booty. And the tithe, which they
 set apart for Apollo and for Artemis of the Ephesians,
 was distributed among the generals, each taking his
 portion to keep safely for the gods; and the portion
 that fell to Cheirisophus was given to Neon the
 Asinaean. As for Xenophon, he caused a votive
 offering to be made out of Apollo's share of his
 portion and dedicated it in the treasury of the
 Athenians at Delphi, inscribing upon it his own
 name and that of Proxenus, who was killed with
 Clearchus;³ for Proxenus was his friend.⁴ The
 share which belonged to Artemis of the Ephesians
 he left behind, at the time when he was returning
 from Asia with Agesilaus to take part in the campaign

¹ i. 13-14.² ii. v.³ *cp.* iv. viii. 15 and notes thereon.⁴ iii. i. 4-10.

καταλείπει παρὰ Μεγαβύζῳ τῷ τῆς Ἀρτέμιδος νεωκόρῳ, ὅτι αὐτὸς κινδυνεύσων ἐδόκει ἰέναι, καὶ ἐπέστειλεν, ἦν μὲν αὐτὸς σωθῆ, αὐτῷ ἀποδοῦναι ἦν δέ τι πάθῃ, ἀναθεῖναι ποιησάμενον τῇ Ἀρτέμιδι ὃ τι οἴοιτο χαριεῖσθαι τῇ θεῷ.

- 7 Ἐπειδὴ δ' ἔφευγεν ὁ Ξενοφῶν, κατοικοῦντος ἤδη αὐτοῦ ἐν Σκιλλοῦντι ὑπὸ τῶν Λακεδαιμονίων οἰκισθέντος παρὰ τὴν Ὀλυμπίαν¹ ἀφικνεῖται Μεγάβυζος εἰς Ὀλυμπίαν θεωρήσων καὶ ἀποδίδωσι τὴν παρακαταθήκην αὐτῷ. Ξενοφῶν δὲ λαβὼν χωρίον ὠνεῖται τῇ θεῷ ὅπου ἀνείλεν ὁ
8 θεός. ἔτυχε δὲ διαρρέων διὰ τοῦ χωρίου ποταμὸς Σελινούς. καὶ ἐν Ἐφέσῳ δὲ παρὰ τὸν τῆς Ἀρτέμιδος νεῶν Σελινούς ποταμὸς παραρρεῖ. καὶ ἰχθύες τε ἐν ἀμφοτέροις ἔνεισι καὶ κόγχαι ἐν
9 δὲ τῷ ἐν Σκιλλοῦντι χωρίῳ καὶ θήραι πάντων ὅποσα ἐστὶν ἀγρευόμενα θηρία. ἐποίησε δὲ καὶ βωμὸν καὶ ναὸν ἀπὸ τοῦ ἱεροῦ ἀργυρίου, καὶ τὸ λοιπὸν δὲ αἰεὶ δεκατεύων τὰ ἐκ τοῦ ἀγροῦ ὠραῖα θυσίαν ἐποίει τῇ θεῷ, καὶ πάντες οἱ πολῖται καὶ οἱ πρόσχωροι ἄνδρες καὶ γυναῖκες μετεῖχον τῆς ἑορτῆς. παρείχε δὲ ἡ θεὸς τοῖς σκηνοῦσιν ἄλφι-
10 τά, ἄρτους, οἶνον, τραγήματα, καὶ τῶν θυομένων ἀπὸ τῆς ἱερᾶς νομῆς λάχος, καὶ τῶν θηρευομένων δέ. καὶ γὰρ θήραν ἐποιούντο εἰς τὴν ἑορτὴν οἱ τε Ξενοφῶντος παῖδες καὶ οἱ τῶν ἄλλων πολιτῶν,

¹ παρὰ . . . Ὀλυμπίαν Gem. brackets, following Kühner.

¹ In 394 B.C., ending in the hard-fought battle of Coronea, at which Xenophon was present. *cp. Hellenica*, IV. ii. 1-8, iii. 1-21.

against Boeotia,¹ in charge of Megabyzus, the sacristan of Artemis, for the reason that his own journey seemed likely to be a dangerous one; and his instructions were that in case he should escape with his life, the money was to be returned to him, but in case any ill should befall him, Megabyzus was to cause to be made and dedicated to Artemis whatever offering he thought would please the goddess.

In the time of Xenophon's exile² and while he was living at Scillus, near Olympia, where he had been established as a colonist by the Lacedaemonians, Megabyzus came to Olympia to attend the games and returned to him his deposit. Upon receiving it Xenophon bought a plot of ground for the goddess in a place which Apollo's oracle appointed. As it chanced, there flowed through the plot a river named Selinus; and at Ephesus likewise a Selinus river flows past the temple of Artemis. In both streams, moreover, there are fish and mussels, while in the plot at Scillus there is hunting of all manner of beasts of the chase. Here Xenophon built an altar and a temple with the sacred money, and from that time forth he would every year take the tithe of the products of the land in their season and offer sacrifice to the goddess, all the citizens and the men and women of the neighbourhood taking part in the festival. And the goddess would provide for the banqueters barley meal and loaves of bread, wine and sweetmeats, and a portion of the sacrificial victims from the sacred herd as well as of the victims taken in the chase. For Xenophon's sons and the sons of the other citizens used to have a

² Which was probably due to his taking part in the expedition of Cyrus. *cp. III. i. 5.*

οἱ δὲ βουλόμενοι καὶ ἄνδρες ξυνεθήρων· καὶ ἡλί-
σκετο τὰ μὲν ἐξ αὐτοῦ τοῦ ἱεροῦ χώρου, τὰ δὲ
καὶ ἐκ τῆς Φολόης, σῦες καὶ δορκάδες καὶ ἔλαφοι.

- 11 Ἔστι δὲ ἡ χώρα ἢ ἐκ Λακεδαιμόνος εἰς Ὀλυμ-
πίαν πορεύονται ὡς εἴκοσι στάδιοι ἀπὸ τοῦ ἐν
Ὀλυμπία Διὸς ἱεροῦ. ἐν δ' ἐν τῷ ἱερῷ χώρῳ
καὶ λειμῶν καὶ ὄρη δένδρων μεστά, ἱκανὰ σῦς καὶ
αἰγας καὶ βοῦς τρέφειν καὶ ἵππους, ὥστε καὶ τὰ
τῶν εἰς τὴν ἑορτὴν ἰόντων ὑποζύγια εὐωχεῖσθαι.
12 περὶ δὲ αὐτὸν τὸν ναὸν ἄλλος ἡμέρων δένδρων
ἐφυτεύθη ὅσα ἐστὶ τρωκτὰ ὠραία. ὁ δὲ ναὸς ὡς
μικρὸς μεγάλῳ τῷ ἐν Ἐφέσῳ εἴκασται, καὶ τὸ
ξόανον ἔοικεν ὡς κυπαρίττινον χρυσῷ ὄντι τῷ
13 ἐν Ἐφέσῳ. καὶ στήλη ἔστηκε παρὰ τὸν ναὸν
γράμματα ἔχουσα· ΙΕΡΟΣ Ο ΧΩΡΟΣ ΤΗΣ
ΑΡΤΕΜΙΔΟΣ. ΤΟΝ ΕΧΟΝΤΑ ΚΑΙ ΚΑΡ-
ΠΟΤΜΕΝΟΝ ΤΗΝ ΜΕΝ ΔΕΚΑΤΗΝ ΚΑΤΑ-
ΘΥΤΕΙΝ ΕΚΑΣΤΟΥ ΕΤΟΥΣ, ΕΚ ΔΕ ΤΟΥ
ΠΕΡΙΤΤΟΤ ΤΟΝ ΝΑΟΝ ΕΠΙΣΚΕΤΑΖΕΙΝ.
ΑΝ ΔΕ ΤΙΣ ΜΗ ΠΟΙΗΙ ΤΑΤΤΑ ΤΗΙ ΘΕΩΙ
ΜΕΛΗΣΕΙ.

- IV. Ἐκ Κερασοῦντος δὲ κατὰ θάλατταν μὲν
ἐκομίζοντο οἵπερ καὶ πρόσθεν, οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι κατὰ
2 γῆν ἐπορεύοντο. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦσαν ἐπὶ τοῖς Μοσσυνοί-
κων ὀρίοις, πέμπουσιν εἰς αὐτοὺς Τιμησίθεον τὸν
Τραπεζοῦντιον πρόξενον ὄντα τῶν Μοσσυνοίκων,
ἐρωτῶντες πότερον ὡς διὰ φιλίας ἢ διὰ πολεμίας
πορεύονται τῆς χώρας. οἱ δὲ εἶπον ὅτι οὐ
3 διήσοιεν ἐπίστευον γὰρ τοῖς χωρίοις. ἐντεῦθεν

¹ See iii 1.

² Lit. *dwellers in Mossyns*, or wooden towers. See § 26 below.

hunting expedition at the time of the festival, and any grown men who so wished would join them; and they captured their game partly from the sacred precinct itself and partly from Mount Pholöe—boars and gazelles and stags.

The place is situated on the road which leads from Lacedaemon to Olympia, and is about twenty stadia from the temple of Zeus at Olympia. Within the sacred precinct there is meadowland and tree-covered hills, suited for the rearing of swine, goats, cattle and horses, so that even the draught animals which bring people to the festival have their feast also. Immediately surrounding the temple is a grove of cultivated trees, producing all sorts of dessert fruits in their season. The temple itself is like the one at Ephesus, although small as compared with great, and the image of the goddess, although cypress wood as compared with gold, is like the Ephesian image. Beside the temple stands a tablet with this inscription: THE PLACE IS SACRED TO ARTEMIS. HE WHO HOLDS IT AND ENJOYS ITS FRUITS MUST OFFER THE TITHE EVERY YEAR IN SACRIFICE, AND FROM THE REMAINDER MUST KEEP THE TEMPLE IN REPAIR. IF ANY ONE LEAVE THESE THINGS UNDONE, THE GODDESS WILL LOOK TO IT.

IV. Leaving Cerasus, the people who had thus far been conveyed by sea¹ went on as before, while the rest continued their journey by land. When they reached the boundary of the Mossynoecians,² they sent to them Timesitheus the Trapezuntian, who was official representative of the Mossynoecians at Trapezus, and asked whether in marching through their country they were to regard it as friendly or hostile. The Mossynoecians replied that they would not permit them to pass through; for they trusted

λέγει ὁ Τιμησίθεος ὅτι πολέμιοι τούτοις εἰσὶν οἱ ἐκ τοῦ ἐπέκεινα. καὶ ἐδόκει καλέσαι ἐκείνους, εἰ βούλοιντο ξυμμαχίαν ποιήσασθαι· καὶ πεμφθείς ὁ Τιμησίθεος ἦκεν ἄγων τοὺς ἄρχοντας.

4 ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀφίκοντο, συνήλθον οἳ τε τῶν Μοσσυνοίκων ἄρχοντες καὶ οἱ στρατηγοὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων·

5 καὶ ἔλεξε Ξενοφῶν, ἡρμῆνευε δὲ Τιμησίθεος· ὦ ἄνδρες Μοσσυνοῖκοι, ἡμεῖς βουλόμεθα διασωθῆναι πρὸς τὴν Ἑλλάδα πεζῇ· πλοῖα γὰρ οὐκ ἔχομεν. κωλύουσι δὲ οὗτοι ἡμᾶς οὐδὲ ἀκούομεν ὑμῖν πολε-

6 μίους εἶναι. εἰ οὖν βούλεσθε, ἔξεστιν ὑμῖν ἡμᾶς λαβεῖν ξυμμάχους καὶ τιμωρήσασθαι εἴ τί ποτε ὑμᾶς οὗτοι ἠδίκησαν, καὶ τὸ λοιπὸν ὑμῶν ὑπηκό-

7 οὺς εἶναι τούτους. εἰ δὲ ἡμᾶς ἀφήσετε, σκέψασθε πόθεν αὐθις ἂν τοσαύτην δύναμιν λάβοιτε ξύμ-

8 μαχον. πρὸς ταῦτα ἀπεκρίνατο ὁ ἄρχων τῶν Μοσσυνοίκων ὅτι καὶ βούλοιντο ταῦτα καὶ δέ-

9 χοιντο τὴν ξυμμαχίαν. Ἄγετε δὴ, ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν, τί ἡμῶν δεήσεσθε χρῆσασθαι, ἂν ξύμμαχοι ὑμῶν γενώμεθα, καὶ ὑμεῖς τί οἰοίτε ἔσεσθε ἡμῖν

10 ξυμπράξαι περὶ τῆς διόδου; οἱ δὲ εἶπον ὅτι ἱκανοί ἐσμεν εἰς τὴν χώραν εἰσβάλλειν ἐκ τοῦ ἐπὶ θάτερα τὴν τῶν ὑμῖν τε καὶ ἡμῖν πολεμίων, καὶ δεῦρο ὑμῖν πέμψαι ναῦς τε καὶ ἄνδρας οἵτινες ὑμῖν ξυμμαχοῦνται τε καὶ τὴν ὁδὸν ἡγήσονται.

11 Ἐπὶ τούτοις πιστὰ δόντες καὶ λαβόντες ὤχοντο. καὶ ἦκον τῇ ὑστεραία ἄγοντες τριακόσια πλοῖα μονόξυλα καὶ ἐν ἐκάστῳ τρεῖς ἄνδρας, ὧν οἱ μὲν

in their strongholds. Then Timesitheus told the Greeks that the Mossynoecians who dwelt farther on were hostile to these people, and it was decided to summon them and see whether they wanted to conclude an alliance; so Timesitheus was sent to them, and brought back with him their chiefs. When they arrived, these chiefs of the Mossynoecians and the generals of the Greeks met together; and Xenophon spoke as follows, Timesitheus acting as interpreter: "Mossynoecians, we desire to make our way to Greece in safety by land, for we have no ships; but these people, who, as we hear, are your enemies, are trying to block our passage. If you wish, therefore, it is within your power to secure us as allies, to exact vengeance for any wrong these people have ever done you, and to make them henceforth your subjects. But if you dismiss us with a refusal, where, bethink you, could you ever again secure so large a force to help fight your battles?" To these words the chief of the Mossynoecians replied that they desired this arrangement and accepted the alliance. "Well, then," said Xenophon, "what use will you want to make of us if we become your allies, and what assistance will you, in your turn, be able to render us in the matter of our passage through this territory?" They replied: "We are able to invade this land of your enemies and ours from the opposite side, and to send to you here not only ships, but men who will aid you in the fighting and will guide you on your way."

After confirming this agreement by giving and receiving pledges they departed. The next day they returned, bringing with them three hundred canoes, each made out of a single log and each

- 12 δύο ἐκβάντες εἰς τάξιν ἔθεντο τὰ ὄπλα, ὁ δὲ εἷς ἐνέμενε.¹ καὶ οἱ μὲν λαβόντες τὰ πλοῖα ἀπέπλευσαν, οἱ δὲ μένοντες ἐξετάξαντο ὧδε. ἔστησαν ἀνὰ ἑκατὸν μάλιστα οἶον χοροὶ ἀντιστοιχοῦντες ἀλλήλοις, ἔχοντες γέρρα πάντες λευκῶν βοῶν δασέα, εἰκασμένα κιττοῦ πετάλω, ἐν δὲ τῇ δεξιᾷ παλτὸν ὡς ἔξπηχυ, ἔμπροσθεν μὲν λόγχην ἔχον, 13 ὄπισθεν δὲ τοῦ ξύλου σφαιροειδές. χιτωνίσκους δὲ ἐνεδεδύκεσαν ὑπὲρ γονάτων, πάχος ὡς λινοῦ στρωματοδέσμου, ἐπὶ τῇ κεφαλῇ δὲ κράνη σκύτινα οἷάπερ τὰ Παφλαγονικά, κρωβύλον ἔχοντα κατὰ μέσον, ἐγγύτατα τιαροειδῆ· εἶχον δὲ καὶ σαγάρεις 14 σιδηρᾶς. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξῆρχε μὲν αὐτῶν εἷς, οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι ἅπαντες ἐπορεύοντο ἄδοντες ἐν ῥυθμῷ, καὶ διελθόντες διὰ τῶν τάξεων καὶ διὰ τῶν ὄπλων τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐπορεύοντο εὐθύς πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους 15 ἐπὶ χωρίον ὃ ἐδόκει ἐπιμαχώτατον εἶναι. ὠκέϊτο δὲ τοῦτο πρὸ τῆς πόλεως² τῆς Μητροπόλεως καλουμένης αὐτοῖς καὶ ἐχούσης τὸ ἀκρότατον τῶν Μοσσυνοίκων. καὶ περὶ τούτου ὁ πόλεμος ἦν· οἱ γὰρ ἀεὶ τοῦτ' ἔχοντες ἐδόκουν ἐγκρατεῖς εἶναι καὶ πάντων Μοσσυνοίκων, καὶ ἔφασαν τούτους οὐ δικαίως ἔχειν τοῦτο, ἀλλὰ κοινὸν ὄν καταλαβόντας πλεονεκτεῖν.
- 16 Εἶποντο δ' αὐτοῖς καὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων τινές, οὐ

¹ ἐνέμενε Gem., following Breitenbach: ἔμενε MSS., Mar.

² τῆς πόλεως Gem. brackets, following Cobet.

¹ cp. iv. vii. 16 and note thereon.

containing three men, two of whom disembarked and fell into line under arms, while the third remained in the canoe. Then the second group took their canoes and sailed back again, and those who stayed behind marshalled themselves in the following way. They took position in lines of about a hundred each, like choral dancers ranged opposite one another, all of them with wicker shields covered with white, shaggy ox-hide and like an ivy leaf in shape, and each man holding in his right hand a lance about six cubits long, with a spearhead at one end¹ and a round ball at the butt end of the shaft. They wore short tunics which did not reach their knees and were as thick as a linen bag for bed-clothes, and upon their heads leathern helmets just such as the Paphlagonian helmets, with a tuft in the middle very like a tiara in shape; and they had also iron battle-axes. After they had formed their lines one of them led off, and the rest after him, every man of them, fell into a rhythmic march and song, and passing through the battalions and through the quarters of the Greeks they went straight on against the enemy, toward a stronghold which seemed to be especially assailable. It was situated in front of the city which is called by them Metropolis and contains the chief citadel of the Mossynoecians. In fact, it was for the possession of this citadel that the war was going on; for those who at any time held it were deemed to be masters of all the other Mossynoecians, and they said that the present occupants did not hold it by right, but that it was common property and they had seized it in order to gain a selfish advantage.

The attacking party was followed by some of the

- ταχθέντες ὑπὸ τῶν στρατηγῶν, ἀλλὰ ἀρπαγῆς ἕνεκεν. οἱ δὲ πολέμιοι προσιόντων τέως μὲν ἡσύχαζον· ἐπεὶ δ' ἐγγύς ἐγένοντο τοῦ χωρίου, ἐκδραμόντες τρέπονται αὐτούς, καὶ ἀπέκτειναν συχνοὺς τῶν βαρβάρων καὶ τῶν ξυναναβάντων Ἑλλήνων τινάς, καὶ ἐδίωκον μέχρι οὗ εἶδον τοὺς
- 17 Ἕλληνας βοηθούντας· εἶτα δὲ ἀποτραπόμενοι ᾤχοντο, καὶ ἀποτεμόντες τὰς κεφαλὰς τῶν νεκρῶν ἐπεδείκνυσαν τοῖς Ἕλλησι καὶ τοῖς ἑαυτῶν πολε-
- 18 μίοις, καὶ ἅμα ἐχόρευον νόμφ τινὶ ᾄδοντες. οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες μάλα ἤχθοντο ὅτι τοὺς τε πολεμίους ἐπεποιήκεσαν θρασύτερους καὶ ὅτι οἱ ἐξελθόντες Ἕλληνες σὺν αὐτοῖς ἐπεφεύγεσαν μάλα ὄντες συχνοί· ὃ οὐπω πρόσθεν ἐπεποιήκεσαν ἐν τῇ στρατείᾳ.
- 19 Ξενοφῶν δὲ ξυγκαλέσας τοὺς Ἕλληνας εἶπεν· Ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, μηδὲν ἀθυμήσητε ἕνεκα τῶν γεγενημένων· ἴστε γὰρ ὅτι καὶ ἀγαθὸν οὐ μείον
- 20 τοῦ κακοῦ γεγένηται. πρῶτον μὲν γὰρ ἐπίστασθε ὅτι οἱ μέλλοντες ἡμῖν ἡγεῖσθαι τῶ ὄντι πολέμοι εἰσιν οἷσπερ καὶ ἡμᾶς ἀνάγκη· ἔπειτα δὲ καὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων οἱ ἀμελήσαντες τῆς ξὺν ἡμῖν τάξεως καὶ ἱκανοὶ ἡγησάμενοι εἶναι ξὺν τοῖς βαρβάροις ταῦτὰ πράττειν ἅπερ σὺν ἡμῖν δίκην δεδώκασιν ὥστε αὐθις ἠττόν τῆς ἡμετέρας τάξεως ἀπολεί-
- 21 ψονται. ἀλλ' ὑμᾶς δεῖ παρασκευάζεσθαι ὅπως καὶ τοῖς φίλοις οὖσι τῶν βαρβάρων δόξητε κρείττους αὐτῶν εἶναι καὶ τοῖς πολεμίοις δηλώσητε

Greeks, not under orders from their generals, but seeking plunder. As they approached, the enemy for a time kept quiet; but when they had got near the stronghold, they sallied forth and put them to flight, killing a considerable number of the barbarians and some of the Greeks who had gone up the hill with them, and pursuing the rest until they saw the Greeks coming to the rescue; then they turned and fell back, and after cutting off the heads of the dead men displayed them to the Greeks and to their own enemies, at the same time dancing to a kind of strain which they sang. And the Greeks were exceedingly angry, not only because the enemy had been made bolder, but because the Greeks who went to the attack with the barbarians had taken to flight, though in very considerable numbers—a thing which they had never done before in the course of the expedition.

Then Xenophon called the Greeks together and said: "Fellow-soldiers, do not by any means lose heart on account of what has happened; for be sure that a good thing also has happened, no less important than the evil thing. In the first place, you know that those who are to guide us are really enemies to the people whose enemies we also are compelled to be; secondly, and touching our own men, those among them who took little thought of the battle formation we use and got the idea that they could accomplish the same results in company with the barbarians as they could with us, have paid the penalty,—another time they will be less likely to leave our ordered lines. But you must make ready to prove to our friends among the barbarians that you are better men than they, and to show the

ὅτι οὐχ ὁμοίοις ἀνδράσι μαχοῦνται νῦν τε καὶ ὅτε τοῖς ἀτάκτοις ἐμάχοντο.

- 22 Ταύτην μὲν οὖν τὴν ἡμέραν οὕτως ἔμειναν· τῇ δὲ ὑστεραία θύσαντες ἐπεὶ ἐκαλλιερήσαντο, ἀρστήσαντες, ὀρθίους τοὺς λόχους ποιησάμενοι, καὶ τοὺς βαρβάρους ἐπὶ τὸ εὐώνυμον κατὰ ταῦτὰ ταξάμενοι ἐπορεύοντο τοὺς τοξότας μεταξὺ τῶν λόχων ἔχοντες, ὑπολειπομένου δὲ μικρὸν τοῦ στό-
- 23 ματος τῶν ὀπλιτῶν. ἦσαν γὰρ τῶν πολεμίων οἱ εὐζωνοὶ κατατρέχοντες τοῖς λίθοις ἔβαλλον. τούτους ἀνέστελλον οἱ τοξόται καὶ πελτασταί. οἱ δ' ἄλλοι βάδην ἐπορεύοντο πρῶτον μὲν ἐπὶ τὸ χωρίον ἀφ' οὗ τῇ προτεραία οἱ βάρβαροι ἐτρέφθησαν καὶ οἱ ξὺν αὐτοῖς· ἐνταῦθα γὰρ οἱ πολέμοι ἦσαν
- 24 ἀντιτεταγμένοι. τοὺς μὲν οὖν πελταστὰς ἐδέξαντο οἱ βάρβαροι καὶ ἐμάχοντο, ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἐγγύς ἦσαν οἱ ὀπλίται, ἐτρέποντο. καὶ οἱ μὲν πελτασταὶ εὐθὺς εἶποντο διώκοντες ἄνω πρὸς τὴν
- 25 πόλιν, οἱ δὲ ὀπλίται ἐν τάξει εἶποντο. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἄνω ἦσαν πρὸς ταῖς Μητροπόλεως οἰκίαις, ἐνταῦθα οἱ πολέμοι ὁμοῦ δὴ πάντες γενόμενοι ἐμάχοντο καὶ ἐξηκόντιζον τοῖς παλτοῖς, καὶ ἄλλα δόρατα ἔχοντες παχέα μακρά, ὅσα ἀνὴρ ἂν φέροι μόλις, τούτοις ἐπειρῶντο ἀμύνασθαι ἐκ χειρὸς.
- 26 ἐπεὶ δὲ οὐχ ὑφίεντο οἱ Ἕλληνες, ἀλλὰ ὁμόσε ἐχώρουν, ἔφευγον οἱ βάρβαροι καὶ ἐντεῦθεν, λείποντες ἅπαντες ¹ τὸ χωρίον. ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς αὐτῶν

¹ λείποντες ἅπαντες Rehdantz: ἔλειπον (ἔλιπον) ἅπαντες MSS.: λιπόντες ἅπαντες Mar.: ἔλειπον ἅψαντες Gem.

enemy that they are not going to fight against the same sort of men now as the disorderly mass they met before."

It was thus that the Greeks spent that day; but on the next, after obtaining favourable omens from their sacrifices, they took breakfast, formed the companies in column, and began the march, with the barbarians in the same formation posted on the left, the bowmen distributed in the spaces between the companies, and the van of the hoplites a little farther back. For the enemy had some nimble troops who kept running down the hill and pelting the Greeks with stones, and these fellows were held back by the bowmen and peltasts. The rest of the Greek army, proceeding at a walk, advanced first against the stronghold from which the barbarians and those with them had been put to flight on the preceding day; for it was there that the enemy were now drawn up to oppose them. The barbarians did, indeed, meet the attack of the peltasts and engaged them in battle, but when the hoplites got near them, they turned to flight. The peltasts at once made after them and pursued them up the hill to the city, while the hoplites followed along, still keeping their lines. When they were at the top and near the houses of Metropolis, at that moment all the troops of the enemy massed together and did battle; they hurled their lances, and with other spears which they had, so thick and long that a man could only carry them with difficulty, tried to defend themselves in hand to hand fighting. As the Greeks, however, refused to give way, but kept pushing on to close quarters, the barbarians took to flight from that point also, every man of them abandoning the fortress. Their

ὁ ἐν τῷ μόσσυι τῷ ἐπ' ἄκρου ὠκοδομημένῳ, ὃν τρέφουσι πάντες κοινῇ αὐτοῦ μένοντα καὶ φυλάττουσιν, οὐκ ἠθέλεν ἐξελθεῖν, οὐδὲ ὁ ἐν τῷ πρότερον αἰρεθέντι χωρίῳ, ἀλλ' αὐτοῦ σὺν τοῖς μοσσύνοις κατεκαύθησαν.

- 27 Οἱ δὲ Ἕλληες διαρπάζοντες τὰ χωρία ἠύρισκον θησαυροὺς ἐν ταῖς οἰκίαις ἄρτων νενημένων πατρίους,¹ ὡς ἔφασαν οἱ Μοσσύνοικοι, τὸν δὲ νέον σίτον ξὺν τῇ καλάμῃ ἀποκείμενον· ἦσαν δὲ ζεῖαι
- 28 αἱ πλείσται. καὶ δελφίνων τεμάχη ἐν ἀμφορεῦσιν ἠύρισκετο τεταριχενμένα καὶ στέαρ ἐν τεύχεσι τῶν δελφίνων, ᾧ ἐχρῶντο οἱ Μοσσύνοικοι καθάπερ οἱ Ἕλληες τῷ ἐλαίῳ· κάρυα δὲ ἐπὶ τῶν ἀνώγειων ἦν πολλὰ τὰ πλατέα οὐκ ἔχοντα διαφυῆν οὐδεμίαν. τούτων καὶ πλείστῳ σίτῳ ἐχρῶντο ἔψοντες καὶ ἄρτους ὀπτῶντες. οἶνος δὲ ἠύρισκετο ὃς ἄκρατος μὲν ὄξυς ἐφαίνετο εἶναι ὑπὸ τῆς αὐστηρότητος, κερασθεῖς δὲ εὐώδης τε καὶ ἡδύς.
- 30 Οἱ μὲν δὲ Ἕλληες ἀριστήσαντες ἐνταῦθα ἐπορεύοντο εἰς τὸ πρόσω, παραδόντες τὸ χωρίον τοῖς ξυμμαχήσασι τῶν Μοσσυνοίκων. ὅποσα δὲ καὶ ἄλλα παρήσαν χωρία τῶν ξὺν τοῖς πολεμίοις ὄντων, τὰ εὐπροσοδώτατα οἱ μὲν ἔλειπον, οἱ δὲ
- 31 ἐκόντες προσεχώρου. τὰ δὲ πλείστα τοιαῦτα ἦν τῶν χωρίων. ἀπεῖχον αἱ πόλεις ἀπ' ἀλλήλων στάδια ὀγδοήκοντα, αἱ δὲ πλέον αἱ δὲ μείον· ἀναβοῶντων δὲ ἀλλήλων ξυνήκουον εἰς τὴν ἑτέραν ἐκ

¹ πατρίους MSS., Gem. : περυσινῶν Mar., following Suidas.

¹ i. e. the one mentioned above, §§ 14, 23.

king in his wooden tower built upon the citadel, whom all the people jointly maintain and guard in his abiding place there, refused to come forth, as did also the commander of the stronghold¹ which had been captured earlier, so they were burned up where they were, along with their towers.

In plundering the strongholds the Greeks found in the houses ancestral stores, as the Mossynoecians described them, of heaped up loaves, while the new corn was laid away with the straw, the most of it being spelt. They also found slices of dolphin salted away in jars, and in other vessels dolphin blubber, which the Mossynoecians used in the same way as the Greeks use olive oil; and on the upper floors of the houses there were large quantities of flat nuts, without any divisions.² Out of these nuts, by boiling them and baking them into loaves, they made the bread which they used most. The Greeks also found wine, which by reason of its harshness appeared to be sharp when taken unmixed, but mixed with water was fragrant and delicious.

When they had breakfasted there, the Greeks took up their onward march, after handing over the fortress to the Mossynoecians who had helped them in the fighting. As for the other strongholds which they passed by, belonging to those who sided with the enemy, the most accessible were in some cases abandoned by their occupants, in other cases surrendered voluntarily. The greater part of these places were of the following description: The towns were eighty stadia distant from one another, some more, and some less; but the inhabitants could hear one

² i. e. such as walnuts have. Xenophon probably means chestnuts.

- 32 τῆς ἐτέρας πόλεως· οὕτως ὑψηλὴ τε καὶ κοίλη ἢ
 χώρα ἦν. ἐπεὶ δὲ πορευόμενοι ἐν τοῖς φίλοις
 ἦσαν, ἐπεδείκνυσαν αὐτοῖς παῖδας τῶν εὐδαιμόνων
 σιτευτοῦς, τεθραμμένους καρύοις ἐφθοῖς, ἀπαλοῦς
 καὶ λευκοῦς σφόδρα καὶ οὐ πολλοῦ δέοντας ἴσους
 τὸ μῆκος καὶ τὸ πλάτος εἶναι, ποικίλους δὲ τὰ
 νῶτα καὶ τὰ ἔμπροσθεν πάντα ἐστιγμένους ἀνθέ-
 33 μια. ἐζήτουν δὲ καὶ ταῖς ἐταίραις ἃς ἦγον οἱ
 Ἕλληνας, ἐμφανῶς ξυγγίγνεσθαι· νόμος γὰρ ἦν
 οὗτός σφισι. λευκοὶ δὲ πάντες οἱ ἄνδρες καὶ αἱ
 34 γυναῖκες. τούτους ἔλεγον οἱ στρατευσάμενοι βαρ-
 βαρωτάτους διελθεῖν καὶ πλείστον τῶν Ἑλληνι-
 κῶν νόμων κεχωρισμένους. ἐν τε γὰρ ὄχλῳ ὄντες
 ἐποίουν ἄπερ ἂν ἄλλοι ἐν ἐρημίᾳ ποιήσειαν, μόνοι
 τε ὄντες ὅμοια ἔπραττον ἄπερ ἂν μετ' ἄλλων
 ὄντες, διελέγοντό τε αὐτοῖς καὶ ἐγέλων ἐφ' ἑαυτοῖς
 καὶ ὠρχοῦντο ἐφιστάμενοι ὅπου τύχοιεν ὥσπερ
 ἄλλοις ἐπιδεικνύμενοι.

V. Διὰ ταύτης τῆς χώρας οἱ Ἕλληνας, διὰ τε
 τῆς πολεμίας καὶ τῆς φιλίας, ἐπορεύθησαν ὀκτῶ
 σταθμοῦς, καὶ ἀφικνοῦνται εἰς Χάλυβας. οὗτοι
 ὀλίγοι τε ἦσαν καὶ ὑπήκοοι τῶν Μοσσυνοίκων,
 καὶ ὁ βίος ἦν τοῖς πλείστοις αὐτῶν ἀπὸ σιδηρείας.
 2 ἐντεῦθεν ἀφικνοῦνται εἰς Τιβαρηνοῦς. ἡ δὲ τῶν
 Τιβαρηνῶν χώρα πολὺ ἦν πεδινωτέρα καὶ χωρία
 εἶχεν ἐπὶ θαλάττῃ ἦττον ἐρυμνά. καὶ οἱ στρα-
 τηγοὶ ἔχρηζον πρὸς τὰ χωρία προσβάλλειν καὶ

¹ Apparently an outlying tribe of the people whose terri-
 tory the Greeks had previously passed through. *cp.* iv.
 vii. 15 ff.

another shouting from one town to the next, such
 heights and valleys there were in the country.
 And when the Greeks, as they proceeded, were
 among the friendly Mossynoecians, they would
 exhibit to them fattened children of the wealthy
 inhabitants, who had been nourished on boiled
 nuts and were soft and white to an extraordinary
 degree, and pretty nearly equal in length and
 breadth, with their backs adorned with many
 colours and their fore parts all tattooed with flower
 patterns. These Mossynoecians wanted also to have
 intercourse openly with the women who accompanied
 the Greeks, for that was their own fashion. And all
 of them were white, the men and the women alike.
 They were set down by the Greeks who served
 through the expedition, as the most uncivilized
 people whose country they traversed, the furthest
 removed from Greek customs. For they habitually
 did in public the things that other people would do
 only in private, and when they were alone they
 would behave just as if they were in the company of
 others, talking to themselves, laughing at themselves,
 and dancing in whatever spot they chanced to be, as
 though they were giving an exhibition to others.

V. Through this country, both the hostile and the
 friendly portions of it, the Greeks marched eight
 stages, reaching then the land of the Chalybians.¹
 These people were few in number and subject to
 the Mossynoecians, and most of them gained their
 livelihood from working in iron. Next they reached
 the country of the Tibarenians, which was much
 more level and had fortresses upon the seacoast that
 were less strong. The generals were desirous of
 attacking these fortresses, so as to get a little some-

- τὴν στρατιὰν ὀνηθῆναί τι, καὶ τὰ ξένια ἃ ἦκε
 παρὰ Τιβαρηνῶν οὐκ ἐδέχοντο, ἀλλ' ἐπιμεῖναι
 3 κελεύσαντες ἔστε βουλευσάμενοι ἐθύοντο. καὶ
 πολλὰ καταθυσάντων τέλος ἀπεδείξαντο οἱ
 μάντιες πάντες γνώμην ὅτι οὐδαμῇ προσίοιεν οἱ
 θεοὶ τὸν πόλεμον. ἐντεῦθεν δὴ τὰ ξένια ἐδέξαντο,
 καὶ ὡς διὰ φιλίας πορευόμενοι δύο ἡμέρας ἀφί-
 κοντο εἰς Κοτύωρα πόλιν Ἑλληνίδα, Σινωπέων
 ἀποικον, οὐσαν δ' ἐν τῇ Τιβαρηνῶν χώρᾳ.¹
 5 Ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν ἡμέρας τετταράκοντα πέντε
 ἐν δὲ ταύταις πρῶτον μὲν τοῖς θεοῖς ἔθυσαν, καὶ
 πομπὰς ἐποίησαν κατὰ ἔθνος ἕκαστοι τῶν Ἑλ-
 6 λήνων καὶ ἀγῶνας γυμνικούς. τὰ δ' ἐπιτήδει'
 ἐλάμβανον τὰ μὲν ἐκ τῆς Παφλαγονίας, τὰ δ' ἐκ
 τῶν χωρίων τῶν Κοτυωριτῶν· οὐ γὰρ παρείχον
 ἀγοράν, οὐδὲ εἰς τὸ τεῖχος τοὺς ἀσθενούντας
 ἐδέχοντο.
 7 Ἐν τούτῳ ἔρχονται ἐκ Σινώπης πρέσβεις, φο-
 βούμενοι περὶ τῶν Κοτυωριτῶν τῆς τε πόλεως,
 ἣν γὰρ ἐκείνων καὶ φόρον ἐκείνοις ἔφερον, καὶ
 περὶ τῆς χώρας, ὅτι ἤκουον δηουμένην. καὶ ἐλ-
 θόντες εἰς τὸ στρατόπεδον ἔλεγον· προηγόρει δὲ
 Ἑκατόνυμος δεινὸς νομιζόμενος εἶναι λέγειν·
 8 Ἐπεμψεν ἡμᾶς, ὧ ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, ἡ τῶν
 Σινωπέων πόλις ἐπαινέσοντάς τε ὑμᾶς ὅτι νικᾶτε

¹ § 4 in the MSS. is as follows (see translation on opposite page): Μέχρι ἐνταῦθα ἐπέφευγεν ἡ στρατιὰ. πλῆθος τῆς καταβάσεως τῆς ὁδοῦ ἀπὸ τῆς ἐν Βαβυλῶνι μάχης ἄχρι εἰς Κοτύωρα σταθμοὶ ἑκατὸν εἴκοσι δύο, παρασάγγαι ἑξακόσιοι καὶ εἴκοσι, στάδιοι μύριοι καὶ ὀκτακισχίλιοι καὶ ἑξακόσιοι, χρόνον πλῆθος ὀκτὼ μῆνες. This passage is regarded by edd. generally as an interpolation. cp. II. ii. 6.

thing for the army, and accordingly they would not accept the gifts of hospitality which came from the Tibarenians, but, directing them to wait until they should take counsel, proceeded to offer sacrifices. After many victims had been sacrificed all the seers finally declared the opinion that the gods in no wise permitted war. So then the generals accepted the gifts of hospitality, and proceeding as through a friendly country for two days, they arrived at Cotyora, a Greek city and a colony of the Sinopeans, situated in the territory of the Tibarenians.¹

There they remained forty-five days. During this time they first of all sacrificed to the gods, and all the several groups of the Greeks, nation by nation, instituted festal processions and athletic contests. As for provisions, they got them partly from Paphlagonia and partly from the estates of the Cotyorites; for the latter would not provide them with a market, nor would they receive their sick within the walls of the city.

Meanwhile ambassadors came from Sinope, full of fears not only for the city of the Cotyorites (for it belonged to them and its inhabitants paid them tribute), but also for its territory, because they heard it was being laid waste. And coming to the Greek camp they spoke as follows, Hecatonymus, who was regarded as a clever orator, being their spokesman: "Soldiers," he said, "the city of the Sinopeans has sent us, first, to applaud you as Greeks who stand

¹ § 4 (see opposite page): As far as this point the army travelled by land. The length in distance of the downward journey, from the battlefield near Babylon to Cotyora, was one hundred and twenty-two stages, six hundred and twenty parasangs, or eighteen thousand, six hundred stadia; and in time, eight months. [18,600 stadia = c. 2050 English miles.]

- Ἕλληνες ὄντες βαρβάρους, ἔπειτα δὲ καὶ ξυνησθησομένους ὅτι διὰ πολλῶν τε καὶ δεινῶν, ὡς ἡμεῖς ἠκούσαμεν, πραγμάτων σεσωμένοι πάρεστε.
- 9 ἀξιούμεν δὲ Ἕλληνες ὄντες καὶ αὐτοὶ ὑφ' ὑμῶν ὄντων Ἑλλήνων ἀγαθὸν μὲν τι πάσχειν, κακὸν δὲ μηδέν· οὐδὲ γὰρ ἡμεῖς ὑμᾶς οὐδὲν πώποτε ὑπῆρξα-
- 10 μεν κακῶς ποιοῦντες. Κοτυωρίται δὲ οὗτοι εἰσὶ μὲν ἡμέτεροι ἀποικοὶ, καὶ τὴν χώραν ἡμεῖς αὐτοῖς ταύτην παραδεδώκαμεν βαρβάρους ἀφελόμενοι διὸ καὶ δασμὸν ἡμῖν φέρουσιν οὗτοι τεταγμένοι καὶ Κερασούντιοι καὶ Τραπεζούντιοι· ὥστε ὅ τι ἂν τούτους κακὸν ποιήσητε ἢ Σινωπέων πόλις
- 11 νομίζει πάσχειν. νῦν δὲ ἀκούομεν ὑμᾶς εἰς τε τὴν πόλιν βία παρεληλυθότας ἐνίοις σκηνοῦν ἐν ταῖς οἰκίαις καὶ ἐκ τῶν χωρίων βία λαμβάνειν ὧν
- 12 ἂν δέησθε οὐ πείθοντας. ταῦτ' οὖν οὐκ ἀξιούμεν· εἰ δὲ ταῦτα ποιήσετε, ἀνάγκη ἡμῖν καὶ Κορύλαν καὶ Παφλαγόνας καὶ ἄλλον ὄντινα ἂν δυνώμεθα φίλον ποιεῖσθαι.
- 13 Πρὸς ταῦτα ἀναστὰς Ξενοφῶν ὑπὲρ τῶν στρατιωτῶν εἶπεν· Ἡμεῖς δέ, ὦ ἄνδρες Σινωπεῖς, ἠκομεν ἀγαπῶντες ὅτι τὰ σώματα διεσωσάμεθα καὶ τὰ ὄπλα· οὐ γὰρ ἦν δυνατὸν ἅμα τε χρήματα ἄγειν καὶ φέρειν καὶ τοῖς πολεμίοις μάχεσθαι.
- 14 καὶ νῦν ἐπεὶ εἰς τὰς Ἑλληνίδας πόλεις ἦλθομεν, ἐν Τραπεζούντι μὲν, παρείχον γὰρ ἡμῖν ἀγοράν, ὠνούμενοι εἶχομεν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, καὶ ἀνθ' ὧν ἐτίμησαν ἡμᾶς καὶ ξένια ἔδωκαν τῇ στρατιᾷ, ἀντετιμῶμεν αὐτούς, καὶ εἴ τις αὐτοῖς φίλος ἦν τῶν βαρβάρων, τούτων ἀπειχόμεθα· τοὺς δὲ πολε-

victors over barbarians, and, secondly, to congratulate you that you have made your way through many dreadful troubles, as we have heard, in safety to this place. Now we claim, being ourselves Greeks, to receive from you, who are Greeks also, good treatment and no ill; for we, on our side, have never set the example by doing you any manner of harm. These Cotyorites are our colonists, and it was we who gave over to them this land, after we had taken it away from barbarians; therefore they pay us a stated tribute, as do the people of Cerasus and Trapezus; hence whatever harm you may do to these Cotyorites, the city of the Sinopeans regards as done to itself. At present we hear, firstly, that you have made your way into the city by force, some of you, and are quartered in the houses, and, secondly, that you are taking from the estates by force whatever you may need without asking leave. Now these things we do not deem proper; and if you continue to do them, you force us to make friends with Corylas¹ and the Paphlagonians and whomever else we can."

In reply to these words Xenophon, on behalf of the soldiers, rose and said: "For ourselves, men of Sinope, we have come back well content to have saved our bodies and our arms; for it was not possible at one and the same time to gather plunder and to fight with the enemy. As to our doings now, since we have reached Greek cities, we got our provisions in Trapezus by purchase, for the Trapezuntians provided us a market, and in return for the honours they bestowed upon us and the gifts of hospitality they gave the army, we paid them like honours; if any of the barbarians were their friends, we kept our hands off them, while upon their enemies, against

¹ Ruler of Paphlagonia.

15 μίους αὐτῶν ἐφ' οὗς αὐτοὶ ἡγοῦντο κακῶς ἐποιοῦ-
 16 μεν ὅσον ἐδυνάμεθα. ἐρωτᾶτε δὲ αὐτοὺς ὁποίων
 16 τινῶν ἡμῶν ἔτυχον· πάρεισι γὰρ ἐνθάδε οὗς ἡμῖν
 17 ἡγεμόνας διὰ φιλίαν ἢ πόλις ξυνέπεμψεν. ὅποι
 δ' ἂν ἐλθόντες ἀγορὰν μὴ ἔχωμεν, ἂν τε εἰς βάρ-
 βαρον γῆν ἂν τε εἰς Ἑλληνίδα, οὐχ ὕβρει ἀλλὰ
 17 ἀνάγκη λαμβάνομεν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. καὶ Καρδού-
 χους καὶ Ταόχους καὶ Χαλδαίους καίπερ βασι-
 λέως οὐχ ὑπηκόους ὄντας καὶ μάλα φοβεροὺς
 ὁμως¹ πολεμίους ἐκτησάμεθα διὰ τὸ ἀνάγκη
 εἶναι λαμβάνειν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, ἐπεὶ ἀγορὰν οὐ παρ-
 18 εἶχον. Μάκρωνας δὲ καίπερ βαρβάρους ὄντας,
 ἐπεὶ ἀγορὰν οἶαν ἐδύναντο παρῆχον, φίλους τε
 ἐνομίζομεν εἶναι καὶ βία οὐδὲν ἐλαμβάνομεν τῶν
 ἐκείνων.
 19 Κοτυωρίτας δέ, οὗς ὑμετέρους φατὲ εἶναι, εἴ τι
 αὐτῶν εἰλήφαμεν, αὐτοὶ αἰτιοί εἰσιν· οὐ γὰρ ὡς
 φίλοι προσεφέροντο ἡμῖν, ἀλλὰ κλείσαντες τὰς
 πύλας οὔτε εἴσω ἐδέχοντο οὔτε ἔξω ἀγορὰν
 ἔπεμπον· ἠτιῶντο δὲ τὸν παρ' ὑμῶν ἀρμοστήν
 20 τούτων αἴτιον εἶναι. ὃ δὲ λέγεις βία παρελθόντας
 σκηνοῦν, ἡμεῖς ἡξιούμεεν τοὺς κάμνοντας εἰς τὰς
 στέγας δέξασθαι· ἐπεὶ δὲ οὐκ ἀνέωγον τὰς πύλας,
 ἢ ἡμᾶς ἐδέχετο αὐτὸ τὸ χωρίον ταύτη εἰσελθόντες
 ἄλλο μὲν οὐδὲν βίαιον ἐποιήσαμεν, σκηνοῦσι δ' ἐν
 ταῖς στέγαις οἱ κάμνοντες τὰ αὐτῶν δαπανῶντες,
 καὶ τὰς πύλας φρουροῦμεν, ὅπως μὴ ἐπὶ τῷ

¹ ὄντας . . . ὁμως Gem. : ὄντας ὁμως . . . ὄντας MSS., Mar.

whom they would themselves lead us, we wrought
 all the harm we could. Ask them what sort of
 people they found us to be; for the men are here
 present whom the city of Trapezus, out of friendship,
 sent with us as guides. On the other hand, where-
 ever we come, whether it be to a barbarian or to a
 Greek land, and have no market at which to buy,
 we take provisions, not out of wantonness, but from
 necessity. The Carduchians, for example, and the
 Taochians and Chaldaeans were not subjects of the
 King and were exceedingly formidable, yet, even so,
 we made enemies of them because of this necessity
 of taking provisions, inasmuch as they would not
 provide a market. The Macronians, however, pro-
 vided us as good a market as they could, and we
 therefore regarded them as friends, barbarians though
 they were, and took by force not a thing that belonged
 to them.

“As for the Cotyorites, whom you claim as yours, if
 we have taken anything that belonged to them, they
 are themselves to blame; for they did not behave
 toward us as friends, but shut their gates and would
 neither admit us within nor send a market without;
 and they alleged that the governor set over them
 by you was responsible for this conduct. In regard
 to your statement about people making their way
 into the city by force and being quartered there, we
 asked them to receive our sick into their houses; but
 when they refused to open their gates, we went in
 at a point where the place of itself received us; and
 we have done no deed of force save only that our
 sick are quartered in the houses, paying their own
 expenses, and that we are guarding the gates, in

21 ὑμετέρῳ ἀρμοστῇ ὧσιν οἱ κάμνοντες ἡμῶν, ἀλλ' ἐφ' ἡμῖν ἢ κομίσασθαι ὅταν βουλώμεθα. οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι, ὡς ὀράτε, σκηνοῦμεν ὑπαίθριοι ἐν τῇ τάξει, παρεσκευασμένοι, ἂν μὲν τις εὖ ποιῇ, ἀντ' εὖ ποιεῖν, ἂν δὲ κακῶς, ἀλέξασθαι.

22 Ἄ δὲ ἠπειλήσας ὡς ἦν ὑμῖν δοκῆ Κορύλαν καὶ Παφλαγόνας ξυμμάχους ποιήσεσθε ἐφ' ἡμᾶς, ἡμεῖς δὲ ἦν μὲν ἀνάγκη ἢ πολεμήσομεν καὶ ἀμφοτέροις· ἤδη γὰρ καὶ ἄλλοις πολλαπλασίοις ὑμῶν ἐπολεμήσαμεν. ἂν δὲ δοκῆ ἡμῖν καὶ φίλον ποιεῖ-

23 σθαι τὸν Παφλαγόνα—ἀκούομεν δὲ αὐτὸν καὶ ἐπιθυμεῖν τῆς ὑμετέρας πόλεως καὶ χωρίων τῶν ἐπιθαλαττίων—πειρασόμεθα ξυμπράττοντες αὐτῶ ὧν ἐπιθυμεῖ φίλοι γίγνεσθαι.

24 Ἐκ τούτου μάλα μὲν δῆλοι ἦσαν οἱ ξυμπρέσβεις τῷ Ἑκατωνύμῳ χαλεπαίνοντες τοῖς εἰρημένοις, παρελθὼν δ' αὐτῶν ἄλλος εἶπεν ὅτι οὐ πόλεμον ποιησόμενοι ἤκοιεν ἀλλὰ ἐπιδείξοντες ὅτι φίλοι εἰσὶ. καὶ ξενίοις, ἦν μὲν ἔλθητε πρὸς τὴν Σινωπέων πόλιν, ἐκεῖ δεξόμεθα, νῦν δὲ τοὺς ἐνθάδε κελεύσομεν διδόναι ἃ δύνανται· ὀρώμεν γὰρ πάντα

25 ἀληθῆ ὄντα ἃ λέγετε. ἐκ τούτου ξενιά τε ἔπεμπον οἱ Κοτυωρίται καὶ οἱ στρατηγοὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐξένιζον τοὺς τῶν Σινωπέων πρέσβεις, καὶ πρὸς ἀλλήλους πολλά τε καὶ φιλικὰ διελέγοντο τὰ τε ἄλλα καὶ περὶ τῆς λοιπῆς πορείας ἀνεπυθάνοντο ὧν ἑκάτεροι ἐδέοντο.

VI. Ταύτη μὲν τῇ ἡμέρᾳ τοῦτο τὸ τέλος ἐγένετο. τῇ δὲ ὑστεραία ξυνέλεξαν οἱ στρατηγοὶ τοὺς

order that our sick may not be in the power of your governor, but that it may be in our power to get them back when we so wish. The rest of us, as you see, are quartered in the open in our regular formation, all ready, in case one does us a kindness, to return the like, or if it is an injury, to return that.

“As to the threat you uttered, that if you thought best you would enlist Corylas and the Paphlagonians as allies against us, we on our side are quite ready to make war with you both if it be necessary; for we have made war ere now with others who were many times your numbers. But if we think best to make a friend of the Paphlagonian—and we hear that he has a desire for your city and strongholds on the coast—we shall try to prove ourselves his friends by aiding him to accomplish his desires.”

Hereupon Hecatonymus' fellow-ambassadors made it very clear that they were angry with him for the words he had spoken, and one of them took the floor and said that they had not come to make war, but to show that they were friends. “And if you come,” he continued, “to the city of the Sinopeans, we shall receive you there with gifts of hospitality, and now we shall direct the people of this city to give you what they can; for we see that all you say is true.” After this the Cotyorites sent gifts of hospitality, and the generals of the Greeks entertained the ambassadors of the Sinopeans, and they had a great deal of friendly conversation with one another on general matters, while in particular they made such inquiries as each party wished in regard to the rest of the journey.

VI. Such was the end of that day. On the next the generals called an assembly of the soldiers, and

- στρατιώτας, καὶ ἐδόκει αὐτοῖς περὶ τῆς λοιπῆς πορείας παρακαλέσαντας τοὺς Σινωπέας βουλευέσθαι. εἴτε γὰρ πεζῇ δέοι πορεύεσθαι, χρήσιμοι ἂν ἐδόκουν εἶναι οἱ Σινωπεῖς· ἔμπειροι γὰρ ἦσαν τῆς Παφλαγονίας· εἴτε κατὰ θάλατταν, προσδεῖν ἐδόκει Σινωπέων· μόνοι γὰρ ἂν ἐδόκουν ἱκανοὶ εἶναι πλοῖα παρασχεῖν ἀρκούντα τῇ στρατιᾷ.
- 2 καλέσαντες οὖν τοὺς πρέσβεις ξυμβουλευόντο, καὶ ἠξίουσαν Ἕλληνας οὖτας Ἕλλησι τούτῳ πρῶτον καλῶς δέχεσθαι τῷ εὖνους τε εἶναι καὶ τὰ κάλλιστα ξυμβουλεύειν.
- 3 Ἄναστας δὲ Ἑκατόνυμος πρῶτον μὲν ἀπελογήσατο περὶ οὗ εἶπεν ὡς τὸν Παφλαγόνα φίλον ποιήσουσιν, ὅτι οὐχ ὡς τοῖς Ἕλλησι πολεμισόντων σφῶν εἴποι, ἀλλ' ὅτι ἐξὸν τοῖς βαρβάροις φίλους εἶναι τοὺς Ἕλληνας αἰρήσονται. ἐπεὶ δὲ ξυμβουλεύειν ἐκέλευον, ἐπευξάμενος εἶπεν ὧδε.
- 4 Εἰ μὲν ξυμβουλεύοιμι ἃ βέλτιστά μοι δοκεῖ, πολλά μοι καὶ ἀγαθὰ γένοιτο· εἰ δὲ μή, τάναντία. αὐτῇ γὰρ ἡ ἱερὰ ξυμβουλή λεγομένη εἶναι δοκεῖ μοι παρεῖναι· νῦν γὰρ δὴ ἂν μὲν εὖ ξυμβουλεύσας φανῶ, πολλοὶ ἔσονται οἱ ἐπαινοῦντές με, ἂν δὲ
- 5 κακῶς, πολλοὶ ἔσεσθε οἱ καταρώμενοι. πράγματα μὲν οὖν οἶδ' ὅτι πολὺ πλείω ἔχομεν, εἰ κατὰ θάλατταν κομίζησθε· ἡμᾶς γὰρ δεήσει τὰ πλοῖα πορίζειν· ἢν δὲ κατὰ γῆν στέλλησθε, ὑμᾶς
- 6 δεήσει τοὺς μαχομένους εἶναι. ὅμως δὲ λεκτέα ἃ γιγνώσκω· ἔμπειρος γὰρ εἰμι καὶ τῆς χώρας

¹ Hecatonymus alludes to the proverb "Counsel is a sacred thing," i.e. it must be given honestly.

they decided to invite the Sinopeans to join them in deliberating about the rest of their journey. For if they should have to proceed by land, it seemed that the Sinopeans would be useful to them, by virtue of their acquaintance with Paphlagonia; and if they were to go by sea, there was still need, they thought, of the Sinopeans, inasmuch as they were the only people who could provide ships enough for the army. They accordingly invited the ambassadors in and proceeded to take counsel with them, asking them, as Greeks dealing with Greeks, to make a beginning of their kindly reception by showing friendliness and offering the best advice.

Then Hecatonymus rose and, in the first place, defended himself in the matter of his remark that they would make a friend of the Paphlagonian, by saying that he did not mean that his own people would make war upon the Greeks, but rather that despite the opportunity they had to be friends of the barbarians they would choose the Greeks instead. But when they told him to proceed to give some advice, he began with a prayer to the gods as follows: "If I should give the advice which in my judgment is best, may many blessings come to me; otherwise, the opposite. For what men term 'sacred counsel'¹ seems verily to be my portion; since to-day if I be found to have given good counsel, there will be many to praise me, but if it be ill, there will be many among you to curse me. Now I know that we shall have far more trouble if you are conveyed by sea, for upon us will fall the duty of providing the ships; while if you journey by land, upon you will fall the task of doing the fighting. Nevertheless, I must say what I believe; for I am

τῆς Παφλαγόνων καὶ τῆς δυνάμεως. ἔχει γὰρ ἀμφοτέρα, καὶ πεδία κάλλιστα καὶ ὄρη ὑψηλό-
 7 τατα. καὶ πρῶτον μὲν οἶδα εὐθὺς ἢ τὴν εἰσβολὴν ἀνάγκη ποιεῖσθαι· οὐ γὰρ ἔστιν ἄλλη ἢ ἢ τὰ κέρατα τοῦ ὄρους τῆς ὁδοῦ καθ' ἑκάτερά ἐστιν ὑψηλά, ἃ κρατεῖν κατέχοντες καὶ πάνυ ὀλίγοι δύναιτ' ἄν· τούτων δὲ κατεχομένων οὐδ' ἂν οἱ πάντες ἄνθρωποι δύναιτ' ἂν διελθεῖν. ταῦτα δὲ καὶ δείξαιμι ἄν, εἰ μοί τινα βούλοισθε ξυμπέμψαι.
 8 ἔπειτα δὲ οἶδα καὶ πεδία ὄντα καὶ ἰππείαν ἣν αὐτοὶ οἱ βάρβαροι νομίζουσι κρείττω εἶναι ἀπάσης τῆς βασιλέως ἰππείας. καὶ νῦν οὗτοι οὐ παρεγένοντο βασιλεῖ καλοῦντι, ἀλλὰ μείζον φρονεῖ ὁ ἄρχων αὐτῶν.
 9 Ἦν δὲ καὶ δυνηθῆτε τά τε ὄρη κλέψαι ἢ φθάσαι λαβόντες καὶ ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ κρατῆσαι μαχόμενοι τοὺς τε ἰππείας τούτων καὶ πεζῶν μυριάδας πλέον ἢ δώδεκα, ἤξετε ἐπὶ τοὺς ποταμούς, πρῶτον μὲν τὸν Θερμῳδοντα, εὖρος τριῶν πλέθρων, ὃν χαλεπὸν οἶμαι διαβαίνειν ἄλλως τε καὶ πολεμίων πολλῶν ἔμπροσθεν ὄντων, πολλῶν δὲ ὄπισθεν ἐπομένων· δεύτερον δὲ Ἴριν, τρίπλεθρον ὡσαύτως· τρίτον δὲ Ἄλυν, οὐ μείον δυοῖν σταδίων, ὃν οὐκ ἂν δύναισθε ἄνευ πλοίων διαβῆναι· πλοῖα δὲ τίς ἔσται ὁ παρέχων; ὡς δ' αὐτως καὶ ὁ Παρθένιος ἄβατος· ἐφ' ὃν ἔλθοιτε ἄν, εἰ τὸν Ἄλυν διαβαίητε.
 10 Ἐγὼ μὲν οὖν οὐ χαλεπὴν ὑμῖν εἶναι νομίζω

acquainted with both the country of the Paphlagonians and their power. Their country possesses these two things, the fairest plains and the loftiest mountains. And, in the first place, I know at once where you must make your entry: there is no place save where the peaks of the mountains rise high on either side of the road; holding these peaks a mere handful of men could command the pass, and if they are so held, not all the men in the world could effect a passage. All this I could even point out if you should care to send some one to the spot with me. Secondly, I know that they have plains and a cavalry which the barbarians themselves regard as superior to the whole of the King's cavalry. Indeed, only now these Paphlagonians have failed to present themselves when the King summoned them, for their ruler is too proud to obey.

“If you should, after all, find yourselves able not only to seize the mountains, whether by stealth or by anticipating the enemy, but also on the plain to conquer in battle both their cavalry and their more than one hundred and twenty thousand infantry, you will come to the rivers. First is the Thermodon, three plethra in width, which I fancy would be difficult to cross, especially with great numbers of the enemy in front and great numbers following behind; second, the Iris, likewise three plethra wide; third, the Halys, not less than two stadia in width, which you could not cross without boats—and who will there be to supply you with boats?—and similarly impassable is the Parthenius also, to which you would come if you should get across the Halys.

“For my part, therefore, I believe that this journey is not merely difficult for you, but a thing of utter

τὴν πορείαν ἀλλὰ παντάπασιν ἀδύνατον. ἂν δὲ πλέητε, ἔστιν ἐνθένδε μὲν εἰς Σινώπην παραπλεύσαι, ἐκ Σινώπης δὲ εἰς Ἡράκλειαν· ἐξ Ἡρακλείας δὲ οὔτε πεζῇ οὔτε κατὰ θάλατταν ἀπορία· πολλὰ γὰρ καὶ πλοῖά ἐστιν ἐν Ἡρακλείᾳ.

- 11 Ἐπεὶ δὲ ταῦτ' ἔλεξεν, οἱ μὲν ὑπώπτευσον φιλίας ἕνεκα τῆς Κορύλα λέγειν· καὶ γὰρ ἦν πρόξενος αὐτῷ· οἱ δὲ καὶ ὡς δῶρα ληψόμενον διὰ τὴν ξυμβουλήν ταύτην· οἱ δὲ ὑπώπτευσον καὶ τούτοι ἕνεκα λέγειν ὡς μὴ πεζῇ ἰόντες τὴν Σινωπέων τι χῶραν κακὸν ἐργάζονται. οἱ δ' οὖν Ἕλληνες ἐψηφίσαντο κατὰ θάλατταν τὴν πορείαν ποιῆσθαι.
- 12 μετὰ ταῦτα Ξενοφῶν εἶπεν· ὦ Σινωπεῖς, οἱ μὲν ἄνδρες ἤρηνται τὴν πορείαν ἣν ὑμεῖς ξυμβουλεύετε· οὕτω δὲ ἔχει· εἰ μὲν πλοῖα ἔσονται μέλλει ἱκανὰ ὡς ἀριθμῷ ἓνα μὴ καταλείπεσθαι ἐνθάδε, ἡμεῖς ἂν πλέοιμεν· εἰ δὲ μέλλοιμεν οἱ μὲν καταλείψεσθαι οἱ δὲ πλεύσεσθαι, οὐκ ἂν ἐμβάιημεν εἰς τὰ πλοῖα.
- 13 γινώσκουμεν γὰρ ὅτι ὅπου μὲν ἂν κρατῶμεν, δυναίμεθα ἂν καὶ σφῆζεσθαι καὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἔχειν· εἰ δὲ που ἤττους τῶν πολεμίων ληφθησόμεθα, εὐδηλον δὴ ὅτι ἐν ἀνδραπόδων χῶρα ἐσόμεθα.
- 14 ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα οἱ Σινωπεῖς¹ ἐκέλευον πέμπειν πρέσβεις· καὶ πέμπουσι Καλλίμαχον Ἀρκάδα καὶ Ἀρίστωναν Ἀθηναῖον καὶ Σαμόλαν Ἀχαιῖον· καὶ οἱ μὲν ὄχοντο.
- 15 Ἐν δὲ τούτῳ τῷ χρόνῳ Ξενοφῶντι, ὀρώντι μὲν ὀπλίτας πολλοὺς τῶν Ἑλλήνων, ὀρώντι δὲ πελτα-

¹ Σινωπεῖς Gem., following Cobet: πρέσβεις MSS., Mar.

impossibility. If you go by sea, however, you can coast along from here to Sinope, and from Sinope to Heracleia; and from Heracleia on there is no difficulty either by land or by water, for there are ships in abundance at Heracleia."

When he had thus spoken, some of his hearers were suspicious that he spoke as he did out of friendship for Corylas, for he was his official representative at Sinope; others imagined that he even had the idea of obtaining gifts on account of this advice; while still others suspected that the real purpose of his speech was to prevent the Greeks from going by land and so doing some harm to the territory of the Sinopeans. At any rate, however, the Greeks voted to make the journey by sea. After this Xenophon said: "Men of Sinope, my troops have chosen the route which you advise; but the matter stands in this way: if there are to be ships enough so that not so much as one man will be left behind here, we shall set sail; but if the plan should be to let some of us stay behind and others sail, we shall not set foot on the ships. For we know that wherever we hold the upper hand, we should be able both to keep ourselves safe and to obtain provisions; but let us once get caught where we are weaker than the enemy, and it is perfectly clear that we shall be in the position of slaves." Upon hearing these words the Sinopeans told them to send ambassadors. And they sent Callimachus the Arcadian, Ariston the Athenian, and Samolas the Achaean. These men accordingly set out.

At this time, as Xenophon's eyes rested upon a great body of Greek hoplites, and likewise upon

- στὰς πολλοὺς καὶ τοξότας καὶ σφενδονήτας καὶ ἰππέας δὲ καὶ μάλιστα ἤδη διὰ τὴν τριβὴν ἱκανοὺς, ὄντας δ' ἐν τῷ Πόντῳ, ἔνθα οὐκ ἂν ἀπ' ὀλίγων χρημάτων τοσαύτη δύναμις παρεσκευάσθη, καλὸν αὐτῷ ἐδόκει εἶναι χώραν καὶ δύναμιν τῇ Ἑλλάδι
- 16 προσκτήσασθαι πόλιν κατοικήσαντας. καὶ γενέσθαι ἂν αὐτῷ ἐδόκει μεγάλη, καταλογιζομένῳ τότε αὐτῶν πλῆθος καὶ τοὺς περιοικοῦντας τὸν Πόντον. καὶ ἐπὶ τούτοις ἐθύετο πρὶν τιμὴν εἰπεῖν τῶν στρατιωτῶν Σιλανὸν παρακαλέσας τὸν Κύρου
- 17 μάντιν γενόμενον τὸν Ἀμπρακιώτην. ὁ δὲ Σιλανὸς δεδιὼς μὴ γένηται ταῦτα καὶ καταμείνη που ἢ στρατιᾶ, ἐκφέρει εἰς τὸ σπράτευμα λόγον ὅτι Ξενοφῶν βούλεται καταμείναι τὴν στρατιάν καὶ πόλιν οἰκίσαι καὶ ἑαυτῷ ὄνομα καὶ δύναμιν περι-
- 18 ποιήσασθαι. αὐτὸς δ' ὁ Σιλανὸς ἐβούλετο ὅτι τάχιστα εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα ἀφικέσθαι· οὓς γὰρ παρὰ Κύρου ἔλαβε τρισχιλίους δαρεικοὺς ὅτε τὰς δέκα ἡμέρας ἤληθευσε θυόμενος Κύρῳ, διεσεσώκει.
- 19 Ἰῶν δὲ στρατιωτῶν, ἐπεὶ ἤκουσαν, τοῖς μὲν ἐδόκει βέλτιστον εἶναι καταμείναι, τοῖς δὲ πολλοῖς οὐ. Τιμασίῳ δὲ ὁ Δαρδανεύς καὶ Θώραξ ὁ Βοιωτίος πρὸς ἐμπόρους τινὰς παρόντας τῶν Ἡρακλεωτῶν καὶ Σινοπέων λέγουσιν ὅτι εἰ μὴ ἐκποριοῦσι τῇ στρατιᾷ μισθὸν ὥστε ἔχειν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἐκπλέοντας, ὅτι κινδυνεύσει μείναι τοσαύτη δύναμις ἐν τῷ Πόντῳ· βούλεται γὰρ Ξενοφῶν καὶ ἡμᾶς παρακαλεῖ, ἐπειδὴν ἔλθῃ τὰ

a great body of peltasts, bowmen, slingers, and horsemen also, all of them now exceedingly efficient through constant service and all there in Pontus,¹ where so large a force could not have been gathered by any slight outlay of money, it seemed to him that it was a fine thing to gain additional territory and power for Greece by founding a city. It would become a great city, he thought, as he reckoned up their own numbers and the peoples who dwelt around the Euxine. And with a view to this project, before speaking about it to any of the soldiers, he offered sacrifices, summoning for that purpose Silanus the Ambraciot, who had been the soothsayer of Cyrus. Silanus, however, fearing that this thing might come to pass and that the army might settle down somewhere, carried forth to the troops a report that Xenophon wanted them to settle down, so that he could found a city and win for himself a name and power. As for Silanus, his own desire was to reach Greece as quickly as possible; for the three thousand darics, which he had received from Cyrus at the time when he sacrificed for him and had told the truth about the ten days,² he had brought safely through.

When the soldiers heard this report, some of them thought it was best to settle down, but the majority thought otherwise. And Timasion the Dardanian and Thorax the Boeotian said to some Heracleot and Sinopean merchants who were there, that if they did not provide pay for the troops so that they would have provisions for the voyage from Cotyora, there would be danger of that great force remaining in Pontus. "For Xenophon," they went on, "wishes and is urging that as soon as the ships come,

¹ Xenophon uses the term Πόντος both of the Euxine Sea and of the region along its south-eastern coast. See below.

² See I. vii. 18.

20 πλοῖα, τότε εἰπεῖν ἐξαίφνης τῇ στρατιᾷ. "Ἄνδρες, νῦν μὲν ὀρώμεν ὑμᾶς ἀπόρους ὄντας καὶ ἐν τῷ ἀπόπλω ἔχειν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια καὶ οἴκαδε¹ ἀπελθόντας ὀνήσαί τι τοὺς οἴκοι· εἰ δὲ βούλεσθε τῆς κύκλω χώρας περὶ τὸν Πόντου οἰκουμένης ἐκλεξάμενοι ὅποι ἂν βούλησθε κατασχεῖν, καὶ τὸν μὲν ἐθέλοντα ἀπιέναι οἴκαδε, τὸν δὲ θέλοντα μένειν αὐτοῦ, πλοῖα δ' ὑμῖν πάρεστιν, ὥστε ὅπη ἂν βούλησθε ἐξαίφνης ἂν ἐπιπέσοιτε.

21 Ἄκουσαντες ταῦτα οἱ ἔμποροι ἀπήγγελλον ταῖς πόλεσι· ξυνέπεμψε δ' αὐτοῖς Τιμασίων Δαρδανεὺς Εὐρύμαχόν τε τὸν Δαρδανέα καὶ Θώρακα τὸν Βοιωτίον ταῦτὰ ἐροῦντας. Σινωπεῖς δὲ καὶ Ἡρακλεῶται ταῦτα ἀκούσαντες πέμπουσι πρὸς τὸν Τιμασίωνα καὶ κελεύουσι προστατεύσαι λαβόντα χρήματα ὅπως ἐκπλεύσῃ ἡ στρατιά. ὁ δὲ ἄσμενος ἀκούσας ἐν ξυλλόγῳ τῶν στρατιωτῶν ὄντων λέγει τάδε. Οὐ δεῖ προσέχειν μονῆ, ὦ ἄνδρες, οὐδὲ τῆς Ἑλλάδος οὐδὲν περὶ πλείονος ποιεῖσθαι. ἀκούω δὲ τινος θύεσθαι ἐπὶ τούτῳ οὐδ' ὑμῖν λέγοντας. ὑπισχνούμαι δὲ ὑμῖν, ἂν ἐκπλήτε, ἀπὸ νομηνίας μισθοφορὰν παρέξειν κυζικηνὸν ἐκάστῳ τοῦ μηνός· καὶ ἄξω ὑμᾶς εἰς τὴν Τρωάδα, ἔνθεν καὶ εἰμι φυγὰς, καὶ ὑπάρξει ὑμῖν ἡ ἐμὴ πόλις· ἐκόντες γὰρ με δέξονται.

¹ οἴκαδε the inferior MSS., Cobet: ὡς οἴκαδε the better MSS., Gem., Mar.

we should then say all of a sudden to the army: 'Soldiers, now we see that you are without means either to supply yourselves with provisions on the homeward voyage, or to do anything for your people at home when you have got back there; but if you wish to pick out some spot in the country that lies round about the Euxine and put to shore wherever you may wish—he who so desires to go back home and he who so desires to stay behind—here are your ships, so that you could make a sudden attack at whatever point you may wish.'

Upon hearing this statement the merchants carried it back to their cities; and along with them Timasion the Dardanian sent Eurymachus the Dardanian and Thorax the Boeotian to tell the same story. When the Sinopeans and Heracleots heard it, they sent to Timasion and urged him to take in charge, for a fee, the matter of getting the army to sail away. He received this proposal gladly, and when the soldiers were gathered in assembly addressed them as follows: "You ought not, soldiers, to set your thoughts on remaining here, nor to esteem anything more highly than Greece. But I hear that certain people are offering sacrifices over this matter, with not so much as a word to you. Now I promise, in case you set sail from here, to provide you with pay from the first of the month at the rate of a Cyzicene¹ per month to each man; and I will take you to Troas, the place from which I am an exile, and my city will be at your service; for they will receive me willingly.

¹ A gold coin of Cyzicus, an important Greek city on the Propontis. It was equivalent in weight of gold to £1 11s. 1d. or \$7.56; but see note on I. i. 9.

24 ἡγήσομαι δὲ αὐτὸς ἐγὼ ἔνθεν πολλὰ χρήματα λήψεσθε. ἔμπειρος δὲ εἰμι τῆς Αἰολίδος καὶ τῆς Φρυγίας καὶ τῆς Τρωάδος καὶ τῆς Φαρναβάζου ἀρχῆς πάσης, τὰ μὲν διὰ τὸ ἐκείθεν εἶναι, τὰ δὲ διὰ τὸ ξυνεστρατεῦσθαι ἐν αὐτῇ σὺν Κλεάρχῳ τε καὶ Δερκυλίδῃ.

25 Ἀναστὰς αὖθις Θώραξ ὁ Βοιώτιος, ὃς περὶ στρατηγίας Ξενοφῶντι ἐμάχετο, ἔφη, εἰ ἐξέλθοιεν ἐκ τοῦ Πόντου, ἔσεσθαι αὐτοῖς Χερρόνησον χώραν καλὴν καὶ εὐδαίμονα ὥστε ἐξεῖναι¹ τῷ βουλομένῳ ἐνοικεῖν, τῷ δὲ μὴ βουλομένῳ ἀπιέναι οἴκαδε. γελοῖον δὲ εἶναι ἐν τῇ Ἑλλάδι οὐσης χώρας πολλῆς καὶ ἀφθόνου ἐν τῇ βαρβάρων μαστεύειν.

26 ἔστε δ' ἄν, ἔφη, ἐκεῖ γένησθε, κἀγὼ καθάπερ Τιμασίῳν ὑπισχνούμαι ὑμῖν τὴν μισθοφοράν. ταῦτα δὲ ἔλεγεν εἰδὼς ἅ Τιμασίῳνι οἱ Ἡρακλεῶται καὶ οἱ Σινοπεῖς ὑπισχνούντο ὥστε ἐκπλεῖν. ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἐν τούτῳ ἐσίγα.

27 Ἀναστὰς δὲ Φιλήσιος καὶ Λύκων οἱ Ἀχαιοὶ ἔλεγον ὡς δεινὸν εἶη ἰδίᾳ μὲν Ξενοφῶντα πείθειν τε καταμένειν καὶ θύεσθαι ὑπὲρ τῆς μονῆς, εἰς δὲ τὸ κοινὸν μηδὲν ἀγορεύειν περὶ τούτων. ὥστε ἠναγκάσθη ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἀναστῆναι καὶ εἰπεῖν τάδε.

28 Ἐγὼ, ὦ ἄνδρες, θύομαι μὲν ὡς ὁρᾶτε ὅποσα δύναμαι καὶ ὑπὲρ ὑμῶν καὶ ὑπὲρ ἐμαυτοῦ ὅπως ταῦτα τυγχάνω καὶ λέγων καὶ νοῶν καὶ πράττων ὅποια

¹ ἐξεῖναι inserted by Gem., following Cobet: Mar. prefers εἶναι.

Then I myself will lead you to places from which you will get an abundance of wealth. I am acquainted with Aeolis, Phrygia, Troas, and the entire province of Pharnabazus,¹ partly because I come from that region, and partly because I have campaigned there with Clearchus and Dercylidas."²

Next rose Thorax the Boeotian, who was at odds with Xenophon over the generalship of the army, and said that once they got out of the Euxine they would have the Chersonese, a fair and prosperous country, where any one who so desired might dwell, while any who did not desire to do this, might return home. It was ridiculous, he said, when there was plenty of fertile land in Greece, to be hunting for it in the domain of the barbarians. "And until you reach that spot," he continued, "I also, like Timasion, promise you regular pay." All this he said with full knowledge of what the Heracleots and the Sinopeans were promising Timasion for getting the army to sail away. Xenophon meanwhile was silent.

Then Philesius and Lycon the Achaeans rose and said that it was outrageous for Xenophon to be privately urging people to settle down and sacrificing with a view to that plan, while publicly saying not a word about the matter. Thus Xenophon was compelled to rise and speak as follows: "I offer, soldiers, as you see, all the sacrifices I can both on your behalf and my own in order that I may perchance say and think and do such things as will be

¹ Persian satrap of Lesser Phrygia and Bithynia.

² A Spartan general. He had taken part in the Peloponnesian War, and was the commander under whom the Ten Thousand later served.

μέλλει ὑμῖν τε κάλλιστα καὶ ἄριστα ἔσεσθαι καὶ ἐμοί. καὶ νῦν ἐθυόμην περὶ αὐτοῦ τούτου εἰ ἄμεινον εἶη ἄρχεσθαι λέγειν εἰς ὑμᾶς καὶ πράττειν περὶ τούτων ἢ παντάπασι μηδὲ ἄπτεσθαι τοῦ πράγματος. Σιλανὸς δέ μοι ὁ μάντις ἀπεκρίνατο τὸ μὲν μέγιστον, τὰ ἱερά καλὰ εἶναι ἤδει γὰρ καὶ ἐμὲ οὐκ ἄπειρον ὄντα διὰ τὸ ἀεὶ παρεῖναι τοῖς ἱεροῖς· ἔλεξε δὲ ὅτι ἐν τοῖς ἱεροῖς φαίνοιτό τις δόλος καὶ ἐπιβουλή ἐμοί, ὡς ἄρα γιγνώσκων ὅτι αὐτὸς ἐπεβούλευε διαβάλλειν με πρὸς ὑμᾶς. ἐξήνευκε γὰρ τὸν λόγον ὡς ἐγὼ πράττειν ταῦτα διανοοίμην ἤδη οὐ πείσας ὑμᾶς. ἐγὼ δὲ εἰ μὲν ἐώρων ἀποροῦντας ὑμᾶς, τοῦτ' ἂν ἐσκόπουν ἀφ' οὗ ἂν γένοιτο ὥστε λαβόντας ὑμᾶς πόλιν τὸν μὲν βουλόμενον ἀποπλεῖν ἤδη, τὸν δὲ μὴ βουλόμενον, ἐπεὶ κτήσαιοτο ἱκανὰ ὥστε καὶ τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ οἰκείους ὠφελῆσαι τι.

31 ἐπεὶ δὲ ὁρῶ ὑμῖν καὶ τὰ πλοῖα πέμποντας Ἡρακλεώτας καὶ Σινοπέας ὥστε ἐκπλεῖν, καὶ μισθὸν ὑπισχνουμένους ὑμῖν ἄνδρας ἀπὸ νομηγίας, καλὸν μοι δοκεῖ εἶναι σφζομένους ἔνθα βουλόμεθα μισθὸν τῆς σωτηρίας λαμβάνειν, καὶ αὐτὸς τε παύομαι ἐκείνης τῆς διανοίας, καὶ ὅποσοι πρὸς ἐμὲ προσῆσαν λέγοντες ὡς χρὴ ταῦτα πράττειν, ἀναπαύεσθαι φημι χρῆναι.

32 Οὕτω γὰρ γιγνώσκω· ὁμοῦ μὲν ὄντες πολλοὶ ὥσπερ νυνὶ δοκεῖτε ἂν μοι καὶ ἔντιμοι εἶναι καὶ ἔχειν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια· ἐν γὰρ τῷ κρατεῖν ἔστι καὶ

fairest and best both for you and me. And in the present case I was sacrificing for guidance on this point only, whether it was better to begin to speak before you and to act regarding this project, or not to touch the matter at all. Now Silanus, the soothsayer, answered me in respect to the main issue that the omens were favourable (for he knew well enough that I was not unacquainted with divination, from being always present at the sacrifices); but he said that there appeared in the omens a kind of fraud and plot against me, manifestly because he knew that he was himself plotting to traduce me before you. For he spread abroad the report that I was intending to do these things at once, without getting your consent. Now if I saw that you were without resources, I should be looking about for a plan by which you might get possession of a city, with the provision that afterwards he who chose might sail back home at once, while he who did not wish to go at once might return after he had accumulated enough to bestow a little something upon his people at home. But since, in fact, I see that the Heracleots and Sinopeans are sending you the ships in which to sail away, and that men are promising you pay from the first of the month, it seems to me it is a fine thing to be carried safely where we want to go and at the same time to receive pay for our preservation; therefore I renounce that other project for myself, and I say, to all those who have come to me and expressed the view that it ought to be carried out, that they also should renounce it.

“For I hold this opinion: standing together and in force, as you are now, I think you will be held in honour and will have provisions, for in strength lies

τὸ λαμβάνειν τὰ τῶν ἡττόνων διασπασθέντες
 δ' ἂν καὶ κατὰ μικρὰ γενομένης τῆς δυνάμεως
 οὔτ' ἂν τροφήν δύνασθε λαμβάνειν οὔτε χαίροντες
 33 ἂν ἀπαλλάξαιτε. δοκεῖ οὖν μοι ἄπερ ὑμῖν, ἐκπο-
 ρεύεσθαι εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα, καὶ εἴαν τις μέντοι
 ἀπολιπὼν ληφθῆ πρὶν ἐν ἀσφαλεῖ εἶναι πᾶν τὸ
 στράτευμα, κρίνεσθαι αὐτὸν ὡς ἀδικοῦντα. καὶ
 ὄτω δοκεῖ, ἔφη, ταῦτα, ἀράτω τὴν χεῖρα. ἀνέ-
 τειναν ἅπαντες.

34 Ὁ δὲ Σιλαυδὸς ἐβόα, καὶ ἐπεχείρει λέγειν ὡς
 δίκαιον εἶη ἀπιέναι τὸν βουλόμενον. οἱ δὲ στρα-
 τιῶται οὐκ ἠνείχοντο, ἀλλ' ἠπέιλουν αὐτῷ ὅτι εἰ
 λήψονται ἀποδιδράσκοντα, τὴν δίκην ἐπιθήσοιεν.

35 ἐντεῦθεν ἐπεὶ ἔγνωσαν οἱ Ἡρακλεῶται ὅτι ἐκπλεῖν
 δεδομένον εἶη καὶ Ξενοφῶν αὐτὸς ἐπεψηφικῶς
 εἶη, τὰ μὲν πλοῖα πέμπουσι, τὰ δὲ χρήματα ἂ
 ὑπέσχοντο Τιμασίῳ καὶ Θώρακι ἐψευσμένοι

36 ἦσαν. ἐνταῦθα δὲ ἐκπεπληγμένοι ἦσαν καὶ ἐδε-
 δέεσαν τὴν στρατιὰν οἱ τὴν μισθοφορὰν ὑπεσχη-
 μένοι. παραλαβόντες οὖν οὗτοι καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους
 στρατηγούς οἷς ἀνεκεκοίνωντο ἂ πρόσθεν ἔπρατ-
 τον, πάντες δ' ἦσαν πλὴν Νέωνος τοῦ Ἀσιναίου,
 ὃς Χειρισόφῳ ὑπεστρατήγει, Χειρισόφος δὲ οὔπω
 παρῆν, ἔρχονται πρὸς Ξενοφῶντα, καὶ λέγουσιν
 ὅτι μεταμέλοι αὐτοῖς, καὶ δοκοῖη κράτιστον εἶναι
 πλεῖν εἰς Φᾶσιον, ἐπεὶ πλοῖα ἔστι, καὶ κατασχεῖν

37 τὴν Φασιανῶν χώραν. Αἰήτου δὲ υἱοῦς ἐτύγγανε
 βασιλεύων αὐτῶν. Ξενοφῶν δὲ ἀπεκρίνατο ὅτι

the opportunity to wrest away the possessions of the weaker; but let yourselves get separated and your force broken up into small parts, and you would neither be able to obtain food to live on nor would you come off unharmed. I think, therefore, just as you do, that we should set out for Greece, and that if it does come to pass that any man is caught deserting before the entire army is in a place of safety, he should be brought to trial as a wrong-doer. And whoever is of this opinion," he continued, "let him raise his hand." Up went every hand.

Silanus, however, began shouting, and attempted to say that it was fair for any one who so chose to leave the army. But the soldiers would not allow him to speak, and they threatened him that as surely as they caught him running away, they would inflict due punishment upon him. After that, when the Heracleots learned that it had been voted to sail away, and that Xenophon himself had put the question to vote, they did send the ships, but in the matter of the money they had promised to Timasion and Thorax they turned out to be deceivers. Consequently the men who had promised the pay were panic-stricken, and stood in fear of the army. They therefore took with them the other generals to whom they had communicated their earlier doings—namely, all the generals except Neon the Asinaean, who was acting as lieutenant for Cheirisophus because Cheirisophus had not yet returned—and came to Xenophon, with the message that they had changed their minds and thought it was best to sail to the Phasis, inasmuch as there were ships at hand, and seize the land of the Phasians. Their king, as it chanced, was a grandson of Aetes. Xenophon

οὐδὲν ἂν τούτων εἴποι εἰς τὴν στρατιάν· ὑμεῖς δὲ
 ξυλλέξαντες, ἔφη, εἰ βούλεσθε, λέγετε. ἐνταῦθα
 ἀποδείκνυται Τιμασίῳ ὁ Δαρδανεύς γνώμην οὐκ
 ἐκκλησιάζειν ἀλλὰ τοὺς αὐτοῦ ἕκαστον λοχαγοῦς
 πρῶτον πειρᾶσθαι πείθειν. καὶ ἀπελθόντες ταῦτ'
 ἐποιοῦν.

VII. Ταῦτα οὖν οἱ στρατιῶται ἀνεπύθοντο
 παραπτόμενα. καὶ ὁ Νέων λέγει ὡς Ξενοφῶν
 ἀναπεπεικῶς τοὺς ἄλλους στρατηγοὺς διανοεῖται
 ἄγειν τοὺς στρατιώτας ἐξαπατήσας πάλιν εἰς
 2 Φᾶσιν. ἀκούσαντες δ' οἱ στρατιῶται χαλεπῶς
 ἔφερον, καὶ ξύλλογοι ἐγίνοντο καὶ κύκλοι ξυνί-
 σταντο καὶ μάλα φοβεροὶ ἦσαν μὴ ποιήσειαν οἷα
 καὶ τοὺς τῶν Κόλχων κήρυκας ἐποίησαν καὶ τοὺς
 3 ἀγορανόμους. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἤσθάνετο Ξενοφῶν, ἔδοξεν
 αὐτῷ ὡς τάχιστα ξυναγαγεῖν αὐτῶν ἀγοράν, καὶ
 μὴ ἑᾶσαι ξυλληγῆναι αὐτομάτους· καὶ ἐκέλευσε
 4 τὸν κήρυκα ξυλλέξαι ἀγοράν. οἱ δ' ἐπεὶ τοῦ
 κήρυκος ἤκουσαν, ξυνέδραμον καὶ μάλα ἐτοίμως.
 ἐνταῦθα Ξενοφῶν τῶν μὲν στρατηγῶν οὐ κατ-
 ηγόρει, ὅτι ἦλθον πρὸς αὐτόν, λέγει δὲ ὧδε.
 5 Ἄκούω τινὰ διαβάλλειν, ὦ ἄνδρες, ἐμὲ ὡς
 ἐγὼ ἄρα ἐξαπατήσας ὑμᾶς μέλλω ἄγειν εἰς Φᾶσιν.
 ἀκούσατε οὖν μου πρὸς θεῶν, καὶ ἔαν μὲν ἐγὼ
 φαίνωμαι ἀδικεῖν, οὐ χρὴ με ἐνθένδε ἀπελθεῖν
 πρὶν ἂν δῶ δίκην· ἂν δ' ὑμῖν φαίνωνται ἀδικεῖν
 οἱ ἐμὲ διαβάλλοντες, οὕτως αὐτοῖς χρῆσθαι ὥσπερ

¹ As described by Xenophon in the following speech, §§ 13 ff.

replied that he would not say a word to the army about this plan; "but," he went on, "gather the men together and speak to them yourselves, if you wish." Then Timasion the Dardanian declared it as his opinion that they should not hold an assembly, but that each general should first endeavour to persuade his own captains. So they went away and set about doing this.

VII. The soldiers, accordingly, learned by inquiry that this plan was being agitated. And Neon said that Xenophon had won over the other generals and was intending to deceive the soldiers and lead them back to the Phasis. Upon hearing these words the soldiers were exceedingly angry; meetings were held, groups of them collected, and it was greatly to be feared that they would do the sort of things they had done to the heralds of the Colchians and the market clerks.¹ When Xenophon became aware of the situation, he decided to call an assembly of the men as speedily as possible and not to allow them to gather of their own accord; so he directed the herald to call an assembly. And as soon as the soldiers heard the herald, they rushed together with the utmost readiness. Then Xenophon, without mentioning against the generals the matter of their visit to him, spoke as follows:

"I hear, soldiers, that some one is bringing a charge against me, namely, that I am going to deceive you and lead you to the Phasis. In the name of the gods, then, give ear to my words, and if it appears that I am guilty of wrong, I ought not to leave this spot without paying the penalty; but if it appears to you that my accusers are guilty of wrong, they ought to be dealt with in such manner

- 6 ἄξιον. ὑμεῖς δέ, ἔφη, ἴστε δήπου ὅθεν ἥλιος ἀνίσχει καὶ ὅπου δύεται, καὶ ὅτι ἐὰν μὲν τις εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα μέλλῃ ἵέναι, πρὸς ἑσπέραν δεῖ πορεύεσθαι· ἦν δέ τις βούληται εἰς τοὺς βαρβάρους, τοῦμπαλιν πρὸς ἕω. ἔστιν οὖν ὅστις τοῦτο ἀνδύναίτο ὑμᾶς ἐξαπατήσαι ὡς ἥλιος ἐνθεν μὲν ἀνίσχει, δύεται δὲ ἐνταῦθα, ἐνθα δὲ δύεται, ἀνίσχει
- 7 δ' ἐντεῦθεν; ἀλλὰ μὴν καὶ τοῦτό γε ἐπίστασθε ὅτι βορέας μὲν ἔξω τοῦ Πόντου εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα φέρει, νότος δὲ εἴσω εἰς Φᾶσιν, καὶ λέγεται, ὅταν βορρᾶς πνέῃ, ὡς καλοὶ πλοῖοὶ εἰσὶν εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα. τοῦτ' οὖν ἔστιν ὅπως τις ἀν' ὑμᾶς ἐξαπατήσαι
- 8 ὥστε ἐμβαίνειν ὁπόταν νότος πνέῃ; ἀλλὰ γὰρ ὁπόταν γαλήνη ἢ ἐμβιβῶ. οὐκοῦν ἐγὼ μὲν ἐν ἐνὶ πλοίῳ πλεύσομαι, ὑμεῖς δὲ τοῦλάχιστον ἐν ἑκατόν. πῶς ἀν' οὖν ἐγὼ ἢ βιασαίμην ὑμᾶς ξὺν ἐμοὶ πλεῖν μὴ βουλομένους ἢ ἐξαπατήσας ἄγοιμι;
- 9 ποιῶ δ' ὑμᾶς ἐξαπατηλέντας καὶ γοητευθέντας ὑπ' ἐμοῦ ἦκειν εἰς Φᾶσιν· καὶ δὴ ἀποβαίνομεν εἰς τὴν χώραν· γνῶσεσθε δήπου ὅτι οὐκ ἐν τῇ Ἑλλάδι ἐστέ· καὶ ἐγὼ μὲν ἔσομαι ὁ ἐξηπατηκῶς εἰς, ὑμεῖς δὲ οἱ ἐξηπατημένοι ἐγγὺς μυρίων ἔχοντες ὅπλα. πῶς ἀν' οὖν ἀνὴρ μᾶλλον δοίῃ δίκην ἢ οὕτω περὶ αὐτοῦ τε καὶ ὑμῶν βουλευόμενος;
- 10 Ἄλλ' οὐτοὶ εἰσὶν οἱ λόγοι ἀνδρῶν καὶ ἡλιθίων κάμοι φθονούντων, ὅτι ἐγὼ ὑφ' ὑμῶν τιμῶμαι. καίτοι οὐ δικαίως γ' ἂν μοι φθονοῖεν· τίνα γὰρ

as they deserve. You doubtless know," he continued, "where the sun rises and where it sets; likewise, that if a man is to go to Greece, he must journey toward the west, while if he wishes to go to the lands of the barbarians, he must travel in the opposite direction, that is, toward the east. Now is there any one who could deceive you in this matter, by maintaining that the place where the sun rises is the one where it sets and the place where it sets is the one where it rises? Again, you surely know this also, that the north wind carries one out of the Euxine to Greece, while the south wind carries you within, to the Phasis—indeed, the saying is, 'When the north wind doth blow, fair voyaging to Greece.' In this matter, again, is it possible that any one could deceive you into embarking when the south wind is blowing? But I am going to put you aboard, you may say, when it is calm. Well, I shall be sailing on one ship, you on a hundred at least. How, then, could I either force you to voyage along with me if you did not choose, or deceive you into following my lead? But suppose you have been deceived and bewitched by me and we have come to the Phasis; we accordingly disembark upon the shore; you will perceive, likely enough, that you are not in Greece; and I, who have done the deceiving, will be one lone man, while you, the deceived, will be close to ten thousand, with arms in your hands. Then how could a man bring down punishment upon himself more surely than by planning in that way for himself and for you?

"Nay, these are the stories of foolish men, jealous of me because I enjoy honour at your hands. And yet they should not in fairness feel such jealousy;

- αὐτῶν ἐγὼ κωλύω ἢ λέγειν εἴ τις τι ἀγαθὸν δύναται ἐν ὑμῖν, ἢ μάχεσθαι εἴ τις ἐθέλει ὑπὲρ ὑμῶν τε καὶ ἑαυτοῦ, ἢ ἐγρηγορέναι περὶ τῆς ὑμετέρας ἀσφαλείας ἐπιμελούμενον; τί γάρ, ἄρχοντας αἰρουμένων ὑμῶν ἐγὼ τινι ἐμποδῶν εἶμι; παρήγημι, ἀρχέτω· μόνον ἀγαθὸν τι ποιῶν ὑμᾶς φαινέσθω.
- 11 ἀλλὰ γὰρ ἐμοὶ μὲν ἀρκεῖ περὶ τούτων τὰ εἰρημένα· εἰ δέ τις ὑμῶν ἢ αὐτὸς ἐξαπατηθῆναι ἂν οἶεται ταῦτα ἢ ἄλλον ἐξαπατῆσαι ταῦτα, λέγων διδασκέτω.
- 12 ὅταν δὲ τούτων ἄλις ἔχητε, μὴ ἀπέλθητε πρὶν ἂν ἀκούσητε οἶον ὄρῳ ἐν τῇ στρατιᾷ ἀρχόμενον πρᾶγμα· ὃ εἰ ἔπεισι καὶ ἔσται οἶον ὑποδείκνυσιν, ὥρα ἡμῖν βουλευέσθαι ὑπὲρ ἡμῶν αὐτῶν μὴ κάκιστοί τε καὶ αἰσχιστοὶ ἄνδρες ἀποφαινόμεθα καὶ πρὸς θεῶν καὶ πρὸς ἀνθρώπων καὶ φίλων καὶ πολεμίων.
- 13 Ἀκούσαντες δὲ ταῦτα οἱ στρατιῶται ἐθαύμασαν τε ὃ τι εἶη καὶ λέγειν ἐκέλευον. ἐκ τούτου ἄρχεται πάλιν· Ἐπίστασθέ που ὅτι χωρία ἦν ἐν τοῖς ὄρεσι βαρβαρικά, φίλια τοῖς Κερασουντίοις, ὅθεν κατιόντες τινὲς καὶ ἱερεῖα ἐπώλουν ὑμῖν καὶ ἄλλα ὧν εἶχον, δοκοῦσι δέ μοι καὶ ὑμῶν τινες εἰς τὸ ἐγγυτάτω χωρίον τούτων ἐλθόντες ἀγοράσαντες τι πάλιν ἀπελθεῖν. τοῦτο καταμαθὼν Κλεάρετος ὁ λοχαγὸς ὅτι καὶ μικρὸν εἶη καὶ ἀφύλακτον διὰ τὸ φίλιον νομίζειν εἶναι, ἔρχεται ἐπ' αὐτοὺς τῆς νυκτὸς ὡς πορθήσων, οὐδενὶ ἡμῶν

for whom among them do I hinder either from saying any good word he can before you, or from fighting if he will in your behalf and his own, or from being watchful in his care for your safety? Well, then, do I stand in any one's way when you are choosing commanders? I yield, let him be commander; only let it be shown that he renders you good service. For my part, however, what I have said on these points seems to me sufficient; but if any one among you imagines either that he could be deceived himself by such tales, or could deceive another by these tales, let him speak and explain. And when you have had enough of this, do not go away until you have heard what manner of evil I see beginning to show itself in the army; for if it comes upon us and proves to be as serious as it now shows signs of being, it is time for us to be taking counsel for ourselves, in order that we may not stand revealed as most wicked and base men, both in the sight of gods and mankind, of friends and enemies."

Upon hearing these words the soldiers fell to wondering what the thing was, and they bade Xenophon go on. So he began again: "You know, perhaps, that in the mountains there were barbarian strongholds, friendly to the Cerasuntians, from which people would come down and sell you cattle and other things which they had, and also, I believe, some of you went to the nearest of these strongholds and did some buying and came back again. Clearetus the captain, learning that this place was not only small, but also unguarded, for the reason that its inhabitants deemed themselves friendly, set forth against them by night with the idea of plundering the place, and without a word to any one

15 εἰπών. διενενόητο δέ, εἰ λάβοι τόδε τὸ χωρίον, εἰς μὲν τὸ στράτευμα μηκέτι ἐλθεῖν, εἰς βὰς δὲ εἰς πλοῖον ἐν ᾧ ἐτύγχανον οἱ ξύσκηνοι αὐτοῦ παραπλέοντες, καὶ ἐνθέμενος εἴ τι λάβοι, ἀποπλέων οἴχεσθαι ἔξω τοῦ Πόντου. καὶ ταῦτα ξυνωμολόγησαν αὐτῷ οἱ ἐκ τοῦ πλοίου σύσκηνοι,
 16 ὡς ἐγὼ νῦν αἰσθάνομαι. παρακαλέσας οὖν ὀπίσους ἔπειθεν ἦγεν ἐπὶ τὸ χωρίον. πορευόμενον δ' αὐτὸν φθάνει ἡμέρα γενομένη, καὶ ξυστάντες οἱ ἄνθρωποι ἀπὸ ἰσχυρῶν τόπων βάλλοντες καὶ παίοντες τὸν τε Κλεάρετον ἀποκτείνουσι καὶ τῶν ἄλλων συχρούς, οἱ δὲ τινες καὶ εἰς Κερασούντα
 17 αὐτῶν ἀποχωροῦσι. ταῦτα δ' ἦν ἐν τῇ ἡμέρᾳ ἣ ἡμεῖς δεῦρο ἐξωρμῶμεν πεζῇ· τῶν δὲ πλεόντων ἔτι τινὲς ἦσαν ἐν Κερασούντι, οὐπω ἀνηγμένοι.

Μετὰ τοῦτο, ὡς οἱ Κερασούντιοι λέγουσιν, ἀφικνοῦνται τῶν ἐκ τοῦ χωρίου τρεῖς ἄνδρες τῶν γεραιτέρων πρὸς τὸ κοινὸν τὸ ἡμέτερον χρήζοντες
 18 ἐλθεῖν. ἐπεὶ δ' ἡμᾶς οὐ κατέλαβον, πρὸς τοὺς Κερασουντίους ἔλεγον ὅτι θαυμάζοιεν τί ἡμῖν δόξειεν ἐλθεῖν ἐπ' αὐτούς. ἐπεὶ μέντοι σφείς λέγειν, ἔφασαν, ὅτι οὐκ ἀπὸ κοινοῦ γένοιτο τὸ πρᾶγμα, ἦδεσθαί τε αὐτούς καὶ μέλλειν ἐνθάδε πλεῖν, ὡς ἡμῖν λέξαι τὰ γεγόμενα καὶ τοὺς νεκροὺς κελεύειν
 19 αὐτούς θάπτειν λαβόντας. τῶν δ' ἀποφυγόντων τινὰς Ἑλλήνων τυχεῖν ἔτι ὄντας ἐν Κερασούντι.

of us. It was his intention, in case he should capture this stronghold, not to come back again to the army, but to embark on a vessel upon which his messmates chanced to be sailing along the coast, to put aboard whatever plunder he might secure, and sailing out of the Euxine to go away. Indeed, as I now learn, his messmates on the vessel had concluded an agreement with him to this effect. He accordingly summoned all the men he could persuade, and set out at their head to march against the stronghold. While he was still on the march, however, the break of day surprised him, and the people of the place gathered together and, by throwing missiles and dealing blows from strong positions, killed Clearetus and a good many of his followers, although some of them did make their way back to Cerasus. All this happened on the day when we were setting forth to come hither by land; and some of those who were going by sea were still at Cerasus, not having as yet set sail.

“After this, as the Cerasuntians say, there arrived at Cerasus three of the inhabitants of the stronghold, all elderly men, desiring to come before our general assembly. But since they did not find us, they addressed themselves to the Cerasuntians, saying that they wondered why we had seen fit to make an attack upon them. When, however, the Cerasuntians replied, so their statement ran, that it was not by public authority that the affair took place, the envoys were pleased, and were intending to sail hither in order to tell us what had happened, and to urge that we should ourselves take and bury the bodies of our dead. Now it chanced that some of the Greeks who had escaped were still at Cerasus;

αἰσθόμενοι δὲ τοὺς βαρβάρους ὅποι ἴοιεν αὐτοὶ
τε ἐτόλμησαν βαλεῖν τοῖς λίθοις καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις
παρεκελεύοντο. καὶ οἱ ἄνδρες ἀποθνήσκουσι
τρῆς ὄντες οἱ πρέσβεις καταλευσθέντες.

- 20 Ἐπεὶ δὲ τοῦτο ἐγένετο, ἔρχονται πρὸς ἡμᾶς οἱ
Κερασούντιοι καὶ λέγουσι τὸ πρᾶγμα· καὶ ἡμεῖς
οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἀκούσαντες ἠχθόμεθα τε τοῖς γεγε-
νημένοις καὶ ἐβουλευόμεθα ξὺν τοῖς Κερασουν-
τίοις ὅπως ἂν ταφείησαν οἱ τῶν Ἑλλήνων νεκροί.
- 21 συγκαθήμενοι δ' ἔξωθεν τῶν ὀπλων ἐξαίφνης ἀκού-
ομεν θορύβου πολλοῦ Παῖε, παῖε, βάλλε, βάλλε,
καὶ τάχα δὴ ὀρώμεν πολλοὺς προσθέοντας λίθους
ἔχοντας ἐν ταῖς χερσίν, τοὺς δὲ καὶ ἀναιρουμένους.
- 22 καὶ οἱ μὲν Κερασούντιοι, ὡς δὴ¹ καὶ ἑωρακότες
τὸ παρ' ἑαυτοῖς πρᾶγμα, δείσαντες ἀποχωροῦσι
πρὸς τὰ πλοῖα. ἦσαν δὲ νῆ Δία καὶ ἡμῶν οἱ
- 23 ἔδεισαν. ἐγὼ γε μὴν ἦλθον πρὸς αὐτοὺς καὶ
ἠρώτων ὃ τι ἐστὶ τὸ πρᾶγμα. τῶν δὲ ἦσαν μὲν
οἱ οὐδὲν ἤδεσαν, ὅμως δὲ λίθους εἶχον ἐν ταῖς
χερσίν. ἐπεὶ δὲ εἰδότι τι καὶ ἐπέτυχον, λέγει μοι
ὅτι οἱ ἀγορανόμοι δεινότατα ποιοῦσι τὸ στρά-
- 24 τευμα. ἐν τούτῳ τις ὄρα τὸν ἀγορανόμον Ζήλαρ-
χον πρὸς τὴν θάλατταν ἀποχωροῦντα, καὶ ἀνέ-
κραγεν· οἱ δὲ ὡς ἤκουσαν, ὥσπερ ἡ σὺς ἀγρίου
- 25 ἢ ἐλάφου φανέντος ἴενται ἐπ' αὐτόν. οἱ δ' αὖ
Κερασούντιοι ὡς εἶδον ὀρμώντας καθ' αὐτούς,
σαφῶς νομίζοντες ἐπὶ σφᾶς ἴεσθαι, φεύγουσι
δρόμῳ καὶ ἐμπίπτουσιν εἰς τὴν θάλατταν. ξυν-

¹ δὴ Gem., following Rehdantz: ἂν MSS., which Mar. brackets, following Poppo.

and when they learned whither the barbarians were going, they committed the shamelessness of not only attacking them with stones themselves, but urging others to do the same. And the men were killed, these three, who were ambassadors—stoned to death.

“When this had taken place, the Cerasuntians came to us and told us of the affair; and we generals, upon hearing the story, were distressed at what had happened, and we proceeded to take counsel with the Cerasuntians as to how the bodies of the Greek dead might be buried. While we were in session outside the camp, we suddenly heard a great uproar and shouts of ‘Strike! strike! pelt! pelt!’ and in a moment we saw a crowd of men rushing toward us with stones in their hands and others picking up stones. And the Cerasuntians, having witnessed, mark you, the affair in their own city, were naturally terrified, and hurried back toward their ships. For that matter, by Zeus, there were some of our own number who were terrified. I went up to the men, however, and asked what the trouble was. Some of them did not know at all, but nevertheless they had stones in their hands. When I did come upon a man who knew, he told me that the market-clerks were treating the army most outrageously. At this moment some one saw the market-clerk, Zelarchus, retreating toward the sea, and set up a shout; and when the rest heard it, they rushed upon him as though a wild boar or a stag had been sighted. And now the Cerasuntians, seeing this rush in their neighbourhood and believing it was undoubtedly directed against themselves, took to running in their flight and threw themselves into the sea. Some of

εισέπεσον δὲ καὶ ἡμῶν αὐτῶν τινες, καὶ ἐπνίγετο
 26 ὅστις νεῖν μὴ ἐτύγχανεν ἐπιστάμενος. καὶ τού-
 τους τί δοκεῖτε; ἠδίκουν μὲν οὐδέν, ἔδεισαν δὲ
 μὴ λύττα τις ὥσπερ κυσὶν ἡμῖν ἐμπεπτῶκοι.

Εἰ οὖν ταῦτα τοιαῦτα ἔσται, θεάσασθε οἷα ἡ
 27 κατάστασις ἡμῖν ἔσται τῆς στρατιᾶς. ὑμεῖς μὲν
 οἱ πάντες οὐκ ἔσεσθε κύριοι οὔτε ἀνελέσθαι πόλε-
 μον ᾧ ἂν βούλησθε οὔτε καταλύσαι, ἰδίᾳ δὲ ὁ
 βουλόμενος ἄξει στρατεύμα ἐφ' ὃ τι ἂν θέλη.
 καὶ τινες πρὸς ὑμᾶς ἴωσι πρέσβεις εἰρήνης δεόμε-
 νοι ἢ ἄλλου τινός, κατακτείναντες τούτους οἱ
 βουλόμενοι ποιήσουσιν ὑμᾶς τῶν λόγων μὴ ἀκού-
 28 σαι τῶν πρὸς ὑμᾶς ἰόντων. ἔπειτα δὲ οὓς μὲν
 ἂν ὑμεῖς πάντες ἔλησθε ἄρχοντας, ἐν οὐδεμιᾷ
 χώρᾳ ἔσονται, ὅστις δὲ ἂν ἑαυτὸν ἔληται στρα-
 τηγὸν καὶ ἐθέλη λέγειν Βάλλε, βάλλε, οὗτος ἔσται
 ἱκανὸς καὶ ἄρχοντα κατακαθεῖν καὶ ἰδιώτην ὃν ἂν
 ὑμῶν ἐθέλη ἄκριτον, ἣν ὧσιν οἱ πεισόμενοι αὐτῷ,
 29 ὥσπερ καὶ νῦν ἐγένετο. οἷα δὲ ὑμῖν καὶ διαπεπρά-
 χασιν οἱ αὐθαίρετοι οὗτοι στρατηγοὶ σκέψασθε.
 Ζήλαρχος μὲν ὁ ἀγορανόμος εἰ μὲν ἀδικεῖ ὑμᾶς,
 οἴχεται ἀποπλέων οὐ δοὺς ὑμῖν δίκην· εἰ δὲ μὴ
 ἀδικεῖ, φεύγει ἐκ τοῦ στρατεύματος δείσας μὴ
 30 ἀδίκως ἄκριτος ἀποθάνῃ. οἱ δὲ καταλεύσαντες
 τοὺς πρέσβεις διεπράξαντο ὑμῖν μόνοις μὲν τῶν
 Ἑλλήνων εἰς Κερασούντα μὴ ἀσφαλὲς εἶναι ἂν
 μὴ σὺν ἰσχύϊ ἀφικνησθε· τοὺς δὲ νεκροὺς οὓς

our own men also plunged in with them, and any
 who did not chance to know how to swim were
 drowned. Now what think you about these Cerasun-
 tians? They had done no wrong, but they were
 afraid that a kind of madness, such as attacks dogs,
 had seized upon us.

“Now if these doings are to go on in this way,
 observe what the situation of your army will be.
 You, the general body, will not have it in your
 power either to undertake war upon whom you
 please or to bring war to an end, but any individual
 who wishes will be leading an army to gain any end
 he may desire. And if people come to you as
 ambassadors, desiring peace or anything else, any
 who choose will kill them and prevent you from
 hearing the words of those who come to confer with
 you. Furthermore, the men whom you as a body
 may choose for commanders will be of no account,
 but whoever may choose himself general and will
 raise the cry ‘Pelt, pelt,’ that man will have the
 power to slay either commander or private, any one
 of you he pleases, without a trial, provided—as
 indeed it came about in the present case—there are
 people who will obey him. Consider the sort of
 things these self-chosen generals have actually
 accomplished for you. Take Zelarchus, the market-
 clerk: supposing he has done you wrong, he has
 sailed off without paying you the penalty; supposing
 he is not guilty, he has fled from the army out of
 fear that he might be slain unjustly and without a
 trial. Take those who stoned to death the ambas-
 sadors: they have accomplished this result, that you
 alone of all the Greeks cannot go to Cerasus safely
 unless you arrive there with a strong force; and as

πρόσθεν αὐτοὶ οἱ κατακαυόντες ἐκέλευον θάπτειν, τούτους διεπράξαντο μηδὲ ξὺν κηρυκείῳ ἔτι ἀσφαλὲς εἶναι ἀνελέσθαι. τίς γὰρ ἐθελήσει κῆρυξ ἰέναι κήρυκας ἀπεκτονῶς; ἀλλ' ἡμεῖς Κερασουντίων θάψαι αὐτοὺς ἐδεήθημεν.

- 31 Εἰ μὲν οὖν ταῦτα καλῶς ἔχει, δοξάτω ὑμῖν, ἵνα ὡς τοιούτων ἐσομένων καὶ φυλακὴν ἰδίᾳ ποιήσῃ τις καὶ τὰ ἐρυμνὰ ὑπερδέξια πειράται ἔχων
- 32 σκηνοῦν. εἰ μὲντοι ὑμῖν δοκεῖ θηρίων ἀλλὰ μὴ ἀνθρώπων εἶναι τὰ τοιαῦτα ἔργα, σκοπεῖτε παυλάν τινα αὐτῶν· εἰ δὲ μή, πρὸς Διὸς πῶς ἢ θεοῖς θύσομεν ἠδέως ποιοῦντες ἔργα ἀσεβῆ, ἢ πολέμοις πῶς μαχοῦμεθα, ἢ ἀλλήλους κατακαίνωμεν;
- 33 πόλις δὲ φιλία τίς ἡμᾶς δέξεται, ἢ τις ἂν ὀρᾷ τοσαύτην ἀνομίαν ἐν ἡμῖν; ἀγορὰν δὲ τίς ἄξει θαρρῶν, ἢν περὶ τὰ μέγιστα τοιαῦτα ἐξαμαρτάνοντες φαινώμεθα; οὐ δὲ δὴ πάντων οἴομεθα τεύξεσθαι ἐπαίνου, τίς ἡμᾶς τοιούτους ὄντας ἐπαινέσει¹; ἡμεῖς μὲν γὰρ οἶδ' ὅτι πονηροὺς ἂν φαίημεν εἶναι τοὺς τὰ τοιαῦτα ποιοῦντας.
- 34 Ἐκ τούτου ἀνιστάμενοι πάντες ἔλεγον τοὺς μὲν τούτων ἄρξαντας δοῦναι δίκην, τοῦ δὲ λοιποῦ μηκέτι ἐξεῖναι ἀνομίας ἄρξαι· εἰ δὲ τις ἄρξῃ, ἄγεσθαι αὐτοὺς ἐπὶ θανάτῳ· τοὺς δὲ στρατηγούς εἰς δίκας πάντας καταστήσαι· εἶναι δὲ δίκας καὶ

¹ τίς . . . ἐπαινέσει Gem., following Dindorf: τίς . . . ἐπαινέσειεν the better MSS.: τίς ἂν . . . ἐπαινέσειεν the inferior MSS., Mar.

¹ In Greece.

for the dead whom previously the very men who killed them proposed burying, the result accomplished is, that now it is not safe to pick up their bodies even for one who carries a herald's staff. For who will care to go as herald when he has the blood of heralds upon his hands? So we requested the Cerasuntians to bury them.

“Now if these things are right, do you so resolve, in order that, with the understanding that such deeds are to be done, a man may establish his own private guard and may endeavour to hold possession of the strong places overhanging him on the right when he encamps. If, however, you think that such deeds are those of wild beasts and not of human beings, look about for some means of stopping them; otherwise, how, in the name of Zeus, shall we offer glad sacrifices to the gods when we are doing impious deeds, or how shall we fight with enemies if we are slaying one another? And what friendly city will receive us when it sees so great lawlessness amongst us? Who will dare to supply us a market if in matters of the greatest import we show ourselves guilty of such offences? And in that land¹ where we are always fancying that we shall obtain praise from every one, who will praise us if we are men of this sort? For we ourselves, I am quite sure, should say that people who perform such deeds are scoundrels.”

Hereupon all rose and proposed that the men who began this affair should be duly punished, and that henceforth no one should be again permitted to make a beginning of lawlessness; but if any should so begin, they were to be put on trial for their lives; and the generals were to bring all offenders to trial,

35 εἴ τι ἄλλο τις ἠδίκητο ἐξ οὗ Κύρος ἀπέθανε· δικαστὰς δὲ τοὺς λοχαγοὺς ἐποίησαντο. παραινούντος δὲ Ξενοφώντος καὶ τῶν μάντεων συμβουλευόντων ἔδοξε καθῆραι τὸ στράτευμα. καὶ ἐγένετο καθαρμός.

VIII. Ἔδοξε δὲ καὶ τοὺς στρατηγούς δίκην ὑποσχεῖν τοῦ παρεληλυθότος χρόνου. καὶ διδόντων Φιλῆσιος μὲν ὧφλε καὶ Ξανθικλῆς τῆς φυλακῆς τῶν γαυλικῶν χρημάτων τὸ μείωμα εἴκοσι μνᾶς, Σοφαίνετος δέ, ὅτι αἰρεθεὶς¹ κατημέλει, δέκα μνᾶς.

Ξενοφώντος δὲ κατηγόρησάν τινες φάσκοντες παῖεσθαι ὑπ' αὐτοῦ καὶ ὡς ὑβρίζοντος τὴν κατηγορίαν ἐποιοῦντο. καὶ ὁ Ξενοφὼν ἐκέλευσεν εἰπεῖν τὸν πρῶτον λέξαντα ποῦ καὶ ἐπλήγη. ὁ δὲ ἀπεκρίνατο· "Ὅπου καὶ ῥίγει ἀπωλλύμεθα καὶ 3 χιῶν πλείστη ἦν. ὁ δὲ εἶπεν· Ἄλλὰ μὴν χειμῶνός γε ὄντος οἴου λέγεις, σίτου δὲ ἐπιλελοιπότος, οἴνου δὲ μηδ' ὀσφραίνεσθαι παρόν, ὑπὸ δὲ πόνων πολλῶν ἀπαγορευόντων, πολεμίων δὲ ἐπομένων, εἰ ἐν τοιούτῳ καιρῷ ὑβρίζον, ὁμολογῶ καὶ τῶν ὄνων ὑβριστότερος εἶναι, οἷς φασι ὑπὸ τῆς ὑβρεως κόπον οὐκ ἐγγίγνεσθαι. ὅμως δὲ καὶ 4 λέξον, ἔφη, ἐκ τίνος ἐπλήγης. πότερον ἦτον τί σε καὶ ἐπεὶ μοι οὐκ ἐδίδους ἔπαιον; ἀλλ' ἀπή-

¹ After *aipeθeῖς* editors generally, following Leunclavius, assume a lacuna.

¹ *cp.* i. 16.

² *cp.* iii. 1, and see critical note.

and trials were likewise to be held in the matter of any other offences which any one had committed since the time when Cyrus was killed; and they appointed the captains to serve as a jury. Further, upon the recommendation of Xenophon, and by the advice of the soothsayers, it was resolved to purify the army. So the rites of purification were performed.

VIII. It was likewise resolved that the generals should undergo an inquiry with reference to their past conduct. When they presented their statements, Philesius and Xanthicles were condemned, for their careless guarding of the merchantmen's cargoes,¹ to pay the loss incurred, namely, twenty minas, and Sophænetus, for neglect of duty in the office to which he had been chosen,² was fined ten minas.

Accusations were also made against Xenophon by certain men who claimed that he had beaten them, and so brought the charge of wanton assault. Xenophon bade the first man who spoke to state where it was that he had struck him. He replied, "In the place where we were perishing with cold and there was an enormous amount of snow." And Xenophon said, "Well, really, with weather of the sort you describe and provisions used up and no chance even to get a smell of wine, when many of us were becoming exhausted with hardships and the enemy were at our heels, if at such a time as that I wantonly abused you, I admit that I am more wanton even than the ass, which, because of its wantonness, so the saying runs, is not subject to fatigue. Nevertheless, do tell us," he said, "for what reason you were struck. Did I ask you for something, and then strike you because you would not give it to me?"

5 τουν; ἀλλὰ περὶ παιδικῶν μαχόμενος; ἀλλὰ
 μεθύων ἐπαρρώνησα; ἐπεὶ δὲ τούτων οὐδὲν ἔφησεν,
 ἐπῆρετο αὐτὸν εἰ ὀπλιτεύοι. οὐκ ἔφη· πάλιν εἰ
 πελτάζοι. οὐδὲ τοῦτ' ἔφη, ἀλλ' ἡμίονον ἐλαύνειν
 6 ταχθεὶς ὑπὸ τῶν συσκήνων ἐλεύθερος ὢν. ἐνταῦ-
 θα δὴ ἀναγινώσκει αὐτὸν καὶ ἤρετο· Ἡ σὺ εἰ
 ὁ τὸν κάμνοντα ἀγαγών; Ναὶ μὰ Δί', ἔφη· σὺ
 γὰρ ἠνάγκαζες· τὰ δὲ τῶν ἐμῶν συσκήνων σκευή
 7 διέρριψας. Ἄλλ' ἢ μὲν διάρριψις, ἔφη ὁ Ξενο-
 φῶν, τοιαύτη τις ἐγένετο. διέδωκα ἄλλοις ἄγειν
 καὶ ἐκέλευσα πρὸς ἐμὲ ἀπαγαγεῖν, καὶ ἀπολαβῶν
 ἅπαντα σῶα ἀπέδωκά σοι, ἐπειδὴ καὶ σὺ ἐμοὶ
 ἀπέδειξας τὸν ἄνδρα. οἶον δὲ τὸ πρᾶγμα ἐγένετο
 ἀκούσατε, ἔφη· καὶ γὰρ ἄξιον.
 8 Ἄνῆρ κατελείπετο διὰ τὸ μηκέτι δύνασθαι
 πορεύεσθαι. καὶ ἐγὼ τὸν μὲν ἄνδρα τοσοῦτον
 ἐγίγνωσκον ὅτι εἰς ἡμῶν εἶη· ἠνάγκασα δὲ σὲ
 τοῦτον ἄγειν, ὡς μὴ ἀπόλοιτο· καὶ γάρ, ὡς ἐγὼ
 οἶμαι, πολέμοι ἡμῖν ἐφείποντο. συνέφη τοῦτο ὁ
 9 ἄνθρωπος. Οὐκοῦν, ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν, ἐπεὶ προύπεμ-
 ψά σε, καταλαμβάνω αὐτὸς σὺν τοῖς ὀπισθοφύ-
 λαξι προσιῶν βόθρον ὀρύττοντα ὡς κατορύξοντα
 10 τὸν ἄνθρωπον, καὶ ἐπιστὰς ἐπήνουν σε. ἐπεὶ
 δὲ παρεστηκότων ἡμῶν συνέκαμψε τὸ σκέλος
 ἀνῆρ, ἀνέκραγον οἱ παρόντες ὅτι ζῆ ὁ ἀνῆρ, σὺ δ'
 εἶπας· Ὅποσα γε βούλεται ὡς ἐγωγε αὐτὸν οὐκ
 ἄξω. ἐνταῦθα ἔπαισά σε· ἀληθῆ λέγεις· ἔδοξας

Did I demand something back? Was it in a fight
 over a favourite? Was it an act of drunken violence?"
 When the man replied that it was none of these
 things, Xenophon asked him if he was a hoplite.
 He said no. Was he a peltast, then? No, not that
 either, he said, but he had been detailed by his
 messmates, although he was a free man, to drive a
 mule. At that Xenophon recognized him, and asked:
 "Are you the fellow who carried the sick man?"
 "Yes, by Zeus," he replied, "for you forced me to
 do so; and you scattered my messmates' baggage all
 about." "Why, the scattering," said Xenophon,
 "was after this fashion: I distributed it among
 others to carry and directed them to bring it back
 to me, and when I got it back, I returned the whole
 of it to you intact when you, for your part, had
 shown me the sick man. But listen, all of you,"
 he continued, "and hear how the affair happened;
 for the story is worth hearing.

"A man was being left behind because he was
 unable to keep going any longer. I was acquainted
 with the man only so far as to know that he was one
 of our number, and I forced you, sir, to carry him
 in order that he might not perish; for, as I remember,
 the enemy were following after us." To that the
 fellow agreed. "Well," Xenophon continued, "after
 I had sent you on ahead, I overtook you again, as
 I came along with the rearguard, and found you
 digging a hole to bury the man in, and I stopped
 and commended you. But when, as we were standing
 by, the man drew up his leg, all of us cried out,
 'The man is alive'; and you said, 'Let him be
 alive just as much as he pleases, I, for my part, am
 not going to carry him.' Then I struck you; your

- 11 γάρ μοι εἰδότει εοικέναι ὅτι ἔζη. Τί οὖν; ἔφη, ἦττόν τι ἀπέθανεν, ἐπεὶ ἐγὼ σοι ἀπέδειξα αὐτόν; Καὶ γὰρ ἡμεῖς, ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν, πάντες ἀποθανούμεθα· τούτου οὖν ἕνεκα ζῶντας ἡμᾶς δεῖ κατορυχθῆναι;
- 12 Τοῦτον μὲν ἀνέκραγον ὡς ὀλίγας παίσειεν· ἄλλους δ' ἐκέλευε λέγειν διὰ τί ἕκαστος ἐπλήγη.
- 13 ἐπεὶ δὲ οὐκ ἀνίσταντο, αὐτὸς ἔλεγεν· Ἐγὼ, ὦ ἄνδρες, ὁμολογῶ παῖσαι δὴ ἄνδρας ἕνεκεν ἀταξίας ὅσοις σφύζεσθαι μὲν ἤρκει δι' ὑμῶν ἐν τάξει τε ἰόντων καὶ μαχομένων ὅπου δέοι, αὐτοὶ δὲ λιπόντες τὰς τάξεις προθέοντες ἀρπάζειν ἤθελον καὶ ὑμῶν πλεονεκτεῖν. εἰ δὲ τοῦτο πάντες ἐποιούμεν,
- 14 ἅπαντες ἂν ἀπωλόμεθα. ἤδη δὲ καὶ μαλακιζόμενόν τινα καὶ οὐκ ἐθέλοντα ἀνίστασθαι ἀλλὰ προῖέμενον αὐτὸν τοῖς πολεμίοις καὶ ἔπαισα καὶ ἐβιασάμην πορεύεσθαι. ἐν γὰρ τῷ ἰσχυρῷ χειμῶνι καὶ αὐτὸς ποτε ἀναμένων τινὰς συσκευαζομένους καθεζόμενος συχνὸν χρόνον κατέμαθον
- 15 ἀναστὰς μόλις καὶ τὰ σκέλη ἐκτείνας. ἐν ἑμαυτῷ οὖν πείραν λαβὼν ἐκ τούτου καὶ ἄλλον, ὁπότε ἴδοιμι καθήμενον καὶ βλακεύοντα, ἤλαυνον· τὸ γὰρ κινεῖσθαι καὶ ἀνδρίζεσθαι παρεῖχε θερμασίαν τινὰ καὶ ὑγρότητα, τὸ δὲ καθῆσθαι καὶ ἡσυχίαν ἔχειν ἐώρων ὑπουργὸν ὃν τῷ τε ἀποπήγνυσθαι τὸ αἷμα καὶ τῷ ἀποσήπεσθαι τοὺς τῶν ποδῶν δακτύλους, ἅπερ πολλοὺς καὶ ὑμεῖς ἴστε παθόν-

story is true; for it looked to me as if you knew that he was alive." "Well, what of that," the fellow said; "didn't he die all the same after I had shown him to you?" "Why," said Xenophon, "all of us are likewise going to die; but should we on that account be buried alive?"

As for this fellow, everybody cried out that Xenophon had given him fewer blows than he deserved. Then he directed the rest to state the reason why each one of them had been struck. When they failed to rise, he went on himself: "I admit, soldiers, that I have indeed struck men for neglect of discipline, the men who were content to be kept safe by you who marched in due order and fought wherever there was need, while they themselves would leave the ranks and run on ahead in the desire to secure plunder and to enjoy an advantage over you. For if all of us had behaved in this way, all of us alike would have perished. Again, when a man behaved like a weakling and refused to get up, preferring to leave himself a prey to the enemy, I did indeed strike him and use violence to compel him to go on. For once during the severe weather I myself remained seated for quite a long time, waiting for some people who were packing up, and I discovered that it was hard work to get up and stretch my legs. Having tested the matter, then, in my own case, I used after that to drive on any other man whom I might see sitting down and shirking; for getting into motion and acting like a man produced a certain amount of warmth and suppleness, while sitting and keeping quiet tended, as I saw, to make the blood freeze and the toes rot off, just the misfortunes which many people

- 16 τας. ἄλλον δέ γε ἴσως ἀπολειπόμενον που διὰ
 ῥαστώνην καὶ κωλύοντα καὶ ὑμᾶς τοὺς πρόσθεν
 καὶ ἡμᾶς τοὺς ὀπίσθεν πορεύεσθαι ἔπαισα πύξ,
 17 ὅπως μὴ λόγῃ ὑπὸ τῶν πολεμίων παίητο. καὶ
 γὰρ οὖν νῦν ἕξεστιν αὐτοῖς σωθεῖσιν, εἴ τι ὑπ'
 ἐμοῦ ἔπαθον παρὰ τὸ δίκαιον, δίκην λαβεῖν. εἰ
 δ' ἐπὶ τοῖς πολεμίοις ἐγένοντο, τί μέγα ἂν οὕτως
 ἔπαθον ὅτου δίκην ἂν ἠξίου λαμβάνειν ;
- 18 'Απλοῦς μοι, ἔφη, ὁ λόγος· εἰ μὲν ἐπ' ἀγαθῷ
 ἐκόλασά τινα, ἀξιῶ ὑπέχειν δίκην οἷαν καὶ γονεῖς
 υἱοῖς καὶ διδάσκαλοι παισὶ· καὶ γὰρ οἱ ἰατροὶ
 19 καίουσι καὶ τέμνουσιν ἐπ' ἀγαθῷ· εἰ δὲ ὕβρει
 νομίζετε με ταῦτα πράττειν, ἐνθυμήθητε ὅτι νῦν
 ἐγὼ θαρρῶ σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς μᾶλλον ἢ τότε καὶ
 θρασύτερός εἰμι νῦν ἢ τότε καὶ οἶνον πλείω πίνω,
 ἀλλ' ὅμως οὐδένα παίω· ἐν εὐδία γὰρ ὀρώ ὑμᾶς.
- 20 ὅταν δὲ χειμῶν ἦ καὶ θάλαττα μεγάλη ἐπιφέρηται,
 οὐχ ὀράτε ὅτι καὶ νεύματος μόνου ἕνεκα χαλε-
 παίνει μὲν πρῶρεὺς τοῖς ἐν πρῶρα, χαλεπαίνει
 δὲ κυβερνήτης τοῖς ἐν πρύμνῃ ; ἱκανὰ γὰρ ἐν τῷ
 τοιούτῳ καὶ μικρὰ ἀμαρτηθέντα πάντα συν-
 21 επιτρίψαι. ὅτι δὲ δικαίως ἔπαιον αὐτοὺς καὶ
 ὑμεῖς κατεδικάσατε· ἔχοντες ξίφη, οὐ ψήφους,
 παρέστατε, καὶ ἐξῆν ὑμῖν ἐπικουρεῖν αὐτοῖς, εἰ
 ἐβούλεσθε· ἀλλὰ μὰ Δία οὔτε τούτοις ἐπεκου-

¹ The speaker implies in this sarcastic way that they would have met their death, and would not be talking now about satisfaction for that or anything else.

suffered, as you know for yourselves. In still another case, the man, perhaps, who fell behind somewhere out of indolence and prevented both you in the van and us in the rear from going on, I struck such a one with the fist in order that the enemy might not strike him with the lance. Indeed, that is the reason why these people, having been saved, now have it in their power to obtain satisfaction for whatever they suffered unjustly at my hands. But if they had fallen into the hands of the enemy, what suffering would they have experienced so great that they would now be asking to obtain satisfaction for it? ¹

“My defence,” he continued, “is simple: if it was for his good that I punished any one, I think I should render the sort of account that parents render to sons and teachers to pupils; for that matter, surgeons also burn and cut patients for their good; but if you believe it was out of wantonness that I did these things, take note that now, by the blessing of the gods, I am more confident than I was then and that I am bolder now than then and drink more wine, but nevertheless I strike no man—for the reason that I see you are in calm waters. But when it is stormy weather and a high sea is running, do you not observe that even for a mere nod the lookout gets angry with the people at the prow and the helmsman angry with the people at the stern? For in such a situation even small blunders are enough to ruin everything. But you rendered judgment yourselves that I was justified in striking those men; for you stood by, with swords, not ballots, in your hands, and it was within your power to come to their aid if you chose; but, by Zeus, you would neither

22 ρεῖτε οὔτε σὺν ἐμοὶ τὸν ἀτακτοῦντα ἐπαιετέ.
τοιγαροῦν ἐξουσίαν ἐποιήσατε τοῖς κακοῖς αὐτῶν
ὑβρίζειν ἐὼντες αὐτούς.

23 Οἶμαι γάρ, εἰ ἐθέλετε σκοπεῖν, τοὺς αὐτοὺς
εὐρήσετε καὶ τότε κακίστους καὶ νῦν ὑβριστοτά-
τους. Βοῖσκος γοῦν ὁ πύκτης ὁ Θετταλὸς τότε
μὲν διεμάχετο ὡς κάμνων ἀσπίδα μὴ φέρειν, νῦν
24 δέ, ὡς ἀκούω, Κοτυωριτῶν πολλοὺς ἤδη ἀποδέ-
δυκεν. ἦν οὖν σωφρονῆτε, τοῦτον τὰναντία
ποιήσετε ἢ τοὺς κύνας ποιούσι· τοὺς μὲν γὰρ
κύνας τοὺς χαλεποὺς τὰς μὲν ἡμέρας διδέασι, τὰς
δὲ νύκτας ἀφιάσι, τοῦτον δέ, ἦν σωφρονῆτε, τὴν
νύκτα μὲν δῆσετε, τὴν δὲ ἡμέραν ἀφήσετε.

25 Ἄλλὰ γάρ, ἔφη, θαυμάζω ὅτι εἰ μὲν τιμὴν ὑμῶν
ἀπηχθόμην, μέμνησθε καὶ οὐ σιωπᾶτε, εἰ δὲ τῷ
ἢ χειμῶνα ἐπεκούρησα¹ ἢ πολέμιον ἀπήρυξα ἢ
ἀσθενοῦντι ἢ ἀποροῦντι συνεξεπόρισά τι, τούτων
δὲ οὐδεὶς μέμνηται, οὐδ' εἴ τινα καλῶς τι ποιοῦντα
ἐπήνεσα οὐδ' εἴ τινα ἄνδρα ὄντα ἀγαθὸν ἐτίμησα
26 ὡς ἐδυνάμην, οὐδὲν τούτων μέμνησθε. ἀλλὰ μὴν
καλὸν τε καὶ δίκαιον καὶ ὄσιον καὶ ἥδιον τῶν
ἀγαθῶν μᾶλλον ἢ τῶν κακῶν μεμνήσθαι.

Ἐκ τούτου μὲν δὴ ἀνίσταντο καὶ ἀνεμίμνησκον.
καὶ περιεγένετο ὥστε καλῶς ἔχειν.

¹ ἐπεκούρησα MSS., Mar.; ἐπ.κούφισα Gem., following Reiske.

give those people aid nor would you join with me in striking such as violated discipline. Consequently you gave the bad among them freedom to act wantonly by thus letting them alone.

“For I think, if you care to look into the matter, you will find it is the very same men who were then most cowardly that are now most wanton. At any rate, Boiscus the boxer, of Thessaly, then fought hard to escape carrying his shield, on the plea that he was tired, but now, as I hear, he has already stripped off the clothes of many Cotyorites. If you are wise, therefore, you will do to this fellow the opposite of what people do to dogs; for dogs that are savage are tied up by day and let loose by night, but this fellow, if you are wise, you will tie up by night and let loose by day.

“But really,” he continued, “I am surprised that if ever I incurred the ill-will of any one among you, you remember that and are not silent about it, while if I protected any one from the cold, or warded off an enemy from him, or helped to provide something for him when he was sick or in want, these acts, on the other hand, are not remembered by anybody; nor, again, if I praised a man for a deed well done, or honoured according to my ability a man who was brave, do you remember any of these things. Yet surely it is more honourable and fair, more righteous and gracious to remember good deeds than evil.”

Then people began getting up and recalling past incidents, and in the end all was pleasant.

BOOK VI

- I. Ἐκ τούτου δὲ ἐν τῇ διατριβῇ οἱ μὲν ἀπὸ τῆς ἀγορᾶς ἔζων, οἱ δὲ καὶ ληζόμενοι ἐκ τῆς Παφλαγονίας. ἐκλώπευον δὲ καὶ οἱ Παφλαγόνες εὖ μάλα τοὺς ἀποσκεδαννυμένους, καὶ τῆς νυκτὸς τοὺς πρόσω σκηνοῦντας ἐπειρῶντο κακουργεῖν· καὶ πολεμικώτατα πρὸς ἀλλήλους εἶχον ἐκ τούτων.
- 2 ὁ δὲ Κορύλας, ὃς ἐτύγχανε τότε Παφλαγονίας ἄρχων, πέμπει παρὰ τοὺς Ἑλληνας πρέσβεις ἔχοντας ἵππους καὶ στολὰς καλὰς, λέγοντας ὅτι Κορύλας ἔτοιμος εἶη τοὺς Ἑλληνας μῆτε ἀδικεῖν
- 3 μῆτε ἀδικεῖσθαι. οἱ δὲ στρατηγοὶ ἀπεκρίναντο ὅτι περὶ μὲν τούτων σὺν τῇ στρατιᾷ βουλευσούντο, ἐπὶ ξένια δὲ ἐδέχοντο αὐτούς· παρεκάλεσαν δὲ καὶ τῶν ἄλλων ἀνδρῶν οὓς ἐδόκουν
- 4 δικαιοτάτους εἶναι. θύσαντες δὲ βοῦς τῶν αἰχμαλώτων καὶ ἄλλα ἱερεῖα εὐωχίαν μὲν ἀρκούσαν παρέιχον, κατακείμενοι δὲ ἐν σκίμποσιν ἐδείπνου, καὶ ἔπινον ἐκ κερατίνων ποτηρίων, οἷς ἐνετύγχανον ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ.
- 5 Ἐπεὶ δὲ σπονδαί τε ἐγένοντο καὶ ἐπαιάνισαν, ἀνέστησαν πρῶτον μὲν Θραῖκες καὶ πρὸς αὐτὸν ὠρχήσαντο σὺν τοῖς ὄπλοις καὶ ἤλλοντο ὑψηλά τε καὶ κούφως καὶ ταῖς μαχαίραις ἐχρῶντο· τέλος δὲ ὁ ἕτερος τὸν ἕτερον παίει, ὡς πᾶσιν ἐδόκει·

¹ *cp.* v. v. 24 ff.

² *cp.* v. v. 12 and note.

I. AFTER this, while they delayed at Cotyora, some of the men lived by purchasing from the market¹ and others by pillaging the territory of Paphlagonia. The Paphlagonians, however, were extremely clever in kidnapping the stragglers, and at night time they tried to inflict harm upon such of the Greeks as were quartered at some distance from the rest; consequently they and the Greeks were in a very hostile mood toward one another. Then Corylas,² who chanced at the time to be ruler of Paphlagonia, sent ambassadors to the Greeks, with horses and fine raiment, bearing word that Corylas was ready to do the Greeks no wrong and to suffer no wrong at their hands. The generals replied that they would take counsel with the army on this matter, but meanwhile they received the ambassadors as their guests at dinner, inviting in also such of the other men in the army as seemed to them best entitled to an invitation. By sacrificing some of the cattle they had captured and also other animals they provided an adequate feast, and they dined reclining upon couches and drank from cups made of horn which they found in the country.

After they had made libations and sung the paean, two Thracians rose up first and began a dance in full armour to the music of a flute, leaping high and lightly and using their sabres; finally, one struck the other, as everybody thought, and the second

6 ὁ δ' ἔπεσε τεχνικῶς πῶς. καὶ ἀνέκραγον οἱ Παφλαγόνες. καὶ ὁ μὲν σκυλεύσας τὰ ὄπλα τοῦ ἑτέρου ἐξῆει ἄδων τὸν Σιτάλκαν· ἄλλοι δὲ τῶν Θρακῶν τὸν ἕτερον ἐξέφερον ὡς τεθνηκότα· ἦν δὲ
 7 οὐδὲν πεπουθῶς. μετὰ τοῦτο Αἰνιᾶνες καὶ Μάγνητες ἀνέστησαν, οἱ ὠρχοῦντο τὴν καρπαίαν
 8 καλουμένην ἐν τοῖς ὄπλοις. ὁ δὲ τρόπος τῆς ὀρχήσεως ἦν, ὁ μὲν παραθέμενος τὰ ὄπλα σπείρει καὶ ζευγηλατεῖ, πυκνὰ δὲ στρεφόμενος ὡς φοβούμενος, ληστής δὲ προσέρχεται· ὁ δ' ἐπειδὴν προῖδηται, ἀπαντᾷ ἀρπάσας τὰ ὄπλα καὶ μάχεται πρὸ τοῦ ζεύγους· καὶ οὗτοι ταῦτ' ἐποίουν ἐν ῥυθμῷ πρὸς τὸν αὐλόν· καὶ τέλος ὁ ληστής δήσας τὸν ἄνδρα καὶ τὸ ζεύγος ἀπάγει· ἐνίοτε δὲ καὶ ὁ ζευγηλάτης τὸν ληστήν· εἶτα παρὰ τοὺς βούς ζεύξας ὀπίσω τῷ χεῖρι δεδεμένον ἐλαύνει.
 9 μετὰ τοῦτο Μυσὸς εἰσῆλθεν ἐν ἑκατέρα τῇ χειρὶ ἔχων πέλτην, καὶ τοτὲ μὲν ὡς δύο ἀντιπατομένων μιμούμενος ὠρχεῖτο, τοτὲ δὲ ὡς πρὸς ἓνα ἐχρήτο ταῖς πέλταις, τοτὲ δ' ἐδινεῖτο καὶ ἐξεκυβίστα ἔχων τὰς πέλτας, ὥστε ὄψιν καλὴν φαίνεσθαι.
 10 τέλος δὲ τὸ περσικὸν ὠρχεῖτο κρούων τὰς πέλτας καὶ ὠκλαζε καὶ ἐξανίστατο· καὶ ταῦτα πάντα
 11 ἐν ῥυθμῷ ἐποίει πρὸς τὸν αὐλόν. ἐπὶ δὲ τούτῳ οἱ Μαντινεῖς καὶ ἄλλοι τινὲς τῶν Ἀρκάδων ἀναστάντες ἐξοπλισάμενοι ὡς ἐδύναντο κάλλιστα ἦσαν τε ἐν ῥυθμῷ πρὸς τὸν ἐνόπιον ῥυθμὸν αὐλούμενοι καὶ ἐπαιάνισαν καὶ ὠρχήσαντο ὥσπερ

¹ A Thracian war-song, apparently composed in honour of an early king named Sitalcas.

² A dance known to us from this passage only.

man fell, in a rather skilful way. And the Paphlagonians set up a cry. Then the first man despoiled the other of his arms and marched out singing the Sitalcas,¹ while other Thracians carried off the fallen dancer, as though he were dead; in fact, he had not been hurt at all. After this some Aenianians and Magnesians arose and danced under arms the so-called carpaea.² The manner of the dance was this: a man is sowing and driving a yoke of oxen, his arms laid at one side, and he turns about frequently as one in fear; a robber approaches; as soon as the sower sees him coming, he snatches up his arms, goes to meet him, and fights with him to save his oxen. The two men do all this in rhythm to the music of the flute. Finally, the robber binds the man and drives off the oxen; or sometimes the master of the oxen binds the robber, and then he yokes him alongside the oxen, his hands tied behind him, and drives off. After this a Mysian came in carrying a light shield in each hand, and at one moment in his dance he would go through a pantomime as though two men were arrayed against him, again he would use his shields as though against one antagonist, and again he would whirl and throw somersaults while holding the shields in his hands, so that the spectacle was a fine one. Lastly, he danced the Persian dance, clashing his shields together and crouching down and then rising up again; and all this he did, keeping time to the music of the flute. After him the Mantineans and some of the other Arcadians arose, arrayed in the finest arms and accoutrements they could command, and marched in time to the accompaniment of a flute playing the martial rhythm and sang the paean and danced, just as the Arcadians

- ἐν ταῖς πρὸς τοὺς θεοὺς προσόδοις. ὀρῶντες δὲ οἱ Παφλαγῶνες δεινὰ ἐποιούντο πάσας τὰς ὀρχή-
 12 σεις ἐν ὄπλοις εἶναι. ἐπὶ τούτοις ὀρῶν ὁ Μυσοὺς ἐκπεπληγμένους αὐτούς, πείσας τῶν Ἀρκάδων τινὰ πεπαμένον ὀρχηστρίδα εἰσάγει σκευάσας ὡς ἐδύνατο κάλλιστα καὶ ἀσπίδα δούς κούφην
 13 αὐτῇ. ἡ δὲ ὀρχήσατο πυρρίχην ἐλαφρῶς. ἐνταῦθα κρότος ἦν πολὺς, καὶ οἱ Παφλαγῶνες ἤροντο εἰ καὶ γυναῖκες συνεμάχοντο αὐτοῖς. οἱ δ' ἔλεγον ὅτι αὐταὶ καὶ αἱ τρεψάμεναι εἶεν βασιλέα ἐκ τοῦ στρατοπέδου. τῇ μὲν νυκτὶ ταύτῃ τούτο τὸ τέλος ἐγένετο.
- 14 Τῇ δὲ ὑστεραίᾳ προσῆγον αὐτοὺς εἰς τὸ στρατεύμα· καὶ ἔδοξε τοῖς στρατιώταις μήτε ἀδικεῖν Παφλαγῶνας μήτε ἀδικεῖσθαι. μετὰ τούτο οἱ μὲν πρέσβεις ᾤχοντο· οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες, ἐπειδὴ πλοῖα ἱκανὰ ἐδόκει παρέῖναι, ἀναβάντες ἔπλεον ἡμέραν καὶ νύκτα πνεύματι καλῶ ἐν ἀριστερᾷ
 15 ἔχοντες τὴν Παφλαγονίαν. τῇ δ' ἄλλη ἀφικνοῦνται εἰς Σινώπην καὶ ὠρμίσαντο εἰς Ἀρμήνην τῆς Σινώπης. Σινωπεῖς δὲ οἰκοῦσι μὲν ἐν τῇ Παφλαγονικῇ, Μιλησίων δὲ ἀποικοὶ εἰσιν. οὗτοι δὲ ξένια πέμπουσι τοῖς Ἕλλησιν ἀλφίτων μεδίμνους τρισχιλίους, οἴνου δὲ κεράμια χίλια καὶ πεντακόσια.
- 16 Καὶ Χειρίσοφος ἐνταῦθα ἦλθε τριήρη ἔχων. καὶ οἱ μὲν στρατιῶται προσεδόκων ἄγοντά τι σφίσιν ἤκειν· ὁ δ' ἦγε μὲν οὐδέν, ἀπήγγελλε δὲ ὅτι ἐπαινοίη αὐτοὺς καὶ Ἀναξίβιος ὁ ναύαρχος

do in their festal processions in honour of the gods. And the Paphlagonians, as they looked on, thought it most strange that all the dances were under arms. Thereupon the Mysian, seeing how astounded they were, persuaded one of the Arcadians who had a dancing girl to let him bring her in, after dressing her up in the finest way he could and giving her a light shield. And she danced the Pyrrhic¹ with grace. Then there was great applause, and the Paphlagonians asked whether women also fought by their side. And the Greeks replied that these women were precisely the ones who put the King to flight from his camp. Such was the end of that evening.

On the next day they introduced the ambassadors to the army, and the soldiers passed a resolution to do the Paphlagonians no wrong and to suffer no wrong at their hands. After this the ambassadors departed, and the Greeks, inasmuch as it seemed that vessels enough were at hand, embarked and sailed for a day and a night with a fair wind, keeping Paphlagonia on the left. On the second day they reached Sinope, and came to anchor at Harmene, in the territory of Sinope. The Sinopeans dwell, indeed, in Paphlagonia, but are colonists of the Milesians. And they sent to the Greeks, as gifts of hospitality, three thousand *medimni*² of barley meal and fifteen hundred jars of wine.

Here Cheirisophus³ also came, with a man-of-war. And the soldiers expected that he had brought them something; in fact, however, he brought nothing, save the report that the admiral Anaxibius³ and

¹ A famous war-dance.

² The *medimnus* = about a bushel and a half.

³ *cp.* v. i. 3-4.

καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι, καὶ ὅτι ὑπισχνεῖτο Ἀναξίβιος, εἰ ἀφίκοντο ἔξω τοῦ Πόντου, μισθοφορὰν αὐτοῖς
17 ἔσεσθαι. καὶ ἐν ταύτῃ τῇ Ἀρμῆνῃ ἔμειναν οἱ στρατιῶται ἡμέρας πέντε.

Ὡς δὲ τῆς Ἑλλάδος ἐδόκουν ἐγγὺς γίνεσθαι, ἤδη μᾶλλον ἢ πρόσθεν εἰσῆει αὐτοὺς ὅπως ἂν
18 καὶ ἔχοντές τι οἴκαδε ἀφίκωνται. ἠγήσαντο οὖν, εἰ ἓνα ἔλοιντο ἄρχοντα, μᾶλλον ἂν ἢ πολυαρχίας οὐσης δύνασθαι τὸν ἓνα χρῆσθαι τῷ στρατεύματι καὶ νυκτὸς καὶ ἡμέρας, καὶ εἴ τι δέοι λανθάνειν, μᾶλλον ἂν κρύπτεσθαι, καὶ εἴ τι αὐτὸ δέοι φθάνειν, ἤττον ἂν ὑστερίζειν· οὐ γὰρ ἂν λόγων δεῖν πρὸς ἀλλήλους, ἀλλὰ τὸ δόξαν τῷ ἐνὶ περαίνεσθαι ἂν τὸν δ' ἔμπροσθεν χρόνον ἐκ τῆς νικώσης ἔπραττον πάντα οἱ στρατηγοί.

Ὡς δὲ ταῦτα διανοοῦντο, ἐτρέποντο ἐπὶ τὸν Ξενοφῶντα· καὶ οἱ λοχαγοὶ ἔλεγον προσιόντες αὐτῷ ὅτι ἡ στρατιὰ οὕτω γιγνώσκει, καὶ εὐνοίαν ἐνδεικνύμενος ἕκαστος ἔπειθεν αὐτὸν ὑποστήναι
20 τὴν ἀρχήν. ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν τῇ μὲν ἐβούλετο ταῦτα, νομίζων καὶ τὴν τιμὴν μείζω οὕτως ἑαυτῷ γίνεσθαι πρὸς τοὺς φίλους καὶ εἰς τὴν πόλιν τοῦνομα μείζον ἀφίξεσθαι αὐτοῦ, τυχὸν δὲ καὶ ἀγαθοῦ
21 τινος ἂν αἴτιος τῇ στρατιᾷ γενέσθαι. τὰ μὲν δὴ τοιαῦτα ἐνθυμήματα ἐπῆρεν αὐτὸν ἐπιθυμεῖν

the others commended them, and that Anaxibius promised that if they got outside the Euxine, they should have regular pay. Here at Harmene the troops remained for five days.

By this time, since it seemed that they were getting near Greece, the question came into their minds more than before how they might reach home with a little something in hand. They came to the conclusion, therefore, that if they should choose one commander, that one man would be able to handle the army better, whether by night or day, than a number of commanders—that if there should be need of concealment, he would be better able to keep matters secret, or again, if there should be need of getting ahead of an adversary, he would be less likely to be too late; for, thought the soldiers, there would be no need of conferences of generals with one another, but the plan resolved upon by the one man would be carried through, whereas in the past the generals had acted in all matters in accordance with a majority vote.

As they thought over these things they turned to Xenophon; the captains came to him and said that this was the opinion of the army, and each one of them, with manifestations of good will, urged him to undertake the command. As for Xenophon, he was inclined on some accounts to accept the command, for he thought that if he did so the greater would be the honour he would enjoy among his friends and the greater his name when it should reach his city, while, furthermore, it might chance that he could be the means of accomplishing some good thing for the army. Such considerations, then, roused in him an earnest desire to become sole com-

αὐτοκράτορα γενέσθαι ἄρχοντα. ὁπότε δ' αὖ ἐνθυμοῖτο ὅτι ἄδηλον μὲν παντὶ ἀνθρώπῳ ὄπη τὸ μέλλον ἔξει, διὰ τοῦτο δὲ καὶ κίνδυνος εἶη καὶ τὴν προειργασμένην δόξαν ἀποβαλεῖν, ἠπορεῖτο.

- 22 Διαπορουμένῳ δὲ αὐτῷ διακρίναι ἔδοξε κράτιστον εἶναι τοῖς θεοῖς ἀνακοινῶσαι· καὶ παραστησάμενος δύο ἱερεῖα ἐθύετο τῷ Διὶ τῷ βασιλεῖ, ὅσπερ αὐτῷ μαντευτὸς ἦν ἐκ Δελφῶν· καὶ τὸ ὄναρ δὴ ἀπὸ τούτου τοῦ θεοῦ ἐνόμιζεν ἑωρακέσθαι ὃ εἶδεν ὅτε ἤρχετο ἐπὶ τὸ συνεπιμελεῖσθαι τῆς
- 23 στρατιᾶς καθίστασθαι. καὶ ὅτε ἔξ Ἐφέσου ὠρμᾶτο Κύρῳ συσταθησόμενος, αἰετὸν ἀνεμιμνήσκετο ἑαυτῷ δεξιὸν φθεγγόμενον, καθήμενον μέντοι, ὃνπερ ὁ μάντις προπέμπων αὐτὸν ἔλεγεν ὅτι μέγας μὲν οἰωνὸς εἶη καὶ οὐκ ἰδιωτικός, καὶ ἔνδοξος, ἐπίπονος μέντοι· τὰ γὰρ ὄρνεα μάλιστα ἐπιτίθεσθαι τῷ αἰετῷ καθημένῳ· οὐ μέντοι χρηματιστικὸν εἶναι τὸν οἰωνόν· τὸν γὰρ αἰετὸν πετόμενον μᾶλλον λαμβάνειν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια.
- 24 οὕτω δὲ θυομένῳ αὐτῷ διαφανῶς ὁ θεὸς σημαίνει μήτε προσδεῖσθαι τῆς ἀρχῆς μήτε εἰ αἰροῦντο ἀποδέχεσθαι. τοῦτο μὲν δὴ οὕτως ἐγένετο.
- 25 Ἡ δὲ στρατιὰ συνῆλθε, καὶ πάντες ἔλεγον ἕνα αἰρεῖσθαι· καὶ ἐπεὶ τοῦτο ἔδοξε, προβάλλοντο αὐτόν. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐδόκει δῆλον εἶναι ὅτι αἰρή-

mander. On the other hand, when he reflected that no man can see clearly how the future will turn out and that for this reason there was danger that he might even lose the reputation he had already won, he was doubtful.

Quite unable as he was to decide the question, it seemed best to him to consult the gods; and he accordingly brought two victims to the altar and proceeded to offer sacrifice to King Zeus, the very god that the oracle at Delphi had prescribed for him;¹ and it was likewise from this god, as he believed, that the dream² came which he had at the time when he took the first steps toward assuming a share in the charge of the army. Moreover, he recalled that when he was setting out from Ephesus to be introduced to Cyrus,³ an eagle screamed upon his right; it was sitting, however, and the soothsayer who was conducting him said that while the omen was one suited to the great rather than to an ordinary person, and while it betokened glory, it nevertheless portended suffering, for the reason that other birds are most apt to attack the eagle when it is sitting; still, he said, the omen did not betoken gain, for it is rather while the eagle is on the wing that it gets its food. So it was, then, that Xenophon made sacrifice, and the god signified to him quite clearly that he should neither strive for the command nor accept it in case he should be chosen. Such was the issue of this matter.

Then the army came together, and all the speakers urged that a single commander be chosen; when this had been resolved upon, they proceeded to nominate Xenophon. And when it seemed clear that they would elect him as soon as the question

¹ *cp.* III. i. 5 ff.

² *cp.* III. i. 11 f.

³ *cp.* III. i. 8.

σονται αὐτόν, εἴ τις ἐπιψηφίζοι, ἀνέστη καὶ ἔλεξε τάδε.

- 26 Ἐγὼ, ὦ ἄνδρες, ἡδομαι μὲν ὑπὸ ὑμῶν τιμώμενος, εἵπερ ἄνθρωπός εἰμι, καὶ χάριν ἔχω καὶ εὐχομαι δοῦναί μοι τοὺς θεοὺς αἰτίον τινοσ ὑμῖν ἀγαθοῦ γένεσθαι· τὸ μόντοι ἐμὲ προκριθῆναι ὑπὸ ὑμῶν ἄρχοντα Λακεδαιμονίου ἀνδρὸς παρόντος οὔτε ὑμῖν μοι δοκεῖ συμφέρον εἶναι, ἀλλ' ἦττον ἂν διὰ τοῦτο τυγχάνειν, εἴ τι δέοισθε παρ' αὐτῶν· ἐμοί τε αὖ οὐ πάνυ τι νομίζω ἀσφαλὲς εἶναι τοῦτο.
- 27 ὄρω γὰρ ὅτι καὶ τῇ πατρίδι μου οὐ πρόσθεν ἐπαύσαντο πολεμοῦντες πρὶν ἐποίησαν πᾶσαν τὴν πόλιν ὁμολογεῖν Λακεδαιμονίους καὶ αὐτῶν
- 28 ἡγεμόνας εἶναι. ἐπεὶ δὲ τοῦτο ὡμολόγησαν, εὐθὺς ἐπαύσαντο πολεμοῦντες καὶ οὐκέτι πέρα ἐπολιόρησαν τὴν πόλιν. εἰ οὖν ταῦτα ὄρων ἐγὼ δοκοῖην ὅπου δυναίμην ἐνταῦθ' ἄκυρον ποιεῖν τὸ ἐκείνων ἀξίωμα, ἐκείνο ἐννοῶ μὴ λίαν ἂν ταχὺ σωφρονη-
- 29 σθείην. ὃ δὲ ὑμεῖς ἐννοεῖτε, ὅτι ἦττον ἂν στάσις εἴη ἐνὸς ἀρχοντος ἢ πολλῶν, εὖ ἴστε ὅτι ἄλλον μὲν ἐλόμενοι οὐχ εὐρήσετε ἐμὲ στασιάζοντα· νομίζω γὰρ ὅστις ἐν πολέμῳ ὦν στασιάζει πρὸς ἄρχοντα, τοῦτον πρὸς τὴν ἑαυτοῦ σωτηρίαν στασιάζειν· ἐὰν δὲ ἐμὲ ἔλησθε, οὐκ ἂν θαυμάσαιμι εἴ τινα εὐροῖτε καὶ ὑμῖν καὶ ἐμοὶ ἀχθόμενον.
- 30 Ἐπεὶ ταῦτα εἶπε, πολὺ πλείονες ἀνίσταντο λέ-

should be put to vote, he arose and spoke as follows:

"I am happy, soldiers, since I am a human being, to be honoured by you, and I am grateful also, and I pray that the gods may grant me opportunity to be the means of bringing you some benefit; still, I think that for me to be preferred by you as commander when a Lacedaemonian is at hand, is not expedient for you,—for you would be less likely on this account to obtain any favour you might desire from the Lacedaemonians—and for myself, on the other hand, I believe it is not altogether safe. For I see that the Lacedaemonians did not cease waging war upon my native state until they had made all her citizens acknowledge that the Lacedaemonians were their leaders also.¹ But just as soon as this acknowledgment had been made, they straightway ceased waging war and no longer continued to besiege the city. Now if I, being aware of these things, should seem to be trying to make their authority null and void wherever I could, I suspect that I might very speedily be brought back to reason on that point. As to your own thought, that there would be less factiousness with one commander than with many, be well assured that if you choose another, you will not find me acting factiously,—for I believe that when a man engaged in war factiously opposes a commander, that man is factiously opposing his own safety; but if you choose me, I should not be surprised if you should find some one else feeling angry both with you and with myself."

When he had thus spoken, a much larger number of people arose, saying that he ought to be com-

¹ *cp. Hellenica* II. ii. 20.

γοντες ὡς δέοι αὐτὸν ἄρχειν. Ἀγασίας δὲ Στυμφάλιος εἶπεν ὅτι γελοῖον εἶη, εἰ οὕτως ἔχοι ἢ ὀργιούνηται Λακεδαιμόνιοι καὶ ἐὰν σύνδειπνοι συνελθόντες μὴ Λακεδαιμόνιον συμποσίαρχον αἰρῶνται; ἐπεὶ εἰ οὕτω γε τοῦτο ἔχει, ἔφη, οὐδὲ λοχαγεῖν ἡμῖν ἔξεστιν, ὡς ἔοικεν, ὅτι Ἀρκάδες ἐσμέν. ἐνταῦθα δὴ ὡς εὖ εἰπόντος τοῦ Ἀγασίου ἀνεθορύβησαν.

31 Καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἐπεὶ ἑώρα πλείονος ἐνδέον, παρελθὼν εἶπεν Ἀλλ', ὦ ἄνδρες, ἔφη, ὡς πάνυ εἰδήτε, ὁμνύω ὑμῖν θεοὺς πάντας καὶ πάσας, ἢ μὴν ἐγώ, ἐπεὶ τὴν ὑμετέραν γνώμην ἤσθανόμην, ἐθύόμην εἰ βέλτιον εἶη ὑμῖν τε ἐμοὶ ἐπιτρέψαι ταύτην τὴν ἀρχὴν καὶ ἐμοὶ ὑποστήναι· καὶ μοι οἱ θεοὶ οὕτως ἐν τοῖς ἱεροῖς ἐσήμησαν ὥστε καὶ ἰδιώτην ἂν γινῶναι ὅτι τῆς μοναρχίας ἀπέχεσθαι με δεῖ.

32 Οὕτω δὴ Χειρίσοφον αἰροῦνται. Χειρίσοφος δ' ἐπεὶ ἤρέθη, παρελθὼν εἶπεν Ἀλλ', ὦ ἄνδρες, τοῦτο μὲν ἴστε, ὅτι οὐδ' ἂν ἐγωγε ἐστασίαζον, εἰ ἄλλον εἴλεσθε· Ξενοφῶντα μέντοι, ἔφη, ὠνήσατε οὐχ ἐλόμενοι· ὡς καὶ νῦν Δέξιππος ἤδη διέβαλλεν αὐτὸν πρὸς Ἀναξίβιον ὃ τι ἐδύνατο καὶ μάλα ἐμοῦ αὐτὸν σιγάζοντος. ὁ δ' ἔφη νομίζειν αὐτὸν Τιμασίῳ μᾶλλον συνάρχειν ἂν ἐθελῆσαι¹ Δαρδανεῖ ὄντι τοῦ Κλεάρχου στρατεύματος ἢ ἑαυτῷ² Λάκωνι ὄντι. ἐπεὶ μέντοι ἐμὲ εἴλεσθε, ἔφη, καὶ ἐγὼ πειράσομαι ὃ τι ἂν δύνωμαι

¹ συνάρχειν ἂν ἐθελῆσαι Gem., following Cobet: συνάρχειν ἐθελῆσαι the inferior MSS.: ἄρχειν συνεθελῆσαι the better MSS., Mar. ² ἑαυτῷ MSS., Mar.: ἐμαυτῷ Gem.

¹ *cp. v. i. 15.*

mander. And Agasias the Stymphalian said that it was ridiculous if the situation was as Xenophon described it. "Will the Lacedaemonians also be angry," he said, "if guests at dinner come together and fail to choose a Lacedaemonian as master of the feast? For if the matter stands in that way, we are not free even to be captains, it would seem, because we are Arcadians." Thereupon the soldiers raised a shout, saying that Agasias was quite right.

Then Xenophon, seeing that something more was needed, came forward and spoke again: "Well, soldiers," he said, "that you may understand the matter fully I swear to you by all the gods and goddesses that in very truth, so soon as I became aware of your intention, I offered sacrifices to learn whether it was best for you to entrust to me this command and for me to undertake it; and the gods gave me such signs in the sacrifices that even a layman could perceive that I must withhold myself from accepting the sole command."

Under these circumstances, then, they chose Cheirisophus. And after being chosen Cheirisophus came forward and spoke as follows: "Well, soldiers, be sure of this, that I also should not have acted factiously if you had chosen another; as for Xenophon, however," he continued, "you did him a kindness by not choosing him; for even now Dexippus¹ has already been falsely accusing him, as far as he could, to Anaxibius, even though I tried hard to silence him. He said he believed that Xenophon would rather share the command of Clearchus' army with Timasion, a Dardanian, than with himself, a Laconian. However," Cheirisophus went on, "since you have chosen me, I shall endeavour to render you whatever

ὑμᾶς ἀγαθὸν ποιεῖν. καὶ ὑμεῖς οὕτω παρασκευάζεσθε ὡς αὐριον, ἐὰν πλοῦς ᾗ, ἀναξόμενοι· ὁ δὲ πλοῦς ἔσται εἰς Ἡράκλειαν· ἅπαντας οὖν δεῖ ἐκεῖσε πειρᾶσθαι κατασχεῖν· τὰ δ' ἄλλα, ἐπειδὴν ἐκεῖσε ἔλθωμεν, βουλευσόμεθα.

II. Ἐντεῦθεν τῇ ὑστεραία ἀναγόμενοι πνεύματι ἔπλεον καλῶ ἡμέρας δύο παρὰ γῆν. καὶ παραπλέοντες¹ ἀφίκοντο εἰς Ἡράκλειαν πόλιν Ἑλληνίδα Μεγαρέων ἀποικον, οὖσαν δ' ἐν τῇ
 2 Μαρνανδυνῶν χώρα. καὶ ὠρμίσαντο παρὰ τῇ Ἀχερουσιάδι Χερρονήσῳ, ἐνθα λέγεται ὅτι Ἡρακλῆς ἐπὶ τὸν Κέρβερον κύνα καταβῆναι ἢ ὑπὸ τὰ σημεῖα δεικνύουσι τῆς καταβάσεως τὸ βάθος πλέον
 3 ἢ ἐπὶ δύο στάδια. ἐνταῦθα τοῖς Ἑλλησιν οἱ Ἡρακλεῶται ξένια πέμπουσιν ἀλφίτων μεδίμνους τρισχιλίους καὶ οἶνον κεράμια δισχίλια καὶ βοῦς εἴκοσι καὶ οἷς ἑκατόν. ἐνταῦθα διὰ τοῦ πεδίου
 4 οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται συλλεγόντες ἐβουλευούτο τὴν λοιπὴν πορείαν πότερον κατὰ γῆν ἢ κατὰ θάλατταν χρῆ πορευθῆναι ἐκ τοῦ Πόντου. ἀναστὰς δὲ Λύκων Ἀχαιὸς εἶπε· Θαυμάζω μὲν, ὦ ἄνδρες, τῶν στρατηγῶν ὅτι οὐ πειρῶνται ἡμῶν ἐκπορίζειν σιτηρέσιον· τὰ μὲν γὰρ ξένια οὐ μὴ

¹ After παραπλέοντες the MSS. proceed as follows (see translation on opposite page): ἐθεώρουσαν τὴν τε Ἰασονίαν ἀκτὴν, ἐνθα ἢ Ἀργὴ λέγεται ὀρμίσασθαι, καὶ τῶν ποταμῶν τὰ στόματα, πρῶτον μὲν τοῦ Θερμόδοντος, ἔπειτα δὲ τοῦ Ἰριος, ἔπειτα δὲ τοῦ Ἄλυος, μετὰ τοῦτον τοῦ Παρθενίου· τοῦτον δὲ παραπλεύσαντες—The statements here contained are geographically impossible, and the passage is regarded by edd. generally as an interpolation.

service I can. And do you make your preparations to put to sea to-morrow if it be sailing weather. The voyage will be to Heracleia; every one of us, therefore, must try to come to land there; and we shall take counsel about our further doings when we have arrived there."

II. On the next day they set sail from Sinope and voyaged for two days with a fair wind along the coast. And coursing along,¹ they arrived at Heracleia, a Greek city and a colony of the Megarians, situated in the territory of the Mariandynians. And they came to anchor alongside the Acherusian Chersonese, where Heracles is said to have descended to Hades after the dog Cerberus, at a spot where they now show the marks of his descent, reaching to a depth of more than two stadia. Here the Heracleots sent to the Greeks, as gifts of hospitality, three thousand *medimni* of barley meal, two thousand jars of wine, twenty cattle, and a hundred sheep. And in this place there flows through the plain a river named the Lycus, about two plethra in width.

Then the soldiers gathered together and proceeded to take counsel about the remainder of the journey, that is, whether they had better go on from the Euxine by land or by sea. And Lycon the Achaean rose and said: "I am astonished, soldiers, that the generals do not endeavour to supply us with money to buy provisions; for our gifts of hospitality will not make three days' rations for the

¹ Notes of the voyage (see opposite page):—They saw Jason's Cape, where the Argo is said to have come to anchor, and the mouths of the rivers, first the Thermodon, then the Iris, third the Halys, and after that the Parthenius; and after they had passed this river—

γένηται τῇ στρατιᾷ τριῶν ἡμερῶν σιτία· ὀπόθεν
 δ' ἐπισιτισάμενοι πορευσόμεθα οὐκ ἔστιν, ἔφη.
 ἐμοὶ οὖν δοκεῖ αἰτεῖν τοὺς Ἡρακλεώτας μὴ ἔλατ-
 5 τον ἢ τρισχιλίους κυζικηνοὺς· ἄλλος δ' εἶπε μὴ
 ἔλαττον ἢ μυρίους· καὶ ἐλομένους πρέσβεις αὐτίκα
 μάλα ἡμῶν καθημένων πέμπειν πρὸς τὴν πόλιν,
 καὶ εἰδέναι ὃ τι ἂν ἀπαγγέλλωσι, καὶ πρὸς ταῦτα
 6 βουλευέσθαι. ἐντεῦθεν προυβάλλοντο πρέσβεις
 πρῶτον μὲν Χειρίσοφον, ὅτι ἄρχων ἦρητο· ἔστι δ'
 οἱ καὶ Ξενοφῶντα. οἱ δὲ ἰσχυρῶς ἀπεμάχοντο·
 ἀμφοῖν γὰρ ταῦτ' ἐδόκει μὴ ἀναγκάζειν πόλιν
 Ἑλληνίδα καὶ φιλίαν ὃ τι μὴ αὐτοὶ ἐθέλοντες
 7 διδοῖεν. ἐπεὶ δ' οὗτοι ἐδόκουν ἀπρόθυμοι εἶναι,
 πέμπουσι Λύκωνα Ἀχαιοὺν καὶ Καλλίμαχον
 Παρράσιον καὶ Ἀγασίαν Στυμφάλιον. οὗτοι ἐλ-
 θόντες ἔλεγον τὰ δεδογμένα· τὸν δὲ Λύκωνα ἔφασαν
 8 καὶ ἐπαπειλεῖν, εἰ μὴ ποιήσοιεν ταῦτα. ἀκού-
 σαντες δ' οἱ Ἡρακλεῶται βουλευέσθαι ἔφασαν·
 καὶ εὐθὺς τὰ τε χρήματα ἐκ τῶν ἀγρῶν συνήγον
 καὶ τὴν ἀγορὰν εἴσω ἀνεσκεύασαν, καὶ αἱ πύλαι
 ἐκέκλειντο καὶ ἐπὶ τῶν τειχῶν ὄπλα ἐφαίνετο.
 9 Ἐκ τούτου οἱ ταραξάντες ταῦτα τοὺς στρα-
 τηγοὺς ἠτιῶντο διαφθεῖρειν τὴν πρᾶξιν· καὶ
 συνίσταντο οἱ Ἀρκάδες καὶ οἱ Ἀχαιοί· προει-
 στήκει δὲ μάλιστα αὐτῶν Καλλίμαχος τε ὁ
 10 Παρράσιος καὶ Λύκων ὁ Ἀχαιός. οἱ δὲ λόγοι

¹ *cp.* note on v. vi. 23.

army; and there is no place," said he, "from which we can procure provisions before beginning our journey. I move, therefore, that we demand of the Heracleots not less than three thousand Cyzicenes"¹—another man said, not less than ten thousand—"and that we choose ambassadors this very moment, while we are in session here, send them to the city, hear whatever report they may bring back, and take counsel in the light of that." Thereupon they went to nominating ambassadors, first Cheiriosophus, because he had been chosen commander, and some nominated Xenophon also. Both men, however, offered vigorous resistance; for both held the same view—that they ought not to coerce a friendly city of Greeks into giving what they did not offer of their own accord. As these two seemed disinclined to act, they sent Lycon the Achaean, Callimachus the Parrhasian, and Agasias the Stymphalian. These men went and put before the Heracleots the resolutions adopted by the army; and Lycon, so the report ran, even added threats, in case they should refuse compliance. After hearing the ambassadors, the Heracleots said that they would consider the matter; and immediately they set about gathering their property from the country and moved the market within the walls; meanwhile the gates had been closed and arms were to be seen upon the walls.

Thereupon those who had brought about this agitation accused the generals of spoiling their undertaking; and the Arcadians and Achaeans proceeded to band themselves together, under the leadership particularly of Callimachus the Parrhasian and Lycon the Achaean. Their words were to this

- ἦσαν αὐτοῖς ὡς αἰσχροὺς εἶη ἄρχειν Ἀθηναίων Πελοποννησίων καὶ Λακεδαιμόνιον¹ μηδεμίαν δύναμιν παρεχομένους² εἰς τὴν στρατίαν, καὶ τοὺς μὲν πόνους σφᾶς ἔχειν, τὰ δὲ κέρδη ἄλλους, καὶ ταῦτα τὴν σωτηρίαν σφῶν κατειργασμένων εἶναι γὰρ τοὺς κατειργασμένους Ἀρκάδας καὶ Ἀχαιοὺς, τὸ δ' ἄλλο στράτευμα οὐδὲν εἶναι (καὶ ἦν δὲ τῇ ἀληθείᾳ ὑπὲρ ἡμῶν τοῦ στρατεύματος
- 11 Ἀρκάδες καὶ Ἀχαιοί)· εἰ οὖν σωφρονοῖεν, αὐτοὶ συστάντες καὶ στρατηγούς ἐλόμενοι ἑαυτῶν καθ' ἑαυτοὺς ἂν τὴν πορείαν ποιοῖντο καὶ πειρῶντο
- 12 ἀγαθόν τι λαμβάνειν. ταῦτ' ἔδοξε· καὶ ἀπολιπόντες Χειρίσοφον εἴ τινες ἦσαν παρ' αὐτῷ Ἀρκάδες ἢ Ἀχαιοὶ καὶ Ξενοφῶντα συνέστησαν καὶ στρατηγούς αἰροῦνται ἑαυτῶν δέκα· τούτους δὲ ἐψηφίσαντο ἐκ τῆς νικώσης ὃ τι δοκοῖη τοῦτο ποιεῖν. ἡ μὲν οὖν τοῦ παντὸς ἀρχὴ Χειρισόφῳ ἐνταῦθα κατελύθη ἡμέρα ἕκτη ἢ ἑβδόμη ἀφ' ἧς ἠρέθη.
- 13 Ξενοφῶν μέντοι ἐβούλετο κοινῇ μετ' αὐτοῦ³ τὴν πορείαν ποιεῖσθαι, νομίζων οὕτως ἀσφαλεστέραν εἶναι ἢ ἰδίᾳ ἕκαστον στέλλεσθαι· ἀλλὰ Νέων ἐπειθεν αὐτὸν καθ' αὐτὸν πορεύεσθαι, ἀκούσας τοῦ Χειρισόφου ὅτι Κλέανδρος ὁ ἐν Βυζαντίῳ

¹ καὶ Λακεδαιμόνιον Mar., following Madvig: καὶ Λακεδαιμόνιον MSS., which Gem. brackets, inserting καὶ Λακεδαιμόνιον after στρατίαν, with Matthias.

² παρεχομένους Hug: παρεχόμενον MSS., Mar., Gem.

effect, that it was shameful that Peloponnesians should be under the command of an Athenian and a Lacedaemonian who contributed no troops to the army, and that the hardships should fall to themselves and the gains to others, all despite the fact that the preservation of the army was their achievement; for it was, they said, the Arcadians and Achaeans who had achieved this result, and the rest of the army amounted to nothing (in truth more than half the army did consist of Arcadians and Achaeans); if they were wise, therefore, they would band together by themselves, choose generals from their own number, make the journey by themselves, and try to get a little good out of it. This course was resolved upon, and whatever Arcadians or Achaeans there were with Cheirisophus and Xenophon left these commanders and joined forces, and they chose ten generals from their own number, decreeing that these ten were to do whatever might be decided upon by vote of the majority. So it was that the supreme command of Cheirisophus came to an end then and there, on the sixth or seventh day from the day of his election.

Xenophon, however, was desirous of making the journey in company with Cheirisophus, believing that this was a safer plan than for each of them to proceed independently; but Neon¹ urged him to go by himself, for he had heard from Cheirisophus that Cleander, the Lacedaemonian governor at Byzantium,

¹ Cheirisophus' lieutenant (*cp.* v. vi. 36).

³ μετ' αὐτοῦ Krüger: μετὰ τῶν μεινάντων Gem., following Hug: μετ' αὐτῶν MSS., which Mar. prints, but regards as corrupt.

- ἀρμοστῆς φαίη τριήρεις ἔχων ἤξειν εἰς Κάλπης
 14 λιμένα· ὅπως οὖν μηδεὶς μετάσχοι, ἀλλ' αὐτοὶ
 καὶ οἱ αὐτῶν στρατιῶται ἐκπλεύσειαν ἐπὶ τῶν
 τριήρων, διὰ ταῦτα συνεβούλευε. καὶ Χειρί-
 σοφος, ἅμα μὲν ἀθυμῶν τοῖς γεγενημένοις, ἅμα
 δὲ μισῶν ἐκ τούτου τὸ στράτευμα, ἐπιτρέπει αὐτῷ
 15 ποιεῖν ὃ τι βούλεται. Ξενοφῶν δὲ ἔτι μὲν ἐπε-
 χείρησεν ἀπαλλαγεῖς τῆς στρατιᾶς ἐκπλευσαι·
 θυομένῳ δὲ αὐτῷ τῷ ἡγεμόνι Ἡρακλεῖ καὶ κοινου-
 μένῳ, πότερα λῶν καὶ ἄμεινον εἴη στρατεύεσθαι
 ἔχοντι τοὺς παραμείναντας τῶν στρατιωτῶν ἢ
 ἀπαλλάττεσθαι, ἐσήμηεν ὁ θεὸς τοῖς ἱεροῖς
 16 συστρατεύεσθαι. οὕτω γίγνεται τὸ στράτευμα
 τρίχα, Ἀρκάδες μὲν καὶ Ἀχαιοὶ πλείους ἢ τετρα-
 κισχίλιοι, ὀπλίται πάντες, Χειρισόφῳ δ' ὀπλίται
 μὲν εἰς τετρακοσίους καὶ χιλίους, πελτασταὶ δὲ
 εἰς ἑπτακοσίους, οἱ Κλεάρχου Θράκες, Ξενοφῶντι
 δὲ ὀπλίται μὲν εἰς ἑπτακοσίους καὶ χιλίους,
 πελτασταὶ δὲ εἰς τριακοσίους· ἵππικὸν δὲ μόνος
 οὗτος εἶχεν, ἀμφὶ τετταράκοντα ἵππέας.
- 17 Καὶ οἱ μὲν Ἀρκάδες διαπραξάμενοι πλοῖα
 παρὰ τῶν Ἡρακλεωτῶν πρῶτοι πλέουσιν, ὅπως
 ἐξαίφνης ἐπιπεσόντες τοῖς Βιθυνοῖς λάβοιεν ὅτι
 πλεῖστα· καὶ ἀποβαίνουσιν εἰς Κάλπης λιμένα
 18 κατὰ μέσον πῶς τῆς Θράκης.¹ Χειρίσοφος δ'
 εὐθύς ἀπὸ τῆς πόλεως τῶν Ἡρακλεωτῶν ἀρξά-
 μενος πεζῇ ἐπορεύετο διὰ τῆς χώρας· ἐπεὶ δὲ εἰς

¹ κατὰ . . . Θράκης MSS., Mar. : Gem. brackets, following Krüger.

had said he was coming to Calpe Harbour with triremes; it was Neon's purpose, then, that no one else should get a share in this opportunity, but that he himself and Cheirisophus and their soldiers should sail away upon the triremes, and this was the reason for his advice to Xenophon. As for Cheirisophus, he was so despondent over what had happened and, besides, felt such hatred toward the army for its action, that he allowed Neon to do whatever he chose. For a time, indeed, Xenophon did try to get clear of the army and sail away home; but when he sacrificed to Heracles the Leader, consulting him as to whether it was better and more proper for him to continue the journey with such of the soldiers as had remained with him, or to be rid of them, the god indicated to him by the sacrifices that he should stay with them. Thus the army was split into three parts: first, the Arcadians and Achaeans, more than four thousand in number, all hoplites; secondly, Cheirisophus' troops, to the number of fourteen hundred hoplites and seven hundred peltasts, the latter being Clearchus' Thracians; and thirdly, Xenophon's force, numbering seventeen hundred hoplites and three hundred peltasts; Xenophon alone, however, had horsemen, to the number of about forty.

The Arcadians, managing to obtain ships from the Heracleots, set sail first, with the intention of making an unexpected descent upon the Bithynians and thus securing the greatest possible amount of booty; and they disembarked at Calpe Harbour, about midway of the Thracian coast. But Cheirisophus went by land from the very beginning of his journey from the city of the Heracleots, travelling across country;

19 τὴν Θράκην ἐνέβαλε, παρὰ τὴν θάλατταν ἦει
καὶ γὰρ ἡσθένει. Ξενοφῶν δὲ πλοῖα λαβὼν ἀπο-
βαίνει ἐπὶ τὰ ὄρια τῆς Θράκης καὶ τῆς Ἡρακλεώ-
τιδος καὶ διὰ μεσογείας ἐπορεύετο.

2 III. Ἐπραξαν δ' αὐτῶν ἕκαστοι τάδε. οἱ μὲν
Ἀρκαῖδες ὡς ἀπέβησαν νυκτὸς εἰς Κάλπης λιμένα,
πορεύονται εἰς τὰς πρώτας κώμας, στάδια ἀπὸ
θαλάττης ὡς τριάκοντα. ἐπεὶ δὲ φῶς ἐγένετο,
ἦγεν ἕκαστος ὁ στρατηγὸς τὸν αὐτοῦ λόχον ἐπὶ
κώμην· ὅποια δὲ μείζων ἐδόκει εἶναι, σύνδυο
3 λόχους ἦγον οἱ στρατηγοί. συνεβάλλοντο δὲ
καὶ λόφον εἰς ὃν δέοι πάντα ἀλίξεσθαι· καὶ ἅτε
ἐξαίφνης ἐπιπεσόντες ἀνδράποδά τε πολλὰ ἔλα-
4 βον καὶ πρόβατα πολλὰ περιεβάλλοντο. οἱ δὲ
Θρᾷκες ἠθροίζοντο οἱ διαφεύγοντες· πολλοὶ δὲ
διέφευγον πελτασταὶ ὄντες ὀπλίτας ἐξ αὐτῶν τῶν
χειρῶν. ἐπεὶ δὲ συνελέγησαν, πρῶτον μὲν τῷ
Σμίκρητος λόχῳ ἐνὸς τῶν Ἀρκαδῶν στρατηγῶν
ἀπιόντι ἤδη εἰς τὸ συγκείμενον καὶ πολλὰ χρή-
5 ματα ἄγοντι ἐπιτίθενται. καὶ τέως μὲν ἐμάχοντο
ἅμα πορευόμενοι οἱ Ἕλληνες, ἐπὶ δὲ διαβάσει
χαράδρας τρέπονται αὐτούς, καὶ αὐτὸν τε τὸν
Σμίκρητα ἀποκτινύουσι καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους πάντας·
ἄλλου δὲ λόχου τῶν δέκα στρατηγῶν τοῦ Ἡγησάν-
δρου ὀκτὼ μόνους ἔλιπον· καὶ αὐτὸς Ἡγησάνδρος
ἐσώθη.

6 Καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι δὲ λόχοι συνήλθον οἱ μὲν σὺν

when, however, he had entered Thrace, he proceeded along the coast, for the reason that he was ill. Xenophon, finally, took ships, disembarked at the boundaries separating Thrace and the territory of Heracleia, and pursued his way through the back country.

III. The fortunes of the several divisions were as follows. The Arcadians after disembarking by night at Calpe Harbour proceeded to the first villages, about thirty stadia from the sea. When daylight came, each general led his own company against a village, except that where a village seemed unusually large, the generals combined two companies for the attack upon it. They also fixed upon a hill as the place where all the troops were afterwards to gather; and since their onset was unexpected, they took many captives and were in a fair way to secure a large number of sheep. The Thracians who escaped them, however, began to gather—and many had escaped, inasmuch as they were light troops as against hoplites, from the very hands of the Arcadians. When they had come together in a body, they first attacked the company under Smicres, one of the Arcadian generals, as it was already withdrawing to the appointed place with a great quantity of booty. For a while the Greeks fought as they marched, but at the crossing of a gorge the Thracians put them to rout, and they killed not only Smicres himself, but the rest of the company to a man; in another of the companies belonging to the ten generals, the one commanded by Hegesander, they left only eight men alive, Hegesander himself being one of them.

The other companies succeeded in getting together, some of them with difficulty, others without

πράγμασιν οἱ δὲ ἄνευ πραγμάτων· οἱ δὲ Θρᾶκες ἐπεὶ ἠτύχησαν τοῦτο τὸ εὐτύχημα, συνεβόων τε ἀλλήλους καὶ συνελέγοντο ἐρρωμένως τῆς νυκτός. καὶ ἅμα ἡμέρα κύκλῳ περὶ τὸν λόφον ἔνθα οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐστρατοπεδεύοντο ἐτάττοντο καὶ ἱππεῖς πολλοὶ καὶ πελτασταί, καὶ αἰεὶ πλέ-

7 ονες συνέρρεον· καὶ προσέβαλλον πρὸς τοὺς ὀπλίτας ἀσφαλῶς· οἱ μὲν γὰρ Ἕλληνες οὔτε τοξότην εἶχον οὔτε ἀκοντιστὴν οὔτε ἱππέα· οἱ δὲ προσθέοντες καὶ προσελαύνοντες ἠκόντιζον·

8 ὁπότε δὲ αὐτοῖς ἐπίοιεν, ῥαδίως ἀπέφευγον· ἄλλοι δὲ ἄλλη ἐπετίθεντο. καὶ τῶν μὲν πολλοὶ ἐτιτρώσκοντο, τῶν δὲ οὐδεὶς ὥστε κινήθῃναι οὐκ ἐδύναντο ἐκ τοῦ χωρίου, ἀλλὰ τελευτῶντες καὶ

9 ἀπὸ τοῦ ὕδατος εἶργον αὐτοὺς οἱ Θρᾶκες. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀπορία πολλὴ ἦν, διελέγοντο περὶ σπονδῶν· καὶ τὰ μὲν ἄλλα ὁμολόγητο αὐτοῖς, ὁμήρους δὲ οὐκ ἐδίδοσαν οἱ Θρᾶκες αἰτούντων τῶν Ἑλλήνων, ἀλλ' ἐν τούτῳ ἴσχετο. τὰ μὲν δὲ τῶν Ἀρκάδων οὕτως εἶχε.

10 Χειρῖσοφος δὲ ἀσφαλῶς πορευόμενος παρὰ θάλατταν ἀφικνεῖται εἰς Κάλπης λιμένα.

Ξενοφῶντι δὲ διὰ τῆς μεσογείας πορευομένῳ οἱ ἱππεῖς προκαταθέοντες¹ ἐντυγχάνουσι πρεσβύταις πορευομένοις ποι. καὶ ἐπεὶ ἤχθησαν παρὰ Ξενοφῶντα, ἐρωτᾷ αὐτοὺς εἴ που ἦσθηται

11 ἄλλου στρατεύματος ὄντος Ἑλληνικοῦ. οἱ δὲ

¹ προκαταθέοντες the inferior MSS., Gem. : καταθέοντες the better MSS., Mar.

any difficulty; but the Thracians, having gained this success, kept shouting to one another and collecting their forces energetically during the night. At daybreak they proceeded to form their lines all round the hill where the Greeks were encamping, their troops consisting of horsemen in large numbers and peltasts, while still more were continually streaming together; and they made attacks upon the hoplites without danger to themselves, inasmuch as the Greeks had neither bowman nor javelin-thrower nor horseman; so they would come running or riding up and throw their javelins, and when the Greeks charged upon them, they would easily get away; and different parties kept attacking at different points. Hence on the one side many were being wounded, on the other side not a man; the result was, that the Greeks were not able to stir from the spot, and at last the Thracians were even cutting them off from their water supply. When their embarrassment became serious, they opened negotiations for a truce; and on every other point an agreement had been reached, but the Thracians refused to give the hostages which the Greeks demanded, and in this particular there was a hitch. Such, then, was the situation of the Arcadians.

As to Cheirisophus, he pursued his march in safety along the coast and arrived at Calpe Harbour.

Xenophon, lastly, was proceeding through the back country when his horsemen, riding on in advance, chanced upon some old men who were journeying somewhere or other. When they were brought to Xenophon, he asked them whether they had heard of another army anywhere, a Greek army. And they told him all that had happened, adding

ἔλεγον πάντα τὰ γεγενημένα, καὶ νῦν ὅτι πολιορκούνται ἐπὶ λόφου, οἱ δὲ Θρᾶκες πάντες περικεκυκλωμένοι εἶεν αὐτούς. ἐνταῦθα τοὺς μὲν ἀνθρώπους τούτους ἐφύλαττεν ἰσχυρῶς, ὅπως ἡγεμόνες εἶεν ὅποι δέοι σκοποὺς δὲ καταστήσας
 12 συνέλεξε τοὺς στρατιώτας καὶ ἔλεξεν. Ἄνδρες στρατιώται, τῶν Ἀρκάδων οἱ μὲν τεθνήσκουσιν, οἱ δὲ λοιποὶ ἐπὶ λόφου τινὸς πολιορκούνται. νομίζω δ' ἔγωγε, εἰ ἐκεῖνοι ἀπολοῦνται, οὐδ' ἡμῖν εἶναι οὐδεμίαν σωτηρίαν, οὕτω μὲν πολλῶν ὄντων τῶν
 13 πολεμίων, οὕτω δὲ τεθαρρηκότων. κράτιστον οὖν ἡμῖν ὡς τάχιστα βοηθεῖν τοῖς ἀνδράσι, ὅπως εἰ ἔτι εἰσὶ σῶοι, σὺν ἐκείνοις μαχώμεθα καὶ μὴ
 16 μόνον λειφθέντες μόνον καὶ κινδυνεύωμεν.¹ ἡμεῖς
 (14) γὰρ ἀποδραϊήμεν ἂν οὐδαμοῦ ἐνθένδε· πολλὴ μὲν γάρ, ἔφη, εἰς Ἡράκλειαν πάλιν ἀπιέναι, πολλὴ δὲ εἰς Χρυσόπολιν διελθεῖν· οἱ δὲ πολέμοι πλησίον· εἰς Κάλπη δὲ λιμένα, ἐνθα Χειρίσοφον εἰκάζομεν εἶναι, εἰ σέσωται, ἐλαχίστη ὁδός. ἀλλὰ δὴ ἐκεῖ μὲν οὐτε πλοιά ἐστὶν οἷς ἀσπλευσόμεθα, μένουσι δὲ αὐτοῦ οὐδὲ μιᾶς ἡμέρας ἐστὶ τὰ ἐπι-
 17 τήδεια. τῶν δὲ πολιορκουμένων ἀπολομένων σὺν
 (15) τοῖς Χειρισόφου μόνοις κάκιόν ἐστι διακινδυνεύειν ἢ τῶνδε σωθέντων πάντας εἰς ταῦτόν ἐλθόντας κοινῇ τῆς σωτηρίας ἔχουσιν. ἀλλὰ χρὴ παρασκευασάμενους τὴν γνώμην πορεύεσθαι ὡς νῦν ἢ εὐκλεῶς τελευτῆσαι ἐστὶν ἢ κάλλιστον ἔργον ἐργάσασθαι
 18 Ἕλληνας τοσοῦτους σώσαντας. καὶ ὁ θεὸς ἴσως
 (16)

¹ In the transposition indicated by the following section numbers Gem. and Mar. follow Rehdantz.

that at present the Greeks were being besieged upon a hill, with the Thracians in full force completely surrounding them. Then Xenophon kept these men under strict guard, in order that they might serve as guides wherever he might need to go; and after stationing watchers he called the troops together and spoke as follows: "Fellow soldiers, some of the Arcadians have been killed and the remainder of them are being besieged upon a certain hill. Now it is my own belief that if they are to perish, there is no salvation for us either, the enemy being so numerous and made so confident by their success. Therefore it is best for us to go to the rescue of these men with all speed, so that if they are still alive, we may have their aid in the fighting, instead of being left alone and alone facing the danger. For there is no place to which we can ourselves steal away from here; for to go back to Heracleia," he said, "is a long journey, and it is a long journey through to Chryso polis, and meanwhile the enemy are close at hand; to Calpé Harbour, where we presume Cheirisophus is, in case he has come through safely, is the shortest distance. But firstly, mark you, having arrived there we have neither ships wherein to sail away nor provisions for so much as a single day if we remain in the place; and secondly, it is worse to have the blockaded force destroyed and take our chances in company with Cheirisophus' troops only, than to have these men saved and then unite all our forces and together strive for deliverance. We must set forth, then, prepared in our minds for either meeting to-day a glorious death or accomplishing a most noble deed in saving so many Greeks. And it may be that the

- ἄγει οὕτως, ὃς τοὺς μεγαληγορήσαντας ὡς πλέον φρονούντας ταπεινώσαι βούλεται, ἡμᾶς δὲ τοὺς ἀπὸ τῶν θεῶν ἀρχομένους ἐντιμότερους ἐκείνων καταστήσαι. ἀλλ' ἔπεσθαι χρὴ καὶ προσέχειν τὸν νοῦν, ὡς ἂν τὸ παραγγελλόμενον δύνησθε
- 14 ποιεῖν. νῦν μὲν οὖν στρατοπεδευσώμεθα προ-
- (17) ελθόντες ὅσον ἂν δοκῇ καιρὸς εἶναι εἰς τὸ δειπνοποιεῖσθαι ἕως δ' ἂν πορευώμεθα, Τιμασίῳ ἔχων τοὺς ἰππέας προελαυνέτω ἐφορῶν ἡμᾶς καὶ σκοπεῖτω τὰ ἔμπροσθεν, ὡς μηδὲν ἡμᾶς λάθῃ.
- 15 Ταῦτ' εἰπὼν ἠγείτο. παρέπεμψε δὲ καὶ τῶν
- (18) γυμνήτων ἀνθρώπους εὐζώνους εἰς τὰ πλάγια καὶ εἰς τὰ ἄκρα, ὅπως εἴ ποῦ τί ποθεν καθορῶν, σημαίνουεν· ἐκέλευε δὲ καλεῖν ἅπαντα ὅτῳ ἐντυγ-
- 19 χάνουεν καυσίμῳ. οἱ δὲ ἰππεῖς σπειρόμενοι ἐφ' ὅσον καλῶς εἶχεν ἔκαιον, καὶ οἱ πελτασταὶ ἐπιπαριόντες κατὰ τὰ ἄκρα ἔκαιον πάντα ὅσα καύσιμα ἐώρων, καὶ ἡ στρατιὰ δέ, εἴ τιμι παραλειπομένῳ ἐντυγχάνουεν ὥστε πᾶσα ἡ χώρα αἴθε-
- 20 σθαι ἐδόκει καὶ τὸ στράτευμα πολὺ εἶναι. ἐπεὶ δὲ ὥρα ἦν, κατεστρατοπεδεύσαντο ἐπὶ λόφον ἐκβάντες, καὶ τὰ τε τῶν πολεμίων πυρὰ ἐώρων, ἀπείχον δὲ ὡς τετταράκοντα σταδίους, καὶ αὐτοὶ
- 21 ὡς ἐδύναντο πλείστα πυρὰ ἔκαιον. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐδείπνησαν τάχιστα, παρηγγέλθη τὰ πυρὰ κατα-

¹ *i. e.* consult the gods before undertaking any enterprise. The expression was proverbial.

god is guiding events in this way, he who wills that those who talked boastfully, as though possessed of superior wisdom, should be brought low, and that we, who always begin with the gods,¹ should be set in a place of higher honour than those boasters. And now you must keep in line and on the alert, so that you can carry out the orders that are given. For the present, then, let us go forward as far as may seem consistent with our time for dining, and then encamp; and so long as we are on the march, let Timasion with the cavalry ride on in advance, keeping us in sight, and spy out what is ahead, in order that nothing may escape our attention."

With these words he proceeded to lead the way. Furthermore, he sent out on the flanks and to the neighbouring heights some of the more active of the light-armed troops in order that they might signal to the army in case they should sight anything anywhere from any point of observation; and he directed them to burn everything they found that could be burned. So the horsemen, scattering as widely as was proper, went to burning, the peltasts, making their way along the heights abreast of the main army, burned all they saw which was combustible, and the main army likewise burned anything they found that had been passed over; the result was, that the whole country seemed to be ablaze and the army seemed to be a large one. When the time had come, they ascended a hill and encamped; from there they could see the campfires of the enemy, distant about forty stadia, and they kindled as many fires themselves as they could. Immediately after they had dined, however, the order was given to extinguish every one of the

- σβεννύναι πάντα. καὶ τὴν μὲν νύκτα φυλακὰς ποιησάμενοι ἐκάθευδον· ἅμα δὲ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ προσευξάμενοι τοῖς θεοῖς, συνταξάμενοι ὡς εἰς μάχην
- 22 ἐπορεύοντο ἢ ἐδύναντο τάχιστα. Τιμασίῳ δὲ καὶ οἱ ἵππεῖς ἔχοντες τοὺς ἡγεμόνας καὶ προελαύνοντες ἐλάνθανον αὐτοὺς ἐπὶ τῷ λόφῳ γενόμενοι ἔνθα ἐπολιορκούντο οἱ Ἕλληες. καὶ οὐχ ὀρώσιν οὔτε φίλιον στράτευμα οὔτε πολέμιον (καὶ ταῦτα ἀπαγγέλλουσι πρὸς τὸν Ξενοφῶντα καὶ τὸ στράτευμα¹), γράδια δὲ καὶ γερόντια καὶ πρόβατα
- 23 ὀλίγα καὶ βοῦς καταλελειμμένους. καὶ τὸ μὲν πρῶτον θαῦμα ἦν τί εἴη τὸ γεγενημένον, ἔπειτα δὲ καὶ τῶν καταλελειμμένων ἐπυνθάνοντο ὅτι οἱ μὲν Θρᾶκες ἀφ' ἐσπέρας ᾤχοντο ἀπιόντες, καὶ τοὺς Ἕλληνας δ' ἔφασαν οἴχεσθαι· ὅποι δέ, οὐκ εἰδέναι.
- 24 Ταῦτα ἀκούσαντες οἱ ἀμφὶ Ξενοφῶντα, ἐπεὶ ἠρίστησαν, συσκευασάμενοι ἐπορεύοντο, βουλόμενοι ὡς τάχιστα συμμείξαι τοῖς ἄλλοις εἰς Κάλπης λιμένα. καὶ πορευόμενοι ἐώρων τὸν στίβον τῶν Ἀρκάδων καὶ Ἀχαιῶν κατὰ τὴν ἐπὶ Κάλπης ὁδόν. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀφίκοντο εἰς τὸ αὐτό, ἄσμενοί τε εἶδον ἀλλήλους καὶ ἠσπάζοντο ὥσπερ
- 25 ἀδελφούς. καὶ ἐπυνθάνοντο οἱ Ἀρκάδες τῶν περὶ Ξενοφῶντα τί τὰ πυρὰ κατασβέσειαν· ἡμεῖς μὲν γάρ, ἔφασαν, φόμεθα ὑμᾶς τὸ μὲν πρῶτον, ἐπειδὴ τὰ πυρὰ οὐκέθ' ἐωρῶμεν, τῆς νυκτὸς ἤξειν ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους· καὶ οἱ πολέμιοι δέ, ὡς γ' ἡμῖν ἐδόκουν, τοῦτο δείσαντες ἀπήλθον· σχεδὸν
- 26 γὰρ ἀμφὶ τοῦτον τὸν χρόνον ἀπήσαν. ἐπεὶ δὲ

¹ καὶ ταῦτα . . . στράτευμα Gem. brackets, following Hug.

fires. Then, after stationing guards, they slept the night through; and at daybreak they offered prayer to the gods, formed their lines for battle, and set forth at the fastest possible pace. And Timasion and the horsemen, riding on ahead with the guides, found themselves without knowing it upon the hill where the Greeks had been besieged. They could see no army, however, either friendly or hostile (and this fact they reported back to Xenophon and the main body), but only some wretched old men and women and a few sheep and cattle that had been left behind. At first they could only wonder what the thing was that had happened, but afterwards they managed to find out from the people who had been left behind that the Thracians had disappeared immediately after nightfall, and the Greeks also, they said, had gone; but whither, they did not know.

Upon hearing this report Xenophon and his men packed up, as soon as they had breakfasted, and set forth, wishing as speedily as possible to join their comrades at Calpe Harbour. As they proceeded, they could see the track of the Arcadians and Achaeans along the road leading towards Calpe. When the two detachments came together, the men were delighted to see one another, and greeted one another like brothers. And the Arcadians inquired of Xenophon's troops why they had put out their fires; "for we imagined at first," they said, "when we could no longer see your fires, that you meant to come against the enemy during the night; and the enemy likewise, so at least it seemed to us, feared this, and on that account departed; for it was at about that time that they went away. But when

οὐκ ἀφίκεσθε, ὁ δὲ χρόνος ἐξῆκεν, ὥσπερ ὑμᾶς πνυθόμενοι τὰ παρ' ἡμῖν φοβηθέντας οἴχεσθαι ἀποδράντας ἐπὶ θάλατταν· καὶ ἐδόκει ἡμῖν μὴ ἀπολείπεσθαι ὑμῶν. οὕτως οὖν καὶ ἡμεῖς δεῦρο ἐπορεύθημεν.

IV. Ταύτην μὲν οὖν τὴν ἡμέραν αὐτοῦ ἠύλιζοντο ἐπὶ τοῦ αἰγιαλοῦ πρὸς τῷ λιμένι. τὸ δὲ χωρίον τοῦτο ὃ καλεῖται Κάλπης λιμὴν ἔστι μὲν ἐν τῇ Θράκῃ τῇ ἐν τῇ Ἀσίᾳ ἀρξαμένη δὲ ἡ Θράκη αὕτη ἔστιν ἀπὸ τοῦ στόματος τοῦ Πόντου μέχρι Ἡρακλείας ἐπὶ δεξιὰ εἰς τὸν Πόντον εἰσπλέοντι.

2 καὶ τριήρει μὲν ἔστιν εἰς Ἡράκλειαν ἐκ Βυζαντίου κώπαις ἡμέρας μακρᾶς πλοῦς· ἐν δὲ τῷ μέσῳ ἄλλη μὲν πόλις οὐδεμία οὔτε φιλία οὔτε Ἑλληνίς, ἀλλὰ Θράκες Βιθυνοί· καὶ οὐδ' ἂν λάβωσι τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐκπίπτουτας ἢ ἄλλως πως δεινὰ ὑβρί-
3 ζειν λέγονται.¹ ὁ δὲ Κάλπης λιμὴν ἐν μέσῳ μὲν κεῖται ἐκατέρωθεν πλεόντων ἐξ Ἡρακλείας καὶ Βυζαντίου, ἔστι δ' ἐν τῇ θαλάττῃ προκείμενον χωρίον, τὸ μὲν εἰς τὴν θάλατταν καθῆκον αὐτοῦ πέτρα ἀπορρώξ, ὕψος ὅπῃ ἐλάχιστον οὐ μείον εἴκοσιν ὀργυῶν, ὁ δὲ αὐχὴν ὁ εἰς τὴν γῆν ἀνήκων τοῦ χωρίου μάλιστα τεττάρων πλέθρων τὸ εὖρος· τὸ δ' ἐντὸς τοῦ αὐχένος χωρίον ἰκανὸν μυρίοις
4 ἀνθρώποις οἰκῆσαι. λιμὴν δ' ὑπ' αὐτῇ τῇ πέτρᾳ τὸ πρὸς ἑσπέραν αἰγιαλὸν ἔχων. κρήνη δὲ ἡδέος ὕδατος καὶ ἀφθονος ῥέουσα ἐπ' αὐτῇ τῇ θαλάττῃ ὑπὸ τῇ ἐπικρατείᾳ τοῦ χωρίου. ξύλα δὲ πολλὰ μὲν καὶ ἄλλα, πάνυ δὲ πολλὰ καὶ καλὰ ναυπη-
5 γήσιμα ἐπ' αὐτῇ τῇ θαλάττῃ. τὸ δὲ ὄρος εἰς

¹ After λέγονται the MSS. have τοὺς Ἑλληνας: Gem. brackets, following Muretus.

you failed to arrive, although the requisite time had passed, we supposed that you had learned of our situation and, seized with fear, had stealthily made off toward the sea; and we thought it best not to be left behind. That was the reason, then, why we also proceeded hither."

IV. During that day they bivouacked where they were, upon the beach by the harbour. Now this place which is called Calpe Harbour is situated in Thrace-in-Asia; and this portion of Thrace begins at the mouth of the Euxine and extends as far as Heracleia, being on the right as one sails into the Euxine. It is a long day's journey for a trireme to row from Byzantium to Heracleia, and between the two places there is no other city, either friendly or Greek, only Bithynian Thracians; and they are said to abuse outrageously any Greeks they may find shipwrecked or may capture in any other way. As for Calpe Harbour, it lies midway of the voyage between Heracleia and Byzantium and is a bit of land jutting out into the sea, the part of it which extends seaward being a precipitous mass of rock, not less than twenty fathoms high at its lowest point, and the isthmus which connects this head with the mainland being about four plethra in width; and the space to the seaward of the isthmus is large enough for ten thousand people to dwell in. At the very foot of the rock there is a harbour whose beach faces toward the west, and an abundantly flowing spring of fresh water close to the shore of the sea and commanded by the headland. There is also a great deal of timber of various sorts, but an especially large amount of fine ship-timber, on the very shore of the sea. The ridge extends back into the interior

μεσόγειαν μὲν ἀνήκει ὄσον ἐπὶ εἴκοσι σταδίους, καὶ τοῦτο γεώδες καὶ ἄλιθον· τὸ δὲ παρὰ θάλατταν πλεόν ἢ ἐπὶ εἴκοσι σταδίους δασὺ πολλοῖς
 6 καὶ παντοδαποῖς καὶ μεγάλοις ξύλοις. ἡ δὲ ἄλλη χώρα καλὴ καὶ πολλή, καὶ κῶμαι ἐν αὐτῇ εἰσι πολλαὶ καὶ οἰκούμεναι· φέρει γὰρ ἡ γῆ καὶ κριθὰς καὶ πυρούς καὶ ὄσπρια πάντα καὶ μελίνας καὶ σήσαμα καὶ σῦκα ἀρκούντα καὶ ἀμπέλους πολλὰς καὶ ἡδυοῖνους καὶ τᾶλλα πάντα πλὴν ἐλαῶν.

7 Ἡ μὲν χώρα ἦν τοιαύτη. ἐσκήνουν δ' ἐν τῷ αἰγιαλῷ πρὸς τῇ θαλάττῃ· εἰς δὲ τὸ πόλισμα¹ ἂν γενόμενον οὐκ ἐβούλοντο στρατοπεδεύεσθαι, ἀλλὰ ἐδόκει καὶ τὸ ἐλθεῖν ἐνταῦθα ἐξ ἐπιβουλῆς
 8 εἶναι, βουλομένων τινῶν κατοικίσαι πόλιν. τῶν γὰρ στρατιωτῶν οἱ πλείστοι ἦσαν οὐ σπάνει βίου ἐκπεπλευκότες ἐπὶ ταύτην τὴν μισθοφοράν, ἀλλὰ τὴν Κύρου ἀρετὴν ἀκούοντες, οἱ μὲν καὶ ἄνδρας ἄγοντες, οἱ δὲ καὶ προσανηλωκότες χρήματα, καὶ τούτων ἕτεροι ἀποδεδρακότες πατέρας καὶ μητέρας, οἱ δὲ καὶ τέκνα καταλιπόντες ὡς χρήματ' αὐτοῖς κτησάμενοι ἤξοντες πάλιν, ἀκούοντες καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους τοὺς παρὰ Κύρῳ πολλὰ καὶ ἀγαθὰ πράττειν. τοιοῦτοι ὄντες ἐπόθουν εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα σῶζεσθαι.

9 Ἐπειδὴ δὲ ὑστέρᾳ ἡμέρᾳ ἐγένετο τῆς εἰς ταῦτόν συνόδου, ἐπ' ἐξόδῳ ἐθύετο Ξενοφῶν· ἀνάγκη γὰρ ἦν ἐπὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἐξάγειν· ἐπενόει δὲ καὶ τοὺς νεκροὺς θάπτειν. ἐπεὶ δὲ τὰ ἱερὰ καλὰ ἐγένετο,

¹ τὸ πόλισμα MSS., Mar. : τόπον πόλισμα Gem., following Jacobs.

for about twenty stadia, and this stretch is deep-soiled and free from stones, while the land bordering the coast is thickly covered for a distance of more than twenty stadia with an abundance of heavy timber of all sorts. The rest of the region is fair and extensive, and contains many inhabited villages; for the land produces barley, wheat, beans of all kinds, millet and sesame, a sufficient quantity of figs, an abundance of grapes which yield a good sweet wine, and in fact everything except olives.

Such was the country thereabouts. The men took up quarters on the beach by the sea, refusing to encamp on the spot which might become a city; indeed, the fact of their coming to this place at all seemed to them the result of scheming on the part of some people who wished to found a city. For most of the soldiers had sailed away from Greece to undertake this service for pay, not because their means were scanty, but because they knew by report of the noble character of Cyrus; some brought other men with them, some had even spent money of their own on the enterprise, while still another class had abandoned fathers and mothers, or had left children behind with the idea of getting money to bring back to them, all because they heard that the other people who served with Cyrus enjoyed abundant good fortune. Being men of this sort, therefore, they longed to return in safety to Greece.

On the day after the reunion of the three divisions Xenophon offered sacrifice with a view to an expedition; for it was necessary to go out after provisions and, besides, he intended to bury the Arcadian dead. When the sacrifices proved favour-

- εἶποντο καὶ οἱ Ἀρκάδες, καὶ τοὺς μὲν νεκροὺς τοὺς πλείστους ἐνθαπερ ἔπεσον ἐκάστους ἔθαψαν· ἡδὴ γὰρ ἦσαν πεμπταῖοι καὶ οὐχ οἶόν τε ἀναιρεῖν ἔτι ἦν· ἐνίους δὲ τοὺς ἐκ τῶν ὁδῶν συνενεγκόντες ἔθαψαν ἐκ τῶν ὑπαρχόντων ὡς ἐδύνατο κάλλιστα· οὓς δὲ μὴ ἠῦρισκον, κενοτάφιον αὐτοῖς
- 10 ἐποίησαν μέγα, καὶ στεφάνους ἐπέθεσαν. ταῦτα δὲ ποιήσαντες ἀνεχώρησαν ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον. καὶ τότε μὲν δειπνήσαντες ἐκοιμήθησαν. τῇ δὲ ὑστεραίᾳ συνήλθον οἱ στρατιῶται πάντες· συνῆγε δὲ μάλιστα Ἀγασίας τε ὁ Στυμφάλιος λοχαγὸς καὶ Ἱερώνυμος Ἡλείος λοχαγὸς καὶ ἄλλοι οἱ
- 11 πρεσβύτατοι τῶν Ἀρκάδων. καὶ δόγμα ἐποίησαντο, εἴαν τις τοῦ λοιποῦ μνησθῆ δίχα τὸ στράτευμα ποιεῖν, θανάτῳ αὐτὸν ζημιοῦσθαι, καὶ κατὰ χώραν ἀπιέναι ἢ περὶ πρόσθεν εἶχε τὸ στράτευμα καὶ ἄρχειν τοὺς πρόσθεν στρατηγούς. καὶ Χειρίσοφος μὲν ἡδὴ ἐτετελευτήκει φάρμακον πιὼν πυρέττων· τὰ δ' ἐκείνου Νέων Ἀσιναῖος παρέλαβε.
- 12 Μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα ἀναστὰς εἶπε Ξενοφῶν· ὦ ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, τὴν μὲν πορείαν, ὡς ἔοικε,¹ πέζῃ ποιητέον· οὐ γὰρ ἔστι πλοῖα· ἀνάγκη δὲ πορεύεσθαι ἡδὴ· οὐ γὰρ ἔστι μένουσι τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. ἡμεῖς οὖν, ἔφη, θυσόμεθα· ὑμᾶς δὲ δεῖ παρασκευάζεσθαι ὡς μαχουμένους εἴ ποτε καὶ
- 13 ἄλλοτε· οἱ γὰρ πολέμοι ἀνατεθαρρήκασιν. ἐκ τούτου ἐθύοντο οἱ στρατηγοί, μάντις δὲ παρῆν

¹ After *ὡς ἔοικε* the MSS. have *δῆλον ὅτι*, which Mar. brackets, following Krüger: Gem. brackets *ὡς ἔοικε*, retaining *δῆλον ὅτι*.

able, the Arcadians also followed with the rest,¹ and they buried the greater part of the dead just where they each had fallen; for they had already lain unburied five days, and it was not now possible to carry away the bodies; some that lay upon the roads, however, they did gather together and honour with as fine a burial as their means allowed, while for those they could not find, they erected a great cenotaph, and placed wreaths upon it. After doing all this they returned to their camp, and then took dinner and went to bed. On the following day all the soldiers held a meeting, the chief movers in the matter being Agasias the Stymphalian, a captain, Hieronymus the Elean, also a captain, and some others from among the eldest of the Arcadians. They passed a resolution that if any man from this time forth should suggest dividing the army, he should be punished with death, and further, that the army should return to the same organization which formerly obtained, and that the former generals should resume command. Now by this time Cheirisophus had died, from the effects of a medicine which he took for a fever;² and his command passed to Neon the Asinaean.

After this Xenophon rose and said: "Fellow soldiers, our journey, it seems, must be made by land, for we have no ships; and we must set out at once, for we have no provisions if we remain here. We, then," he continued, "will sacrifice, and you must prepare yourselves to fight if ever you did; for the enemy have renewed their courage." Thereupon the generals proceeded to sacrifice, the sooth-

¹ *i. e.* no longer insisting upon their independent organization. ² *cp.* ii. 18.

- Ἄρηξιῶν Ἀρκάς· ὁ δὲ Σιλανὸς ὁ Ἀμπρακιώτης ἤδη ἀπεδεδράκει πλοῖον μισθωσάμενος ἐξ Ἡρακλείας. θυομένοις δὲ ἐπὶ τῇ ἀφόδῳ οὐκ ἐγίγνετο
 14 τὰ ἱερά. ταύτην μὲν οὖν τὴν ἡμέραν ἐπαύσαντο. καὶ τινες ἐτόλμων λέγειν ὡς ὁ Ξενοφῶν βουλόμενος τὸ χωρίον οἰκίσαι πέπεικε τὸν μάντιν λέγειν
 15 ὡς τὰ ἱερά οὐ γίγνεται ἐπὶ ἀφόδῳ. ἐντεῦθεν κηρύξας τῇ αὔριον παρεῖναι ἐπὶ τὴν θυσίαν τὸν βουλόμενον, καὶ μάντις εἴ τις εἶη, παραγγείλας παρεῖναι ὡς συνθεασόμενον τὰ ἱερά, ἔθνε· καὶ
 16 ἐνταῦθα παρήσαν πολλοί. θυομένῳ δὲ πάλιν εἰς τρεῖς ἐπὶ τῇ ἀφόδῳ οὐκ ἐγίγνετο τὰ ἱερά. ἐκ τούτου χαλεπῶς εἶχον οἱ στρατιῶται· καὶ γὰρ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἐπέλιπεν ἃ ἔχοντες ἦλθον, καὶ ἀγορὰ οὐδεμία πω παρήν.
 17 Ἐκ τούτου ξυνελθόντων εἶπε πάλιν Ξενοφῶν· ὦ ἄνδρες, ἐπὶ μὲν τῇ πορείᾳ, ὡς ὀράτε, τὰ ἱερά οὐπω γίγνεται· τῶν δ' ἐπιτηδείων ὀρῶ ὑμᾶς δεομένους· ἀνάγκη οὖν μοι δοκεῖ εἶναι θύεσθαι περὶ
 18 αὐτοῦ τούτου. ἀναστὰς τις εἶπεν· Καὶ εἰκότως ἄρα ἡμῖν οὐ γίγνεται τὰ ἱερά· ὡς γὰρ ἐγὼ ἀπὸ τοῦ αὐτομάτου χθὲς ἤκουτος πλοῖον¹ ἤκουσά τινος, Κλέανδρος² ὁ ἐκ Βυζαντίου ἀρμοστής
 19 μέλλει ἤξειν πλοῖα καὶ τριήρεις ἔχων. ἐκ τούτου δὲ ἀναμένειν μὲν πᾶσιν ἐδόκει· ἐπὶ δὲ τὰ ἐπιτή-

¹ πλοῖον Gem., following Hartman: πλοίου MSS., Mar.

² Before Κλέανδρος the MSS. have ὅτι, which Mar. brackets, following Stephanus: Gem. emends to ὅ γε.

¹ *cp. v. vi. 18, 34.*

sayer who was present being Arexion the Arcadian; for Silanus the Ambraciot had by this time stolen away,¹ on a vessel which he hired at Heracleia. When they sacrificed, however, with a view to their departure, the victims would not prove favourable, and they accordingly ceased their offerings for that day. Now some people had the effrontery to say that Xenophon, in his desire to found a city at this spot, had induced the soothsayer to declare that the sacrifices were not favourable for departure. Consequently he made public proclamation that on the morrow any one who so chose might be present at the sacrifice, and if a man were a soothsayer, he sent him word to be at hand to participate in the inspection of the victims; so he made the offering in the immediate presence of many witnesses. But though he sacrificed a second and a third time with a view to departure, the victims would not prove favourable. At that the soldiers were angry, for the provisions they brought with them had given out and there was not yet any market at hand.

Therefore they held a meeting and Xenophon addressed them again. "Soldiers," he said, "as for setting out upon our journey, the sacrifices, as you see, do not yet prove favourable for that; but I am aware that you are in need of provisions; hence it seems to me that we must sacrifice in regard to this latter point alone." Then some one rose and said: "There appears to be good reason why our sacrifices are not favourable; for as I heard from a man who chanced to arrive here yesterday on a ship, Cleander, the Lacedaemonian governor at Byzantium, is to come here with merchant vessels and men-of-war." At that news all deemed it best to stay, but it was

δεια ἀνάγκη ἦν ἐξιέναι. καὶ ἐπὶ τούτῳ πάλιν ἐθύετο εἰς τρίς, καὶ οὐκ ἐγίγνετο τὰ ἱερά. καὶ ἤδη καὶ ἐπὶ σκηνὴν ἰόντες τὴν Ξενοφώντος ἔλεγον ὅτι οὐκ ἔχοιεν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. ὁ δ' οὐκ ἂν ἔφη ἐξαγαγεῖν μὴ γιγνομένων τῶν ἱερῶν.

20 Καὶ πάλιν τῇ ὑστεραία ἐθύετο, καὶ σχεδὸν τι πᾶσα ἡ στρατιὰ διὰ τὸ μέλειν ἅπασιν ἐκυκλοῦντο περὶ τὰ ἱερά· τὰ δὲ θύματα ἐπελελοίπει. οἱ δὲ
21 στρατηγοὶ ἐξήγουν μὲν οὖν, συνεκάλεσαν δέ. εἶπεν οὖν Ξενοφῶν· "Ἴσως οἱ πολέμιοι συνειλεγμένοι εἰσὶ καὶ ἀνάγκη μάχεσθαι· εἰ οὖν καταλιπόντες τὰ σκεύη ἐν τῷ ἐρυμνῷ χωρίῳ ὡς εἰς μάχην παρεσκευασμένοι ἴοιμεν, ἴσως ἂν τὰ ἱερά προχω-
22 ροίῃ ἡμῖν. ἀκούσαντες δ' οἱ στρατιῶται ἀνέκραγον ὡς οὐδὲν δέοι εἰς τὸ χωρίον ἄγειν, ἀλλὰ θύεσθαι ὡς τάχιστα. καὶ πρόβατα μὲν οὐκέτι ἦν, βοῦν¹ δὲ ὑπὸ ἀμάξης πριάμενοι ἐθύοντο· καὶ Ξενοφῶν Κλεάνορος ἐδεήθη τοῦ Ἀρκάδος προθυμείσθαι, εἴ τι ἐν τούτῳ εἴη. ἀλλ' οὐδ' ὡς ἐγένοντο.

23 Νέων δὲ ἦν μὲν στρατηγὸς κατὰ τὸ Χειρισόφου μέρος, ἐπεὶ δὲ ἑώρα τοὺς ἀνθρώπους ὡς εἶχον δεινῶς τῇ ἐνδείᾳ, βουλόμενος αὐτοῖς χαρίζεσθαι, εὐρών τινα ἀνθρωπον Ἡρακλεώτην, ὃς ἔφη κώμας ἐγγύς εἰδέναι ὅθεν εἴη λαβεῖν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, ἐκήρυξε τὸν βουλόμενον ἰέναι ἐπὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια,

¹ βοῦν Gem., following Schneider: βοῦς MSS., Mar.

¹ i. e. the headland described in §§ 3 ff. above.

² One of the generals.

still necessary to go out after provisions. With this object in view Xenophon again sacrificed, going as far as three offerings, and the victims continued unfavourable. By this time people were even coming to Xenophon's tent and declaring that they had no provisions, but he said that he would not lead forth unless the sacrifices turned out favourable.

On the next day he undertook to sacrifice again, and pretty nearly the entire army—for it was a matter of concern to every man—gathered about the place of sacrifice; but the victims had given out. Then the generals, while refusing to lead the men forth, called them together in assembly; and Xenophon said: "It may be that the enemy are gathered together and that we must fight; if, then, we should leave our baggage in the strong place¹ and set out prepared for battle, perhaps our sacrifices would be successful." Upon hearing this, however, the soldiers cried out that it was not at all necessary to enter the place, but, rather, to offer sacrifice with all speed. Now they no longer had any sheep, but they bought a bullock that was yoked to a wagon and proceeded to sacrifice; and Xenophon requested Cleanor² the Arcadian to give special attention to see if there was anything auspicious in this offering. But not even so did the omens prove favourable.

Now Neon was general in place of Cheirisophus, and when he saw in what a terrible condition the soldiers were from want, he was desirous of doing them a kindness; so having found a certain Heraclot who claimed to know of villages near at hand from which it was possible to get provisions, he made proclamation that all who so wished were to

ὡς ἡγεμόνος ἐσομένου. ἐξέρχονται δὴ σὺν δορα-
 τίοις καὶ ἀσκοῖς καὶ θυλάκοις καὶ ἄλλοις ἀγγείοις
 24 εἰς δισχιλίους ἀνθρώπους. ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἦσαν ἐν
 ταῖς κώμαις καὶ διεσπείροντο ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ λαμβά-
 νειν, ἐπιπίπτουσιν αὐτοῖς οἱ Φαρναβάζου ἵππεῖς
 πρῶτοι· βεβοηθηκότες γὰρ ἦσαν τοῖς Βιθυνοῖς,
 βουλόμενοι σὺν τοῖς Βιθυνοῖς, εἰ δύναιντο, ἀποκω-
 λῦσαι τοὺς Ἕλληνας μὴ ἐλθεῖν εἰς τὴν Φρυγίαν·
 οὗτοι οἱ ἵππεῖς ἀποκτείνουσι τῶν ἀνδρῶν οὐ
 μείον πεντακοσίους· οἱ δὲ λοιποὶ ἐπὶ τὸ ὄρος
 25 ἀνέφυγον. ἐκ τούτου ἀπαγγέλλει τις ταῦτα τῶν
 ἀποφευγόντων εἰς τὸ στρατόπεδον. καὶ ὁ Ξενο-
 φῶν, ἐπεὶ οὐκ ἐγεγένητο τὰ ἱερά ταύτη τῇ ἡμέρᾳ,
 λαβὼν βοῦν ὑπὸ ἀμάξης, οὐ γὰρ ἦν ἄλλα ἱερεῖα,
 σφαγιασάμενος ἐβοήθει καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι οἱ μέχρι
 26 τριάκοντα ἐτῶν ἅπαντες. καὶ ἀναλαβόντες τοὺς
 λοιποὺς ἀνδρας εἰς τὸ στρατόπεδον ἀφικνοῦνται.
 καὶ ἤδη μὲν ἀμφὶ ἡλίου δυσμὰς ἦν καὶ οἱ Ἕλληνες
 μάλ' ἀθύμως ἔχοντες ἐδειπνοποιοῦντο, καὶ ἐξαπί-
 νης διὰ τῶν λασίων τῶν Βιθυνῶν τινες ἐπιγενό-
 μενοι τοῖς προφύλαξι τοὺς μὲν κατέκαινον τοὺς δὲ
 27 ἐδίωξαν μέχρι εἰς τὸ στρατόπεδον. καὶ κραυγῆς
 γενομένης εἰς τὰ ὄπλα πάντες ἔδραμον οἱ Ἕλλη-
 νες· καὶ διώκειν μὲν καὶ κινεῖν τὸ στρατόπεδον
 νυκτὸς οὐκ ἀσφαλὲς ἐδόκει εἶναι· δασέα γὰρ ἦν
 τὰ χωρία· ἐν δὲ τοῖς ὅπλοις ἐνυκτέρευον φυλατ-
 τόμενοι ἰκανοῖς φύλαξι.

V. Τὴν μὲν νύκτα οὕτω διήγαγον· ἅμα δὲ τῇ
 ἡμέρᾳ οἱ στρατηγοὶ εἰς τὸ ἐρυμνὸν χωρίον ἡγοῦν-

¹ *i. e.* for carrying the booty.

² See note on v. vi. 24.

go after provisions and that he would be their leader. There set out accordingly, with poles,¹ wine-skins, bags, and other vessels, about two thousand men. But when they had reached the villages and were scattering here and there for the purpose of securing plunder, they were attacked first of all by the horsemen of Pharnabazus;² for they had come to the aid of the Bithynians, desiring in company with the Bithynians to prevent the Greeks, if they could, from entering Phrygia; these horsemen killed no fewer than five hundred of the soldiers, the rest fleeing for refuge to the heights. After this one of the men who escaped brought back word to the camp of what had happened. And Xenophon, inasmuch as the sacrifices had not proved favourable on that day, took a bullock that was yoked to a wagon,—for there were no other sacrificial animals,—offered it up, and set out to the rescue, as did all the rest who were under thirty years of age, to the last man. And they picked up the survivors and returned to the camp. By this time it was about sunset, and the Greeks were making preparations for dinner in a state of great despondency when suddenly through the thickets some of the Bithynians burst upon the outposts, killing some of them and pursuing the rest up to the camp. An outcry was raised, and all the Greeks ran to their arms; still, it did not seem safe to undertake a pursuit or to move the camp during the night, seeing that the region was thickly overgrown; so they spent the night under arms, keeping plenty of sentinels on watch.

V. In this way they got through the night, but at daybreak the generals led the way to the strong

το· οἱ δὲ εἶποντο ἀναλαμβάνοντες τὰ ὄπλα καὶ τὰ σκεύη. πρὶν δὲ ἀρίστου ὄραν εἶναι ἀπετάφρουν ἢ ἢ εἴσοδος ἦν εἰς τὸ χωρίον, καὶ ἀπεσταύρωσαν ἅπαν, καταλιπόντες τρεῖς πύλας. καὶ πλοῖον ἐξ Ἡρακλείας ἦκεν ἄλφιτα ἄγον καὶ ἱερεῖα καὶ οἶνον.

- 2 Πρῶ δ' ἀναστὰς Ξενοφῶν ἐθύετο ἐπ' ἐξόδῳ, καὶ γίγνεται τὰ ἱερά ἐπὶ τοῦ πρώτου ἱερείου. καὶ ἤδη τέλος ἐχόντων τῶν ἱερῶν ὄρα αἰετὸν αἴσιον ὁ μάντις Ἀρηξίων Παρράσιος, καὶ ἡγεῖσθαι κελεύει τὸν Ξενοφῶντα. καὶ διαβάντες τὴν τάφρον τὰ ὄπλα τίθενται, καὶ ἐκήρυξαν ἀριστήσαντας ἐξίεναι τοὺς στρατιώτας σὺν τοῖς ὄπλοις, τὸν δὲ ὄχλον καὶ τὰ ἀνδράποδα αὐτοῦ καταλιπεῖν. οἱ μὲν δὲ ἄλλοι πάντες ἐξῆσαν, Νέων δὲ οὐκ ἐδόκει γὰρ κάλλιστον εἶναι τοῦτον φύλακα καταλιπεῖν τῶν ἐπὶ στρατοπέδου. ἐπεὶ δ' οἱ λοχαγοὶ καὶ οἱ στρατιῶται ἀπέλειπον αὐτόν, αἰσχυρόμενοι μὴ ἐφέπεσθαι τῶν ἄλλων ἐξιόντων, κατέλιπον αὐτοῦ τοὺς ὑπὲρ πέντε καὶ τετταράκοντα ἔτη. καὶ οὗτοι μὲν ἔμενον, οἱ δ' ἄλλοι ἐπορεύοντο. πρὶν δὲ πεντεκαίδεκα στάδια διεληλυθέναι ἐνέτυχον ἤδη νεκροῖς· καὶ τὴν οὐρὰν τοῦ κέρατος ποιησάμενοι κατὰ τοὺς πρώτους φανέντας νεκροὺς ἔθαπτον πάντας ὅποσους ἐπελάμβανε τὸ κέρασ. ἐπεὶ δὲ τοὺς πρώτους ἔθαψαν, προαγα-

¹ *i. e.* the isthmus mentioned in iv. 3.

² The original plan was to leave Neon and his division to guard the camp. But since Neon's men insisted upon going

place and the men followed, taking up their arms and baggage. Before breakfast time came, they proceeded to dig a trench across the way of approach¹ to the place, and they backed it along its entire length with a palisade, leaving three gates. And now a vessel arrived from Heracleia, bringing barley meal, sacrificial victims, and wine.

Xenophon arose early and sacrificed with a view to an expedition, and with the first offering the omens turned out favourable. Furthermore, just as the rites were nearing the end, the soothsayer, Arexion the Parrhasian, caught sight of an eagle in an auspicious quarter, and bade Xenophon lead on. So they crossed the trench and grounded arms; then they made proclamation that after taking breakfast the troops were to march out under arms, while the camp-followers and captives were to be left behind where they were. All the rest, then, proceeded to set forth, save only Neon; for it seemed best to leave him behind to keep guard over what was in the camp. But when his captains and soldiers began to abandon him, being ashamed not to follow along when the others were setting out, the generals left behind at the camp everybody who was over forty-five years of age.² So these remained and the rest took up the march. Before they had gone fifteen stadia they began to meet with dead bodies; and marching on until they had brought the rear of their column to a point opposite the first bodies which appeared, they proceeded to bury all that the column covered. As soon as they had

with the rest, the generals decided to leave, not one of the regular divisions of the army, but the older men from the entire army.

γόντες καὶ τὴν οὐρὰν αὐθις ποιησάμενοι κατὰ τοὺς πρώτους τῶν ἀτάφων ἔθαπτον τὸν αὐτὸν τρόπον ὁπόσους ἐπελάμβανεν ἡ στρατιά. ἐπεὶ δὲ εἰς τὴν ὁδὸν ἤκουον τὴν ἐκ τῶν κωμῶν, ἔνθα ἔκειντο ἀθρόοι, συνενεγκόντες αὐτοὺς ἔθαψαν.

- 7 Ἦδη δὲ πέρα μεσοῦσης τῆς ἡμέρας προάγοντες τὸ στράτευμα ἔξω τῶν κωμῶν ἐλάμβανον τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ὃ τι τις ὀρφὴ ἐντὸς τῆς φάλαγγος, καὶ ἑξαίφνης ὀρώσι τοὺς πολεμίους ὑπερβάλλοντας κατὰ λόφους τινας ἐκ τοῦ ἐναντίου, τεταγμένους ἐπὶ φάλαγγος ἰππέας τε πολλοὺς καὶ πεζοὺς· καὶ γὰρ Σπιθριδάτης καὶ Ῥαθίνης ἤκουον παρὰ
- 8 Φαρναβάζου ἔχοντες τὴν δύναμιν. ἐπεὶ δὲ κατείδον τοὺς Ἕλληνας οἱ πολέμιοι, ἔστησαν ἀπέχοντες αὐτῶν ὅσον πεντεκαίδεκα σταδίους. ἐκ τούτου εὐθύς ὁ Ἀρηξίων ὁ μάντις τῶν Ἑλλήνων σφαγιάζεται, καὶ ἐγένετο ἐπὶ τοῦ πρώτου καλὰ τὸ
- 9 σφάγια. ἔνθα δὴ Ξενοφῶν λέγει· Δοκεῖ μοι, ὦ ἄνδρες στρατηγοί, ἐπιτάξασθαι τῇ φάλαγγι λόχους φύλακας ἵν' ἂν που δέη ὦσιν οἱ ἐπιβοηθήσοντες τῇ φάλαγγι καὶ οἱ πολέμιοι τεταραγμένοι ἐμπίπτωσιν εἰς τεταγμένους καὶ ἀκεραίους.
- 10 συνεδόκει ταῦτα πᾶσιν. Ὑμεῖς μὲν τοίνυν, ἔφη, προηγεῖσθε τὴν πρὸς τοὺς ἐναντίους, ὡς μὴ ἐστήκωμεν, ἐπεὶ ὠφθημεν καὶ εἶδομεν τοὺς πολεμίους·

buried this first group, they marched forward and again brought the rear of the column into line with the first of the bodies which lay farther on, and then in the same way they buried all that the army covered. When, however, they had reached the road leading out of the villages, where the dead lay thick, they gathered them all together for burial.

It was now past midday, and, still leading the army forward, they were engaged in getting provisions outside the villages—anything there was to be seen within the limits of their line—when suddenly they caught sight of the enemy passing over some hills which lay opposite them, his force consisting of horsemen in large numbers and foot soldiers, all in battle formation; in fact, it was Spithridates and Rhathines, who had been sent out with their army by Pharnabazus. As soon as the enemy sighted the Greeks, they came to a halt, at a distance from the Greeks of about fifteen stadia. Hereupon Arexion, the soothsayer of the Greeks, immediately offered sacrifice, and at the first victim the omens proved favourable. Then Xenophon said: "It seems to me, fellow generals, that we should station reserve companies behind our phalanx, so that we may have men to come to the aid of the phalanx if aid is needed at any point, and that the enemy, after they have fallen into disorder, may come upon troops that are in good order and fresh." All shared this opinion. "Well, then," said Xenophon, "do you lead on toward our adversaries, in order that we may not be standing still now that we have been seen by the enemy and have seen them; and I will come along after arranging

- ἐγὼ δὲ ἤξω τοὺς τελευταίους λόχους καταχωρίσας
 11 ἥπερ ὑμῖν δοκεῖ. ἐκ τούτου οἱ μὲν ἤσυχτοι προή-
 γον, ὁ δὲ τρεῖς ἀφελὼν τὰς τελευταίας τάξεις
 ἀνὰ διακοσίους ἀνδρας τὴν μὲν ἐπὶ τὸ δεξιὸν
 ἐπέτρεψεν ἐφέπεσθαι ἀπολιπόντας ὡς πλέθρον·
 Σαμόλας Ἀχαιοὺς ταύτης ἤρχε τῆς τάξεως· τὴν δ'
 ἐπὶ τῷ μέσῳ ἐχώρισεν ἕπεσθαι Πυρρίας Ἀρκὰς
 ταύτης ἤρχε τῆς τάξεως· τὴν δὲ μίαν ἐπὶ τῷ
 εὐωνύμῳ Φρασίας Ἀθηναῖος ταύτη ἐφειστήκει.
- 12 Προϊόντες δέ, ἐπεὶ ἐγένοντο οἱ ἠγούμενοι ἐπὶ
 νάπει μεγάλῳ καὶ δυσπόρῳ, ἔστησαν ἀγνοοῦντες
 εἰ διαβατέον εἴη τὸ νάπος. καὶ παρεγγυῶσι
 στρατηγούς καὶ λοχαγούς παριέναι ἐπὶ τὸ ἠγού-
 13 μενον. καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν θαυμάσας ὅτι τὸ ἴσχον
 εἴη τὴν πορείαν καὶ ταχὺ ἀκούων τὴν παρεγγύην,
 ἐλαύνει ἢ τάχιστα. ἐπεὶ δὲ συνήλθον, λέγει
 Σοφαίνετος πρεσβύτατος ὢν τῶν στρατηγῶν ὅτι
 βουλῆς οὐκ ἄξιον εἴη εἰ διαβατέον ἐστὶ τοιοῦτον
 νάπος.
- 14 Καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν σπουδῇ ὑπολαβὼν ἔλεξεν·
 Ἄλλ' ἴστε μὲν με, ὦ ἄνδρες, οὐδένα πω κίνδυνον
 προξενήσαυτα ὑμῖν ἐθελούσιον· οὐ γὰρ δόξης ὀρῶ
 δεομένους ὑμᾶς εἰς ἀνδρείότητα, ἀλλὰ σωτηρίας.
 15 νῦν δὲ οὕτως ἔχει· ἀμαχεὶ μὲν ἐνθένδε οὐκ ἔστιν
 ἀπελθεῖν· ἦν γὰρ μὴ ἡμεῖς ἴωμεν ἐπὶ τοὺς πολε-
 μίους, οὗτοι ἡμῖν ὁπότεν ἀπίωμεν ἔψονται καὶ
 16 ἐπιπεσοῦνται. ὁρᾶτε δὴ πότερον κρεῖττον ἵεναι

the hindmost companies in the way you have decided upon." So while the others led on quietly, he detached the three hindmost battalions, consisting of two hundred men each, and turned the first one to the right with orders to follow after the phalanx at a distance of about a plethrum; this battalion was commanded by Samolas the Achaean; the second battalion he posted at the centre, to follow on in the same way; this one was under the command of Pyrrhias the Arcadian; and the last one he stationed upon the left, Phrasias the Athenian being in command of it.

Now when, as they advanced, the men who were in the lead reached a large ravine, difficult to pass, they halted, in doubt as to whether they ought to cross the ravine; and they passed along word for generals and captains to come up to the front. Then Xenophon, wondering what it was that was holding up the march and speedily hearing the summons, rode forward in all haste. As soon as the officers had come together, Sophænetus, who was the eldest of the generals, said that it was not a question worth considering whether they ought to cross such a ravine as that.

Xenophon rejoined, with much earnestness: "Well, gentlemen, you know that I have never yet introduced you to any danger that was a matter of choice; for as I see the situation, you do not stand in need of reputation for bravery, but of a safe return. But the conditions at this moment are these: there is no possibility of our getting away from here without a battle; for if we do not advance upon the enemy ourselves, they will follow us when we undertake to retire and fall upon us. Consider,

ἐπὶ τοὺς ἀνδρας προβαλλομένους τὰ ὄπλα ἢ
 μεταβαλλομένους ὄπισθεν ἡμῶν ἐπιόντας τοὺς
 17 πολεμίους θεᾶσθαι. ἴστε μέντοι ὅτι τὸ μὲν ἀπιέ-
 ναι ἀπὸ πολεμίων οὐδενὶ καλῶ ἔοικε, τὸ δὲ
 ἐφέπεσθαι καὶ τοῖς κακίοσι θάρρος ἐμποιεῖ. ἐγὼ
 γοῦν ἡδίον ἂν σὺν ἡμίσεσιν ἐπιόην ἢ σὺν διπλα-
 σίοις ἀποχωροίην. καὶ τούτους οἶδ' ὅτι ἐπιόντων
 μὲν ἡμῶν οὐδ' ὑμεῖς ἐλπίζετε δέξασθαι ἡμᾶς,
 18 ἀπιόντων δὲ πάντες ἐπιστάμεθα ὅτι τολμήσου-
 σιν ἐφέπεσθαι. τὸ δὲ διαβάντας ὄπισθεν νάπος
 χαλεπὸν ποιήσασθαι μέλλοντας μάχεσθαι ἄρ'
 οὐχὶ καὶ ἀρπάσαι ἄξιον; τοῖς μὲν γὰρ πολεμίους
 ἐγὼ βουλοίμην ἂν εὖπορα πάντα φαίνεσθαι ὥστε
 ἀποχωρεῖν ἡμᾶς δὲ καὶ ἀπὸ τοῦ χωρίου δεῖ
 διδάσκεσθαι ὅτι οὐκ ἔστι μὴ νικῶσι σωτηρία.
 19 θαυμάζω δ' ἔγωγε καὶ τὸ νάπος τοῦτο εἶ τις
 μᾶλλον φοβερὸν νομίζει εἶναι τῶν ἄλλων ὧν
 διαπεπορεύμεθα χωρίων. πῶς γὰρ δὴ διαβατὸν
 τὸ πεδίον, εἰ μὴ νικήσομεν τοὺς ἰππέας; πῶς δὲ
 ἂ διεληλύθαμεν ὄρη, ἣν πελτασταὶ τοσοῖδε ἐφέ-
 20 πωνται;¹ ἣν δὲ δὴ καὶ σωθῶμεν ἐπὶ θάλατταν,
 πόσον τι νάπος ὁ Πόντος; ἐνθα οὔτε πλοῖα ἔστι
 τὰ ἀπάξοντα οὔτε σῖτος ᾧ θρεψόμεθα μένοντες,
 δεήσει δέ, ἣν θᾶπτον ἐκεῖ γενώμεθα, θᾶπτον
 21 πάλιν ἐξίεναι ἐπὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. οὐκοῦν νῦν κρεῖτ-
 τον ἡριστηκότας μάχεσθαι ἢ αὖριον ἀναρίστους.

¹ § 19 as in the MSS., which Mar. follows: Gem., follow-
 ing Hartman, puts the sentence θαυμάζω—χωρίων at the end
 of the §.

then, whether it is better to go forward against these men with arms advanced, or with arms reversed to behold the enemy coming upon us from behind. Yet you know that to retire before an enemy does not beseem any man of honour, while to be in pursuit creates courage even in cowards. For my part, at any rate, I should rather advance to the attack with half as many men than to retreat with twice as many. And as to those troops yonder, I know that if we advance upon them, you do not yourselves expect them to await our attack, while if we retire, we all know that they will have the courage to pursue us. Again, to cross a difficult ravine and get it in your rear when you are about to fight, is not that an opportunity really worth seizing? For it is to the enemy that I should myself wish to have all roads seem easy—for their retreat; as for ourselves, we ought to learn from the very ground before us that there is no safety for us except in victory. I do wonder, however, that any one regards this particular ravine as more dreadful than the rest of the country we have just marched through. For how is that plain to be recrossed unless we are victorious over the enemy's horsemen? how the mountains which we have passed through, if such a throng of peltasts are to be following at our heels? Again, if we do reach the sea in safety, what a great ravine, one may say, is the Euxine! where we have neither ships to take us away nor food to subsist upon if we remain, while the sooner we reach there, the sooner we shall have to be off again in quest of provisions. Well, then, it is better to fight to-day, with our breakfast already eaten, than to-morrow breakfastless. Gentle-

ἄνδρες, τά τε ἱερὰ ἡμῖν καλὰ οἷ τε οἰωνοὶ αἰσιοὶ
τά τε σφάγια κάλλιστα· ἴωμεν ἐπὶ τοὺς ἄνδρας.
οὐ δεῖ ἔτι τούτους, ἐπεὶ ἡμᾶς πάντως εἶδον, ἠδέως
δειπνήσαι οὐδ' ὅπου ἂν θέλωσι σκηνῆσαι.

- 22 Ἐντεῦθεν οἱ λοχαγοὶ ἠγείσθαι ἐκέλευον, καὶ
οὐδεὶς ἀντέλεγε. καὶ ὃς ἠγείτο, παραγγείλας
διαβαίνειν ἢ ἕκαστος ἐτύγχανε τοῦ νάπους ὧν·
θάπτον γὰρ ἀθρόον ἐδόκει ἂν οὕτω πέραν γενέσθαι
τὸ στράτευμα ἢ εἰ κατὰ τὴν γέφυραν ἢ ἐπὶ τῷ
23 νάπει ἢ ἐξεμηρύοντο. ἐπεὶ δὲ διέβησαν, παριῶν
παρὰ τὴν φάλαγγα ἔλεγεν· Ἄνδρες, ἀναμιμνή-
σκεσθε ὅσας δὴ μάχας σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς ὁμόσε
ἰόντες νενικήκατε καὶ οἷα πάσχουσιν οἱ πολεμί-
ους φεύγοντες, καὶ τοῦτο ἐννοήσατε ὅτι ἐπὶ ταῖς
24 θύραις τῆς Ἑλλάδος ἐσμέν. ἀλλ' ἔπεσθε ἠγεμόνι
τῷ Ἡρακλεῖ καὶ ἀλλήλους παρακαλεῖτε ὀνομαστί.
ἠδὺ τοι ἀνδρείον τι καὶ καλὸν νῦν εἰπόντα καὶ
ποιήσαντα μνήμην ἐν οἷς¹ ἐθέλει παρέχειν ἑαυτοῦ.
25 Ταῦτα παρελαύνων ἔλεγε καὶ ἅμα ὑφηγεῖτο
ἐπὶ φάλαγγος, καὶ τοὺς πελταστὰς ἐκατέρωθεν
ποιησάμενοι ἐπορεύοντο ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους. παρ-
ῆγγελτο δὲ τὰ μὲν δόρατα ἐπὶ τὸν δεξιὸν ὦμον
ἔχειν, ἕως σημαῖνοι τῇ σάλπιγγι· ἔπειτα δὲ εἰς
προσβολὴν καθέντας ἔπεσθαι βάδην καὶ μηδένα
δρόμῳ διώκειν. ἐκ τούτου σύνθημα παρῆει Ζεὺς
σωτήρ, Ἡρακλῆς ἠγεμών. οἱ δὲ πολέμοι ὑπέ-

¹ ἐν οἷς MSS., Mar. : οἷς τις Gem., following Cobet.

men, our sacrificial victims were favourable, the bird-omens auspicious, the omens of the sacrifice most favourable; let us advance upon the enemy. These fellows, now that they have seen us at all, must not again get a pleasant dinner or encamp wherever they please."

After that the captains bade him lead on, and no one spoke in opposition. So he led the way, after giving orders that every man should cross at whatever point along the ravine he chanced to be; for it seemed that in this way the army would get together on the further side more quickly than if they defiled along the bridge which was over the ravine. When they had crossed, he went along the lines and said: "Soldiers, remember how many battles you have won, with the help of the gods, by coming to close quarters, remember what a fate they suffer who flee from the enemy, and bethink you of this, that we are at the doors of Greece. Follow Heracles the Leader and summon one another on, calling each man by name. It will surely be sweet, through some manly and noble thing which one may say or do to-day, to keep himself in remembrance among those whom he wishes to remember him."

Thus he spoke as he rode along, while at the same time he began to lead the troops on slowly in line of battle; and after they had got the peltasts into position on either flank, they took up the march against the enemy. The orders had been to keep their spears on the right shoulder until a signal should be given with the trumpet; then, lowering them for the attack, to follow on slowly, nobody to break into a run. And now the watchword was passed along, "Zeus Saviour, Heracles Leader."

26 μενον, νομίζοντες καλὸν ἔχειν τὸ χωρίον. ἐπεὶ δ' ἐπλησίαζον, ἀλαλάξαντες οἱ Ἕλληνες πελτασταὶ ἔθεον ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους πρὶν τινα κελεύειν· οἱ δὲ πολέμιοι ἀντίοι ὤρμησαν, οἳ θ' ἰππεῖς καὶ τὸ στῖφος τῶν Βιθυνῶν· καὶ τρέπονται τοὺς

27 πελταστάς. ἀλλ' ἐπεὶ ὑπηγντίαζεν ἡ φάλαγξ τῶν ὀπλιτῶν ταχὺ πορευομένη καὶ ἅμα ἡ σάλπιγξ ἐφθέγγετο καὶ ἐπαιάνιζον καὶ μετὰ ταῦτα ἠλάλαζον καὶ ἅμα τὰ δόρατα καθίεσαν, ἐνταῦθα

28 οὐκέτι ἐδέξαντο οἱ πολέμιοι, ἀλλὰ ἔφευγον. καὶ Τιμασίῳ μὲν ἔχων τοὺς ἰππέας ἐφείπετο, καὶ ἀπεκτίννυσαν ὅσουσπερ ἐδύναντο ὡς ὀλίγοι ὄντες. τῶν δὲ πολεμίῳ τὸ μὲν εὐώνυμον εὐθὺς διεσπάρη, καθ' ὃ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἰππεῖς ἦσαν, τὸ δὲ δεξιὸν ἄτε

29 οὐ σφόδρα διωκόμενον ἐπὶ λόφου συνέστη. ἐπεὶ δὲ εἶδον οἱ Ἕλληνες ὑπομένοντας αὐτούς, ἐδόκει ῥᾶστόν τε καὶ ἀκινδυνότατον εἶναι ἰέναι ἤδη ἐπ' αὐτούς. παιανίσαντες οὖν εὐθὺς ἐπέκειντο· οἱ δ' οὐχ ὑπέμειναν. καὶ ἐνταῦθα οἱ πελτασταὶ ἐδίωκον μέχρι τὸ δεξιὸν διεσπάρη· ἀπέθανον δὲ ὀλίγοι· τὸ γὰρ ἰππικὸν φόβον παρείχε τὸ τῶν

30 πολεμίῳ πολὺ ὄν. ἐπεὶ δὲ εἶδον οἱ Ἕλληνες τότε Φαρναβάζου ἰππικὸν ἔτι συνεστηκὸς καὶ τοὺς Βιθυνοὺς ἰππέας πρὸς τοῦτο συναθροισμένους καὶ ἀπὸ λόφου τινὸς καταθεωμένους τὰ γιγνόμενα, ἀπειρήκεσαν μὲν, ὁμῶς δὲ ἐδόκει καὶ ἐπὶ τούτους

Meanwhile the enemy were standing their ground, thinking that the position they held was a good one. When the Greeks were drawing near, the peltasts raised the battle-cry and proceeded to charge upon the enemy without waiting for any order; and the enemy rushed forward to meet them, both the horsemen and the mass of the Bithynians, and they put the peltasts to rout. But when the phalanx of the hoplites kept moving on to meet them, marching rapidly, and at the same time the trumpet sounded, and they struck up the paean and after that raised the battle-cry, and at the same moment couched their spears, then the enemy no longer awaited the attack, but took to flight. Timasion and the cavalry pursued, and killed as many as they could, considering their own small numbers. Now the left wing of the enemy, opposite which the Greek cavalry were stationed, was dispersed at once, but the right, since it was not vigorously pursued, got together upon a hill. As soon as the Greeks saw that they were standing their ground there, they deemed it the easiest and safest course to charge upon them immediately. They accordingly struck up the paean and moved upon them at once; and they stood no longer. Thereupon the peltasts pursued until the right wing was dispersed; but few of the enemy, however, were killed, for his cavalry, numerous as they were, inspired fear. But when the Greeks saw the cavalry of Pharnabazus standing with ranks still unbroken, and the Bithynian horsemen gathering together to join this force and looking down from a hill at what was going on, although they were tired they nevertheless thought that they must make as stout an attack as they could upon

31 *ιτέον εἶναι οὕτως ὅπως δύναιντο, ὡς μὴ τεθαρρη-
 κότες ἀναπαύσαιντο. συνταξάμενοι δὴ πορεύ-
 ονται. ἐντεῦθεν οἱ πολέμοιοι ἰππεῖς φεύγουσι
 κατὰ τοῦ πρηνοῦς ὁμοίως ὥσπερ ὑπὸ ἰππέων
 διωκόμενοι· νάπος γὰρ αὐτοὺς ὑπεδέχετο, ὃ οὐκ
 ἤδεσαν οἱ Ἕλληνες, ἀλλὰ προαπετράποντο διώ-
 32 κουντες· ὄψε γὰρ ἦν. ἐπανελθόντες δὲ ἐνθα ἡ
 πρώτη συμβολή ἐγένετο, στησάμενοι τρόπαιον
 ἀπῆσαν ἐπὶ θάλατταν περὶ ἡλίου δυσμάς· στάδιοι
 δ' ἦσαν ὡς ἐξήκοντα ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον.*

VI. *Ἐντεῦθεν οἱ μὲν πολέμοιοι εἶχον ἀμφὶ τὰ
 ἑαυτῶν καὶ ἀπῆγοντο καὶ τοὺς οἰκέτας καὶ τὰ
 χρήματα ὅποιοι ἐδύναντο προσωτάτω· οἱ δὲ Ἕλ-
 ληνες προσέμενον μὲν Κλέανδρον καὶ τὰς τριήρεις
 καὶ τὰ πλοῖα ὡς ἤξοντα, ἐξιώντες δ' ἐκάστης
 ἡμέρας σὺν τοῖς ὑποζυγίοις καὶ τοῖς ἀνδραπόδοις
 ἐφέροντο ἀδεῶς πυροὺς καὶ κριθάς, οἶνον, ὄσπρια,
 2 μελίνας, σῦκα· ἅπαντα γὰρ ἀγαθὰ εἶχεν ἡ χώρα
 πλὴν ἐλαίου. καὶ ὅποτε μὲν καταμένοι τὸ στρά-
 τευμα ἀναπαυόμενον, ἐξῆν ἐπὶ λείαν ἰέναι, καὶ
 ἐλάμβανον οἱ ἐξιώντες· ὅποτε δὲ ἐξίλοι πᾶν τὸ
 στράτευμα, εἴ τις χωρὶς ἀπελθὼν λάβοι τι, δημό-
 3 σιον ἔδοξεν εἶναι. ἤδη δὲ ἦν πάντων ἀφθονία·
 καὶ γὰρ ἀγοραὶ πάντοθεν ἀφικνούντο ἐκ τῶν
 Ἑλληνίδων πόλεων καὶ οἱ παραπλέοντες ἄσμενοι
 4 εἶη. ἔπεμπον δὲ καὶ οἱ πολέμοιοι ἤδη οἱ πλησίον*

¹ A man pursued by horsemen takes to rough country, where horsemen are helpless. In the present case, therefore, the hostile horsemen did precisely the wrong thing, and would probably have suffered severe losses if the Greeks had continued their pursuit.

these troops also, so that they should not be able to regain courage and get rested. Accordingly, they formed their lines and set forth. Thereupon the enemy's horsemen fled down the slope just as if they were being pursued by horsemen;¹ for a ravine was waiting to receive them, although the Greeks were not aware of the fact and hence turned aside from their pursuit before reaching it; for it was now late in the day. So after returning to the spot where the first encounter took place and erecting a trophy, they set out on their way back to the sea at about sunset; and the distance to the camp was about sixty stadia.

VI. After this the enemy occupied themselves with their own concerns, especially removing their slaves and property to the remotest point they could; meanwhile the Greeks were waiting for Cleander and the triremes and ships which were, presumably, coming, but every day they set forth with their baggage animals and slaves and fearlessly carried off wheat and barley, wine, beans, millet, and figs; for the country had all manner of good things, except olive oil. Whenever the army remained in camp and rested, individuals were permitted to go out after plunder, and in that case kept what they got; but whenever the entire army set out, if an individual went off by himself and got anything, it was decreed to be public property. And by this time there was an abundance of everything, for market products came in from the Greek cities on all sides, and people coasting past were glad to put in, since they heard that a city was being founded and that there was a harbour. Even the hostile peoples who dwelt near by began now to

ᾤκουν πρὸς Ξενοφῶντα, ἀκούοντες ὅτι οὗτος πολίξει τὸ χωρίον, ἐρωτῶντες ὃ τι δέοι ποιούντας φίλους εἶναι. ὁ δ' ἀπεδείκνυεν αὐτοὺς τοῖς στρατιώταις.

- 5 Καὶ ἐν τούτῳ Κλέανδρος ἀφικνεῖται δύο τριήρεις ἔχων, πλοῖον δ' οὐδέν. ἐτύγχανε δὲ τὸ στράτευμα ἔξω ὄν ὅτε ἀφίκετο καὶ ἐπὶ λείαν τινὲς οἰχόμενοι ἄλλοσε¹ εἰς τὸ ὄρος εἰλήφεσαν πρόβατα πολλά· ὀκνοῦντες δὲ μὴ ἀφαιρεθεῖεν τῷ Δέξιππῳ λέγουσιν, ὃς ἀπέδρα τὴν πεντηκόντορον ἔχων ἐκ Τραπεζοῦντος, καὶ κελεύουσι διασώσαντα αὐτοῖς τὰ πρόβατα τὰ μὲν αὐτὸν λαβεῖν, τὰ δὲ
6 σφίσιν ἀποδοῦναι. εὐθύς δ' ἐκεῖνος ἀπελαύνει τοὺς περιεστῶτας τῶν στρατιωτῶν καὶ λέγοντας ὅτι δημόσια εἶη, καὶ τῷ Κλεάνδρῳ λέγει ἐλθὼν ὅτι ἀρπάζειν ἐπιχειροῦσιν. ὁ δὲ κελεύει τὸν
7 ἀρπάζοντα ἄγειν πρὸς αὐτόν. καὶ ὁ μὲν λαβὼν ἦγέ τινα περιτυχῶν δ' Ἀγασίας ἀφαιρεῖται· καὶ γὰρ ἦν αὐτῷ ὁ ἀγόμενος λοχίτης. οἱ δ' ἄλλοι οἱ παρόντες τῶν στρατιωτῶν ἐπιχειροῦσι βύλλειν τὸν Δέξιππον, ἀνακαλοῦντες τὸν προδότην. ἔδεισαν δὲ καὶ τῶν τριηριτῶν πολλοὶ καὶ ἔφευγον εἰς τὴν θάλατταν, καὶ Κλέανδρος δ' ἔφευγε.
8 Ξενοφῶν δὲ καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι στρατηγοὶ κατεκώλυόν τε καὶ τῷ Κλεάνδρῳ ἔλεγον ὅτι οὐδὲν εἶη πρᾶγμα, ἀλλὰ τὸ δόγμα αἴτιον εἶη τοῦ στρατεύματος

¹ ἄλλοσε Gem., following Bornemann: ἄλλοι MSS., Mar.

¹ In accordance with the above-mentioned (§ 2) decree.

send envoys to Xenophon—for they heard that he was the man who was making a city of the place—to ask what they must do in order to be his friends; and Xenophon would always show these envoys to the soldiers.

Meanwhile Cleander arrived with two triremes, but not a single merchant ship. It so chanced that the army was out foraging when he arrived, while certain individuals had gone in quest of plunder to a different place in the mountains and had secured a large number of sheep; so fearing that they might be deprived of them,¹ they told their story to Dexippus, the man who slipped away from Trapezus with the fifty-oared warship,² and urged him to save their sheep for them, with the understanding that he was to get some of the sheep himself and give the rest back to them. So he immediately proceeded to drive away the soldiers who were standing about and declaring that the animals were public property, and then he went and told Cleander that they were attempting robbery. Cleander directed him to bring the robber before him. So he seized a man and tried to take him to Cleander, but Agasias, happening to meet them, rescued the man, for he was one of his company. Then the other soldiers who were at hand set to work to stone Dexippus, calling him "The traitor." And many of the sailors from the triremes got frightened and began to flee toward the sea, and Cleander also fled. Xenophon, however, and the other generals tried to hold them back, and told Cleander that nothing was the matter, but that the resolution of the army was the reason

² See v. i. 15, vi. i. 32. Dexippus had manifestly accompanied Cleander to Calpe Harbour.

9 ταῦτα γενέσθαι. ὁ δὲ Κλέανδρος ὑπὸ τοῦ Δεξιππου τε ἀνερεθιζόμενος καὶ αὐτὸς ἀχθεσθεὶς ὅτι ἐφοβήθη, ἀποπλευσεῖσθαι ἔφη καὶ κηρύξειν μηδεμίαν πόλιν δέχεσθαι αὐτούς, ὡς πολεμίους. ἦρχον δὲ τότε πάντων τῶν Ἑλλήνων οἱ Λακεδαιμόνιοι.
 10 ἐνταῦθα πονηρὸν ἐδόκει τὸ πρᾶγμα εἶναι τοῖς Ἕλλησιν, καὶ ἐδέοντο μὴ ποιεῖν ταῦτα. ὁ δ' οὐκ ἂν ἄλλως ἔφη γενέσθαι, εἰ μὴ τις ἐκδώσει
 11 τὸν ἄρξαντα βάλλειν καὶ τὸν ἀφελόμενον. ἦν δὲ ὃν ἐξήτει Ἀγασίας διὰ τέλους φίλος τῷ Ξενοφῶντι· ἐξ οὗ καὶ διέβαλλεν αὐτὸν ὁ Δέξιππος.

Καὶ ἐντεῦθεν ἐπειδὴ ἀπορία ἦν, συνήγαγον τὸ στράτευμα οἱ ἄρχοντες· καὶ ἔνιοι μὲν αὐτῶν παρ' ὀλίγον ἐποιοῦντο τὸν Κλέανδρον, τῷ δὲ Ξενοφῶντι οὐκ ἐδόκει φαῦλον εἶναι, ἀλλ' ἀναστὰς
 12 ἔλεξεν· ὦ ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, ἐμοὶ δὲ οὐδὲν φαῦλον δοκεῖ εἶναι τὸ πρᾶγμα, εἰ ἡμῖν οὕτως ἔχων τὴν γνώμην Κλέανδρος ἄπεισιν ὥσπερ λέγει. εἰσὶ μὲν γὰρ ἐγγυς αἱ Ἑλληνίδες πόλεις· τῆς δὲ Ἑλλάδος Λακεδαιμόνιοι προεστήκασιν· ἱκανοὶ δὲ εἰσι καὶ εἰς ἕκαστος Λακεδαιμονίων ἐν ταῖς
 13 πόλεσιν ὅ τι βούλονται διαπράττεσθαι. εἰ οὖν οὗτος πρῶτον μὲν ἡμᾶς Βυζαντίου ἀποκλείσει, ἔπειτα δὲ τοῖς ἄλλοις ἄρμοσταῖς παραγγελεῖ εἰς τὰς πόλεις μὴ δέχεσθαι ὡς ἀπιστοῦντας Λακεδαιμονίοις καὶ ἀνόμους ὄντας, ἔτι δὲ πρὸς Ἀναξίβιον τὸν ναύαρχον οὗτος ὁ λόγος περὶ ἡμῶν ἤξει, χαλεπὸν ἔσται καὶ μένειν καὶ ἀποπλεῖν· καὶ

¹ Cleander was Lacedaemonian harmost, or governor, of Byzantium (ii. 13).

² See v. i. 4 and note thereon.

for this incident taking place. But Cleander, goaded on by Dexippus and angered on his own account also because he had been frightened, declared that he would sail away and issue a proclamation forbidding any city to receive them, on the ground that they were enemies. And at this time the Lacedaemonians¹ held the hegemony over all the Greeks. Upon this the affair seemed to the Greeks a bad business, and they begged Cleander not to carry out his intention. He replied that no other course would be taken unless they should deliver up the man who began the stoning and the one who rescued Dexippus' prisoner. Now Agasias, whom he thus demanded, had been a friend of Xenophon's all through—which was the very reason why Dexippus was slandering him.

After that the commanders, perplexed as they were, called a meeting of the army; and while some of them made light of Cleander, Xenophon thought that it was no trifling matter, and he arose and said: "Fellow soldiers, it seems to me it is no trifling matter if Cleander is to go away with such an intention toward us as he has expressed. For the Greek cities are close by, the Lacedaemonians stand as the leaders of Greece, and they are able, nay, any single Lacedaemonian is able, to accomplish in the cities whatever he pleases. Hence if this man shall begin by shutting us out of Byzantium, and then shall send word to the other governors not to receive us into their cities, on the ground that we are disobedient to the Lacedaemonians and lawless, and if, further, this report about us shall reach Anaxibius,² the Lacedaemonian admiral, it will be difficult for us either to remain or to sail away; for

- γὰρ ἐν τῇ γῆ ἄρχουσι Λακεδαιμόνιοι καὶ ἐν τῇ
 14 θαλάττῃ τὸν νῦν χρόνον. οὐκ οὐτε ἐνὸς
 ἀνδρὸς ἕνεκα οὐτε δυοῖν ἡμᾶς τοὺς ἄλλους τῆς
 Ἑλλάδος ἀπέχεσθαι, ἀλλὰ πειστέον ὃ τι ἂν
 κελεύωσι καὶ γὰρ αἱ πόλεις ἡμῶν ὅθεν ἐσμὲν
 15 πείθονται αὐτοῖς. ἐγὼ μὲν οὖν, καὶ γὰρ ἀκούω
 Δέξιππον λέγειν πρὸς Κλέανδρον ὡς οὐκ ἂν
 ἐποίησεν Ἀγασίας ταῦτα, εἰ μὴ ἐγὼ αὐτὸν ἐκέ-
 λευσα, ἐγὼ μὲν οὖν ἀπολύω καὶ ὑμᾶς τῆς αἰτίας
 καὶ Ἀγασίαν, ἂν αὐτὸς Ἀγασίας φήσῃ ἐμέ τι
 τούτων αἰτιῶν εἶναι, καὶ καταδικάζω ἑμαυτοῦ, εἰ
 ἐγὼ πετροβολίας ἢ ἄλλου τινὸς βιαίου ἐξάρχω,
 τῆς ἐσχάτης δίκης ἄξιος εἶναι, καὶ ὑφέξω τὴν
 16 δίκην. φημὶ δὲ καὶ εἴ τινα ἄλλον αἰτιᾶται, χρῆ-
 ναι ἑαυτὸν παρασχεῖν Κλεάνδρῳ κρίναι· οὕτω
 γὰρ ἂν ὑμεῖς ἀπολελυμένοι τῆς αἰτίας εἴητε. ὡς
 δὲ νῦν ἔχει, χαλεπὸν εἰ οἴομενοι ἐν τῇ Ἑλλάδι
 καὶ ἐπαίνου καὶ τιμῆς τεύξεσθαι ἀντὶ δὲ τούτῳ
 οὐδ' ὅμοιοι τοῖς ἄλλοις ἐσόμεθα, ἀλλ' εἰρξόμεθα
 ἐκ τῶν Ἑλληνίδων πόλεων.
- 17 Μετὰ ταῦτα ἀναστὰς εἶπεν Ἀγασίας· Ἐγὼ,
 ὦ ἄνδρες, ὄμνυμι θεοὺς καὶ θεὰς ἢ μὴν μήτε με
 Ξενοφῶντα κελεύσαι ἀφελέσθαι τὸν ἄνδρα μήτε
 ἄλλον ὑμῶν μηδένα· ἰδόντι δὲ μοι ἄνδρα ἀγαθὸν
 ἀγόμενον τῶν ἐμῶν λοχιτῶν ὑπὸ Δεξίππου, ὃν
 ὑμεῖς ἐπίστασθε ὑμᾶς προδόντα, δεινὸν ἔδοξε
 18 εἶναι καὶ ἀφειλόμην, ὁμολογῶ. καὶ ὑμεῖς μὲν
 μὴ ἐκδῶτέ με· ἐγὼ δὲ ἑμαυτὸν, ὥσπερ Ξενοφῶν
 λέγει, παρασχήσω κρίναντι Κλεάνδρῳ ὃ τι ἂν

at present the Lacedaemonians are supreme both on land and sea. Now the rest of us must not be kept away from Greece for the sake of one or two men, but we must obey whatever order the Lacedaemonians may give us; for the cities from which we come likewise obey them. For my own part, therefore,—for I hear that Dexippus is saying to Cleander that Agasias would not have done what he did if I had not given him the order,—for my own part, I say, I relieve both you and Agasias of the accusation if Agasias himself shall say that I was in any way responsible for this occurrence, and I pass judgment against myself, if I have taken the lead in stone-throwing or any other sort of violence, that I deserve to suffer the uttermost penalty, and I shall submit to the penalty. And I maintain also that if he holds any one else responsible, that man ought to put himself in Cleander's hands for trial; for in that way you would stand relieved of the accusation. But as matters are now, it will be hard if we who expected to obtain both praise and honour in Greece, shall find instead that we are not even on an equality with the rest of the Greeks, but are shut out from their cities."

After this Agasias rose and said: "Soldiers, I swear by the gods and goddesses that in very truth neither Xenophon nor any one else among you directed me to rescue the man; but when I saw a good man of my own company being led off by Dexippus, the one who betrayed you, as you know for yourselves, it seemed to me an outrage; and I rescued him, I admit it. Now do not you deliver me up; but I will myself, as Xenophon proposes, put myself in Cleander's hands, so that he may try

βούληται ποιῆσαι· τούτου ἕνεκα μήτε πολεμεῖτε Λακεδαιμονίοις σῶζεσθέ τε ἀσφαλῶς ὅποι θέλει ἕκαστος. συμπέμψατε μέντοι μοι ὑμῶν αὐτῶν ἐλόμενοι πρὸς Κλέανδρον οἵτινες, ἂν τι ἐγὼ παραλίπω, καὶ λέξουσιν ὑπὲρ ἐμοῦ καὶ πράξουσιν.

- 19 Ἐκ τούτου ἔδωκεν ἡ στρατιὰ οὐστιας βούλοιο προελόμενον ἰέναι. ὁ δὲ προείλετο τοὺς στρατηγούς. μετὰ ταῦτα ἐπορεύετο πρὸς Κλέανδρον Ἀγασίας καὶ οἱ στρατηγοὶ καὶ ὁ ἀφαιρεθεὶς ἀνὴρ ὑπὸ Ἀγασίου. καὶ ἔλεγον οἱ στρατηγοί·
- 20 Ἐπεμψεν ἡμᾶς ἡ στρατιὰ πρὸς σέ, ὦ Κλέανδρε, καὶ κελεύουσί σε, εἴτε πάντας αἰτιᾶ, κρίναντα σέ αὐτὸν χρῆσθαι ὅ τι ἂν βούλη, εἴτε ἓνα τινὰ ἢ δύο καὶ πλείους αἰτιᾶ, τούτους ἀξιούσι παρασχεῖν σοι ἑαυτοὺς εἰς κρίσιν. εἴ τι οὖν ἡμῶν τινα αἰτιᾶ, πάρεσμέν σοι ἡμεῖς· εἴ τι δὲ ἄλλον τινά, φράσον· οὐδεὶς γὰρ ἀπέσται ὅστις ἂν ἡμῖν ἐθέλη πείθε-
- 21 σθαι. μετὰ ταῦτα παρελθὼν ὁ Ἀγασίας εἶπεν· Ἐγὼ εἰμι, ὦ Κλέανδρε, ὁ ἀφελόμενος Δεξιππου ἄγοντος τοῦτον τὸν ἄνδρα καὶ παίειν κελεύσας
- 22 Δέξιππον. τοῦτον μὲν γὰρ οἶδα ἄνδρα ἀγαθὸν ὄντα, Δέξιππον δὲ οἶδα αἰρεθέντα ὑπὸ τῆς στρατιᾶς ἄρχειν τῆς πεντηκοντόρου ἧς ἡγησάμεθα παρὰ Τραπεζουντίων ἐφ' ᾧτε πλοῖα συλλέγειν ὡς σφζοίμεθα, καὶ ἀποδράντα Δέξιππον¹ καὶ

¹ Δέξιππον MSS., Mar. : Gem. brackets, following Cobet.

me and do with me whatever he may choose; do not for this cause make war upon the Lacedaemonians, but rather accomplish a safe return, each of you to the place where he wishes to go. I beg you, however, to choose some of your own number and send them with me to Cleander, so that if I pass over anything, they may speak, and act too, on my behalf."

Thereupon the army empowered him to choose whomever he wished and take them with him, and he chose the generals. After this Agasias set off to Cleander, and with him the generals and the man he had rescued. And the generals said: "We have been sent to you, Cleander, by the army, and they ask you, in case you accuse them all, to bring them to trial yourself and deal with them as you please; or in case you accuse some one individual, or two or more, they demand of these men that they put themselves in your hands for trial. Therefore if you have any charge against any one of us, we are now here before you; if you have any charge against any one else, tell us; for no one who is ready to yield obedience to us will fail to present himself before you." After this Agasias came forward and said: "I am the person, Cleander, who rescued this man here from Dexippus when he was leading him off, and who gave the order to strike Dexippus. For I know that this soldier here is a good man, and I know also that Dexippus was chosen by the army to be commander of the fifty-oared warship which we begged for and obtained from the Trapezuntians on the understanding that with it we were to collect vessels whereon we might return in safety, and that this Dexippus slipped away from us, and betrayed

- 23 προδόντα τοὺς στρατιώτας μεθ' ὧν ἐσώθη. καὶ τοὺς τε Τραπεζουντίους ἀπεστερήκαμεν τὴν πεντηκόντορον καὶ κακοὶ δοκοῦμεν εἶναι διὰ τοῦτον, αὐτοὶ τε τὸ ἐπὶ τούτῳ ἀπολώλαμεν. ἤκουε γάρ, ὥσπερ ἡμεῖς, ὡς ἄπορον εἶη πεζῇ ἀπιόντας τοὺς ποταμούςς τε διαβῆναι καὶ σωθῆναι εἰς τὴν Ἑλ-
 24 λάδα. τοῦτον οὖν τοιοῦτον ὄντα ἀφειλόμην. εἰ δὲ σὺ ἦγες ἢ ἄλλος τις τῶν παρὰ σοῦ, καὶ μὴ τῶν παρ' ἡμῶν ἀποδράντων, εὖ ἴσθι ὅτι οὐδὲν ἂν τούτων ἐποίησα. νόμιζε δέ, ἂν ἐμὲ νῦν ἀποκτείνης, δι' ἄνδρα δειλὸν τε καὶ πονηρὸν ἄνδρα ἀγαθὸν ἀποκτείνων.
- 25 Ἀκούσας ταῦτα ὁ Κλέανδρος εἶπεν ὅτι Δέξιππον μὲν οὐκ ἐπαινοίη, εἰ ταῦτα πεποιηκῶς εἶη· οὐ μέντοι ἔφη νομίζειν οὐδ' εἰ παμπόνηρος ἦν Δέξιππος βία χρῆναι πᾶσχειν αὐτόν, ἀλλὰ κριθέντα, ὥσπερ καὶ ὑμεῖς νῦν ἀξιούτε, τῆς δίκης τυχεῖν.
- 26 νῦν οὖν ἅπιτε καταλιπόντες τόνδε τὸν ἄνδρα· ὅταν δ' ἐγὼ κελεύσω, πάρεστε πρὸς τὴν κρίσιν. αἰτιῶμαι δὲ οὔτε τὴν στρατιὰν οὔτε ἄλλον οὐδένα ἔτι, ἐπεὶ οὗτος αὐτὸς ὁμολογεῖ ἀφελῆσθαι τὸν
 27 ἄνδρα. ὁ δὲ ἀφαιρεθεὶς εἶπεν· Ἐγὼ, ὦ Κλέανδρε, εἰ καὶ οἶε με ἀδικοῦντά τι ἄγεσθαι, οὔτε ἔπαιον οὐδένα οὔτε ἔβαλλον, ἀλλ' εἶπον ὅτι δημόσια εἶη τὰ πρόβατα· ἦν γὰρ τῶν στρατιωτῶν δόγμα, εἰ
- 502

the soldiers in whose company he had gained deliverance. So we have robbed the Trapezuntians of their warship and are rascals in their estimation, all on account of this Dexippus; indeed, we have lost our very lives, so far as lay in this fellow's power; for he heard, just as we did, that it was impossible, returning by land, to cross the rivers and reach Greece in safety. It was from that sort of a fellow, then, that I rescued his prisoner. Had it been you who were leading him off, or any one of your men, and not one of our runaways, be well assured that I should have done nothing of this kind. And believe that if you now put me to death, you are putting to death a good man for the sake of a coward and a scoundrel."

Upon hearing these words Cleander said that he had no commendation for Dexippus if he had behaved in this way, but that he nevertheless thought that even if Dexippus were an utter scoundrel, he ought not to have suffered violence; "rather," he continued, "he should first have had a trial, just as you are yourselves asking in the present case, and should then have received his punishment. For the moment, therefore, go away, leaving this man here with me, and when I issue the order, be present for the trial. And I bring no charge either against the army or any other person now that this man himself admits that he rescued the prisoner." Then the one who had been rescued said: "For myself, Cleander, in case you really imagine that I was being led off for some wrong doing, I neither struck nor stoned anybody, but merely said that the sheep were public property. For a resolution had been passed by the soldiers that if any one should do any plunder-

- 28 τις ὁπότε ἡ στρατιὰ ἐξίλοι ἰδίᾳ λήξοιτο, δημόσια εἶναι τὰ ληφθέντα. ταῦτα εἶπον· ἐκ τούτου με λαβὼν οὗτος ἦγεν, ἵνα μὴ φθέγγοιτο μηδεὶς, ἀλλ' αὐτὸς λαβὼν τὸ μέρος διασώσειε τοῖς λησταῖς παρὰ τὴν ῥήτραν τὰ χρήματα. πρὸς ταῦτα ὁ Κλέανδρος εἶπεν· Ἐπεὶ τοίνυν¹ . . . εἶ, κατὰ-
 29 ἔκ τούτου οἱ μὲν ἀμφὶ Κλέανδρον ἠρίστων τὴν δὲ στρατιὰν συνήγαγε Ξενοφῶν καὶ συνε-
 30 βούλευε πέμψαι ἄνδρας πρὸς Κλέανδρον παραι-
 31 τησομένους περὶ τῶν ἀνδρῶν. ἐκ τούτου ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς πέμψαντας στρατηγούς καὶ λοχαγούς καὶ Δρακόντιον τὸν Σπαρτιάτην καὶ τῶν ἄλλων οἳ ἐδόκουν ἐπιτήδειοι εἶναι δεῖσθαι Κλεάνδρου κατὰ
 πάντα τρόπον ἀφεῖναι τὸν ἄνδρα. ἐλθὼν οὖν ὁ Ξενοφῶν λέγει· Ἐχεις μὲν, ὦ Κλέανδρε, τοὺς ἄνδρας, καὶ ἡ στρατιὰ σοι ὑφείτο ὅ τι ἐβούλου ποιῆσαι καὶ περὶ τούτων καὶ περὶ αὐτῶν ἀπάντων. νῦν δέ σε αἰτοῦνται καὶ δέονται δοῦναι σφίσι τὸν ἄνδρα καὶ μὴ κατακαίνειν· πολλὰ γὰρ ἐν τῷ ἔμπροσθεν χρόνῳ περὶ τὴν στρατιὰν ἐμοχθη-
 32 σάτην. ταῦτα δέ σου τυχόντες ὑπισχνοῦνται σοὶ ἀντὶ τούτων, ἣν βούλη ἡγεῖσθαι αὐτῶν καὶ ἣν οἱ θεοὶ ἴλεω ᾧσιν, ἐπιδείξειν σοὶ καὶ ὡς κόσμοί εἰσι καὶ ὡς ἱκανοὶ τῷ ἄρχοντι πειθόμενοι τοὺς
 33 πολεμίους σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς μὴ φοβεῖσθαι. δέονται δέ σου καὶ τούτο, παραγενόμενον καὶ ἄρξαντα ἑαυτῶν πείραν λαβεῖν καὶ Δεξιππου καὶ σφῶν

¹ Neither Mar. nor Gem. attempts to fill the lacuna which is evident at this point.

ing on his own account when the entire army went out, what he secured was to be public property. That was what I said, and thereupon this fellow seized me and proceeded to lead me off, in order that nobody might utter a word, but that he might save the booty for the plunderers in violation of the ordinance—and get his own share out of it.” In reply to this Cleander said: “Well, since that is your statement, stay behind, so that we can take up your case also.”

After that Cleander and his party proceeded to breakfast; and Xenophon called a meeting of the army and advised the sending of a delegation to Cleander to intercede for the men. Thereupon the troops resolved to send the generals and captains, Dracontius the Spartan, and such others as seemed fitted for the mission, and to request Cleander by all means to release the two men. So Xenophon came before him and said: “You have the men, Cleander, and the army has submitted to you and allowed you to do what you pleased both with these men and with their entire body. But now they beg and entreat you to give them the two men, and not to put them to death; for many are the labours these two have performed for the army in the past. Should they obtain this favour at your hands, they promise you in return that, if you wish to be their leader and if the gods are propitious, they will show you not only that they are orderly, but that they are able, with the help of the gods, while yielding obedience to their commander, to feel no fear of the enemy. They make this further request of you, that when you have joined them and assumed command of them, you make trial both of Dexippus and of the

- τῶν ἄλλων οἶος ἕκαστός ἐστι, καὶ τὴν ἀξίαν
 34 ἐκάστοις νείμαι. ἀκούσας ταῦτα ὁ Κλέανδρος,
 Ἄλλὰ ναὶ τῷ σιῷ, ἔφη, ταχύ τοι ὑμῖν ἀποκρινοῦ-
 μαι. καὶ τῷ τε ἀνδρε ὑμῖν δίδωμι καὶ αὐτὸς
 παρέσομαι· καὶ ἦν οἱ θεοὶ διδῶσιν,¹ ἐξηγήσομαι
 εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα. καὶ πολὺ οἱ λόγοι οὗτοι ἀντίοι
 εἰσὶν ἢ οὓς ἐγὼ περὶ ὑμῶν ἐνίων ἤκουον ὡς τὸ
 στράτευμα ἀφίστατε ἀπὸ Λακεδαιμονίων.
- 35 Ἐκ τούτου οἱ μὲν ἐπαινοῦντες ἀπήλθον, ἔχοντες
 τὸν ἀνδρῶν Κλέανδρος δὲ ἐθύετο ἐπὶ τῇ πορείᾳ καὶ
 ξυνῆν Ξενοφῶντι φιλικῶς καὶ ξυνία ξυμβάλ-
 λοντο. ἐπεὶ δὲ καὶ ἑώρα αὐτοὺς τὸ παραγγελ-
 λόμενον εὐτάκτως ποιοῦντας, καὶ μᾶλλον ἔτι
 36 ἐπεθύμει ἡγεμῶν γενέσθαι αὐτῶν. ἐπεὶ μὲντοι
 θυομένῳ αὐτῷ ἐπὶ τρεῖς ἡμέρας οὐκ ἐγίγνετο τὰ
 ἱερά, συγκαλέσας τοὺς στρατηγούς εἶπεν· Ἐμοὶ
 μὲν οὐ τελέθει τὰ ἱερά ἐξάγειν· ὑμεῖς μὲντοι μὴ
 ἀθυμεῖτε τούτου ἕνεκα· ὑμῖν γάρ, ὡς ἔοικε, δέδοται
 ἐκκομίσαι τοὺς ἀνδρας. ἀλλὰ πορεύεσθε. ἡμεῖς
 δὲ ὑμᾶς, ἐπειδὴν ἐκέλευε ἤκητε, δεξόμεθα ὡς ἂν
 δυνώμεθα κάλλιστα.
- 37 Ἐκ τούτου ἔδοξε τοῖς στρατιώταις δοῦναι αὐτῷ
 τὰ δημόσια πρόβατα· ὁ δὲ δεξάμενος πάλιν αὐτοῖς
 ἀπέδωκε. καὶ οὗτος μὲν ἀπέπλει. οἱ δὲ στρατιῶ-
 ται διαθέμενοι τὸν σίτον ὃν ἦσαν συγκεκομισ-
 μένοι καὶ τὰλλα ἃ εἰλήφεσαν ἐξεπορεύοντο διὰ

¹ διδῶσιν Gem., following Hartman: παραδιδῶσιν MSS., Mar.

¹ Castor and Pollux, the especial protectors of the Lacedaemonians. σιῷ is Spartan (Doric) for θεῷ.

rest of them to see how the two sorts of men compare, and then give to each his deserts." Upon hearing these words Cleander replied: "Well, by the twin gods,¹ my answer to you all will be speedy indeed. I give you the two men and I will myself join you, and if the gods so grant, I will lead you to Greece. These words of yours are decidedly the opposite of what I have been hearing about you from some people, namely, that you were trying to make the army disloyal to the Lacedaemonians."

After this they thanked him and departed, taking the two men with them; and Cleander undertook sacrifices with a view to the journey and associated amicably with Xenophon, so that the two men struck up a friendship. Furthermore, when Cleander came to see for himself that the troops carried out their orders with good discipline, he was more than ever eager to become their commander. When, however, although he continued his sacrifices over three days, the victims would not prove favourable, he called a meeting of the generals and said: "The victims do not prove favourable to me as the man to lead you onward; but it is not for you to be despondent on that account, since to you, as it seems, is given the office of delivering these soldiers. To the road, then! And we shall give you, when you have reached your journey's end, as splendid a reception as we can."

Thereupon the soldiers voted to present to him the sheep that were public property, and he accepted them, but gave them back again to the troops. Then he sailed away. And the soldiers, after selling the corn they had gathered together and the other booty they had secured, set out on their march

38 τῶν Βιθυνῶν. ἐπεὶ δὲ οὐδενὶ ἐνέτυχον πορευόμενοι τὴν ὀρθὴν ὁδόν, ὥστε ἔχοντές τι εἰς τὴν φιλίαν ἐλθεῖν, ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς τοῦμπαλιν ὑποστρέψαντας ἐλθεῖν μίαν ἡμέραν καὶ νύκτα. τοῦτο δὲ ποιήσαντες ἔλαβον πολλὰ καὶ ἀνδράποδα καὶ πρόβατα· καὶ ἀφίκοντο ἑκταῖοι εἰς Χρυσόπολιν τῆς Καλχηδονίας, καὶ ἐκεῖ ἔμειναν ἡμέρας ἑπτὰ λαφυροπωλοῦντες.

through the country of the Bithynians. But when in following the direct road they failed to find any booty, to enable them to reach friendly territory with a little something in hand, they resolved to turn about and take the opposite direction for one day and night. By so doing they secured slaves and sheep in abundance; and on the sixth day they arrived at Chrysopolis, in Calchedonia, where they remained for seven days, selling their spoils.

BOOK VII

- 2 I. ¹ Ἐκ τούτου δὲ Φαρνάβαζος φοβούμενος τὸ
στράτευμα μὴ ἐπὶ τὴν αὐτοῦ χώραν στρατεύηται,
πέμψας πρὸς Ἀναξίβιον τὸν ναύαρχον—ὁ δ'
ἔτυχεν ἐν Βυζαντίῳ ὧν—ἔδειτο διαβιβάσαι τὸ
στράτευμα ἐκ τῆς Ἀσίας, καὶ ὑπισχνεῖτο πάντα
3 ποιήσειν αὐτῷ ὅσα δέοι. καὶ ὁ Ἀναξίβιος μετε-
πέμψατο τοὺς στρατηγούς καὶ λοχαγούς εἰς
Βυζάντιον, καὶ ὑπισχνεῖτο, εἰ διαβαίεν, μισθο-
4 φορὰν ἔσσεσθαι τοῖς στρατιώταις. οἱ μὲν δὴ
ἄλλοι ἔφασαν βουλευσάμενοι ἀπαγγελεῖν, Ξενο-
φῶν δὲ εἶπεν αὐτῷ ὅτι ἀπαλλάξοιτο ἤδη ἀπὸ τῆς
στρατιᾶς καὶ βούλοιο ἀποπλεῖν. ὁ δὲ Ἀναξί-
βιος ἐκέλευσεν αὐτὸν συνδιαβάνατα ἔπειτα οὕτως
ἀπαλλάττεσθαι. ἔφη οὖν ταῦτα ποιήσειν.
5 Σεύθης δὲ ὁ Θρᾶξ πέμπει Μηδοσάδην καὶ
κελεύει Ξενοφῶντα συμπροθυμείσθαι ὅπως διαβῆ
τὸ στράτευμα, καὶ ἔφη αὐτῷ ταῦτα συμπροθυ-
6 μηθέντι ὅτι οὐ μεταμελήσει. ὁ δ' εἶπεν· Ἀλλὰ
τὸ μὲν στράτευμα διαβήσεται· τούτου ἔνεκα μηδὲν

¹ The summary prefixed to Book VII. (see note on II. i. 1) is as follows: "Ὅσα μὲν δὴ ἐν τῇ ἀναβάσει τῇ μετὰ Κύρου ἔπραξαν οἱ Ἕλληνες μέχρι τῆς μάχης, καὶ ὅσα ἐπεὶ Κύρος ἐτελεύτησεν ἐν τῇ πορείᾳ μέχρι εἰς τὸν Πόντον ἀφίκοιτο, καὶ ὅσα ἐκ τοῦ Πόντου περὶ ἔξιόντες καὶ ἐκπλέοντες ἐποιοῦν μέχρι ἔξω τοῦ στόματος ἐγένοντο ἐν Χρυσόπολει τῆς Ἀσίας, ἐν τῷ πρόσθεν λόγῳ δεδήλωται.

I. ¹ AFTER this Pharnabazus, in fear that the Greek army might carry on a campaign against his own land, sent to Anaxibius, the admiral, who chanced to be at Byzantium, and asked him to carry the army across² out of Asia, promising to do everything for him that might be needful. Anaxibius accordingly summoned the generals and captains to Byzantium, and gave them promises that if they crossed over, the soldiers would have regular pay. The rest of the officers replied that they would consider the matter and report back to him, but Xenophon told him that he intended to part company with the army at once, and wanted to sail home. Anaxibius, however, bade him cross over with the others, and leave them only after that. Xenophon said, therefore, that he would do so.

And now Seuthes the Thracian sent Medosades to Xenophon and urged him to help him to bring the army across, adding that if he did render such assistance, he would not be sorry for it. Xenophon replied: "Why, the army is going to cross over; so

¹ Summary (see opposite page): The preceding narrative has described all that the Greeks did on their upward march with Cyrus until the time of the battle, all that took place after the death of Cyrus on their journey to the Euxine Sea, and the whole course of their doings while they were travelling on, by land and water, from the Euxine, until they got beyond its mouth, arriving at Chrysopolis, in Asia.

² The Bosphorus. Chrysopolis was directly opposite Byzantium.

τελείτω μήτε ἐμοὶ μήτε ἄλλῳ μηδενί· ἐπειδὴν δὲ διαβῆ, ἐγὼ μὲν ἀπαλλάξομαι, πρὸς δὲ τοὺς διαμένοντας καὶ ἐπικαιρίους ὄντας προσφερέσθω ὡς ἂν αὐτῷ δοκῆ ἀσφαλές.

- 7 Ἐκ τούτου διαβαίνουσι πάντες εἰς τὸ Βυζάντιον οἱ στρατιῶται. καὶ μισθὸν μὲν οὐκ ἐδίδου ὁ Ἀναξίβιος, ἐκήρυξε δὲ λαβόντας τὰ ὄπλα καὶ τὰ σκεύη τοὺς στρατιώτας ἐξιέναι, ὡς ἀποπέμψων τε ἅμα καὶ ἀριθμὸν ποιήσων. ἐνταῦθα οἱ στρατιῶται ἤχθοντο, ὅτι οὐκ εἶχον ἀργύριον ἐπισιτίζεσθαι εἰς τὴν πορείαν, καὶ ὀκνηρῶς συνεσκευάζοντο. καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν Κλεάνδρῳ τῷ ἀρμοστῇ ξένος γεγεννημένος προσελθὼν ἠσπάζετο αὐτὸν ὡς ἀποπλευσούμενος ἤδη. ὁ δὲ αὐτῷ λέγει· Μὴ ποιήσης ταῦτα· εἰ δὲ μή, ἔφη, αἰτίαν ἔξεις, ἐπεὶ καὶ νῦν τινὲς ἤδη σὲ αἰτιῶνται ὅτι οὐ ταχὺ ἐξέρπει
- 9 τὸ στράτευμα. ὁ δ' εἶπεν· Ἄλλ' αἴτιος μὲν ἔγωγε οὐκ εἰμὶ τούτου, οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται αὐτοὶ ἐπισιτισμοῦ δεόμενοι διὰ τοῦτο ἀθυμοῦσι πρὸς
- 10 τὴν ἔξοδον. Ἄλλ' ὅμως, ἔφη, ἐγὼ σοι συμβουλεύω ἐξελεῖν μὲν ὡς συμπορευσόμενον,¹ ἐπειδὴν δ' ἔξω γένηται τὸ στράτευμα, τότε ἀπαλλάττεσθαι. Ταῦτα τοῖνυν, ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν, ἐλθόντες πρὸς Ἀναξίβιον διαπραξόμεθα. οὕτως ἐλθόντες ἔλε-
- 11 γον ταῦτα. ὁ δὲ ἐκέλευεν οὕτω ποιεῖν καὶ ἐξιέναι τὴν ταχίστην συσκευασαμένους, καὶ

¹ συμπορευσόμενον Gem., following Hirschig; πορευσόμενον MSS., Mar.

far as that is concerned, let not Seuthes pay anything either to me or to any one else; but as soon as it has crossed, when I myself am to leave the army, let him deal with those who stay on and are in authority, in any way that may seem to him safe."

After this all the soldiers crossed over to Byzantium. And Anaxibius would not give them pay, but made proclamation that the troops were to take their arms and their baggage and go forth from the city, saying that he was going to send them back home and at the same time to make an enumeration of them. At that the soldiers were angry, for they had no money with which to procure provisions for the journey, and they set about packing up with reluctance. Xenophon meanwhile, since he had become a friend of Cleander, the governor, called to take leave of him, saying that he was to sail home at once. And Cleander said to him: "Do not do so; if you do," said he, "you will be blamed, for even now certain people are laying it to your charge that the army is slow about moving away." Xenophon replied: "Why, I am not responsible for that; it is rather that the soldiers lack food supplies and on that account are depressed about their going away." "Nevertheless," said Cleander, "I advise you to go forth from the city as though you were planning to make the journey with them, and to leave them only when the army has got outside." "Well, then," said Xenophon, "we will go to Anaxibius and negotiate about this matter." So they went and put the question before him. His orders were, that Xenophon was to follow the course proposed and that the troops were to pack up and leave the city with all speed; and he further declared

- προσανεῖπει, ὃς ἂν μὴ παρῆ εἰς τὴν ἐξέτασιν καὶ εἰς τὸν ἀριθμὸν, ὅτι αὐτὸς αὐτὸν αἰτιάσεται.
- 12 Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξῆσαν οἱ τε στρατηγοὶ πρῶτοι καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι. καὶ ἄρδην πάντες πλὴν ὀλίγων ἔξω ἦσαν, καὶ Ἐτεόνικος εἰστήκει παρὰ τὰς πύλας ὡς ὅποτε ἔξω γένοιντο πάντες συγκλείσων τὰς πύλας
- 13 καὶ τὸν μοχλὸν ἐμβαλῶν. ὁ δὲ Ἀναξίβιος συγκαλέσας τοὺς στρατηγοὺς καὶ τοὺς λοχαγοὺς ἔλεγεν· Τὰ μὲν ἐπιτήδεια, ἔφη, λαμβάνετε ἐκ τῶν Θρακίων κωμῶν· εἰσὶ δὲ αὐτόθι πολλαὶ κριθαὶ καὶ πυροὶ καὶ τᾶλλα ἐπιτήδεια· λαβόντες δὲ πορεύεσθε εἰς Χερ-
- 14 ρόνησον, ἐκεῖ δὲ Κυνίσκος ὑμῖν μισθοδοτήσει. ἐπακούσαντες δὲ τινες τῶν στρατιωτῶν ταῦτα, ἧ καὶ τῶν λοχαγῶν τις διαγγέλλει εἰς τὸ στράτευμα. καὶ οἱ μὲν στρατηγοὶ ἐπυνθάνοντο περὶ τοῦ Σεύθου πότερα πολέμιος εἶη ἢ φίλος, καὶ πότερα διὰ τοῦ ἱεροῦ ὄρους δέοι πορεύεσθαι ἢ κύκλῳ διὰ
- 15 μέσης τῆς Θράκης. ἐν ᾧ δὲ ταῦτα διελέγοντο οἱ στρατιῶται ἀναρπάσαντες τὰ ὄπλα θέουσι δρόμῳ πρὸς τὰς πύλας, ὡς πάλιν εἰς τὸ τεῖχος εἰσιοντες. ὁ δὲ Ἐτεόνικος καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ ὡς εἶδον προσθέοντας τοὺς ὀπλίτας, συγκλείουσι τὰς πύλας καὶ
- 16 τὸν μοχλὸν ἐμβάλλουσιν. οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται ἔκοπτον τὰς πύλας καὶ ἔλεγον ὅτι ἀδικώτατα πᾶσχοιεν ἐκβαλλόμενοι εἰς τοὺς πολεμίους· κατασχίσειν τε τὰς πύλας ἔφασαν, εἰ μὴ ἐκόντες

¹ A Lacedaemonian officer who figures rather prominently in the story of the Peloponnesian War (*Hell.* i. i. 32, vi. 26, etc.); now apparently an aide to Anaxibius.

² A Lacedaemonian general engaged in war with the Thracians.

³ On the northern coast of the Propontis. Their destina-

that any one who was not present for the review and the enumeration would have himself to blame for the consequences.

After that the army proceeded to march forth from the city, the generals at the head and then the rest. And now the entire body with the exception of a few men were outside, and Eteonicus¹ was standing by the gates ready, as soon as the last man got out, to close the gates and thrust in the cross-bar. Then Anaxibius called together the generals and captains and said: "Get your provisions from the Thracian villages; there is an abundance there of barley and wheat and other supplies; when you have got them, proceed to the Chersonese, and there Cyniscus² will take you into his pay." And some of the soldiers, overhearing these words, or perhaps one of the captains, proceeded to spread the report of them through the army. Meanwhile the generals were inquiring about Seuthes, whether he was hostile or friendly, and whether they were to march by way of the Sacred Mountain³ or go round through the middle of Thrace. While they were talking over these matters, the soldiers caught up their arms and rushed at full speed toward the gates, intending to get back inside the city wall. But when Eteonicus and his men saw the hoplites running towards them, they shut the gates and thrust in the bar. The soldiers, however, set to hammering at the gates, and said that they were most unjustly treated in being cast out and left at the mercy of the enemy; and they declared that they would break through the gates if the keepers did not open

tion was the Gallipoli peninsula, and the alternative routes are a short but difficult one or a long, easy one.

- 17 ἀνοίξουσιν. ἄλλοι δὲ ἔθεον ἐπὶ θάλατταν καὶ παρὰ τὴν χηλὴν τὸ τεῖχος ὑπερβαίνουσιν εἰς τὴν πόλιν, ἄλλοι δὲ οἱ ἐτύγγανον¹ ἔνδον ὄντες τῶν στρατιωτῶν, ὡς ὀρῶσι τὰ ἐπὶ ταῖς πύλαις πράγματα, διακόπτοντες ταῖς ἀξίνας τὰ κλείθρα ἀναπεταννύασι τὰς πύλας, οἱ δ' εἰσπίπτουσιν.
- 18 Ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν ὡς εἶδε τὰ γιγνόμενα, δέσας μὴ ἐφ' ἀρπαγὴν τράποιτο τὸ στράτευμα καὶ ἀνήκεστα κακὰ γένοιτο τῇ πόλει καὶ ἑαυτῷ καὶ τοῖς στρατιώταις, ἔθει καὶ συνεισπίπτει εἰς τὴν πόλιν.
- 19 πυλῶν σὺν τῷ ὄχλῳ. οἱ δὲ Βυζάντιοι ὡς εἶδον τὸ στράτευμα βία εἰσπίπτουσαν, φεύγουσιν ἐκ τῆς ἀγορᾶς, οἱ μὲν εἰς τὰ πλοῖα, οἱ δὲ οἴκαδε, ὅσοι δὲ ἔνδον ἐτύγγανον ὄντες, ἔξω, οἱ δὲ καθεῖλκον τὰς τριήρεις, ὡς ἐν ταῖς τριήρεσι σφύζοντο, πάντες δὲ ᾤοντο ἀπολωλέναι, ὡς ἐαλωκυίας τῆς πόλεως.
- 20 Ὁ δὲ Ἐτεόνικος εἰς τὴν ἄκραν ἀποφεύγει. Ὁ δὲ Ἀναξίβιος καταδραμὼν ἐπὶ θάλατταν ἐν ἀλιευτικῷ πλοίῳ περιέπλει εἰς τὴν ἀκρόπολιν, καὶ εὐθὺς μεταπέμπεται ἐκ Καλχηδόνης φρουρούς· οὐ γὰρ ἱκανοὶ ἐδόκουν εἶναι οἱ ἐν τῇ ἀκροπόλει σχεῖν τοὺς ἄνδρας.
- 21 Οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται ὡς εἶδον Ξενοφῶντα, προσπίπτουσι πολλοὶ αὐτῷ καὶ λέγουσι· Νῦν σοι ἔξεστιν, ὦ Ξενοφῶν, ἀνδρὶ γενέσθαι. ἔχεις πόλιν, ἔχεις τριήρεις, ἔχεις χρήματα, ἔχεις ἄνδρας τοσούτους. νῦν ἂν, εἰ βούλοιο, σὺ τε ἡμᾶς ὀνήσαις.
- 22 καὶ ἡμεῖς σὲ μέγαν ποιήσαιμεν. Ὁ δ' ἀπεκρίνατο, βουλόμενος αὐτοὺς κατηρεμίσαι.² Ἄλλ' εὖ γε λέγετε καὶ ποιήσω ταῦτα· εἰ δὲ τούτων ἐπι-

¹ Before ἐτύγγανον Gem. inserts ἔρι, following Hartman.

them of their own accord. Meanwhile others ran down to the shore, made their way along the breakwater, and thus scaled the wall and got into the city, while still others, who chanced to be within the walls, seeing what was going on at the gates, cut through the bar with their axes and threw the gates open, whereupon the rest rushed in.

When Xenophon saw what was taking place, being seized with fear lest the army might fall to plundering and irreparable harm might be done to the city, to himself, and to the soldiers, he ran and plunged within the gates along with the rest of the throng. As for the Byzantines, no sooner did they see the army bursting in by force than they fled from the marketplace, some to their boats and others to their homes, while all who chanced to be indoors ran out, and some took to launching the ships-of-war in order to seek safety in them—all alike imagining that they were lost and the city captured. Eteonicus made his escape to the citadel. Anaxibius ran down to the shore, sailed round in a fishing boat to the citadel, and immediately summoned the garrison from Calchedon; for the force in the citadel did not seem adequate to bring the Greek troops under control.

As soon as the soldiers saw Xenophon, many of them rushed towards him and said: "Now is your opportunity, Xenophon, to prove yourself a man. You have a city, you have triremes, you have money, you have this great number of men. Now, should you so wish, you would render us a service and we should make you great." He replied, desiring to quiet them down: "Your advice is certainly good, and I shall do as you say; but if this is what you

² βυλόμενος . . . κατηρεμίσαι stands in the MSS. after ὡς τάχιστα: transposed by Schenkl, whom Gem. follows.

θυμείτε, θέσθε τὰ ὄπλα ἐν τάξει ὡς τάχιστα.
 καὶ αὐτός τε παρηγγύα ταῦτα καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους
 23 ἐκέλευε παρεγγυᾶν τίθεσθαι τὰ ὄπλα. οἱ δὲ
 αὐτοὶ ὑφ' ἑαυτῶν ταπτόμενοι οἷ τε ὀπλῖται ἐν
 ὀλίγῳ χρόνῳ εἰς ὀκτῶ ἐγένοντο καὶ οἱ πελτασταὶ
 24 ἐπὶ τὸ κέρας ἐκάτερον παρεδεδραμήκεσαν. τὸ δὲ
 χωρίον οἶον κάλλιστον ἐκτάξασθαι ἐστὶ τὸ Θρά-
 κιον καλούμενον, ἔρημον οἰκιῶν καὶ πεδινόν. ἐπεὶ
 δὲ ἔκειτο τὰ ὄπλα καὶ κατηρεμίσθησαν, συγκαλεῖ
 25 ὁ Ξενοφῶν τὴν στρατιὰν καὶ λέγει τάδε. "Ὅτι
 μὲν ὀργίζεσθε, ὦ ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, καὶ νομίζετε
 δεινὰ πάσχειν ἐξαπατώμενοι οὐ θαυμάζω. ἦν
 δὲ τῷ θυμῷ χαριζόμεθα καὶ Λακεδαιμονίους τε
 τοὺς παρόντας τῆς ἐξαπάτης τιμωρησώμεθα καὶ
 τὴν πόλιν τὴν οὐδὲν αἰτίαν διαρπάσωμεν, ἐνθυ-
 26 μείσθε ἃ ἔσται ἐντεῦθεν. πολέμιοι μὲν ἐσόμεθα
 ἀποδεδειγμένοι Λακεδαιμονίους καὶ τοῖς συμμά-
 χους. οἷος δὲ πόλεμος ἂν γένοιτο εἰκάζειν δὴ
 πάρεστιν, ἑωρακότας καὶ ἀναμνησθέντας τὰ νῦν
 27 δὴ γεγενημένα. ἡμεῖς γὰρ οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι ἦλθομεν
 εἰς τὸν πόλεμον τὸν πρὸς Λακεδαιμονίους καὶ
 τοὺς συμμάχους ἔχοντες τριήρεις τὰς μὲν ἐν
 θαλάττῃ τὰς δ' ἐν τοῖς νεωρίοις οὐκ ἐλάττους
 τριακοσίων, ὑπαρχόντων δὲ πολλῶν χρημάτων
 ἐν τῇ πόλει καὶ προσόδου οὔσης κατ' ἐνιαυτὸν
 ἀπὸ τε τῶν ἐνδήμων καὶ τῆς ὑπερορίας οὐ μείον
 χιλίων ταλάντων· ἄρχοντες δὲ τῶν νήσων ἀπα-
 σῶν καὶ ἐν τε τῇ Ἀσίᾳ πολλὰς ἔχοντες πόλεις
 καὶ ἐν τῇ Εὐρώπῃ ἄλλας τε πολλὰς καὶ αὐτὸ
 τοῦτο τὸ Βυζάντιον, ὅπου νῦν ἐσμεν, ἔχοντες

long for, ground your arms in line of battle with all
 speed." Then he proceeded to pass along this order
 himself and bade the others send it on—to ground
 their arms in battle line. The men acted as their
 own marshals, and within a short time the hoplites
 had fallen into line eight deep and the peltasts had
 got into position on either wing. The place where
 they were, indeed, is a most excellent one for draw-
 ing out a line of troops, being the so-called Thracian
 Square, which is free of houses and level. As soon
 as their arms were grounded and they had quieted
 down, Xenophon called the troops together and
 spoke as follows: "That you are angry, fellow
 soldiers, and believe you are outrageously treated
 in being so deceived, I do not wonder. But if we
 indulge our anger, by taking vengeance for this de-
 ception upon the Lacedaemonians who are here and
 by sacking the city which is in no way to blame,
 consider the results that will follow. We shall be
 declared to be at war with the Lacedaemonians and
 their allies. And what sort of a war that would
 prove to be one may at least conjecture by having
 seen and by recalling to mind the events which have
 quite lately taken place. We Athenians, remember,
 entered upon our war against the Lacedaemonians
 and their allies with no fewer than three hundred
 triremes, some afloat and others in the dockyards,
 with an abundance of treasure already at hand in
 our city, and with a yearly revenue, accruing at home
 or coming in from our foreign possessions, of not less
 than a thousand talents; we ruled over all the
 islands, we possessed many cities in Asia, in Europe
 we possessed among many others this very city of
 Byzantium also, where we now are,—and we were

κατεπολεμήθημεν οὕτως ὡς πάντες ὑμεῖς ἐπί-
 28 στασθε. νῦν δὲ δὴ τί ἂν οἰόμεθα παθεῖν, Λακε-
 δαιμονίοις μὲν καὶ τῶν ἀρχαίων συμμάχων ὑπαρ-
 χόντων, Ἀθηναίων δὲ καὶ οἱ ἐκείνοις τότε ἦσαν
 σύμμαχοι πάντων προσγεγενημένων, Τισσαφέρ-
 νους δὲ καὶ τῶν ἐπὶ θαλάττῃ ἄλλων βαρβάρων
 πάντων πολεμίων ἡμῖν ὄντων, πολεμιωτάτου δὲ
 αὐτοῦ τοῦ ἄνω βασιλέως, ὃν ἤλθομεν ἀφαιρησό-
 μενοι τὴν ἀρχὴν καὶ ἀποκτενοῦντες, εἰ δυναίμεθα ;
 29 ἄφρων ὅστις οἶεται ἂν ἡμᾶς περιγενέσθαι ; μὴ
 πρὸς θεῶν μαινόμεθα μηδ' αἰσχρῶς ἀπολώμεθα
 πολέμιοι ὄντες καὶ ταῖς πατρίσι καὶ τοῖς ἡμετέ-
 ροις αὐτῶν φίλοις τε καὶ οἰκείοις. ἐν γὰρ ταῖς
 πόλεσιν εἰσι πάντες ταῖς ἐφ' ἡμᾶς στρατευσομέ-
 ναις, καὶ δικαίως, εἰ βάρβαρον μὲν πόλιν οὐδεμίαν
 ἠθελήσαμεν κατασχεῖν, καὶ ταῦτα κρατοῦντες,
 30 τὴν Ἑλληνίδα δὲ εἰς ἣν πρώτην ἤλθομεν πόλιν, ταύ-
 την ἐξαλαπάξομεν. ἐγὼ μὲν τοίνυν εὐχομαι πρὶν
 ταῦτα ἐπιθεῖν ὑφ' ὑμῶν γεγόμενα μυρίας ἐμέ γε
 κατὰ τῆς γῆς ὀργυὰς γενέσθαι. καὶ ὑμῖν δὲ συμ-
 βουλευώ "Ἑλληνας ὄντας τοῖς τῶν Ἑλλήνων προ-
 εστηκόσι πειθομένους πειρᾶσθαι τῶν δικαίων
 τυγχάνειν. εἰ δὲ μὴ δύνησθε ταῦτα, ἡμᾶς δεῖ
 ἀδικουμένους τῆς γούν Ἑλλάδος μὴ στέρεσθαι.
 31 καὶ νῦν μοι δοκεῖ πέμψαντας Ἀναξιβίῳ εἰπεῖν
 ὅτι ἡμεῖς οὐδὲν βίαιον ποιήσοντες παρεληλύθαμεν
 εἰς τὴν πόλιν, ἀλλ' ἦν μὲν δυνάμεθα παρ' ὑμῶν
 ἀγαθόν τι εὐρίσκεσθαι, εἰ δὲ μὴ, ἀλλὰ δηλώ-
 σοντες ὅτι οὐκ ἐξαπατῶμενοι ἀλλὰ πειθόμενοι
 ἐξερχόμεθα.

vanquished, in the way that all of you remember. What fate, then, may you and I expect to suffer now, when the Lacedaemonians still have their old allies, when the Athenians and all who at that time were allied with them have been added to the number, when Tissaphernes and all the rest of the barbarians on the coast are hostile to us, and most hostile of all the King himself, up in the interior, the man whom we came to deprive of his empire, and to kill if we could? With all these banded together against us, is there any man so witless as to suppose that we should come off victorious? In the name of the gods let us not be mad, nor let us perish disgracefully as enemies both to our native states and to our own friends and kinsmen. For all of them are in the cities which will take the field against us, and will do so justly if we, after refraining from the seizure of any barbarian city, conquerors though we were, are to take the first Greek city we have come to and pillage that. For my part, therefore, I pray that sooner than live to behold this deed wrought by you, I may be laid ten thousand fathoms underground. And to you my advice is, that being Greeks you endeavour to obtain your just rights by obedience to the leaders of the Greeks. If you are unable to accomplish this, we must not at any rate, even though wronged, be deprived of our return to Greece. And now it is my opinion that we should send messengers to Anaxibius and say to him: 'We have not made our way into the city to do any violence, but to obtain some good thing from you if we can, or if that is not possible, at least to show that we go forth, not because we are deceived, but because we are obedient.'

- 32 Ταῦτα ἔδοξε, καὶ πέμπουσιν Ἱερώνυμόν τε τὸν Ἥλειον ἐροῦντα ταῦτα καὶ Εὐρύλοχον Ἀρκάδα καὶ Φιλῆσιον Ἀχαιόν. οἱ μὲν ταῦτα ὄχοντο ἐροῦντες.
- 33 Ἐτι δὲ καθημένων τῶν στρατιωτῶν προσέρχεται Κοιρατάδας Θηβαῖος, ὃς οὐ φεύγων τὴν Ἑλλάδα περιήει ἀλλὰ στρατηγιῶν καὶ ἐπαγγελ-
 λόμενος, εἴ τις ἢ πόλις ἢ ἔθνος στρατηγοῦ δέοιτο· καὶ τότε προσελθὼν ἔλεγεν ὅτι ἕτοιμος εἶη ἠγεῖ-
 σθαι αὐτοῖς εἰς τὸ Δέλτα καλούμενον τῆς Θράκης, ἔνθα πολλὰ καὶ ἀγαθὰ λήψονται· ἔστε δ' ἂν μὴ λώσιν, εἰς ἀφθουίαν παρέξειν ἔφη καὶ σιτία
- 34 καὶ ποτά. ἀκούουσι ταῦτα τοῖς στρατιώταις καὶ τὰ παρὰ Ἀναξιβίου ἅμα ἀπαγγελλόμενα—ἀπεκρίνατο γὰρ ὅτι πειθομένοις αὐτοῖς οὐ μεταμελήσει, ἀλλὰ τοῖς τε οἴκοι τέλεσι ταῦτα ἀπαγγελεῖ καὶ αὐτὸς βουλευσοῖτο περὶ αὐτῶν ὃ
- 35 τι δύναιτο ἀγαθόν—ἐκ τούτου οἱ στρατιῶται τὸν τε Κοιρατάδαν δέχονται στρατηγὸν καὶ ἔξω τοῦ τείχους ἀπήλθον. ὁ δὲ Κοιρατάδας συντίθεται αὐτοῖς εἰς τὴν ὑστεραίαν παρέσεσθαι ἐπὶ τὸ
- 36 καὶ ποτά τῇ στρατιᾷ. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐξῆλθον, ὁ Ἀναξιβίος ἔκλεισε τὰς πύλας καὶ ἐκήρυξεν ὃς ἂν ἀλῶν
- 37 ἔνδον ὦν τῶν στρατιωτῶν ὅτι πεπράσεται. τῇ δ' ὑστεραία Κοιρατάδας μὲν ἔχων τὰ ἱερεῖα καὶ τὸν μάντιν ἦκε καὶ ἄλφιτα φέροντες εἶποντο αὐτῷ εἴκοσιν ἄνδρες καὶ οἶνον ἄλλοι εἴκοσι καὶ ἐλαῶν τρεῖς καὶ σκοροδῶν ἀνὴρ ὅσον ἐδύνατο μέγιστον

¹ See *Hell.* i. iii. 15-22.

² Probably the triangular peninsula lying between the Euxine, the Bosphorus, and the Propontis.

This course was resolved upon, and they sent Hieronymus the Elean, Eurylochus the Arcadian, and Philesius the Achaean to bear this message. So they departed to perform their mission.

While the soldiers were still in session Coeratadas¹ the Theban came in, a man who was going up and down Greece, not in exile, but because he was afflicted with a desire to be a general, and he was offering his services to any city or people that might be wanting a general; so at this time he came to the troops and said that he was ready to lead them to the Delta,² as it is called, of Thrace, where they could get plenty of good things; and until they should reach there, he said he would supply them with food and drink in abundance. When the soldiers heard this proposal and the word that came back at the same time from Anaxibius—his reply was, that if they were obedient they would not be sorry for it, but that he would report the matter to his government at home and would himself devise whatever good counsel he could in their case—they thereupon accepted Coeratadas as general and withdrew outside the walls. And Coeratadas made an agreement with them that he would join the army on the next day with sacrificial victims and a soothsayer, as well as food and drink for the troops. Meanwhile, as soon as they had gone forth from the city, Anaxibius closed the gates and made proclamation that any soldier who might be caught inside the city would be sold as a slave. On the next day Coeratadas arrived with his sacrificial victims and his soothsayer, and there followed him twenty men loaded with barley-meal, another twenty with wine, three with olives, another man with as big a load of garlic

φορτιον και ἄλλος κρομμύων. ταῦτα δὲ κατα-
θέμενος ὡς ἐπὶ δάσμευσιν ἐθύετο.

- 38 Ξενοφῶν δὲ μεταπεμφόμενος Κλέανδρον ἐκέ-
λευε διαπράξαι ὅπως εἰς τὸ τεῖχος εἰσέλθοι και
39 ἀποπλεύσαι ἐκ Βυζαντίου. ἐλθὼν δ' ὁ Κλέανδρος
μᾶλα μόλις ἔφη διαπραξάμενος ἤκειν¹ λέγειν
γὰρ Ἀναξίβιον ὅτι οὐκ ἐπιτήδειον εἶη τοὺς μὲν
στρατιώτας πλησίον εἶναι τοῦ τεύχους, Ξενοφῶντα
δὲ ἔνδον· τοὺς Βυζαντίους δὲ στασιάζειν και πο-
νηροὺς εἶναι πρὸς ἀλλήλους· ὁμῶς δὲ εἰσιέναι,
40 ἔφη, ἐκέλευεν, εἰ μέλλεις σὺν αὐτῷ ἐκπλεῖν. ὁ
μὲν δὴ Ξενοφῶν ἀσπασάμενος τοὺς στρατιώτας
εἶσω τοῦ τεύχους ἀπήει σὺν Κλεάνδρῳ. ὁ δὲ
Κοιρατάδας τῇ μὲν πρώτῃ ἡμέρᾳ οὐκ ἐκαλλιέρει
οὐδὲ διεμέτρησεν οὐδὲν τοῖς στρατιώταις· τῇ δ'
ὑστεραία τὰ μὲν ἱερεῖα εἰστήκει παρὰ τὸν βωμὸν
και Κοιρατάδας ἐστεφανωμένος ὡς θύσων· προσ-
ελθὼν δὲ Τιμασίῳ ὁ Δαρδανεύς και Νέων ὁ
'Ἀσιναῖος και Κλεάνωρ ὁ Ὀρχομένιος ἔλεγον
Κοιρατάδα μὴ θύειν, ὡς οὐχ ἡγησόμενον τῇ
41 στρατιᾷ, εἰ μὴ δώσει τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. ὁ δὲ κελεύει
διαμετρεῖσθαι. ἐπεὶ δὲ πολλῶν ἐνέδει αὐτῷ ὥστε
ἡμέρας σῖτον ἐκάστῳ γενέσθαι τῶν στρατιωτῶν,
ἀναλαβὼν τὰ ἱερεῖα ἀπήει και τὴν στρατηγίαν
ἀπειπῶν.

II. Νέων δὲ ὁ Ἀσιναῖος και Φρυνίσκος ὁ Ἀχαιὸς
και Φιλήσιος ὁ Ἀχαιὸς και Ξανθικλῆς ὁ Ἀχαιὸς
και Τιμασίῳ ὁ Δαρδανεύς ἐπέμενον ἐπὶ τῇ στρα-
τιᾷ, και εἰς κώμας τῶν Θρακῶν προελθόντες τὰς

¹ ἤκειν Gem., following Cobet: ἤκω MSS., Mar.

as he could carry, and another with onions. After setting down all these things, as though for distribution, he proceeded to sacrifice.

And now Xenophon sent for Cleander and urged him to make arrangements so that he could enter within the wall and thus sail homeward from Byzantium. When Cleander returned, he said that it was only with very great difficulty that he had accomplished the arrangement; for Anaxibius said it was not well to have the soldiers close by the wall and Xenophon within it; the Byzantines, moreover, were in a factious state and hostile to one another. "Nevertheless," Cleander continued, "he bade you come in if you are intending to sail away with him." Xenophon accordingly took his leave of the soldiers and went back within the wall in company with Cleander. As for Coeratadas, on the first day he could not get good omens from his sacrifices nor did he serve out any rations at all to the troops; on the following day the victims were standing beside the altar and Coeratadas had on his chaplet, ready for the sacrifice, when Timasion the Dardanian, Neon the Asinaean, and Cleanor the Orchomenian came up and told him not to make the offering, for he was not to be leader of the army unless he should give them provisions. So he ordered rations to be served out. When it proved, however, that his supply fell far short of amounting to a day's food for each of the soldiers, he took his victims and went away, renouncing his generalship.

II. There now remained in command of the army Neon the Asinaean, Phryniscus the Achaean, Philesius the Achaean, Xanthicles the Achaean, and Timasion the Dardanian, and they proceeded to some villages

- 2 κατὰ Βυζάντιον ἐστρατοπεδεύοντο. καὶ οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἐστασίαζον, Κλεάνωρ μὲν καὶ Φρυνίσκος πρὸς Σεύθην βουλόμενοι ἄγειν· ἔπειθε γὰρ αὐτούς, καὶ ἔδωκε τῷ μὲν ἵππον, τῷ δὲ γυναῖκα· Νέων δὲ εἰς Χερρόνησον, οἴομενος, εἰ ὑπὸ Λακεδαιμονίοις γένοιτο, παντὸς ἂν προεστάναι τοῦ στρατεύματος· Τιμασίω δὲ προθυμεῖτο πέραν εἰς τὴν Ἀσίαν πάλιν διαβῆναι, οἴομενος ἂν οἴκαδε κατ-
 3 ελθεῖν· καὶ οἱ στρατιῶται ταῦτὰ ἐβούλοντο. διατριβομένου δὲ τοῦ χρόνου πολλοὶ τῶν στρατιωτῶν, οἱ μὲν τὰ ὄπλα ἀποδιδόμενοι κατὰ τοὺς χώρους ἀπέπλεον ὡς ἐδύνατο, οἱ δὲ καὶ εἰς τὰς πό-
 4 λεις κατεμείγνυντο. Ἀναξίβιος δ' ἔχαιρε ταῦτα ἀκούων, διαφθειρόμενον τὸ στράτευμα· τούτων γὰρ γιγνομένων ᾤετο μάλιστα χαρίζεσθαι Φαρναβάζω.
 5 Ἀποπλέοντι δὲ Ἀναξίβιω ἐκ Βυζαντίου συναντᾷ Ἀρίσταρχος ἐν Κυζίκῳ διάδοχος Κλεάνδρω Βυζαντίου ἀρμοστής· ἐλέγετο δὲ ὅτι καὶ ναύαρχος διάδοχος Πῶλος ὅσον οὐ παρῆν ἤδη εἰς Ἑλλησ-
 6 ποντον. καὶ Ἀναξίβιος τῷ μὲν Ἀριστάρχῳ ἐπιστέλλει ὁπόσους ἂν εὖρη ἐν Βυζαντίῳ τῶν Κύρου στρατιωτῶν ὑπολειμμένους ἀποδοῦσθαι· ὁ δὲ Κλεάνδρος οὐδένα ἐπεπράκει, ἀλλὰ καὶ τοὺς κάμνοντας ἐθεράπευεν οἰκτίρων καὶ ἀναγκάζων οἰκία δέχεσθαι· Ἀρίσταρχος δ' ἐπεὶ ἦλθε τάχι-
 7 στα, οὐκ ἐλάττους τετρακοσίων ἀπέδοτο. Ἀναξί-

¹ *cp.* i. 13 and note thereon.

² *i.e.* since he was the only Lacedaemonian among the generals.

of the Thracians which were near Byzantium and there encamped. Now the generals were at variance in their views: Cleanor and Phryniscus wanted to lead the army to Seuthes, for he had been trying to persuade them to this course and had given one of them a horse and the other a woman; Neon wanted to go to the Chersonese,¹ thinking that if the troops should fall under the control of the Lacedaemonians, he would be leader of the entire army;² and Timasion was eager to cross back again to Asia, for he thought that in this way he could accomplish his return home.³ As for the troops, to return home was what they also desired. As time wore on, however, many of the soldiers either sold their arms up and down the country and set sail for home in any way they could, or else mingled with the people of the neighbouring Greek cities. And Anaxibius was glad to hear the news that the army was breaking up; for he thought that if this process went on, Pharnabazus would be very greatly pleased.

While Anaxibius was on his homeward voyage from Byzantium, he was met at Cyzicus by Aristarchus, Cleander's successor as governor of Byzantium; and it was reported that his own successor as admiral, Polus, had by this time all but reached the Hellespont. Anaxibius, then, charged Aristarchus to sell as slaves all the soldiers of Cyrus' army that he might find left behind at Byzantium. As for Cleander, he had not sold one of them, but had even been caring for their sick out of pity and compelling the Byzantines to receive them in their houses; but the moment Aristarchus arrived he sold no fewer than four hundred. When Anaxibius had coasted along

³ *cp.* v. vi. 23.

βιος δὲ παραπλεύσας εἰς Πάριον πέμπει παρὰ Φαρνάβαζον κατὰ τὰ συγκείμενα. ὁ δ' ἐπεὶ ἤσθητο Ἀρίσταρχόν τε ἤκουτα εἰς Βυζάντιον ἄρμοσθην καὶ Ἀναξίβιον οὐκέτι ναυαρχοῦντα, Ἀναξίβιον μὲν ἠμέλησε, πρὸς Ἀρίσταρχον δὲ διεπράττετο τὰ αὐτὰ περὶ τοῦ Κύρου στρατεύματος ἄπερ πρὸς Ἀναξίβιον.

- 8 Ἐκ τούτου ὁ Ἀναξίβιος καλέσας Ξενοφῶντα κελεύει πάσῃ τέχνῃ καὶ μηχανῇ πλεῦσαι ἐπὶ τὸ στρατεύμα ὡς τάχιστα, καὶ συνέχειν τε αὐτὸ καὶ συναθροίζειν τῶν διεσπαρμένων ὡς ἂν πλείστους δύνηται, καὶ παραγαγόντα εἰς τὴν Πέρινθον διαβιβάζειν εἰς τὴν Ἀσίαν ὅτι τάχιστα· καὶ δίδωσιν αὐτῷ τριακόντορον καὶ ἐπιστολὴν καὶ ἄνδρα συμπέμπει κελεύοντα τοὺς Περινθίους ὡς τάχιστα Ξενοφῶντα προπέμψαι τοῖς ἵπποις ἐπὶ τὸ στρατεύμα.
- 9 καὶ ὁ μὲν Ξενοφῶν διαπλεύσας ἀφικνεῖται ἐπὶ τὸ στρατεύμα· οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται ἐδέξαντο ἠδέως καὶ εὐθύς εἶποντο ἄσμενοι ὡς διαβησόμενοι ἐκ τῆς Θράκης εἰς τὴν Ἀσίαν.
- 10 Ὁ δὲ Σεύθης ἀκούσας ἤκουτα πάλιν πέμψας πρὸς αὐτὸν κατὰ θάλατταν Μηδοσάδην ἐδεῖτο τὴν στρατιὰν ἄγειν πρὸς ἑαυτὸν, ὑπισχνούμενος αὐτῷ ὅ τι ᾔετο λέγων πείσειν. ὁ δ' ἀπεκρίνατο ὅτι οὐδὲν οἶόν τε εἶη τούτων γενέσθαι. καὶ ὁ
- 11 μὲν ταῦτα ἀκούσας ᾔχετο. οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες ἐπεὶ ἀφίκοντο εἰς Πέρινθον, Νέων μὲν ἀποσπάσας ἐστρατοπεδεύσατο χωρὶς ἔχων ὡς ὀκτακοσίου

¹ *cp.* i. 2.

² Who was manifestly making the voyage with him. *cp.* i. 39 above.

³ On the European shore of the Propontis.

to Parium, he sent to Pharnabazus, according to the terms of their agreement.¹ As soon as Pharnabazus learned, however, that Aristarchus had come to Byzantium as governor and that Anaxibius was no longer admiral, he paid no heed to Anaxibius, but set about making the same arrangement with Aristarchus in regard to Cyrus' army as he had had with Anaxibius.

Thereupon Anaxibius summoned Xenophon² and urged him by all manner of means to set sail as quickly as possible and join the army, and not only to keep it together, but likewise to collect the greatest number he could of those who had become scattered from the main body, and then, after leading the entire force along the coast to Perinthus,³ to take it across to Asia with all speed; he also gave him a thirty-oared warship and a letter, and sent with him a man who was to order the Perinthians to furnish Xenophon with horses and speed him on his way to the army as rapidly as possible. So Xenophon sailed across to Perinthus and then made his way to the army; and the soldiers received him with pleasure, and were glad to follow his lead at once, with the idea of crossing over from Thrace to Asia.

Meanwhile Seuthes, upon hearing of Xenophon's arrival, sent Medosades to him again by sea, and begged him to bring the army to him, offering any promise whereby he imagined he could persuade him. Xenophon replied that it was not possible for anything of this sort to come to pass, and upon receiving this answer Medosades departed. As for the Greeks, when they reached Perinthus, Neon with about eight hundred men parted company with the others and took up a separate camp; but all the

ἀνθρώπους· τὸ δ' ἄλλο στράτευμα πᾶν ἐν τῷ αὐτῷ παρὰ τὸ τεῖχος τὸ Περινηθίων ἦν.

- 12 Μετὰ ταῦτα Ξενοφῶν μὲν ἔπραττε περὶ πλοίων, ὅπως ὄτι τάχιστα διαβαίεν. ἐν δὲ τούτῳ ἀφικόμενος Ἀρίσταρχος ὁ ἐκ Βυζαντίου ἄρμοστής, ἔχων δύο τριήρεις, πεπεισμένος ὑπὸ Φαρναβάζου τοῖς τε ναυκλήροις ἀπέειπε μὴ διάγειν ἐλθῶν τε ἐπὶ τὸ στράτευμα τοῖς στρατιώταις εἶπε μὴ περαιουῖσθαι εἰς τὴν Ἀσίαν. ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἔλεγεν ὅτι Ἀναξίβιος ἐκέλευσε καὶ ἐμὲ πρὸς τοῦτο ἔπεμψεν ἐνθάδε. πάλιν δ' Ἀρίσταρχος ἔλεξεν· Ἀναξίβιος μὲν τοίνυν οὐκέτι ναύαρχος, ἐγὼ δὲ τῆδε ἄρμοστής· εἰ δέ τινα ὑμῶν λήψομαι ἐν τῇ θαλάττῃ, καταδύσω. ταῦτ' εἰπὼν ὄχετο εἰς τὸ τεῖχος. τῇ δ' ὑστεραία μεταπέμπεται τοὺς στρατηγούς καὶ
- 14 λοχαγούς τοῦ στρατεύματος. ἤδη δὲ ὄντων πρὸς τῷ τείχει ἐξαγγέλλει τις τῷ Ξενοφῶντι ὅτι εἰ εἰσεῖσι, συλληφθήσεται καὶ ἢ αὐτοῦ τι πείσεται ἢ καὶ Φαρναβάζῳ παραδοθήσεται. ὁ δὲ ἀκούσας ταῦτα τοὺς μὲν προπέμπεται, αὐτὸς δὲ εἶπεν ὅτι
- 15 θύσαι τι βούλοιο. καὶ ἀπελθὼν ἐθύετο εἰ παρεῖεν αὐτῷ οἱ θεοὶ πειρᾶσθαι πρὸς Σεύθην ἄγειν τὸ στράτευμα. ἑώρα γὰρ οὔτε διαβαίνειν ἀσφαλές ὄν τριήρεις ἔχοντος τοῦ κωλύσοντος, οὔτ' ἐπὶ Χερρόνησον ἐλθὼν κατακλεισθῆναι ἐβούλετο καὶ τὸ στράτευμα ἐν πολλῇ σπάνει πάντων γενέσθαι ἔνθα πείθεσθαι μὲν ἀνάγκη ἦν¹ τῷ ἐκεῖ ἄρμοστῇ, τῶν δ' ἐπιτηδείων οὐδὲν ἔμελλεν ἔξειν τὸ στράτευμα.

¹ ἦν inserted by Bisschop, whom Gem. follows.

rest of the army were together in the same place, beside the wall of the Perinthians.

After this Xenophon proceeded to negotiate for ships, in order that they might cross over with all possible speed. But meantime Aristarchus, the governor at Byzantium, arrived with two triremes and, having been persuaded to this course by Pharnabazus, not only forbade the shipmasters to carry the army across, but came to the camp and told the soldiers not to pass over into Asia. Xenophon replied, "Anaxibius so ordered, and sent me here for that purpose." And Aristarchus retorted, "Anaxibius, mark you, is no longer admiral, and I am governor here; if I catch any one of you on the sea, I will sink him." With these words he departed within the walls of Perinthus. On the next day he sent for the generals and captains of the army. When they were already near the wall, some one brought word to Xenophon that if he went in he would be seized, and would either meet some ill fate then and there or else be delivered over to Pharnabazus. Upon hearing this he sent the rest on ahead, telling them that he was desirous himself of offering a certain sacrifice. Then he went back and sacrificed to learn whether the gods permitted of his endeavouring to take the army to Seuthes. For he saw that it was not safe for them to try to cross over to Asia when the man who intended to prevent their passage possessed triremes; on the other hand, it was not his desire that the army should go to the Chersonese and find itself shut up and in sore need of everything in a place where it would be necessary to obey the resident governor and where the army would not obtain anything in the way of provisions.

- 16 Καὶ ὁ μὲν ἀμφὶ ταῦτ' εἶχεν· οἱ δὲ στρατηγοὶ
καὶ οἱ λοχαγοὶ ἤκουτες παρὰ τοῦ Ἀριστάρχου
ἀπήγγελλον ὅτι νῦν μὲν ἀπιέναι σφᾶς κελεύει,
τῆς δαίλης δὲ ἤκειν· ἔνθα καὶ δῆλη μᾶλλον ἐδόκει
17 ἡ ἐπιβουλή. ὁ οὖν Ξενοφῶν, ἐπεὶ ἐδόκει τὰ ἱερὰ
καλὰ εἶναι αὐτῷ καὶ τῷ στρατεύματι ἀσφαλῶς
πρὸς Σεύθην ἰέναι, παραλαβὼν Πολυκράτην τὸν
Ἀθηναῖον λοχαγὸν καὶ παρὰ τῶν στρατηγῶν
ἐκάστου ἀνδρα—πλὴν παρὰ Νέωνος—ὃ ἕκαστος
ἐπίστευεν ᾗχετο τῆς νυκτὸς ἐπὶ τὸ Σεύθου στρα-
18 τευμα ἐξήκοντα στάδια. ἐπεὶ δ' ἐγγὺς ἦσαν¹
αὐτοῦ, ἐπιτυγχάνει πυροῖς ἐρήμοις. καὶ τὸ μὲν
πρῶτον ᾗετο μετακεχωρηκέναι ποὶ τὸν Σεύθην·
ἐπεὶ δὲ θορύβου τε ἦσθετο καὶ σημερινόντων
ἀλλήλοις τῶν περὶ Σεύθην, κατέμαθεν ὅτι τούτου
ἕνεκα τὰ πυρὰ κεκαυμένα εἶη τῷ Σεύθῃ πρὸ τῶν
νυκτοφυλάκων, ὅπως οἱ μὲν φύλακες μὴ ὀρῶντο
ἐν τῷ σκότει ὄντες μήτε ὀπόσοι μήτε ὄπου εἶεν,
οἱ δὲ προσιόντες μὴ λανθάνοιεν, ἀλλὰ διὰ τὸ φῶς
καταφανεῖς εἶεν.
- 19 Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦσθετο, προπέμπει τὸν ἐρμηνεᾶ δν
ἐτύγχανεν ἔχων, καὶ εἰπεῖν κελεύει Σεύθῃ ὅτι
Ξενοφῶν πάρεστι βουλόμενος συγγενέσθαι αὐτῷ.
οἱ δὲ ἤροντο εἰ Ἀθηναῖος ἀπὸ τοῦ στρατεύματος.
- 20 ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἔφη οὗτος εἶναι, ἀναπηδήσαντες ἐδίωκον
καὶ ὀλίγον ὕστερον παρήσαν πελτασταὶ ὅσον
διακόσιοι, καὶ παραλαβόντες Ξενοφῶντα καὶ

¹ ἦσαν MSS., Mar. : ἦν Gem

While Xenophon was occupied with his sacrificing, the generals and captains returned from their visit to Aristarchus with word that he directed them to go away for the present, but to come back during the afternoon; at that report the design against Xenophon seemed to be even more manifest. Since, therefore, the sacrifices appeared to be favourable, portending that he and the army might go to Seuthes in safety, Xenophon took Polycrates, the Athenian captain, and from each of the generals except Neon a man in whom each had confidence, and set off by night to visit Seuthes' army, sixty stadia away. When they had got near it, he came upon watch-fires with no one about them. And at first he supposed that Seuthes had shifted his camp to some other place; but when he became aware of a general uproar and heard Seuthes' followers signalling to one another, he comprehended that the reason Seuthes had his watch-fires kindled in front of the pickets was in order that the pickets might remain unseen, in the darkness as they were, so that no one could tell either how many they were or where they were, while on the other hand people who were approaching could not escape notice, but would be visible in the light of the fires.

When he did see pickets, he sent forward the interpreter he chanced to have and bade them tell Seuthes that Xenophon had come and desired to meet with him. They asked whether he was an Athenian from the army, and when Xenophon made reply that he was the man, they leaped up and hastened off; and a little afterwards about two hundred peltasts appeared, took Xenophon and his party,

- 21 τοὺς σὺν αὐτῷ ἡγον πρὸς Σεύθην. ὁ δ' ἦν ἐν
 τύρσει μάλα φυλαττόμενος, καὶ ἵπποι περὶ αὐτὴν
 κύκλῳ ἐγκεχαλινωμένοι· διὰ γὰρ τὸν φόβον τὰς
 μὲν ἡμέρας ἐχίλου τοὺς ἵππους, τὰς δὲ νύκτας
 22 ἐγκεχαλινωμένοις ἐφυλάττετο. ἐλέγετο γὰρ καὶ
 πρόσθεν Τήρης ὁ τούτου πρόγονος ἐν ταύτῃ τῇ
 χώρᾳ πολὺν ἔχων στράτευμα ὑπὸ τούτων τῶν
 ἀνδρῶν πολλοὺς ἀπολέσαι καὶ τὰ σκευοφόρα
 ἀφαιρεθῆναι· ἦσαν δ' οὗτοι Θυνοί, πάντων λεγό-
 μνοι εἶναι μάλιστα νυκτὸς πολεμικώτατοι.
- 23 Ἐπεὶ δ' ἐγγὺς ἦσαν, ἐκέλευσεν εἰσελθεῖν Ξενο-
 φῶντα ἔχοντα δύο οὖς βούλοιτο. ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἔνδον
 ἦσαν, ἡσπάζοντο μὲν πρῶτον ἀλλήλους καὶ κατὰ
 τὸν Θράκιον νόμον κέρατα οἴνου προύπινον· παρῆν
 δὲ καὶ Μηδοσάδης τῷ Σεύθῃ, ὅσπερ ἐπρέσβευεν
 24 αὐτῷ πάντοσε. ἔπειτα δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἤρχετο λέγειν·
 Ἐπεμψας πρὸς ἐμέ, ὦ Σεύθῃ, εἰς Καλχηδόνα
 πρῶτον Μηδοσάδην τουτονί, δεόμενός μου συμ-
 προθυμηθῆναι διαβῆναι τὸ στράτευμα ἐκ τῆς
 Ἀσίας, καὶ ὑπισχνούμενός μοι, εἰ ταῦτα πρά-
 ξαιμι, εὖ ποιήσεις, ὡς ἔφη Μηδοσάδης οὗτος.
- 25 ταῦτα εἰπὼν ἐπήρετο τὸν Μηδοσάδην εἰ ἀληθῆ
 ταῦτα εἶη. ὁ δ' ἔφη. Αὐθις ἦλθε Μηδοσάδης
 οὗτος ἐπεὶ ἐγὼ διέβην πάλιν ἐπὶ τὸ στράτευμα
 ἐκ Παρίου, ὑπισχνούμενος, εἰ ἄγοιμι τὸ στράτευμα
 πρὸς σέ, τᾶλλα τέ σε φίλω μοι χρήσεσθαι καὶ
 ἀδελφῶ καὶ τὰ παρὰ θαλάττῃ μοι χωρία ὧν σὺ
 26 κρατεῖς ἔσεσθαι παρὰ σοῦ. ἐπὶ τούτοις πάλιν

¹ See i. 5, and § 10 above.

and proceeded to conduct them to Seuthes. He was in a tower and well guarded, and all around the tower were horses ready bridled; for out of fear he gave his horses their fodder by day, and by night kept them ready bridled to guard himself with. For there was a story that in time gone by Teres, an ancestor of Seuthes, being in this region with a large army, lost many of his troops and was robbed of his baggage train at the hands of the people of this neighbourhood; they were the Thynians, and were said to be the most warlike of all men, especially by night.

When the Greek party had drawn near, Seuthes directed Xenophon to come in, with any two men he might choose to bring with him. As soon as they were inside, they first greeted one another and drank healths after the Thracian fashion in horns of wine; and Seuthes had Medosades present also, the same man who went everywhere as his envoy.¹ After that Xenophon began the speaking: "You sent to me, Seuthes, first at Calchedon, this man Medosades, with the request that I make every effort on your behalf to bring the army across from Asia, and with the promise that if I should do this, you would treat me well—as Medosades here declared." After saying this, he asked Medosades whether this statement of the matter was a true one. He replied that it was. "Medosades here came to me a second time after I had crossed over from Parium to rejoin the army, and promised that if I should bring the army to you, you would not only treat me in all ways as a friend and a brother, but in particular would give me the places on the sea-coast of which you hold possession." Hereupon he

- ἤρετο τὸν Μηδοσάδην εἰ ἔλεγε ταῦτα. ὁ δὲ συν-
 ἔφη καὶ ταῦτα. "Ἴθι νυν, ἔφη, ἀφήγησαι τούτῳ
 27 τί σοι ἀπεκρινάμην ἐν Καλχηδόνι πρῶτον. Ἄπ-
 εκρίνω ὅτι τὸ στράτευμα διαβήσοιτο εἰς Βυζάντιον
 καὶ οὐδὲν τούτου ἔνεκα δέοι τελεῖν οὔτε σοὶ οὔτε
 28 ἄλλῳ· αὐτὸς δὲ ἐπεὶ διαβαίης, ἀπιέναι ἔφησθα· καὶ
 ἐγένετο οὕτως ὥσπερ σὺ ἔλεγες. Τί γὰρ ἔλεγον,
 ἔφη, ὅτε κατὰ Σηλυμβρίαν ἀφίκου; Οὐκ ἔφησθα
 οἶόν τε εἶναι, ἀλλ' εἰς Πέρινθον ἐλθόντας δια-
 29 βαίνειν εἰς τὴν Ἀσίαν. Νῦν τοίνυν, ἔφη ὁ
 Ξενοφῶν, πάρειμι καὶ ἐγὼ καὶ οὗτος Φρυνίσκος
 εἰς τῶν στρατηγῶν καὶ Πολυκράτης οὗτος εἰς τῶν
 λοχαγῶν, καὶ ἔξω εἰσὶν ἀπὸ τῶν στρατηγῶν ὁ
 πιστότατος ἐκάστῳ πλὴν ἀπὸ¹ Νέωνος τοῦ
 30 Λακωνικοῦ. εἰ οὖν βούλει πιστοτέραν εἶναι τὴν
 πράξιν, καὶ ἐκείνους κάλεσαι. τὰ δὲ ὄπλα σὺ
 ἔλθων εἰπέ, ὦ Πολύκρατες, ὅτι ἐγὼ κελεύω κατα-
 λιπεῖν, καὶ αὐτὸς ἐκεῖ καταλιπὼν τὴν μάχαιραν
 εἴσιθι.
 31 Ἀκούσας ταῦτα ὁ Σεύθης εἶπεν ὅτι οὐδενὶ ἀν-
 ἀπιστήσειεν Ἀθηναίων· καὶ γὰρ ὅτι συγγενεῖς
 εἶεν εἰδέναι καὶ φίλους εὐνοῦς ἔφη νομίζειν. μετὰ
 ταῦτα δ' ἐπεὶ εἰσῆλθον οὓς ἔδει, πρῶτον Ξενοφῶν
 ἐπήρετο Σεύθην ὃ τι δέοιτο χρῆσθαι τῇ στρατιᾷ.
 32 ὁ δὲ εἶπεν ὧδε. Μαισάδης ἦν πατὴρ μοι, ἐκείνου
 δὲ ἦν ἀρχὴ Μελανδίται καὶ Θυνοὶ καὶ Τρανίψαι.

¹ ἀπὸ inserted by Gem., following Hartman; *cp.* § 17 above.

¹ According to tradition, through the marriage of the Thracian Tereus (or Teres, *cp.* § 22 above, but see also Thuc. ii. 29) with Procne, daughter of the Athenian king Pandion.

again asked Medosades whether this was what he said, and he again agreed that it was. "Come, now," Xenophon went on, "tell Seuthes what answer I made you that first time at Calchedon." "You answered that the army was going to cross over to Byzantium and there was no need, so far as that was concerned, of paying anything to you or any one else; you also stated that when you had got across, you were yourself to leave the army; and it turned out just as you said." "What then did I say," Xenophon asked, "at the time when you came to me near Selymbria?" "You said that the project was not possible, but that you were going to Perinthus and intended to cross over from there to Asia." "Well, then," said Xenophon, "at this moment I am here myself, along with Phryniscus here, one of the generals, and Polycrates yonder, one of the captains, and outside are representatives of the other generals except Neon the Laconian, in each case the man most trusted by each general. If you wish, therefore, to have the transaction better safeguarded, call them in also. Go and say to them, Polycrates, that I direct them to leave their arms behind, and do you yourself leave your sabre out there before coming back again."

Upon hearing these words Seuthes said that he should not distrust any one who was an Athenian; for he knew, he said, that the Athenians were kinsmen¹ of his, and he believed they were loyal friends. After this, when those who were to be present had come in, Xenophon began by asking Seuthes what use he wanted to make of the army. Then Seuthes spoke as follows: "Maesades was my father, and his realm embraced the Melanditae, the

- ἐκ ταύτης οὖν τῆς χώρας, ἐπεὶ τὰ Ὀδρυσῶν
 πράγματα ἐνόσησεν, ἐκπεσὼν ὁ πατὴρ αὐτὸς μὲν
 ἀποθνήσκει νόσῳ, ἐγὼ δ' ἐξετράφην ὀρφανὸς παρὰ
 33 Μηδόκῳ τῷ νῦν βασιλεῖ. ἐπεὶ δὲ νεανίσκος
 ἐγενόμην, οὐκ ἐδυνάμην ζῆν εἰς ἀλλοτρίαν τρά-
 πεζαν ἀποβλέπων· καὶ ἐκαθεζόμεν ἑνδίφριος
 αὐτῷ ἰκέτης δοῦναί μοι ὅπόσους δυνατὸς εἴη
 ἀνδρας, ὅπως καὶ τοὺς ἐκβαλόντας ἡμᾶς εἴ τι
 34 δυναίμην κακὸν ποιοίην καὶ ζῶν μὴ εἰς τὴν
 ἐκείνου τράπεζαν ἀποβλέπων. ἐκ τούτου μοι
 δίδωσι τοὺς ἀνδρας καὶ τοὺς ἵππους οὓς ὑμεῖς
 ὄψεσθε ἐπειδὴν ἡμέρα γένηται. καὶ νῦν ἐγὼ ζῶ
 τούτους ἔχων, ληζόμενος τὴν ἐμαυτοῦ πατρίαν
 χώραν. εἰ δὲ μοι ὑμεῖς παραγένοισθε, οἶμαι ἂν
 σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς ῥαδίως ἀπολαβεῖν τὴν ἀρχήν.
 ταῦτ' ἐστὶν ἃ ἐγὼ θέομαι.
 35 Τί ἂν οὖν, ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν, σὺ δύναιο, εἰ ἔλθοι-
 μεν, τῇ τε στρατιᾷ δίδόναι καὶ τοῖς λοχαγοῖς καὶ
 τοῖς στρατηγοῖς; λέξον, ἵνα οὗτοι ἀπαγγέλλωσι.
 36 ὁ δ' ὑπέσχετο τῷ μὲν στρατιώτῃ κυζικηνόν, τῷ
 δὲ λοχαγῷ διμοιρίαν, τῷ δὲ στρατηγῷ τετρα-
 μοιρίαν, καὶ γῆν ὅποσὴν ἂν βούλωνται καὶ ζεύγη
 37 καὶ χωρίον ἐπὶ θαλάττῃ τετειχισμένον. Ἐὰν δέ,
 ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν, ταῦτα πειρώμενοι μὴ διαπρά-
 ξωμεν, ἀλλὰ τις φόβος ἀπὸ Λακεδαιμονίων ἢ
 38 παρὰ σέ; ὁ δ' εἶπε· Καὶ ἀδελφούς γε ποιήσομαι
 καὶ ἐνδιφρίους καὶ κοινωνοὺς ἀπάντων ὧν ἂν

Thynians, and the Tranipsae. Now when the affairs of the Odrysians fell into a bad state, my father was driven out of this country, and thereafter sickened and died, while I, the son, was brought up as an orphan at the court of Medocus, the present king. When I became a young man, however, I could not endure to live with my eyes turned toward another's table; so I sat myself down on the same seat with Medocus as a suppliant and besought him to give me as many men as he could, in order that I might inflict whatever harm I could upon those who drove us out, and might live without turning my eyes toward his table. Thereupon he gave me the men and the horses that you will see for yourselves as soon as day has come. And now I live with them, plundering my own ancestral land. But if you should join me, I think that with the aid of the gods I could easily recover my realm. It is this that I want."

"What, then," said Xenophon, "should you be able, in case we came, to give to the rank and file, to the captains, and to the generals? Tell us, so that these men here may carry back word." And Seuthes promised to give to each soldier a Cyzicene,¹ to the captains twice as much, and to the generals four times as much; furthermore, as much land as they might wish, yokes of oxen, and a fortified place upon the seacoast." "But," said Xenophon, "if we make this attempt² and do not succeed, because of some intimidation on the part of the Lacedaemonians, will you receive into your country any one who may wish to leave the army and come to you?" And he replied: "Nay, more than that, I will make you my brothers, table-companions, sharers to the uttermost in all that we

¹ *i.e.* per month. For the Cyzicene, see note on v. vi. 23.

² *i.e.* to persuade the troops to take service under Seuthes. See below.

δυνώμεθα κτᾶσθαι. σοὶ δέ, ὦ Ξενοφῶν, καὶ θυγατέρα δώσω καὶ εἴ τις σοὶ ἔστι θυγάτηρ, ὠνήσομαι Θρακίῳ νόμῳ, καὶ Βισάνθην οἴκησιν δώσω, ὅπερ ἐμοὶ κάλλιστον χωρίον ἐστὶ τῶν ἐπὶ θαλάττῃ.

III. Ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα καὶ δεξιὰς δόντες καὶ λαβόντες ἀπήλαυνον· καὶ πρὸ ἡμέρας ἐγένοντο ἐπὶ στρατοπέδῳ καὶ ἀπήγγειλαν ἕκαστοι τοῖς 2 πέμψασιν. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἡμέρα ἐγένετο, ὁ μὲν Ἀρίσταρχος πάλιν ἐκάλει τοὺς στρατηγούς· τοῖς δ' ἔδοξε τὴν μὲν πρὸς Ἀρίσταρχον ὁδὸν εἶσαι, τὸ δὲ στράτευμα συγκαλέσαι. καὶ συνήλθον πάντες 3 πλὴν οἱ Νέωνος· οὗτοι δὲ ἀπέειχον ὡς δέκα στάδια. ἐπεὶ δὲ συνήλθον, ἀναστὰς Ξενοφῶν εἶπε τάδε. "Ἄνδρες, διαπλεῖν μὲν ἐνθα βουλόμεθα Ἀρίσταρχος τριήρεις ἔχων κωλύει· ὥστε εἰς πλοῖα οὐκ ἀσφαλὲς ἐμβαίνειν· οὗτος δὲ αὐτὸς κελεύει εἰς Χερρόνησον βία διὰ τοῦ ἱεροῦ ὄρους πορεύεσθαι· ἦν δὲ κρατήσαντες τούτου ἐκεῖσ' ἔλθωμεν, οὔτε πωλήσειν ἔτι ὑμᾶς φησιν ὥσπερ ἐν Βυζαντίῳ, οὔτε ἐξαπατήσεσθαι ἔτι ὑμᾶς, ἀλλὰ λήψεσθαι 4 μισθόν, οὔτε περιόψεσθαι ἔτι ὥσπερ νυνὶ δεομένους τῶν ἐπιτηδείων. οὗτος μὲν ταῦτα λέγει· Σεύθης δὲ φησιν, ἂν πρὸς ἐκείνῳ ἴητε, εὖ ποιήσιν ὑμᾶς. νῦν οὖν σκέψασθε πότερον ἐνθάδε 5 ἐπανελθόντες. ἐμοὶ μὲν οὖν δοκεῖ, ἐπεὶ ἐνθάδε οὔτε ἀργύριον ἔχομεν ὥστε ἀγοράζειν οὔτε ἄνευ

may find ourselves able to acquire. And to you, Xenophon, I will also give my daughter, and if you have a daughter, I will buy her after the Thracian fashion; and I will give you for a residence Bisanthe, the very fairest of all the places I have upon the seacoast."

III. After hearing these words and giving and receiving pledges they rode away, and before day-break they arrived at the camp and made their report, each one to those who had sent him. When day came, Aristarchus again summoned the generals; but they resolved to disregard the summons of Aristarchus and instead to call a meeting of the army. And all the troops gathered except Neon's men, who were encamped about ten stadia away. When they had gathered, Xenophon arose and spoke as follows: "Soldiers, as for sailing across to the place where we wish to go, Aristarchus with his triremes prevents our doing that; the result is, that it is not safe for us to embark upon boats; but this same Aristarchus directs us to force our way to the Chersonese, through the Sacred Mountain¹; and if we make ourselves masters of the mountain and get to the Chersonese, he says that he will not sell you any more, as he did at Byzantium, that you will not be cheated any more but will receive pay, and that he will not shut his eyes any more, as he does now, to your being in want of provisions. So much for what Aristarchus says; but Seuthes says that if you come to him, he will treat you well. Now, therefore, make up your minds whether you will consider this question here and now or after you have set forth in quest of provisions. My own opinion is, seeing that here we neither have money with which

¹ *cp.* i. 13, and note thereon

- ἀργυρίου ἐῶσι λαμβάνειν, ἐπανελθόντας εἰς τὰς
 κώμας ὅθεν οἱ ἦττους ἐῶσι λαμβάνειν, ἐκεῖ ἔχον-
 τας τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἀκούοντας ὅ τι τις ἡμῶν δεῖται,
 αἰρεῖσθαι ὅ τι ἂν ἡμῖν δοκῆ κράτιστον εἶναι.
 6 καὶ ὅτω, ἔφη, ταῦτα δοκεῖ, ἀράτω τὴν χεῖρα.
 ἀνέτειναν ἅπαντες. Ἀπιόντες τοίνυν, ἔφη, συ-
 σκευάζεσθε, καὶ ἐπειδὴν παραγγέλλῃ τις, ἔπεσθε
 τῷ ἡγουμένῳ.
 7 Μετὰ ταῦτα Ξενοφῶν μὲν ἠγείτο, οἱ δ' εἶποντο.
 Νέων δὲ καὶ παρ' Ἀριστάρχου ἄγγελοι¹ ἔπειθον
 ἀποτρέπεσθαι οἱ δ' οὐχ ὑπήκουον. ἐπεὶ δ' ὅσον
 τριάκοντα στάδια προελήλυθεσαν, ἅπαντᾶ Σεύ-
 θης. καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἰδὼν αὐτὸν προσελάσαι
 ἐκέλευσεν, ὅπως ὅτι πλείστων ἀκούοντων εἴποι
 8 αὐτῷ ἃ ἐδόκει συμφέρειν. ἐπεὶ δὲ προσῆλθεν,
 εἶπε Ξενοφῶν Ἡμεῖς πορευόμεθα ὅπου μέλλει
 ἔξειν τὸ στράτευμα τροφήν· ἐκεῖ δ' ἀκούοντες καὶ
 σοῦ καὶ τῶν τοῦ Λακωνικοῦ αἰρησόμεθα ἃ ἂν
 κράτιστα δοκῆ εἶναι. ἦν οὖν ἡμῖν ἡγήσῃ ὅπου
 πλείστά ἐστιν ἐπιτήδεια, ὑπὸ σοῦ νομιούμεν ξενί-
 9 ζεσθαι. καὶ ὁ Σεύθης ἔφη· Ἀλλὰ οἶδα κώμας
 πολλὰς ἀθρόας καὶ πάντα ἐχούσας τὰ ἐπιτήδεια
 ἀπεχούσας ἡμῶν ὅσον διελθόντες ἂν ἡδέως ἀρι-
 10 στῶντε. Ἡγοῦ τοίνυν, ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν. ἐπεὶ
 δ' ἀφίκοντο εἰς αὐτὰς τῆς δέλτης, συνῆλθον οἱ

¹ ἄγγελοι Gem., following Hug: ἄλλοι MSS., Mar.

¹ Aristarchus.

to buy nor are permitted to take anything without money, that we ought to set forth to the villages from which we are permitted to take, since their inhabitants are weaker than ourselves, and that there, possessed of provisions and hearing what the service is that one wants us for, we should choose whatever course may seem best to us. Whoever," he said, "holds this opinion, let him raise his hand." Every hand was raised. "Go away, then," Xenophon continued, "and pack up, and when the word is given, follow the van."

After this Xenophon led the way and the troops followed. Neon, indeed, and messengers from Aristarchus tried to persuade them to turn back, but they would not listen to them. When they had advanced as much as thirty stadia, Seuthes met them. And Xenophon, catching sight of him, bade him ride up to the troops, in order that he might tell him within hearing of the greatest possible number what they had decided upon as advantageous. When he had come up, Xenophon said: "We are on our way to a place where the army will be able to get food; there we shall listen both to you and to the Laconian's¹ messengers, and make whatever choice may seem to be best. If, then, you will guide us to a spot where there are provisions in greatest abundance, we shall think we are being hospitably entertained by you." And Seuthes replied: "Why, I know a large number of villages, close together and containing all sorts of provisions, that are just far enough away from us so that, when you have covered the distance, you would enjoy your breakfast." "Lead on, then," said Xenophon. When they had reached the villages, in the after-

στρατιώται, καὶ εἶπεν ὁ Σεύθης τοιάδε. Ἐγώ, ὦ ἄνδρες, δεομαι ὑμῶν στρατεύεσθαι σὺν ἐμοί, καὶ ὑπισχνοῦμαι ὑμῖν δώσειν τοῖς στρατιώταις κυζικηνόν, λοχαγοῖς δὲ καὶ στρατηγοῖς τὰ νομιζόμενα· ἔξω δὲ τούτων τὸν ἄξιον τιμήσω. σῦτα δὲ καὶ ποτὰ ὡσπερ καὶ νῦν ἐκ τῆς χώρας λαμβάνοντες ἔξετε· ὅποσα δ' ἂν ἀλίσκεται ἀξιόσω αὐτὸς ἔχειν, ἵνα ταῦτα διατιθέμενος ὑμῖν τὸν μισθὸν πορίζω.

11 καὶ τὰ μὲν φεύγοντα καὶ ἀποδιδράσκοντα ἡμεῖς ἱκανοὶ ἐσόμεθα διώκειν καὶ μαστεύειν· ἂν δὲ τις ἀνθιστῆται, σὺν ὑμῖν πειρασόμεθα χειροῦσθαι.

12 ἐπήρετο ὁ Ξενοφῶν· Πόσον δὲ ἀπὸ θαλάττης ἀξιώσεις συνέπεσθαί σοι τὸ στράτευμα; ὁ δ' ἀπεκρίνατο· Οὐδαμῇ πλέον ἐπτὰ ἡμερῶν, μείων δὲ πολλαχῆ.

13 Μετὰ ταῦτα ἐδίδοτο λέγειν τῷ βουλομένῳ· καὶ ἔλεγον πολλοὶ κατὰ ταῦτα ὅτι παντὸς ἄξια λέγει Σεύθης· χειμῶν γὰρ εἶη καὶ οὔτε οἴκαδε ἀποπλεῖν τῷ τούτῳ βουλομένῳ δυνατὸν εἶη, διαγενέσθαι τε ἐν φιλίᾳ οὐχ οἶόν τε, εἰ δέοι ὠνουμένους ζῆν, ἐν δὲ τῇ πολεμία διατρίβειν καὶ τρέφεσθαι ἀσφαλέστερον μετὰ Σεύθου ἢ μόνους.¹ ὄντων δ' ἀγαθῶν τοσοῦτων, εἰ μισθὸν προσλήψοιντο, εὐρημα ἐδόκει εἶναι.

14 ἐπὶ τούτοις εἶπεν ὁ Ξενοφῶν· Εἴ τις ἀντιλέγει, λεγέτω· εἰ δὲ μή, ἐπιψηφισθῶ² ταῦτα. ἐπεὶ δὲ οὐδεὶς ἀντέλεγεν, ἐπεψηφίσε, καὶ ἔδοξε ταῦτα.

¹ μόνους. ὄντων δ' ἀγαθῶν τοσοῦτων, εἰ Gem., following Cobet; μόνους, ὄντων ἀγαθῶν τοσοῦτων, εἰ δὲ MSS., Mar.

² ἐπιψηφισθῶ Mar., following Rehdantz; ἐπιψηφισέσθω (or ἐπιψηφισέτω) MSS., Gem.

noon, the soldiers gathered together and Seuthes spoke as follows: "I ask you, soldiers, to take the field with me, and I promise to give to you who are in the ranks a Cyzicene and to the captains and generals the customary pay; besides this, I shall honour the man who deserves it. Food and drink you will obtain, just as to-day, by taking from the country; but whatever may be captured I shall expect to retain for myself, so that by selling it I may provide you your pay. All that flees and hides we shall ourselves be able to pursue and seek out; but if any one offers resistance, with your help we shall try to subdue him." Xenophon asked, "And how far from the seacoast shall you expect the army to follow you?" He replied, "Nowhere more than a seven days' journey, and in many places less."

After this the opportunity to speak was offered to any one who desired it; and many spoke to the same effect, saying that Seuthes' proposals were most valuable; for the season was winter, and it was impossible to sail back home, if that was what one wished, and impossible also to get along in a friendly country if they had to maintain themselves by purchasing; on the other hand, to spend their time and get their maintenance in a hostile country was a safer proceeding in Seuthes' company than if they were alone. And if, above and beyond such important advantages, they were also to receive pay, they counted it a godsend. After that Xenophon said: "If any one holds a contrary opinion, let him speak; if not, I will put this question to vote." And as no one spoke in opposition, he put the matter to vote, and this plan was decided upon.

εὐθὺς δὲ Σεύθῃ εἶπεν, ὅτι συστρατεύουσιντο αὐτῷ.

- 15 Μετὰ τοῦτο οἱ μὲν ἄλλοι κατὰ τάξεις ἐσκή-
νησαν, στρατηγούς δὲ καὶ λοχαγούς ἐπὶ δεῖπνον
16 Σεύθῃς ἐκάλεσε, πλησίον κώμην ἔχων. ἐπεὶ δ'
ἐπὶ θύραις ἦσαν ὡς ἐπὶ δεῖπνον παριόντες, ἦν τις
'Ηρακλείδης Μαρωνείτης· οὗτος προσιῶν ἐν ἑκά-
στῳ οὔστινας ᾤετο ἔχειν τι δοῦναι Σεύθῃ, πρῶτον
μὲν πρὸς Παριανούς τινας, οἳ παρήσαν φιλίαν
διαπραξόμενοι πρὸς Μήδοκον τὸν Ὀδρυσῶν βασι-
λέα καὶ δῶρα ἄγοντες αὐτῷ τε καὶ τῇ γυναικί,
ἔλεγεν ὅτι Μήδοκος μὲν ἄνω εἴη δώδεκα ἡμερῶν
ἀπὸ θαλάττης ὁδόν, Σεύθῃς δ' ἐπεὶ τὸ στράτευμα
17 τοῦτο εἴληφεν, ἄρχων ἔσοιτο ἐπὶ θαλάττῃ. γεί-
των οὖν ὧν ἱκανώτατος ἔσται ὑμᾶς καὶ εὖ καὶ
κακῶς ποιεῖν. ἦν οὖν σωφρονῆτε, τούτῳ δώσετε
ὃ τι ἂν ἄγητε· καὶ ἄμεινον ὑμῖν διακείσεται ἢ
ἐὰν Μηδόκῳ τῷ πρόσω οἰκοῦντι διδώτε. τούτους
18 μὲν οὖν οὕτως ἔπειθεν. αὐθις δὲ Τιμασίῳ τῷ
Δαρδανεῖ προσελθὼν, ἐπεὶ ἤκουσεν αὐτῷ εἶναι
καὶ ἐκπώματα καὶ τάπιδας βαρβαρικός, ἔλεγεν
ὅτι νομίζοιτο ὁπότε ἐπὶ δεῖπνον καλέσαι ὁ Σεύθῃς
δωρεῖσθαι αὐτῷ τοὺς κληθέντας. οὗτος δ' ἦν
μέγας ἐνθάδε γένηται, ἱκανὸς ἔσται σε καὶ οἴκαδε
καταγαγεῖν καὶ ἐνθάδε πλούσιον ποιῆσαι. τοι-
19 αὐτὰ προμυῖνᾶτο ἑκάστῳ προσιῶν. προσελθὼν
δὲ καὶ Ξενοφῶντι ἔλεγε· Σὺ καὶ πόλεως μεγί-

¹ A Greek city in Thrace.

² Through the mediation of Seuthes; *cp.* ii. 32-4.

³ Timasion was an exile (*v.* vi. 23).

So he told Seuthes at once that they would take service with him.

After this the troops went into camp by divisions, but the generals and captains were invited to dinner by Seuthes in a village he was occupying near by. When they had reached his doors and were about to go in to dinner, there stood a certain Heracleides, of Maroneia;¹ this fellow came up to each single one of the guests who, as he imagined, were able to make a present to Seuthes, first of all to some people of Parium who had come to arrange² a friendship with Medocus, the king of the Odrysians, and brought gifts with them for him and his wife; to them Heracleides said that Medocus was a twelve days' journey inland from the sea, while Seuthes, now that he had got this army, would be master upon the coast. "He, therefore," Heracleides went on, "being your neighbour, will be best able to do you good or harm. Hence if you are wise, you will present to him whatever you bring with you; and it will be better for you than if you make your gifts to Medocus, who dwells far away." It was in this way that he tried to persuade these people. Next he came up to Timasion the Dardanian,—for he heard that he had some Persian drinking cups and carpets,—and said that it was customary when Seuthes invited people to dinner, for those who were thus invited to give him presents. "And," he continued, "in case this Seuthes becomes a great man in this region, he will be able either to restore you to your home³ or to make you rich here." Such were the solicitations he used as he went to one man after another. He came up to Xenophon also, and said to him: "You are a citizen of a very great state

- στης εἰ καὶ παρὰ Σεύθη τὸ σὸν ὄνομα μέγιστόν ἐστι, καὶ ἐν τῇδε τῇ χώρᾳ ἴσως ἀξιώσεις καὶ τείχη λαμβάνειν, ὥσπερ καὶ ἄλλοι τῶν ὑμετέρων ἔλαβον, καὶ χώραν ἄξιον οὖν σοι καὶ μεγαλο-
 20 πρεπέστατα τιμῆσαι Σεύθην. εὖνους δέ σοι ὦν παραινῶ· εὖ οἶδα γὰρ ὅτι ὅσῳ ἂν μείζω τούτῳ δωρήσῃ, τοσοῦτῳ μείζω ὑπὸ τούτου ἀγαθὰ πείσῃ. ἀκούων ταῦτα Ξενοφῶν ἠπόρει· οὐ γὰρ διεβεβήκει ἔχων ἐκ Παρίου εἰ μὴ παῖδα καὶ ὅσον ἐφόδιον.
- 21 Ἐπεὶ δὲ εἰσηλθὼν ἐπὶ τὸ δεῖπνον τῶν τε Θρακῶν οἱ κράτιστοι τῶν παρόντων καὶ οἱ στρατηγοὶ καὶ οἱ λοχαγοὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων καὶ εἴ τις πρεσβεία παρῆν ἀπὸ πόλεως, τὸ δεῖπνον μὲν ἦν καθημένοις κύκλῳ· ἔπειτα δὲ τρίποδες εἰσηνέχθησαν πᾶσιν· οὗτοι δ' ἦσαν κρεῶν μεστοὶ νενεμημένων, καὶ ἄρτοι ζυμίται μεγάλοι προσπεπερονημένοι ἦσαν
 22 πρὸς τοῖς κρέασι. μάλιστα δ' αἱ τράπεζαι κατὰ τοὺς ξένους αἰεὶ ἐτίθεντο· νόμος γὰρ ἦν — καὶ πρῶτος τοῦτο ἐποίει Σεύθης, καὶ ἀνελόμενος τοὺς ἑαυτῷ παρακειμένους ἄρτους διέκλα κατὰ μικρὸν καὶ ἐρρίπτει οἷς αὐτῷ ἐδόκει, καὶ τὰ κρέα ὡσαύτως, ὅσον μόνον γεύσασθαι ἑαυτῷ καταλιπών.
 23 καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι δὲ κατὰ ταῦτα ἐποίουν καθ' οὗς αἱ τράπεζαι ἔκειντο. Ἄρκας δὲ τις Ἀρύστας ὄνομα, φαγεῖν δεινός, τὸ μὲν διαρριπτεῖν εἶα χαίρειν, λαβὼν δὲ εἰς τὴν χεῖρα ὅσον τριχοίνικον ἄρτου
 24 καὶ κρέα θέμενος ἐπὶ τὰ γόνατα ἐδείπνει. κέρατα

¹ Especially Alcibiades (*Hell.* I. v. 17, *Nepos*, *Alc.* 7).

and your name is a very great one with Seuthes; perhaps you will expect to obtain fortresses in this land, as others among your countrymen have done,¹ and territory; it is proper, therefore, for you to honour Seuthes in the most magnificent way. It is out of good-will to you that I give this advice· for I am quite sure that the greater the gifts you bestow upon this man, the greater the favours that you will receive at his hands." Upon hearing this Xenophon was dismayed; for he had come across from Parium with nothing but a boy and money enough for his travelling expenses.

When they had come in for the dinner—the noblest of the Thracians who were present, the generals and the captains of the Greeks, and whatever embassy from any state was there—the dinner was served with the guests seated in a circle; then three-legged tables were brought in for the whole company; these were full of meat, cut up into pieces, and there were great loaves of leavened bread fastened with skewers to the pieces of meat. In general the tables were placed opposite the strangers in each case; for the Thracians had a custom which Seuthes now took the lead in practising,—he would pick up the loaves which lay beside him, break them into small pieces, and throw the pieces to whomever he pleased, following the same fashion with the meat also, and leaving himself only enough for a mere taste. Then the others also who had tables placed opposite them, set about doing the same thing. But a certain Arcadian named Arystas, a terrible eater, would have none of this throwing about, but took in his hand a loaf as big as a three-quart measure, put some pieces of meat upon his knees, and pro-

δὲ οἴνου περιέφερον, καὶ πάντες ἐδέχοντο· ὁ δ' Ἄρυστας, ἐπεὶ παρ' αὐτὸν φέρων τὸ κέρασ ὁ οἰνοχόος ἦκεν, εἶπεν ἰδὼν τὸν Ξενοφῶντα οὐκέτι δειπνοῦντα, Ἐκείνω, ἔφη, δός· σχολάζει γὰρ ἤδη,
 25 ἐγὼ δὲ οὐδέπω. ἀκούσας Σεύθης τὴν φωνὴν ἠρώτα τὸν οἰνοχόον τί λέγει. ὁ δὲ οἰνοχόος εἶπεν· ἑλληνίζειν γὰρ ἠπίστατο. ἐνταῦθα μὲν δὴ γέλωσ ἐγένετο.

Ἐπειδὴ δὲ προυχῶρει ὁ πότος, εἰσῆλθεν ἀνὴρ Θραξ ἵππον ἔχων λευκόν, καὶ λαβὼν κέρασ με-
 στὸν εἶπε· Προπίνω σοι, ὦ Σεύθη, καὶ τὸν ἵππον
 τούτου δωροῦμαι, ἐφ' οὗ καὶ διώκων ἂν ἂν θέλης
 αἰρήσεις καὶ ἀποχωρῶν οὐ μὴ δείσης τὸν πολέ-
 27 μιον. ἄλλος παῖδα εἰσάγων οὕτως ἐδωρήσατο
 προπίνων, καὶ ἄλλος ἱμάτια τῇ γυναικί. καὶ
 Τιμασίων προπίνων ἐδωρήσατο φιάλην τε ἀργυ-
 28 ρᾶν καὶ τάπιδα ἀξίαν δέκα μῶν. Γνήσιππος
 δέ τις Ἀθηναῖος ἀναστὰς εἶπεν ὅτι ἀρχαῖος εἶη
 νόμος κάλλιστος τοὺς μὲν ἔχοντας διδόναι τῷ βα-
 σιλεῖ τιμῆσ ἕνεκα, τοῖσ δὲ μὴ ἔχουσι διδόναι τὸν
 βασιλέα, ἵνα καὶ ἐγὼ, ἔφη, ἔχω σοι δωρεῖσθαι καὶ
 29 τιμᾶν. ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἠπορεῖτο τί ποιήσει· καὶ
 γὰρ ἐτύγχανεν ὡς τιμώμενος ἐν τῷ πλησιαιτάτῳ
 δίφρῳ Σεύθῃ καθήμενος. ὁ δὲ Ἡρακλείδης ἐκέ-
 λευεν αὐτῷ τὸ κέρασ ὀρέξαι τὸν οἰνοχόον. ὁ δὲ
 Ξενοφῶν, ἠδη γὰρ ὑποπεπωκὼς ἐτύγχανεν, ἀνέστη
 30 θαρραλέως δεξάμενος τὸ κέρασ καὶ εἶπεν· Ἐγὼ

ceeded to dine. They carried round horns of wine, and all took them; but Arystas, when the cup-bearer came and brought him his horn, said to the man, after observing that Xenophon had finished his dinner, "Give it to him; for he's already at leisure, but I'm not as yet." When Seuthes heard the sound of his voice, he asked the cupbearer what he was saying. And the cupbearer, who understood Greek, told him. So then there was an outburst of laughter.

When the drinking was well under way, there came in a Thracian with a white horse, and taking a full horn he said: "I drink your health, Seuthes, and present to you this horse; on his back pursuing you shall catch whomever you choose, and retreating you shall not fear the enemy." Another brought in a boy and presented him in the same way, with a health to Seuthes, while another presented clothes for his wife. Timasion also drank his health and presented to him a silver bowl and a carpet worth ten minas.¹ Then one Gnesippus, an Athenian, arose and said that it was an ancient and most excellent custom that those who had possessions should give to the king for honour's sake, and that to those who had nought the king should give, "that so," he continued, "I too may be able to bestow gifts upon you and do you honour." As for Xenophon, he was at a loss to know what he should do; for he chanced, as one held in honour, to be seated on the stool nearest to Seuthes. And Heracleides directed the cupbearer to proffer him the horn. Then Xenophon, who already as it happened had been drinking a little, arose courageously after taking the horn and said: "And I, Seuthes,

¹ See note on I. iv. 13.

31 δέ σοι, ὦ Σεύθη, δίδωμι ἑμαυτὸν καὶ τοὺς ἔμοῦς
 τούτους ἐταίρους φίλους εἶναι πιστούς, καὶ οὐδένα
 ἄκοντα, ἀλλὰ πάντας μᾶλλον ἔτι ἐμοῦ σοι βου-
 32 λομένους φίλους εἶναι. καὶ νῦν πάρεισιν οὐδέν σε
 προσαιτοῦντες, ἀλλὰ καὶ προϊέμενοι καὶ πονεῖν
 ὑπὲρ σοῦ καὶ προκινδυνεύειν ἐθέλοντες· μεθ' ὧν,
 ἂν οἱ θεοὶ θέλωσι, πολλήν χώραν τὴν μὲν ἀπο-
 λήψῃ πατρώαν οὖσαν, τὴν δὲ κτήσῃ, πολλοὺς
 δὲ ἵππους, πολλοὺς δὲ ἄνδρας καὶ γυναῖκας καλὰς
 κτήσῃ, οὓς οὐ λήξεσθαί σε δεήσει, ἀλλ' αὐτοὶ φέ-
 33 ροντες παρέσονται πρὸς σέ δῶρα. ἀναστὰς ὁ Σεύ-
 θης συνεξέπιε καὶ συγκατεσκεδάσατο μετ' αὐτοῦ
 τὸ κέρας. μετὰ ταῦτα εἰσῆλθον κέρασί τε οἷοις
 σημαίνουσιν αὐλοῦντες καὶ σάλπιγγιν ὠμοβοεῖαις
 34 ῥυθμούς τε καὶ οἶον μαγάδιδι σαλπίζοντες. καὶ
 αὐτὸς Σεύθης ἀναστὰς ἀνέκραγέ τε πολεμικὸν
 καὶ ἐξήλατο ὥσπερ βέλος φυλαπτόμενος μάλα
 ἐλαφρῶς. εἰσῆσαν δὲ καὶ γελωτοποιοί.
 35 Ὡς δ' ἦν ἥλιος ἐπὶ δυσμαῖς, ἀνέστησαν οἱ
 Ἕλληνες καὶ εἶπον ὅτι ὦρα νυκτοφύλακας καθι-
 στάναι καὶ σύνθημα παραδιδόναι. καὶ Σεύθην
 ἐκέλευον παραγγεῖλαι ὅπως εἰς τὰ Ἑλληνικὰ
 στρατόπεδα μηδεὶς τῶν Θρακῶν εἴσεισι νυκτός·
 οἳ τε γὰρ πολέμιοι Θραῖκες καὶ ὑμεῖς οἱ φίλοι.
 ὡς δ' ἐξῆσαν, συνανέστη ὁ Σεύθης οὐδέν τι μεθύ-
 οντι εἰκώς. ἐξελθὼν δ' εἶπεν αὐτοὺς τοὺς στρα-
 τηγούς ἀποκαλέσας· ὦ ἄνδρες, οἱ πολέμιοι ἡμῶν

¹ The reference is to the Thracian custom, known to us through Suidas, of sprinkling the last drops that remained in the drinking horn upon one's fellow guests.

give you myself and these my comrades to be your faithful friends; and not one of them do I give against his will, but all are even more desirous than I of being your friends. And now they are here, asking you for nothing more, but rather putting themselves in your hands and willing to endure toil and danger on your behalf. With them, if the gods so will, you will acquire great territory, recovering all that belonged to your fathers and gaining yet more, and you will acquire many horses, and many men and fair women; and these things you will not need to take as plunder, but my comrades of their own accord shall bring them before you as gifts." Up rose Seuthes, drained the horn with Xenophon, and joined him in sprinkling the last drops.¹ After this there came in musicians blowing upon horns such as they use in giving signals, and playing upon trumpets of raw ox-hide not only measured notes, but music like that of a harp. And Seuthes himself got up, raised a war-cry, and sprang aside very nimbly, as though avoiding a missile. There entered also a company of buffoons.

When the sun was about setting, the Greeks arose and said that it was time to post sentinels and give out the watchword. They also urged Seuthes to issue an order that none of the Thracians were to enter the Greek camp by night; "for," they said, "our enemies are Thracians and our friends are yourselves."² As the Greeks were setting forth, Seuthes arose with them, not in the least like a drunken man. And after coming out he called the generals aside by themselves and said: "Gentlemen,

² viz. Thracians also; in other words, the Greeks could not tell whether an individual Thracian was friend or foe.

οὐκ ἴσασί πω τὴν ἡμετέραν συμμαχίαν· ἦν οὖν
 ἔλθωμεν ἐπ' αὐτοὺς πρὶν φυλάξασθαι ὥστε μὴ
 ληφθῆναι ἢ παρασκευάσασθαι ὥστε ἀμύνασθαι,
 μάλιστ' ἀν λάβοιμεν καὶ ἀνθρώπους καὶ χρήματα.
 36 συνεπήνουν ταῦτα οἱ στρατηγοὶ καὶ ἡγεῖσθαι ἐκέ-
 λευον. ὁ δ' εἶπε· Παρασκευασόμενοι ἀναμένετε·
 ἐγὼ δὲ ὁπόταν καιρὸς ἦ ἤξω πρὸς ὑμᾶς, καὶ τοὺς
 πελταστὰς καὶ ὑμᾶς ἀναλαβὼν ἡγήσομαι σὺν
 37 τοῖς ἵπποις.¹ καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν εἶπε· Σκέψαι τοί-
 νυν, εἴπερ νυκτὸς πορευσόμεθα, εἰ ὁ Ἑλληνικὸς
 νόμος κάλλιον ἔχει· μεθ' ἡμέραν μὲν γὰρ ἐν ταῖς
 πορείαις ἡγεῖται τοῦ στρατεύματος ὁπίον ἀν αἰὲ
 πρὸς τὴν χώραν συμφέρη, εἴαν τε ὀπλιτικὸν εἴαν
 τε πελταστικὸν εἴαν τε ἵππικόν· νύκτωρ δὲ νόμος
 τοῖς Ἑλλησιν ἡγεῖσθαι ἐστὶ τὸ βραδύτατον·
 38 οὕτω γὰρ ἦκιστα διασπᾶται τὰ στρατεύματα καὶ
 ἦκιστα λαυθάνουσιν ἀποδιδράσκοντες ἀλλήλους·
 οἱ δὲ διασπασθέντες πολλάκις καὶ περιπίπτουσιν
 ἀλλήλοις καὶ ἀγνοοῦντες κακῶς ποιοῦσι καὶ πά-
 39 σχουσιν. εἶπεν οὖν Σεύθης· Ὀρθῶς λέγετε καὶ
 ἐγὼ τῷ νόμῳ τῷ ὑμετέρῳ πείσομαι. καὶ ὑμῖν μὲν
 ἡγεμόνας δώσω τῶν πρεσβυτάτων τοὺς ἐμπειρο-
 τάτους τῆς χώρας, αὐτὸς δ' ἐφέψομαι τελευταῖος
 τοὺς ἵππους ἔχων· ταχὺ γὰρ πῖ ὤτος, ἀν δέη,
 παρέσομαι. σύνθημα δ' εἶπον Ἀθηναίαν κατὰ
 τὴν συγγένειαν. ταῦτα εἰπόντες ἀνεπαύοντο.
 40 Ἡνίκα δ' ἦν ἀμφὶ μέσας νύκτας, παρῆν Σεύθης
 ἔχων τοὺς ἵππεας τεθωρακισμένους καὶ τοὺς

¹ Ἴπποις Gem., following Hirschig: θεοῖς MSS., Mar.

¹ Which are necessary now that the Greeks, whose hoplites form "the slowest arm," are to lead the way.

our enemies do not yet know of our alliance; there-
 fore if we go against them before they have got on
 guard against being captured or have made prepara-
 tions to defend themselves, we should most surely
 get both captives and property." The generals
 agreed in approving this plan, and bade him lead
 on. And he said: "Get yourselves ready and wait;
 and when the proper time comes, I will return to
 you and, picking up my peltasts and yourselves, will
 lead the way with my horsemen." And Xenophon
 said: "Well, now, consider this point, whether, if
 we are to make a night march, the Greek practice is
 not the better: in our marches by day, you know,
 that part of the army takes the lead which is suited
 to the nature of the ground in each case, whether
 it be hoplites or peltasts or cavalry; but by night
 it is the practice of the Greeks that the slowest arm
 should lead the way; for thus the various parts of
 the army are least likely to become separated, and
 men are least likely to drop away from one another
 without knowing it; and it often happens that
 scattered divisions fall in with one another and in
 their ignorance inflict and suffer harm." Then
 Seuthes replied: "You are right, and I will adopt
 your practice. I will give you guides¹ from among
 the oldest men, who know the country best, and I
 myself will bring up the rear with my horsemen;
 for I can speedily reach the front if need be." Then
 they gave out "Athena" as the watchword, on
 account of their kinship.² After this conference
 they went to rest.

When it was about midnight, Seuthes was at
 hand with his horsemen armed with breast-plates

² *cp.* ii. 31.

πελταστὰς σὺν τοῖς ὄπλοις. καὶ ἐπεὶ παρέδωκε
 τοὺς ἡγεμόνας, οἱ μὲν ὀπλίται ἡγούντο, οἱ δὲ
 πελτασταὶ εἶποντο, οἱ δ' ἵππεῖς ὠπισθοφυλάκουν.
 41 ἐπεὶ δ' ἡμέρα ἦν, ὁ Σεύθης παρήλαυνεν εἰς τὸ
 πρόσθεν καὶ ἐπήνεσε τὸν Ἑλληνικὸν νόμον. πολ-
 λάκις γὰρ ἔφη νύκτωρ αὐτὸς καὶ σὺν ὀλίγοις
 πορευόμενος ἀποσπασθῆναι σὺν τοῖς ἵπποις ἀπὸ
 τῶν πεζῶν· νῦν δ' ὥσπερ δεῖ ἀθρόοι πάντες ἅμα
 τῇ ἡμέρᾳ φαινόμεθα. ἀλλὰ ὑμεῖς μὲν περιμένετε
 αὐτοῦ καὶ ἀναπαύσασθε, ἐγὼ δὲ σκεψάμενός τι
 ἦξω. ταῦτ' εἰπὼν ἤλαυνε δι' ὄρους ὁδὸν τινα
 42 λαβῶν. ἐπεὶ δ' ἀφίκετο εἰς χιόνα πολλήν, ἐσκέ-
 ψατο εἰ εἶη ἔχνη ἀνθρώπων ἢ πρόσω ἡγούμενα ἢ
 ἐναντία. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀτριβῆ ἑώρα τὴν ὁδόν, ἦκε
 43 ταχὺ πάλιν καὶ ἔλεγεν· "Ἄνδρες, καλῶς ἔσται, ἦν
 θεὸς θέλη· τοὺς γὰρ ἀνθρώπους λήσομεν ἐπιπε-
 σόντες. ἀλλ' ἐγὼ μὲν ἡγήσομαι τοῖς ἵπποις,
 ὅπως ἂν τινα ἴδωμεν, μὴ διαφυγῶν σημήνη τοῖς
 πολεμίοις· ὑμεῖς δ' ἔπεσθε· κὰν λειφθῆτε, τῷ
 στίβῳ τῶν ἵππων ἔπεσθε. ὑπερβάντες δὲ τὰ ὄρη
 ἦξομεν εἰς κώμας πολλὰς τε καὶ εὐδαίμονας.
 44 Ἦνίκα δ' ἦν μέσον ἡμέρας, ἤδη τε ἦν ἐπὶ τοῖς
 ἄκροις καὶ κατιδῶν τὰς κώμας ἦκεν ἐλαύνων πρὸς
 τοὺς ὀπλίτας καὶ ἔλεγεν· Ἀφήσω ἤδη καταθεῖν
 τοὺς μὲν ἵππεάς εἰς τὸ πεδίου, τοὺς δὲ πελταστὰς
 ἐπὶ τὰς κώμας. ἀλλ' ἔπεσθε ὡς ἂν δύνησθε
 τάχιστα, ὅπως εἴαν τις ὑφιστῆται, ἀλέξησθε.

and his peltasts equipped with their arms. And as
 soon as he had given over their guides to the Greeks,
 the hoplites took the lead, the peltasts followed,
 and the horsemen brought up the rear. When day
 came, Seuthes rode along to the front and expressed
 his approval of the Greek practice. For many times,
 he said, while marching by night with even a small
 force he himself, along with his cavalry, had got
 separated from his infantry; "but now," he continued,
 "we find ourselves at daybreak all together, just as
 we should be. But do you wait where you are and
 take a rest, and I will return after I have looked
 around a little." With these words he rode off along
 a mountain side, following a kind of road. When
 he had reached a place where there was deep snow,
 he looked about to see whether there were human
 footprints, either leading onward or back. As soon
 as he saw that the road was untrodden, he quickly
 returned and said: "All will be well, gentlemen,
 if god will; for we shall fall upon these people
 before they know it. Now I will lead the way with
 the cavalry, so that if we catch sight of any one, he
 may not slip through our fingers and give word to
 the enemy; and do you follow after me, and in case
 you get left behind, keep to the trail of the horses.
 Once we have crossed over the mountains, we shall
 come to many prosperous villages."

By the time it was midday he was already upon
 the heights, and catching sight of the villages below
 he came riding up to the hoplites and said: "Now
 I am going to let the horsemen charge down to the
 plain on the run, and to send the peltasts against
 the villages. Do you, then, follow as fast as you
 can, so that if any resistance is offered, you may

45 ἀκούσας ταῦτα ὁ Ξενοφῶν κατέβη ἀπὸ τοῦ ἵππου.
καὶ ὃς ἤρετο· Τί καταβαίνεις, ἐπεὶ σπεύδειν δεῖ;
Οἶδα, ἔφη, ὅτι οὐκ ἐμοῦ μόνου δέη· οἱ δὲ ὀπλίται
θάπτον δραμοῦνται καὶ ἡδιον, ἐὰν καὶ ἐγὼ πεζὸς
46 ἡγῶμαι. μετὰ ταῦτα ᾤχετο, καὶ Τιμασίῳ μετ'
αὐτοῦ ἔχων ἰππέας ὡς τετταράκοντα τῶν Ἑλλή-
νων. Ξενοφῶν δὲ παρηγγύησε τοὺς εἰς τριάκοντα
ἔτη παριέναι ἀπὸ τῶν λόχων εὐζώνους. καὶ
αὐτὸς μὲν ἐτρόχαζε τούτους ἔχων, Κλεάνωρ δ'
47 ἡγείτο τῶν ἄλλων. ἐπεὶ δ' ἐν ταῖς κώμαις ἦσαν,
Σεύθης ἔχων ὅσον τριάκοντα ἰππέας προσελάσας
εἶπε· Τάδε δὴ, ὦ Ξενοφῶν, ἃ σὺ ἔλεγες· ἔχονται
οἱ ἄνθρωποι· ἀλλὰ γὰρ ἔρημοι οἱ ἰππεῖς οἴχονται
μοι ἄλλος ἄλλη διώκων, καὶ δέδοικα μὴ συστάντες
ἀθρόοι πον κακόν τι ἐργάσωνται οἱ πολέμοι. δεῖ
δὲ καὶ ἐν ταῖς κώμαις καταμένειν τινὰς ἡμῶν
48 μεσταὶ γὰρ εἰσὶν ἄνθρώπων. Ἄλλ' ἐγὼ μὲν, ἔφη
ὁ Ξενοφῶν, σὺν οἷς ἔχω τὰ ἄκρα καταλήψομαι·
σὺ δὲ Κλεάνωρα κέλευε διὰ τοῦ πεδίου παρατεῖναι
τὴν φάλαγγα παρὰ τὰς κώμας. ἐπεὶ ταῦτα
ἐποίησαν, συνηλίσθησαν ἀνδράποδα μὲν εἰς χίλια,
βόες δὲ δισχίλιοι, πρόβατα ἄλλα μύρια. τότε
μὲν δὴ αὐτοῦ ἠύλισθησαν.

IV. Τῇ δ' ὑστεραία κατακαύσας ὁ Σεύθης τὰς
κώμας παντελῶς καὶ οἰκίαν οὐδεμίαν λιπῶν, ὅπως
φόβον ἐνθείη καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις οἷα πείσονται, ἄν

¹ See §§ 37, 38 above. Seuthes has again (*cp.* § 41) gone ahead with his fastest arm (his cavalry), and now appreciates the danger of having them unsupported (*cp.* ἔρημοι below) by infantry.

meet it." Upon hearing these words Xenophon dismounted from his horse. And Seuthes asked: "Why do you dismount, for there is need of haste?" "I know," Xenophon replied, "that I am not the only one you need; and the hoplites will run faster and more cheerfully if I also am on foot leading the way." After this Seuthes went off, and with him Timasion at the head of about forty horsemen of the Greeks. Then Xenophon gave orders that the active men up to thirty years of age should move up from their several companies to the front. So he himself ran along with them, while Cleanor led the rest. When they had reached the villages, Seuthes with about thirty horsemen rode up to him and said: "Here's the very thing, Xenophon, that you were saying;¹ these fellows are caught, but unhappily my horsemen have gone off unsupported, scattering in their pursuit, and I fear that the enemy may get together somewhere in a body and work some harm. On the other hand, some of us also must remain in the villages, for they are full of people." "Well," Xenophon replied, "I myself with the troops I have will seize the heights, and do you direct Cleanor to extend his line through the plain alongside the villages." When they had done these things, there were gathered together captives to the number of a thousand, two thousand cattle, and ten thousand smaller animals besides. Then they bivouacked where they were.

IV. On the following day, after Seuthes had burned up the villages completely and left not a single house, in order that he might inspire the rest of his enemies also with fear of the sort of fate they would suffer if they did not yield him

- 2 μὴ πείθωνται, ἀπήει πάλιν. καὶ τὴν μὲν λείαν ἀπέπεμψε διατίθεσθαι Ἡρακλείδην εἰς Πέρινθον, ὅπως ἂν μισθὸς γένοιτο τοῖς στρατιώταις· αὐτὸς δὲ καὶ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐστρατοπεδεύοντο ἀνὰ τὸ Θυνῶν πεδίον· οἱ δ' ἐκλιπόντες ἔφευγον εἰς τὰ
- 3 ὄρη. ἦν δὲ χιῶν πολλὴ καὶ ψύχος οὕτως ὥστε τὸ ὕδωρ ὃ ἐφέροντο ἐπὶ δεῖπνον ἐπήγνυτο καὶ ὁ οἶνος ὃ ἐν τοῖς ἀγγείοις, καὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων πολλῶν καὶ
- 4 ῥίνες ἀπεκαίοντο καὶ ὤτα. καὶ τότε δῆλον ἐγένετο οὐ ἔνεκα οἱ Θράκες τὰς ἀλωπεκᾶς ἐπὶ ταῖς κεφαλαῖς φοροῦσι καὶ τοῖς ὠσὶ, καὶ χιτῶνας οὐ μόνον περὶ τοῖς στέρνοις ἀλλὰ καὶ περὶ τοῖς μηροῖς, καὶ ζειρὰς μέχρι τῶν ποδῶν ἐπὶ τῶν ἵππων ἔχουσιν,
- 5 ἀλλ' οὐ χλαμύδας. ἀφίεις δὲ τῶν αἰχμαλώτων ὁ Σεύθης εἰς τὰ ὄρη ἔλεγεν ὅτι εἰ μὴ καταβήσονται οἰκήσουντες καὶ πείσονται, ὅτι κατακαύσει καὶ τούτων τὰς κώμας καὶ τὸν σῖτον, καὶ ἀπολοῦνται τῷ λιμῷ. ἐκ τούτου κατέβαινον καὶ γυναῖκες καὶ
- 6 παῖδες καὶ πρεσβύτεροι· οἱ δὲ νεώτεροι ἐν ταῖς ὑπὸ τὸ ὄρος κώμαις ἠυλίζοντο. καὶ ὁ Σεύθης καταμαθὼν ἐκέλευσε τὸν Ξενοφῶντα τῶν ὀπλιτῶν τοὺς νεωτάτους λαβόντα συνεπισπέσθαι. καὶ ἀναστάντες τῆς νυκτὸς ἅμα τῇ ἡμέρᾳ παρήσαν εἰς τὰς κώμας. καὶ οἱ μὲν πλείστοι ἐξέφυγον· πλησίον γὰρ ἦν τὸ ὄρος· ὅσους δὲ ἔλαβε κατηκόντισεν ἀφειδῶς Σεύθης.
- 7 Ἐπισθένης δ' ἦν τις Ὀλύνθιος παιδεραστής, ὃς ἰδὼν παῖδα καλὸν ἠβάσκοντα ἄρτι πέλτην ἔχοντα μέλλοντα ἀποθνήσκειν, προσδραμὼν

obedience, he went back again. Then he dispatched Heracleides to Perinthus to sell the booty, so that he might get money to pay the soldiers with; while he himself and the Greeks encamped on the plain of the Thynians, the inhabitants abandoning their homes and fleeing to the mountains. There was deep snow on the plain, and it was so cold that the water which they carried in for dinner and the wine in the jars would freeze, and many of the Greeks had their noses and ears frost-bitten. Then it became clear why the Thracians wear fox-skin caps on their heads and over their ears, and tunics not merely about their chests, but also round their thighs, and why, when on horseback, they wear long cloaks reaching to their feet instead of mantles. And now Seuthes allowed some of his captives to go off to the mountains with word that if the Thynians did not come down to the plain to live and did not yield him obedience, he would burn up their villages also and their corn, and they would perish with hunger. Thereupon the women, children, and older men did come down, but the younger men bivouacked in the villages under the mountain. And Seuthes, upon learning of this, ordered Xenophon to take the youngest of the hoplites and follow him. So they arose during the night, and at daybreak reached the villages. Now most of the villagers made their escape, for the mountain was close at hand; but all that he did capture, Seuthes shot down unsparingly.

There was a certain Episthenes of Olynthus who was a lover of boys, and upon seeing a handsome boy, just in the bloom of youth and carrying a light shield, on the point of being put to death, he ran

- 8 Ξενοφῶντα ἰκέτευε βοηθῆσαι παιδὶ καλῷ. καὶ
 ὃς προσελθὼν τῷ Σεύθῃ δεῖται μὴ ἀποκτεῖναι τὸν
 παῖδα, καὶ τοῦ Ἐπισθένουσ διηγεῖται τὸν τρόπον,
 καὶ ὅτι λόχον ποτὲ συνελέξατο σκοπῶν οὐδὲν
 ἄλλο ἢ εἰ τινες εἶεν καλοί, καὶ μετὰ τούτων ἦν
 9 ἀνὴρ ἀγαθός. ὁ δὲ Σεύθης ἤρετο· Ἡ καὶ θέλοισ
 ἄν, ὦ Ἐπίσθηνες, ὑπὲρ τούτου ἀποθανεῖν; ὁ δ'
 ὑπεραναιτεῖνας τὸν τράχηλον, Παῖε, ἔφη, εἰ κελεύει
 10 ὁ παῖς καὶ μέλλει χάριν εἰδέναί. ἐπήρετο ὁ
 Σεύθης τὸν παῖδα εἰ παῖσειεν αὐτὸν ἀντ' ἐκείνου.
 οὐκ εἶα ὁ παῖς, ἀλλ' ἰκέτευε μηδέτερον κατα-
 κείνειν. ἐνταῦθα ὁ Ἐπισθένης περιβαλὼν τὸν
 παῖδα εἶπεν· ὦρα σοι, ὦ Σεύθῃ, περὶ τούδε μοι
 11 διαμάχεσθαι· οὐ γὰρ μεθήσω τὸν παῖδα. ὁ δὲ
 Σεύθης γελῶν ταῦτα μὲν εἶα· ἔδοξε δὲ αὐτῷ αὐτοῦ
 ἀλλισθῆναι, ἵνα μηδ' ἐκ τούτων τῶν κωμῶν οἱ ἐπὶ
 τοῦ ὄρους τρέφοιντο. καὶ αὐτὸς μὲν ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ
 ὑποκαταβάς ἐσκήνου, ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἔχων τοὺς
 ἐπιλέκτους ἐν τῇ ὑπὸ τὸ ὄρος ἀνωτάτῳ κώμῃ, καὶ
 οἱ ἄλλοι Ἕλληνας ἐν τοῖς ὄρεινοῖς καλουμένοις
 Θραξὶ πλησίον κατεσκήνησαν.
 12 Ἐκ τούτου ἡμέραι τ' οὐ πολλαὶ διετρίβοντο καὶ
 οἱ ἐκ τοῦ ὄρους Θραῆκες καταβαίνοντες πρὸς τὸν
 Σεύθην περὶ σπονδῶν καὶ ὁμήρων διεπράττοντο.
 καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἐλθὼν ἔλεγε τῷ Σεύθῃ ὅτι ἐν
 πονηροῖς σκηνοῖεν καὶ πλησίον εἶεν οἱ πολέμοι
 ἡδιδόν τ' ἂν ἔξω ἀλλίξεσθαι ἔφη ἐν ἐχυροῖς χωρίοις
 μᾶλλον ἢ ἐν τοῖς στεγνοῖς, ὥστε ἀπολέσθαι. ὁ δὲ

¹ Supplies from the villages in the plain having already been cut off (§ 5).

up to Xenophon and besought him to come to the rescue of a handsome lad. So Xenophon went to Seuthes and begged him not to kill the boy, telling him of Episthenes' turn of mind, how he had once assembled a battalion with an eye to nothing else save the question whether a man was handsome, and that with this battalion he proved himself a brave man. And Seuthes asked: "Would you even be willing, Episthenes, to die for this boy's sake?" Then Episthenes stretched out his neck and said, "Strike, if the lad bids you and will be grateful." Seuthes asked the boy whether he should strike Episthenes in his stead. The boy forbade it, and besought him not to slay either. Thereupon Episthenes threw his arms around the boy and said: "It is time, Seuthes, for you to fight it out with me for this boy; for I shall not give him up." And Seuthes laughed and let the matter go. He resolved, however, to establish a camp where they were, in order that the people on the mountain should not be supplied with food from these villages, either.¹ So he himself went quietly down the mountain and encamped upon the plain, while Xenophon with his picked men took quarters in the uppermost village below the summit and the rest of the Greeks close by, among the so-called "mountain" Thracians.

Not many days had passed after this when the Thracians on the mountain came down and entered into negotiations with Seuthes in regard to a truce and hostages. And Xenophon came and told Seuthes that his men were in bad quarters and the enemy were close at hand; he would be better pleased, he said, to bivouac in the open in a strong position than to be in the houses and run the risk of being

- 13 *θαρρεῖν ἐκέλευε καὶ ἔδειξεν ὁμήρους παρόντας αὐτῶν. ἐδέοντο δὲ καὶ αὐτοῦ Ξενοφῶντος καταβαίνοντές τινες τῶν ἐκ τοῦ ὄρους συμπράξαι σφίσι τὰς σπονδάς. ὁ δ' ὠμολόγει καὶ θαρρεῖν ἐκέλευε καὶ ἠγγυᾶτο μηδὲν αὐτοὺς κακὸν πείσασθαι πειθομένους Σεύθη. οἱ δ' ἄρα ταῦτ' ἔλεγον κατασκοπῆς ἕνεκα.*
- 14 *Ταῦτα μὲν τῆς ἡμέρας ἐγένετο· εἰς δὲ τὴν ἐπιούσαν νύκτα ἐπιτίθενται ἐλθόντες ἐκ τοῦ ὄρους οἱ Θυνοί. καὶ ἠγεμῶν μὲν ἦν ὁ δεσπότης ἐκάστης τῆς οἰκίας· χαλεπὸν γὰρ ἦν ἄλλως τὰς οἰκίας σκότους ὄντος ἀνευρίσκειν ἐν ταῖς κώμαις· καὶ γὰρ αἱ οἰκίαι κύκλω περιεσταύρωντο μεγάλοις*
- 15 *σταυροῖς τῶν προβάτων ἕνεκα. ἐπεὶ δ' ἐγένοντο κατὰ τὰς θύρας ἐκάστου τοῦ οἰκήματος, οἱ μὲν εἰσηκόντιζον, οἱ δὲ τοῖς σκυτάλοις ἔβαλλον, ἃ ἔχειν ἔφασαν ὡς ἀποκόψοντες τῶν δοράτων τὰς λόγχας, οἱ δ' ἐνεπίμπρασαν, καὶ Ξενοφῶντα ὀνομαστὶ καλοῦντες ἐξίοντα ἐκέλευον ἀποθνήσκειν,*
- 16 *ἢ αὐτοῦ ἔφασαν κατακαυθήσεσθαι αὐτόν. καὶ ἤδη τε διὰ τοῦ ὀρόφου ἐφαίμετο πῦρ, καὶ ἐντεθωρακισμένοι οἱ περὶ τὸν Ξενοφῶντα ἔνδον ἦσαν ἀσπίδας καὶ μαχαίρας καὶ κράνη ἔχοντες, καὶ Σιλανὸς Μακίστιος ἐτῶν ὡς ὀκτωκαίδεκα σημαίνει τῇ σάλπιγγι· καὶ εὐθὺς ἐκπηδῶσιν ἐσπασμένοι*
- 17 *τὰ ξίφη καὶ οἱ ἐκ τῶν ἄλλων σκηνωμάτων. οἱ δὲ Θυρακες φεύγουσιν, ὡσπερ δὴ τρόπος ἦν αὐτοῖς,*

destroyed. But Seuthes bade him have no fear and showed him hostages that had come from the enemy. Meanwhile some of the people on the mountain came down and actually requested Xenophon himself to help them obtain the truce. He agreed to do so, told them to have no fear, and gave them his word that they would suffer no harm if they were obedient to Seuthes. But they, as it proved, were talking about this matter merely in order to spy out the situation.

All this happened during the day, but in the night that followed the Thynians issued from the mountain and made an attack. And the master of each separate house acted as guide to that house; for in the darkness it would have been difficult to find the houses in these villages in any other way; for each house was surrounded by a paling, made of great stakes, to keep in the cattle. When they had reached the doors of a particular house, some would throw in javelins, others would lay on with their clubs, which they carried, so it was said, to knock off the heads of hostile spears, and still others would be setting the house on fire, meanwhile calling Xenophon by name and bidding him come out and be killed, or else, they said, he would be burned up then and there. And now fire was already showing through the roof, and Xenophon and his men inside the house had equipped themselves with breastplates and were furnished with shields and swords and helmets, when Silanus the Macistian, a lad of about eighteen years, gave a signal with the trumpet; and on the instant they leaped forth with swords drawn, and so did the Greeks from the other houses. Then the Thracians took to flight, swinging their shields

ὄπισθεν περιβαλλόμενοι τὰς πέλτας· καὶ αὐτῶν
 ὑπεραλλομένων τοὺς σταυροὺς ἐλήφθησαν τινες
 κρεμασθέντες ἐνεχομένων τῶν πελτῶν τοῖς σταυ-
 ροῖς· οἱ δὲ καὶ ἀπέθανον ἀμαρτόντες τῶν ἐξόδων·
 18 οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνας ἐδίωκον ἔξω τῆς κώμης. τῶν δὲ
 Θυνῶν ὑποστραφέντες τινὲς ἐν τῷ σκότει τοὺς
 παρατρέχοντας παρ' οἰκίαν καιομένην ἠκόντιζον
 εἰς τὸ φῶς ἐκ τοῦ σκότους· καὶ ἔτρωσαν Ἱερώνυ-
 μόν τε Ἐπιταλιέα¹ λοχαγὸν καὶ Θεογένην Λοκρὸν
 λοχαγόν· ἀπέθανε δὲ οὐδεὶς· κατεκαύθη μέντοι καὶ
 19 ἐσθῆς τιῶν καὶ σκεύη. Σεύθης δὲ ἤκε βοθητῶν
 σὺν ἐπτὰ ἵππεύσι τοῖς πρώτοις καὶ τὸν σαλπικτῆν
 ἔχων τὸν Θράκιον. καὶ ἐπεὶ ἦσθετο, ὅσον περ
 χρόνον ἐβοήθει, τοσοῦτον καὶ τὸ κέρας ἐφθέγγετο
 αὐτῷ· ὥστε καὶ τοῦτο φόβον συμπαρέσχε τοῖς
 πολεμίοις. ἐπεὶ δ' ἦλθεν, ἐδεξιούτο τε καὶ ἔλεγεν
 ὅτι οἴοιτο τεθνεῶτας πολλοὺς εὐρήσειν.
 20 Ἐκ τούτου ὁ Ξενοφῶν δεῖται τοὺς ὁμήρους τε
 αὐτῷ παραδοῦναι καὶ ἐπὶ τὸ ὄρος, εἰ βούλεται,
 21 συστρατεύεσθαι· εἰ δὲ μή, αὐτὸν εἶσαι. τῇ οὖν
 ὑστεραία παραδίδωσιν ὁ Σεύθης τοὺς ὁμήρους,
 πρεσβυτέρους ἄνδρας ἤδη, τοὺς κρατίστους, ὡς
 ἔφασαν, τῶν ὀρεινῶν, καὶ αὐτὸς ἔρχεται σὺν τῇ
 δυνάμει. ἤδη δὲ εἶχε καὶ τριπλασίαν δύναμιν ὁ
 Σεύθης· ἐκ γὰρ τῶν Ὀδρυσῶν ἀκούοντες ἅ πρᾶτ-
 22 τει ὁ Σεύθης πολλοὶ κατέβαινον συστρατευσό-
 μνοι. οἱ δὲ Θυνοὶ ἐπεὶ εἶδον ἀπὸ τοῦ ὄρους

¹ Ἐπιταλιέα Schenk: καὶ εὐδοέα MSS., which Mar. regards as corrupt: Εὐβοέα Gem., following Ullrich

around behind them, as was their custom; and some of them who tried to jump over the palings were captured hanging in the air, with their shields caught in the stakes, while others missed the ways that led out and were killed; and the Greeks continued the pursuit till they were outside the village. Some of the Thynians, however, turned about in the darkness and hurled javelins at men who were running along past a burning house, throwing out of the darkness toward the light; and they wounded Hieronymus the Epitalian, a captain, and Theogenes the Locrian, also a captain; no one, however, was killed, but some men had clothes and baggage burned up. Meanwhile, Seuthes came to their aid with seven horsemen of his front line and his Thracian trumpeter. And from the instant he learned of the trouble, through all the time that he was hurrying to the rescue, every moment his horn was kept sounding; the result was, that this also helped to inspire fear in the enemy. When he did arrive, he clasped their hands and said that he had supposed he should find many of them slain.

After this Xenophon asked Seuthes to give over the hostages to him and to join him on an expedition to the mountain, if he so pleased; otherwise, to let him go by himself. On the next day, accordingly, Seuthes gave over the hostages—men already elderly and the most powerful, so it was said, of the mountaineers—and came himself with his troops. Now by this time Seuthes had a force quite three times as large as before; for many of the Odrysians, hearing what success Seuthes was enjoying, came down from the upper country to take service with him. And when the Thynians saw from their mountain

πολλοὺς μὲν ὀπλίτας, πολλοὺς δὲ πελταστάς, πολλοὺς δὲ ἰππέας, καταβάντες ἰκέτευσαν σπείσασθαι, καὶ πάντα ὠμολόγουν ποιήσῃν καὶ πιστὰ
 23 λαμβάνειν ἐκέλευον. ὁ δὲ Σεύθης καλέσας τὸν Ξενοφῶντα ἐπεδείκνυεν ἃ λέγοιεν, καὶ οὐκ ἂν ἔφη σπείσασθαι, εἰ Ξενοφῶν βούλοιο τιμωρῆσασθαι
 24 αὐτοὺς τῆς ἐπιθέσεως. ὁ δ' εἶπεν· Ἄλλ' ἔγωγε ἰκανὴν νομίζω καὶ νῦν δίκην ἔχειν, εἰ οὗτοι δούλοι ἔσονται ἂντ' ἐλευθέρων. συμβουλεύειν μέντοι ἔφη αὐτῷ τὸ λοιπὸν ὁμήρους λαμβάνειν τοὺς δυνατωτάτους κακὸν τι ποιεῖν, τοὺς δὲ γέροντας οἴκοι ἔαν. οἱ μὲν οὖν ταύτῃ πάντες δὴ προσωμολόγουν.

V. Ὑπερβάλλουσι δὲ πρὸς τοὺς ὑπὲρ Βυζαντίου Θράκας εἰς τὸ Δέλτα καλούμενον· αὕτη δ' ἦν οὐκέτι ἀρχὴ Μαισάδου, ἀλλὰ Τήρους τοῦ Ὀδρύσου.
 2 καὶ ὁ Ἡρακλείδης ἐνταῦθα ἔχων τὴν τιμὴν τῆς λείας παρῆν. καὶ Σεύθης ἐξαγαγὼν ζεύγη ἡμιονικὰ τρία, οὐ γὰρ ἦν πλείω, τὰ δ' ἄλλα βοεικὰ, καλέσας Ξενοφῶντα ἐκέλευε λαβεῖν, τὰ δὲ ἄλλα διανεῖμαι τοῖς στρατηγοῖς καὶ λοχαγοῖς.
 3 Ξενοφῶν δὲ εἶπεν· Ἐμοὶ τοίνυν ἀρκεῖ καὶ αὐθις λαβεῖν· τούτοις δὲ τοῖς στρατηγοῖς δωροῦ οὐ
 4 σὺν ἐμοὶ ἠκολούθησαν καὶ λοχαγοῖς. καὶ τῶν ζευγῶν λαμβάνει ἐν μὲν Τιμασίῳ ὁ Δαρδανεύς, ἐν δὲ Κλεάνωρ ὁ Ὀρχομένιος, ἐν δὲ Φρυνίσκος ὁ Ἀχαιοῦς· τὰ δὲ βοεικὰ ζεύγη τοῖς λοχαγοῖς κατεμερίσθη. τὸν δὲ μισθὸν ἀποδίδωσιν ἐξεληλυθότος ἤδη τοῦ μηνὸς εἴκοσι μόνον ἡμερῶν· ὁ γὰρ

masses of hoplites, masses of peltasts, and troops of horsemen, they descended and besought him to grant them a truce, agreeing to do anything and everything and urging him to receive pledges. Thereupon Seuthes summoned Xenophon, disclosed to him the proposals they were making, and said that he should not grant them a truce if Xenophon wanted to punish them for their attack. And Xenophon said: "Why, for my part I think I have abundant satisfaction as it is, if these people are to be slaves instead of free men." He added, however, that he advised Seuthes to take as hostages in the future those who were most capable of doing harm and to leave the old men at home. Thus it was that all the people in this region surrendered.

V. And now they crossed over to the country of the Thracians above Byzantium, in the so-called Delta;¹ this was beyond the domain of Maesades, being the land of Teres the Odrysian. There Heracleides presented himself, with the proceeds from the sale of the booty. And Seuthes, leading forth three pairs of mules—for there were no more than three—and the yokes of oxen besides, called Xenophon and bade him take for himself and then distribute the rest among the generals and captains. Xenophon replied: "Well, for my part I am content to get something at a later time; give rather to these generals and captains who have followed with me." So one of the mule teams was given to Timasion the Dardanian, one to Cleanor the Orchomenian, and one to Phryniscus the Achaean, while the yokes of oxen were distributed among the captains. Seuthes also paid over the wages of the troops, but for twenty days only of the month that had now passed; for

¹ See on i. 33.

- 5 Ἡρακλείδης ἔλεγεν ὅτι οὐ πλέον ἐμπολήσαι. ὁ οὖν Ξενοφῶν ἀχθεσθεὶς εἶπεν ἐπομόσας· Δοκεῖς μοι, ὦ Ἡρακλείδη, οὐχ ὡς δεῖ κήδεσθαι Σεύθου· εἰ γὰρ ἐκήδου, ἦκες ἂν φέρων πλήρη τὸν μισθὸν καὶ προσδανεισάμενος, εἰ μὴ ἄλλως ἐδύνω, καὶ ἀποδόμενος τὰ σαυτοῦ ἱμάτια.
- 6 Ἐντεῦθεν ὁ Ἡρακλείδης ἠχθέσθη τε καὶ ἔδεισε μὴ ἐκ τῆς Σεύθου φιλίας ἐκβληθείη, καὶ ὅ τι ἐδύνατο ἀπὸ ταύτης τῆς ἡμέρας Ξενοφῶντα
- 7 διέβαλλε πρὸς Σεύθην. οἱ μὲν δὴ στρατιῶται Ξενοφῶντι ἐνεκάλουν ὅτι οὐκ εἶχον τὸν μισθόν· Σεύθης δὲ ἠχθετο αὐτῷ ὅτι ἐντόνως τοῖς στρατι-
- 8 ὠταις ἀπῆτει τὸν μισθόν. καὶ τέως μὲν αἰεὶ ἐμέμνητο ὡς, ἐπειδὴν ἐπὶ θάλατταν ἀπέλθῃ, παραδώσει αὐτῷ Βισάνθην καὶ Γάνος καὶ Νέου τείχος· ἀπὸ δὲ τούτου τοῦ χρόνου οὐδενὸς ἔτι τούτων ἐμέμνητο. ὁ γὰρ Ἡρακλείδης καὶ τούτο διεβεβλήκει ὡς οὐκ ἀσφαλὲς εἶη τείχη παραδιδόναι ἀνδρὶ δύναμιν ἔχοντι.
- 9 Ἐκ τούτου ὁ μὲν Ξενοφῶν ἐβουλεύετο τί χρὴ ποιεῖν περὶ τοῦ ἔτι ἄνω στρατεύεσθαι· ὁ δ' Ἡρακλείδης εἰσαγαγὼν τοὺς ἄλλους στρατηγοὺς πρὸς Σεύθην λέγειν τε ἐκέλευεν αὐτοὺς ὅτι οὐδὲν ἂν ἦττον σφεῖς ἀγάγοιεν τὴν στρατιὰν ἢ Ξενοφῶν, τὸν τε μισθὸν ὑπισχνεῖτο αὐτοῖς ἐντὸς ὀλίγων ἡμερῶν ἔκπλεων παρέσεσθαι δυοῖν μηνῶν, καὶ
- 10 συστρατεύεσθαι ἐκέλευε. καὶ ὁ Τιμασίων εἶπεν· Ἐγὼ μὲν τοίνυν οὐδ' ἂν πέντε μηνῶν μισθὸς

Heracleides said that he had not obtained any more than that from his sale. Xenophon was angered at this, and said to him with an oath: "It seems to me, Heracleides, that you are not caring for Seuthes' interest as you should; for if you were, you would have brought back with you our wages in full, even if you had to borrow something, in case you could not do it in any other way, or to sell your own clothes."

This made Heracleides not only angry, but fearful that he might be banished from the favour of Seuthes, and from that day he slandered Xenophon before Seuthes to the best of his ability. As for the soldiers, they held Xenophon to blame for their not having received their pay; and Seuthes, on the other hand, was angry with him because he was insistent in demanding their pay for the soldiers. Hitherto, he had continually been mentioning the fact that upon his return to the coast he was going to give Xenophon Bisanthe and Ganos and Neonteichos, but from this time he did not allude to a single one of these places again. For Heracleides had put in this slanderous suggestion with the rest, that it was not safe to be giving over fortresses to a man who had a force of troops.

Hereupon Xenophon began to consider what it was best to do about continuing the march still farther inland; Heracleides, on the other hand, took the rest of the generals in to visit Seuthes and bade them say that they could lead the army just as well as Xenophon, while at the same time he promised them that within a few days they would have their pay in full for two months and urged them to continue the campaign with Seuthes. And Timasion said: "Well, so far as I am concerned, I

μέλλη εἶναι στρατευσαίμην ἂν ἄνευ Ξενοφῶντος.
 καὶ ὁ Φρυνίσκος καὶ ὁ Κλεάνωρ συνωμολόγουν
 11 τῷ Τιμασίῳ. ἐντεῦθεν ὁ Σεύθης ἐλοιδορεῖ τὸν
 Ἡρακλείδην ὅτι οὐ παρεκάλει καὶ Ξενοφῶντα.
 ἐκ δὲ τούτου παρακαλοῦσιν αὐτὸν μόνον. ὁ δὲ
 γνοὺς τοῦ Ἡρακλείδου τὴν πανουργίαν ὅτι βού-
 λοιτο αὐτὸν διαβάλλειν πρὸς τοὺς ἄλλους στρα-
 τηγούς, παρέρχεται λαβὼν τοὺς τε στρατηγούς
 12 πάντας καὶ τοὺς λοχαγούς. καὶ ἐπεὶ πάντες
 ἐπέισθησαν, συνεστρατεύοντο καὶ ἀφικνούνται ἐν
 δεξιᾷ ἔχοντες τὸν Πόντον διὰ τῶν Μελινοφάγων
 καλουμένων Θρακῶν εἰς τὸν Σαλμυδησσόν. ἐνθα
 τῶν εἰς τὸν Πόντον πλεουσῶν νεῶν πολλὰ ὀκέλ-
 λουσι καὶ ἐκπίπτουσι· τέναγος γάρ ἐστιν ἐπὶ
 13 πᾶμπολυ τῆς θαλάττης. καὶ Θραῖκες οἱ κατὰ
 ταῦτα οἰκοῦντες στήλας ὀρισάμενοι τὰ καθ' αὐτοὺς
 ἐκπίπτοντα ἕκαστοι λήζονται· τέως δὲ ἔλεγον
 πρὶν ὀρίσασθαι ἀρπάζοντας πολλοὺς ὑπ' ἄλ-
 14 λήλων ἀποθνήσκειν. ἐνταῦθα ἠύρισκοντο πολ-
 λαὶ μὲν κλῖναι, πολλὰ δὲ κιβώτια, πολλὰ δὲ
 βίβλοι γεγραμμέναι, καὶ τᾶλλα πολλὰ ὅσα ἐν
 ξυλίνοις τεύχεσι ναύκληροι ἄγουσιν. ἐντεῦθεν
 15 ταῦτα καταστρεψάμενοι ἀπῆσαν πάλιν. ἐνθα
 δὴ Σεύθης εἶχε στρατεύμα ἤδη πλεόν τοῦ Ἑλ-
 ληνικοῦ· ἐκ τε γὰρ Οδρυσῶν πολὺ ἔτι πλείους
 κατεβεβήκεσαν καὶ οἱ αἰεὶ πειθόμενοι συνεστρα-
 τεύοντο. κατηυλίσθησαν δ' ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ ὑπὲρ
 Σηλυμβρίας ὅσον τριάκοντα σταδίου ἀπέχοντες

shall undertake no campaign without Xenophon even if there is going to be five months' pay." And Phryniscus and Cleanor agreed with Timasion. Thereupon Seuthes fell to abusing Heracleides because he had not invited Xenophon in also. The upshot of this was, that they invited Xenophon by himself. And he, comprehending the rascality of Heracleides, in wanting to make him an object of suspicion to the other generals, brought with him when he came all the generals and the captains. When all of them had been prevailed upon, they continued the march with Seuthes, and, keeping the Pontus upon the right through the country of the millet-eating Thracians, as they are called, arrived at Salmydessus. Here many vessels sailing to the Pontus run aground and are wrecked; for there are shoals that extend far and wide. And the Thracians who dwell on this coast have boundary stones set up and each group of them plunder the ships that are wrecked within their own limits; but in earlier days, before they fixed the boundaries, it was said that in the course of their plundering many of them used to be killed by one another. Here there were found great numbers of beds and boxes, quantities of written books, and an abundance of all the other articles that shipowners carry in wooden chests. After subduing the country in this neighbourhood they set out upon their return. By that time Seuthes had an army larger than the Greek army; for more and still more of the Odrysians had come down from the interior, and the peoples that from time to time were reduced to obedience would join in the campaign. And they went into camp on the plain above Selymbria, at a distance of about thirty stadia from the coast. As

16 τῆς θαλάττης. καὶ μισθὸς μὲν οὐδεὶς πω ἐφαί-
νετο· πρὸς δὲ τὸν Ξενοφῶντα οἱ τε στρατιῶται
παγχαλέπως εἶχον ὃ τε Σεύθης οὐκέτι οἰκείως
διέκειτο, ἀλλ' ὅποτε συγγενέσθαι αὐτῷ βουλόμενος
ἔλθοι, πολλαὶ ἤδη ἀσχολίαι ἐφαίνοντο.

VI. Ἐν τούτῳ τῷ χρόνῳ σχεδὸν ἤδη δύο μη-
νῶν ὄντων ἀφικνεῖται Χαρμίνος τε ὁ Λάκων καὶ
Πολύνικος παρὰ Θίβρωνος, καὶ λέγουσιν ὅτι
Λακεδαιμονίοις δοκεῖ στρατεύεσθαι ἐπὶ Τισσαφέρ-
νην, καὶ Θίβρων ἐκπέπλευκεν ὡς πολεμήσων, καὶ
δεῖται ταύτης τῆς στρατιᾶς καὶ λέγει ὅτι δαρεϊκὸς
ἐκάστῳ ἔσται μισθὸς τοῦ μηνός, καὶ τοῖς λοχαγοῖς
διμοιρία, τοῖς δὲ στρατηγοῖς τετραμοιρία.

2 Ἐπεὶ δ' ἦλθον οἱ Λακεδαιμόνιοι, εὐθύς ὁ Ἡρα-
κλείδης πυθόμενος ὅτι ἐπὶ τὸ στράτευμα ἤκουσι
λέγει τῷ Σεύθῃ ὅτι κάλλιστόν τι γεγένηται· οἱ
μὲν γὰρ Λακεδαιμόνιοι δέονται τοῦ στρατεύματος,
σὺ δὲ οὐκέτι δέη· ἀποδιδούς δὲ τὸ στράτευμα
χαριῇ αὐτοῖς, σὲ δὲ οὐκέτι ἀπαιτήσουσι τὸν
3 μισθόν, ἀλλ' ἀπαλλάξονται ἐκ τῆς χώρας. ἀκού-
σας ταῦτα ὁ Σεύθης κελεύει παράγειν· καὶ ἐπεὶ
εἶπον ὅτι ἐπὶ τὸ στράτευμα ἤκουσιν, ἔλεγεν ὅτι
το στράτευμα ἀποδίδωσι, φίλος τε καὶ σύμμαχος
εἶναι βούλεται, καλεῖ τε αὐτοὺς ἐπὶ ξένια· καὶ
ἐξένιξε μεγαλοπρεπῶς. Ξενοφῶντα δὲ οὐκ ἐκάλει,
4 οὐδὲ τῶν ἄλλων στρατηγῶν οὐδένα. ἐρωτῶντων
δὲ τῶν Λακεδαιμονίων τίς ἀνὴρ εἶη Ξενοφῶν
ἀπεκρίνατο ὅτι τὰ μὲν ἄλλα εἶη οὐ κακός, φιλο-

for pay, there was none to be seen as yet; and not
only did the soldiers entertain very hard feelings
toward Xenophon, but Seuthes no longer felt kindly
toward him, and whenever Xenophon came and
wanted to have a meeting with him, it would
straightway be found that he had engagements in
abundance.

VI. At this time, when nearly two months had
already passed, Charminus the Laconian and Poly-
nicus arrived on a mission from Thibron: they said
that the Lacedaemonians had resolved to undertake
a campaign against Tissaphernes, that Thibron had
set sail to wage the war, and that he wanted this
army; also that he said the pay would be a daric per
month for every man, twice as much for the captains,
and four times as much for the generals.

When the Lacedaemonians arrived, Heracleides
learned on the instant that they had come to get
the army, and told Seuthes that a most fortunate
thing had happened: "The Lacedaemonians want
the army, and you no longer want it; by giving up
the army you will be doing them a favour, while, on
your side, the troops will not go on demanding their
pay from you, but will soon be quitting the country."
Upon hearing these words Seuthes directed him to
introduce the envoys; and when they told him that
they had come after the army, he replied that he
would deliver it up and that he desired to be their
friend and ally; he also invited them to dinner, and
entertained them magnificently. Xenophon, how-
ever, he did not invite, nor any one of the other
generals. When the Lacedaemonians asked what
sort of a man Xenophon was, he replied that he was
not a bad fellow on the whole, but he was a friend

- στρατιώτης δέ· καὶ διὰ τοῦτο χεῖρόν ἐστιν αὐτῷ.
καὶ οἱ εἶπον· Ἄλλ' ἢ δημαγωγεῖ ὁ ἀνὴρ τοὺς
ἀνδρας; καὶ ὁ Ἡρακλείδης, Πάνυ μὲν οὖν, ἔφη.
5 Ἄρ' οὖν, ἔφασαν, μὴ καὶ ἡμῖν ἐναντιώσεται τῆς
ἀπαγωγῆς; Ἄλλ' ἦν ὑμεῖς, ἔφη ὁ Ἡρακλείδης,
συλλέξαντες αὐτοὺς ὑπόσχησθε τὸν μισθόν, ὀλίγον
ἐκείνῳ προσσχόντες ἀποδραμοῦνται σὺν ὑμῖν.
6 Πῶς οὖν ἄν, ἔφασαν, ἡμῖν συλλεγεῖεν; Αὐρίου
ὑμᾶς, ἔφη ὁ Ἡρακλείδης, πρῶ ἄξομεν πρὸς αὐ-
τούς· καὶ οἶδα, ἔφη, ὅτι ἐπειδὴν ὑμᾶς ἴδωσιν,
ἄσμενοι συνδραμοῦνται. αὕτη μὲν ἡ ἡμέρα οὕτως
ἔληξεν.
- 7 Τῇ δ' ὑστεραία ἄγουσιν ἐπὶ τὸ στράτευμα τοὺς
Λάκωνας Σεύθης τε καὶ Ἡρακλείδης, καὶ συλ-
λέγεται ἡ στρατιά. τῷ δὲ Λάκωνε ἐλεγέτην ὅτι
Λακεδαιμονίοις δοκεῖ πολεμεῖν Τισσαφέρνει τῷ
ὑμᾶς ἀδικήσαντι· ἦν οὖν ἴητε σὺν ἡμῖν, τόν τε
ἐχθρόν τιμωρήσεσθε καὶ δαρεικὸν ἕκαστος οἴσει
τοῦ μηνὸς ὑμῶν, λοχαγὸς δὲ τὸ διπλοῦν, στρα-
8 τηγὸς δὲ τὸ τετραπλοῦν. καὶ οἱ στρατιῶται
ἄσμενοί τε ἤκουσαν καὶ εὐθὺς ἀνίσταταιί τις τῶν
Ἀρκάδων τοῦ Ξενοφῶντος κατηγορήσων. παρῆν
δὲ καὶ Σεύθης βουλόμενος εἰδέναι τίπραχθήσεται,
9 καὶ ἐν ἐπηκόῳ εἰστήκει ἔχων ἑρμηνέα· ξυνίει δὲ
καὶ αὐτὸς ἑλληνιστὶ τὰ πλείεστα. ἔνθα δὲ λέγει
ὁ Ἀρκάς· Ἄλλ' ἡμεῖς μὲν, ὦ Λακεδαιμόνιοι, καὶ
πάλαι ἂν ἤμεν παρ' ὑμῖν, εἰ μὴ Ξενοφῶν ἡμᾶς
δεῦρο πείσας ἀπήγαγεν, ἔνθα δὲ ἡμεῖς μὲν τὸν
δεινὸν χειμῶνα στρατευόμενοι καὶ νύκτα καὶ
578

of the soldiers, and on that account things went the worse for him. And they said: "He plays the demagogue, you mean, with the men?" "Exactly that," said Heracleides. "Well," said they, "he won't go so far, will he, as to oppose us in the matter of taking away the army?" "Why," said Heracleides, "if you gather the men together and promise them their pay, they will hurry after you, paying scant heed to him." "How, then," they said, "could we get them together?" "To-morrow morning," Heracleides replied, "we will take you to them; and I know," he continued, "that as soon as they catch sight of you, they will hurry together with all eagerness." So ended this day.

The next day Seuthes and Heracleides conducted the Laconians to the army, and the troops gathered together. And the two Laconians said: "The Lacedaemonians have resolved to make war upon Tissaphernes, the man who wronged you; so if you will come with us, you will punish your enemy and, besides, each one of you will receive a daric a month, each captain twofold, and each general fourfold." The soldiers were delighted to hear these words, and straightway one of the Arcadians got up to accuse Xenophon. Now Seuthes also was present, for he wanted to know what would be done, and was standing within hearing distance along with an interpreter, although he could really understand for himself most of what was said in Greek. Thereupon this Arcadian said: "For our part, Lacedaemonians, we should have been with you a long time ago if Xenophon had not talked us over and led us off to this region, where we have never ceased campaigning, by night or day,

- ἡμέραν οὐδὲν πεπαύμεθα· ὁ δὲ τοὺς ἡμετέρους
 πόνους ἔχει· καὶ Σεύθης ἐκείνον μὲν ἰδίᾳ πε-
 10 πλοῦτικεν, ἡμᾶς δὲ ἀποστερεῖ τὸν μισθόν· ὥστε
 ἐγὼ μὲν εἰ τοῦτον ἴδοιμι καταλευσθέντα καὶ δόν-
 τα δίκην ὧν ἡμᾶς περιεῖλκε, καὶ τὸν μισθὸν ἄν
 μοι δοκῶ ἔχειν καὶ οὐδὲν ἐπὶ τοῖς πεπονημένοις
 ἄχθεσθαι. μετὰ τοῦτον ἄλλος ἀνέστη ὁμοίως
 καὶ ἄλλος. ἐκ δὲ τούτου Ξενοφῶν ἔλεξεν ὧδε.
 11 Ἄλλὰ πάντα μὲν ἄρα ἄνθρωπον ὄντα προσ-
 δοκᾶν δεῖ, ὅποτε γε καὶ ἐγὼ νῦν ὑφ' ὑμῶν αἰτίας
 ἔχω ἐν ᾧ πλείστην προθυμίαν ἐμαυτῷ γε δοκῶ
 συνειδέναι περὶ ὑμᾶς παρεσχημένος. ἀπετρα-
 πόμην μὲν γε ἤδη οἴκαδε ὠρμημένος, οὐ μὰ τὸν
 Δία οὔτοι πυνθανόμενος ὑμᾶς εὖ πράττειν, ἀλλὰ
 μᾶλλον ἀκούων ἐν ἀπόροις εἶναι, ὡς ὠφελήσω
 12 εἴ τι δυναίμην. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦλθον, Σεύθου τουτουὶ
 πολλοὺς ἀγγέλους πρὸς ἐμὲ πέμποντος καὶ πολ-
 λά ὑπισχνουμένου μοι, εἰ πείσαιμι ὑμᾶς πρὸς
 αὐτὸν ἐλθεῖν, τοῦτο μὲν οὐκ ἐπεχείρησα ποιεῖν,
 ὡς αὐτοὶ ὑμεῖς ἐπίστασθε. ἦγον δὲ ὅθεν ῥόμην
 τάχιστ' ἂν ὑμᾶς εἰς τὴν Ἀσίαν διαβῆναι. ταῦτα
 γὰρ καὶ βέλτιστα ἐνόμιζον ὑμῖν εἶναι καὶ ὑμᾶς
 13 ἦδειν βουλομένους. ἐπεὶ δ' Ἀρίσταρχος ἐλθὼν
 σὺν τριήρεσιν ἐκώλυε διαπλεῖν ἡμᾶς, ἐκ τούτου,
 ὅπερ εἰκὸς δήπου ἦν, συνέλεξα ὑμᾶς, ὅπως βου-
 14 λευσαίμεθα ὅ τι χρὴ ποιεῖν. οὐκοῦν ὑμεῖς ἀκού-
 οντες μὲν Ἀριστάρχου ἐπιτάττοντος ὑμῖν εἰς
 Χερρόνησον πορεύεσθαι, ἀκούοντες δὲ Σεύθου
 πείθοντος ἑαυτῷ συστρατεύεσθαι, πάντες μὲν ἐλέ-

through an awful winter, while he gets the fruits of our toils; for Seuthes has enriched him personally while he defrauds us of our pay; so for myself, if I could see this fellow stoned to death as punishment for having dragged us about as he has done, I should consider that I had my pay and should feel no anger over the toils I have endured." After this speaker another arose and talked in the same way, and then another. After that Xenophon spoke as follows:

"Well, it is true, after all, that a human being must expect anything and everything, seeing that I now find myself blamed by you in a matter where I am conscious—at least, in my own opinion—of having shown the utmost zeal in your behalf. I turned back after I had already set out for home, not—Heaven knows it was not—because I learned that you were prospering, but rather because I heard that you were in difficulties; and I turned back to help you in any way I could. When I had arrived, although Seuthes here sent many messengers to me and made me many promises if only I would persuade you to come to him, I did not try to do that, as you know for yourselves. Instead, I led you to a place from which I thought you could most speedily cross over to Asia; for I believed that this course was the best one for you and I knew it was the one you desired. But when Aristarchus came with his triremes and prevented our sailing across, at that moment—and surely it was exactly the proper step—I gathered you together so that we might consider what we should better do. So you with your own ears heard Aristarchus direct you to march to the Chersonese and you heard Seuthes urge you to take the field with him, and then every man of you spoke

- γατε σὺν Σεύθῃ ἰέναι, πάντες δ' ἐψηφίσασθε ταῦτα.
 τί οὖν ἐγὼ ἐνταῦθα ἠδίκησα ἀγαγὼν ὑμᾶς ἔνθα
 15 πᾶσιν ὑμῖν ἐδόκει; ἐπεὶ γε μὴν ψεύδεσθαι ἤρξατο
 Σεύθης περὶ τοῦ μισθοῦ, εἰ μὲν ἐπαινώ αὐτόν,
 δικαίως ἂν με καὶ αἰτιῶσθε καὶ μισοῖτε· εἰ δὲ
 πρόσθεν αὐτῷ πάντων μάλιστα φίλος ὢν νῦν
 πάντων διαφορώτατός εἰμι, πῶς ἂν ἔτι δικαίως
 ὑμᾶς αἰρούμενος ἀντὶ Σεύθου ὑφ' ὑμῶν αἰτίαν
 ἔχοιμι περὶ ὧν πρὸς τοῦτον διαφέρομαι;
 16 Ἄλλ' εἶποιτ' ἂν ὅτι ἕξεστι καὶ τὰ ὑμέτερα
 ἔχοντα παρὰ Σεύθου τεχνάζειν. οὐκοῦν δῆλον
 τοῦτό γέ ἐστιν, εἴπερ ἐμοὶ ἐτέλει τι Σεύθης, οὐχ
 οὕτως ἐτέλει δήπου ὡς ὧν τε ἐμοὶ δοίη στέροιτο
 καὶ ἄλλα ὑμῖν ἀποτείσειεν, ἀλλ' οἶμαι, εἰ ἐδίδου,
 ἐπὶ τούτῳ δὴ¹ ἐδίδου ὅπως ἐμοὶ δοῦς μείον μὴ ἀπο-
 17 δοίη ὑμῖν τὸ πλεόν. εἰ τοίνυν οὕτως ἔχειν οἴεσθε,
 ἕξεστιν ὑμῖν ἀντίκα μάλα ματαίαν ταύτην τὴν
 πρᾶξιν ἀμφοτέροις ἡμῖν ποιῆσαι, εἴαν πράττητε
 αὐτὸν τὰ χρήματα. δῆλον γὰρ ὅτι Σεύθης, εἰ
 ἔχω τι παρ' αὐτοῦ, ἀπαιτήσει με, καὶ ἀπαιτήσει
 μέντοι δικαίως, εἴαν μὴ βεβαιῶ τὴν πρᾶξιν αὐτῷ
 18 ἐφ' ἣ ἐδωροδόκουν. ἀλλὰ πολλοῦ μοι δοκῶ δεῖν
 τὰ ὑμέτερα ἔχειν· ὁμνύω γὰρ ὑμῖν θεοὺς ἅπαντας

¹ δὴ Gem., following Cobet: ἂν MSS., Mar.

¹ i. e. by pretending to side with you against Seuthes.

in favour of going with Seuthes and every man of you voted to do so. What wrong, therefore, did I do in that matter, when I led you to the place where you had all decided to go? I come now to the time when Seuthes began to play false with you in the matter of your pay: if I am his supporter in that, it would be just for you to blame me and hate me; but if the truth is that I, who before that was the most friendly to him of us all, am now most of all at variance with him, how can it be just in this case that, when I sided with you rather than with Seuthes, I should be blamed by you about the things in which I am at variance with him?

“But it is possible, you might say, that I really have received from Seuthes the money that belongs to you, and am only tricking you.¹ Then this at least is clear: if Seuthes was in fact paying anything to me, he surely was not paying it with the understanding that he was both to lose whatever he gave me and at the same time was to pay other sums to you, but rather, I presume, if he was giving me anything, he was giving it with this understanding, that by giving a smaller sum to me he was to escape paying over the larger to you. Now if you imagine that this is the case, it is within your power upon the instant to make this transaction a vain one for us both by exacting your money from him. For it is clear that, if I have received anything from Seuthes, he will demand it back from me, and, moreover, he will demand it back with justice if I am failing to fulfil to him the undertaking for which I was accepting his gifts. But it is far from being true, in my opinion, that I have received what belongs to you; for I swear to you by all the gods

καὶ πάσας μὴδ' ἂ ἐμοὶ ἰδίᾳ ὑπέσχετο Σεύθης ἔχειν· πάρεστι δὲ καὶ αὐτὸς καὶ ἀκούων σύνοιδὲ
 19 μοι εἰ ἐπιορκῶ· ἵνα δὲ μᾶλλον θαυμάσητε, συν-
 επόμνυμι μὴδὲ ἂ οἱ ἄλλοι στρατηγοὶ ἔλαβον
 εἰληφέναι, μὴ τοίνυν μὴδὲ ὅσα τῶν λοχαγῶν
 ἔνιοι.

20 Καὶ τί δὴ ταῦτ' ἐποιοῦν; ὄμνην, ἄνδρες, ὅσφ
 μᾶλλον συμφέροίμι τούτφ τὴν τότε πενίαν, το-
 σοῦτφ μᾶλλον αὐτὸν φίλον ποιήσεσθαι, ὅποτε
 δυνασθείη. ἐγὼ δὲ ἅμα τε αὐτὸν ὀρώ εὖ πρᾶτ-
 21 τοντα καὶ γιγνώσκω δὴ αὐτοῦ τὴν γνώμην. εἴποι
 δὴ τις ἄν, οὐκουν αἰσχύνῃ οὕτω μῶρως ἐξαπατώ-
 μενος; ναὶ μὰ Δία ἤσχυρόμην μέντ' ἂν, εἰ ὑπὸ
 πολεμίου γε ὄντος ἐξηπατήθην· φίλω δὲ ὄντι
 ἐξαπατᾶν αἰσχίον μοι δοκεῖ εἶναι ἢ ἐξαπατᾶσθαι.
 22 ἐπεὶ εἴ γε πρὸς φίλους ἐστὶ φυλακὴ, πᾶσαν οἶδα
 ἡμᾶς φυλαξαμένους ὡς μὴ παρασχεῖν τούτφ πρό-
 φασιν δικαίαν μὴ ἀποδιδόναι ἡμῖν ἂ ὑπέσχετο·
 οὔτε γὰρ ἠδικήσαμεν τοῦτον οὐδὲν οὔτε κατεβλα-
 κεύσαμεν τὰ τούτου οὐδὲ μὴν κατεδειλιάσαμεν
 οὐδὲν ἐφ' ὃ τι ἡμᾶς οὗτος παρεκάλεσεν.

23 Ἄλλά, φαίητε ἄν, ἔδει τὰ ἐνέχυρα τότε λαβεῖν,
 ὡς μὴδ' εἰ ἐβούλετο ἐδύνατο ἐξαπατᾶν. πρὸς
 ταῦτα δὴ ἀκούσατε ἂ ἐγὼ οὐκ ἄν ποτε εἶπον
 τούτου ἐναντίον, εἰ μὴ μοι παντάπασιν ἀγνώ-
 24 ἀναμνήσθητε γὰρ ἐν ποίοις τισὶ πράγμασιν ὄντες

and goddesses that I have not even received what Seuthes promised to me for my own services; he is present here himself, and as he listens he knows as well as I do whether I am swearing falsely; furthermore, to make your wonder the greater, I swear besides that I have not even received what the other generals have received—nay, not even so much as some of the captains.

“And why, then, did I follow this course? I supposed, soldiers, that the more I helped this man to bear the poverty in which he then was, the more I should make him my friend when he should have gained power. But in fact I no sooner see him enjoying prosperity than I recognize his true character. One might say, ‘Are you not ashamed of being so stupidly deceived?’ I certainly should be ashamed, by Zeus, if I had been deceived by one who was an enemy; but for one who is a friend, to deceive seems to me more shameful than to be deceived. For if there is such a thing as precaution toward friends, I know that we took every precaution not to afford this man a just pretext for not paying us what he had promised; for we neither did this man any wrong, nor did we mismanage his affairs, nor yet did we shrink like cowards from any service to which he summoned us.

“But, you might say, sureties ought to have been taken at the time, so that he could not have deceived us even if he had wanted to do so. In reply to that, listen to words which I never should have spoken in this man’s presence if you had not seemed to me utterly senseless—or at least exceedingly thankless toward me. Recollect in what sort of troubles you then found yourselves, troubles out of which I delivered

- ἐτυγχάνετε, ἐξ ὧν ὑμᾶς ἐγὼ ἀνήγαγον πρὸς
 Σεύθην. οὐκ εἰς μὲν Πέρινθον προσήτε,¹ Ἀρί-
 σταρχος δ' ὑμᾶς ὁ Λακεδαιμόνιος οὐκ εἶα εἰσιέναι
 ἀποκλείσας τὰς πύλας; ὑπαίθριοι δ' ἔξω ἐστρα-
 τοπεδεύετε, μέσος δὲ χειμῶν ἦν, ἀγορᾶ δὲ ἐχρήσθε
 σπάνια μὲν ὀρώντες τὰ ὄνια, σπάνια δ' ἔχοντες
 25 ὅτων ἀνήσεσθε· ἀνάγκη δὲ ἦν μένειν ἐπὶ Θράκης,
 τριήρεις γὰρ ἐφορμοῦσαι ἐκώλυον διαπλεῖν· εἰ
 δὲ μένοι τις, ἐν πολεμίᾳ εἶναι, ἔνθα πολλοὶ μὲν
 26 ἰππεῖς ἦσαν ἐναντίοι, πολλοὶ δὲ πελτασταί, ἡμῖν
 δὲ ὀπλιτικὸν μὲν ἦν ὃ ἀθρόοι μὲν ἴοντες ἐπὶ τὰς
 κώμας ἴσως ἂν ἐδυνάμεθα σίτου λαμβάνειν οὐδέν
 τι ἄφθονον, ὅτῳ δὲ διώκοντες ἂν ἢ ἀνδράποδα ἢ
 πρόβατα κατελαμβάνομεν οὐκ ἦν ἡμῖν· οὔτε γὰρ
 ἰππικὸν οὔτε πελταστικὸν ἔτι ἐγὼ συνεστηκὸς
 κατέλαβον παρ' ὑμῖν.
 27 Εἰ οὖν ἐν τοιαύτῃ ἀνάγκῃ ὄντων ὑμῶν μηδ'
 ὄντιναοῦν μισθὸν προσαιτήσας Σεύθην σύμμαχον
 ὑμῖν προσέλαβον, ἔχοντα καὶ ἰππέας καὶ πελτα-
 σταὺς ὧν ὑμεῖς προσεδείσθε, ἢ κακῶς ἂν ἐδόκουν
 28 ὑμῖν βεβουλευθῆναι πρὸ ὑμῶν; τούτων γὰρ δήπου
 κοινωνήσαντες καὶ σίτου ἀφθονώτερον ἐν ταῖς κώ-
 μαῖς ἠύρισκετε διὰ τὸ ἀναγκάζεσθαι τοὺς Θράκας
 29 κατὰ σπουδὴν μᾶλλον φεύγειν, καὶ προβάτων
 καὶ ἀνδραπόδων μᾶλλον μετέσχετε. καὶ πολέ-
 μιον οὐκέτι οὐδένα ἐωρῶμεν ἐπειδὴ τὸ ἰππικὸν ἡμῖν

¹ After προσήτε the MSS. have πόλις, which Mar. brackets: Gem. retains the word, but prefixes τῆν.

¹ *i. e.* upon his return to the army. Divisions of cavalry and peltasts had existed during the retreat, and it would seem from the present passage that they were not broken up till after Xenophon set sail for Greece (ii. 5, 8).

you when I brought you to Seuthes. Did you not go to Perinthus, and did not Aristarchus the Lacedaemonian forbid your entering and shut the gates against you? So you encamped outside, under the sky, though it was midwinter, and you got your provisions by purchase at a market, though scanty were the supplies you saw offered for sale and scanty the means you had with which to buy; yet you were compelled to remain upon the Thracian coast, for over against you lay triremes that prevented your crossing to Asia; and remaining there, you were of necessity in a hostile country, where there were many horsemen opposed to you and many peltasts; as for ourselves, we had a force of hoplites to be sure, with which, in case we went in a body against the villages, we might perhaps have been able to obtain food, though by no means an abundant supply, but any force with which we could have pursued and captured either slaves or cattle we had not; for I had found¹ no division either of cavalry or of peltasts in existence any longer among you.

“Now when you were in such straits, if I had obtained for you, without demanding into the bargain any pay whatsoever, simply an alliance with Seuthes, who possessed both the cavalry and the peltasts that you were in need of, would you have thought that I had carried through a bad plan on your behalf? For you remember, I imagine, that when you had joined forces with these troops, you not only found food in greater abundance in the villages, for the reason that the Thracians were compelled to flee in greater haste, but you also got a larger share of cattle and captives. In fact, we never saw the face of an enemy again after the cavalry had joined

- προσεγένετο· τέως δὲ θαρραλέως ἡμῖν ἐφείποντο οἱ πολέμιοι καὶ ἰππικῶ καὶ πελταστικῶ κωλύοντες μηδαμῆ κατ' ὀλίγους ἀποσκεδαννυμένους
- 30 τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἀφθονώτερα ἡμᾶς πορίζεσθαι. εἰ δὲ δὴ ὁ συμπαρέχων ὑμῖν ταύτην τὴν ἀσφάλειαν μὴ πάνυ πολλὸν μισθὸν προσετέλει τῆς ἀσφαλείας, τοῦτο δὴ τι σχέτλιον πάθημα καὶ διὰ τοῦτο οὐδαμῆ οἴεσθε χρῆναι ζῶντα ἐμὲ ἀνεῖναι;
- 31 Νῦν δὲ δὴ πῶς ἀπέρχεσθε; οὐ διαχειμάσαντες μὲν ἐν ἀφθόνοις τοῖς ἐπιτηδείοις, περιττὸν δ' ἔχοντες τοῦτο εἴ τι ἐλάβετε παρὰ Σεύθου; τὰ γὰρ τῶν πολεμίων ἐδαπανᾶτε. καὶ ταῦτα πράττοντες οὔτε ἄνδρας ἐπέιδετε ὑμῶν αὐτῶν ἀποθανόντας
- 32 οὔτε ζῶντας ἀπεβάλετε. εἰ δέ τι καλὸν πρὸς τοὺς ἐν τῇ Ἀσίᾳ βαρβάρους ἐπέπρακτο ὑμῖν, οὐ καὶ ἐκεῖνο σῶον ἔχετε καὶ πρὸς ἐκείνοις νῦν ἄλλην εὐκλειαν προσειλήφατε καὶ τοὺς ἐν τῇ Εὐρώπῃ Θρᾶκας ἐφ' οὓς ἐστρατεύσασθε κρατήσαντες; ἐγὼ μὲν ὑμᾶς φημι δικαίως ἂν ὦν ἐμοὶ χαλεπαίνετε τούτων τοῖς θεοῖς χάριν εἰδέναι ὡς ἀγαθῶν.
- 33 Καὶ τὰ μὲν δὴ ὑμέτερα τοιαῦτα. ἄγετε δὴ πρὸς θεῶν καὶ τὰ ἐμὰ σκέψασθε ὡς ἔχει. ἐγὼ γὰρ ὅτε μὲν πρότερον ἀπῆα οἴκαδε, ἔχων μὲν ἔπαινον πολλὸν πρὸς ὑμῶν ἀπεπορευόμεν, ἔχων δὲ δι' ὑμᾶς καὶ ὑπὸ τῶν ἄλλων Ἑλλήνων εὐκλειαν. ἐπιστευόμεν δὲ ὑπὸ Λακεδαιμονίων· οὐ γὰρ ἂν με ἔπειμπον

us, whereas up to that time the enemy had been following boldly at our heels with horsemen and peltasts and had prevented us from scattering in any direction in small parties and thus securing a greater abundance of provisions. And if, then, the man who aided in providing you this security did not give you, besides, very generous pay for your security, is that such a dreadful misfortune? and do you think that on that account you cannot possibly let me go alive?

“As matters stand now, what is your situation in departing from here? Have you not passed the winter amid an abundance of provisions, and, whatever you have received from Seuthes, is it not really so much clear gain? For it was the enemy's possessions that you have been consuming. And while enjoying such fortune, you have not had to see any of your number slain nor have you lost any men alive. And if any glorious deed was earlier performed by you against the barbarians in Asia, have you not at the same time kept that secure and likewise gained other glory besides in the present, by vanquishing, in addition, the Thracians in Europe against whom you took the field? For my part, I assert that for the very acts on account of which you now feel angry toward me, you should, in all justice, feel grateful to the gods, counting them as blessings.

“So much, then, for your situation. And now, in the name of the gods, come, and consider how the case stands with me. At the time when I first set out to return home, I possessed, as I departed, abundant praise in your eyes, and I also possessed, through you, fair fame in the eyes of the Greeks at large. And I was trusted by the Lacedaemonians, for otherwise they would not have sent me back to you again.

- 34 *πάλιν πρὸς ὑμᾶς. νῦν δὲ ἀπέρχομαι πρὸς μὲν Λακεδαιμονίους ὑφ' ὑμῶν διαβεβλημένος, Σεύθη δὲ ἀπηχθήμενος ὑπὲρ ὑμῶν, ὃν ἤλπιζον εὖ ποιήσας μεθ' ὑμῶν ἀποστροφὴν καὶ ἐμοὶ καλὴν καὶ παισίν,*
- 35 *εἰ γένοιτο, καταθήσεται. ὑμεῖς δ', ὑπὲρ ὧν ἐγὼ ἀπήχθημαί τε πλείστα καὶ ταῦτα πολὺ κρείττοσιν ἐμαντοῦ, πραγματευόμενός τε οὐδὲ νῦν ποπέπαυμαι ὅ τι δύναμαι ἀγαθὸν ὑμῖν, τοιαύτην ἔχετε γνώμην περὶ ἐμοῦ.*
- 36 *'Ἄλλ' ἔχετε μὲν με οὔτε φεύγοντα λαβόντες οὔτε ἀποδιδράσκοντα· ἦν δὲ ποιήσητε ἃ λέγετε, ἴστε ὅτι ἄνδρα κατακεκονότες ἔσεσθε πολλὰ μὲν δὴ πρὸ ὑμῶν ἀγρυπνήσαντα, πολλὰ δὲ σὺν ὑμῖν πονήσαντα καὶ κινδυνεύσαντα καὶ ἐν τῷ μέρει καὶ παρὰ τὸ μέρος, θεῶν δ' ἴλεων ὄντων καὶ τρόπαια βαρβάρων πολλὰ δὴ σὺν ὑμῖν στησάμενον, ὅπως δέ γε μηδενὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων πολέμοιοι γένοισθε, πᾶν ὅσον ἐγὼ ἐδυνάμην πρὸς ὑμᾶς διατεινόμενον.*
- 37 *καὶ γὰρ νῦν ὑμῖν ἔξεστιν ἀνεπιλήπτως πορεύεσθαι ὅπῃ ἂν ἔλησθε καὶ κατὰ γῆν καὶ κατὰ θάλατταν. ὑμεῖς δέ, ὅτε πολλὴ ὑμῖν εὐπορία φαίνεται, καὶ πλείτε ἔνθα δὴ ἐπεθυμεῖτε πάλαι, δέονταί τε ὑμῶν οἱ μέγιστον δυνάμενοι, μισθὸς δὲ φαίνεται, ἡγεμόνες δὲ ἤκουσι Λακεδαιμόνιοι οἱ κράτιστοι νομιζόμενοι εἶναι, νῦν δὲ καιρὸς ὑμῖν δοκεῖ εἶναι*
- 38 *ὡς τάχιστα ἐμὲ κατακτείνειν; οὐ μὴν ὅτε γε ἐν*

Now, on the other hand, I am going away traduced by you before the Lacedaemonians and hated on your account by Seuthes, the man through whom I hoped to secure, by rendering him good service with your help, a fair place of refuge for myself and my children, in case children should ever be born to me. And you, for whose sake I have incurred most hatred, and the hatred of men far stronger than I am, for whose sake I have not even to this moment ceased striving to accomplish whatever good I may, hold such an opinion of me as this!

“You hold me in your power, then, and not as a captive that you have taken in flight or as a runaway slave; and if you do what you are proposing, be sure that you will have slain a man who has passed many sleepless nights for your sake, who has endured many toils and dangers with you, both in his turn and out of his turn, who has also, by the graciousness of the gods, set up with you many trophies of victory over the barbarians, and who, in order to prevent your becoming enemies to any one among the Greeks, has exerted himself to the very utmost of his power in opposition to you. In fact, you are now free to journey in security whithersoever you may choose, whether by land or by sea. And you, at the moment when such abundant freedom reveals itself to you, when you are sailing to the very place where you have long been eager to go and the mightiest are suing for your aid, when pay is within sight and the Lacedaemonians, who are deemed the most powerful leaders, have come to lead you—do you, I say, think that now is the proper time to put me to death with all speed? It was not so, surely, in the days when

τοῖς ἀπόροις ἡμεν, ὧ πάντων μνημονικώτατοι, ἀλλὰ καὶ πατέρα ἐμὲ ἐκαλεῖτε καὶ αἰεὶ ὡς εὐεργέτου μεμνήσθαι ὑπισχνείσθε. οὐ μέντοι ἀγνώμονες οὐδὲ οὐτοὶ εἰσιν οἱ νῦν ἡκον ἐφ' ὑμᾶς· ὥστε, ὡς ἐγὼ οἶμαι, οὐδὲ τούτοις δοκεῖτε βελτίονες εἶναι τοιοῦτοι ὄντες περὶ ἐμέ. ταῦτ' εἰπὼν ἐπαύσατο.

- 39 Χαρμῖνος δὲ ὁ Λακεδαιμόνιος ἀναστὰς εἶπεν· Οὐ τὼ σιῶ, ἀλλ' ἐμοὶ μέντοι οὐ δικαίως δοκεῖτε τῷ ἀνδρὶ τούτῳ χαλεπαίνειν· ἔχω γὰρ καὶ αὐτὸς αὐτῷ μαρτυρῆσαι. Σεύθης γὰρ ἐρωτῶντος ἐμοῦ καὶ Πολυνίκου περὶ Ξενοφώντος τίς ἀνὴρ εἴη, ἄλλο μὲν οὐδὲν εἶχε μέμψασθαι, ἄγαν δὲ φιλοστρατιώτην ἔφη αὐτὸν εἶναι· διὸ καὶ χεῖρον αὐτῷ εἶναι πρὸς ἡμῶν τε τῶν Λακεδαιμονίων καὶ πρὸς
- 40 αὐτοῦ. ἀναστὰς ἐπὶ τούτῳ Εὐρύλοχος Λουσιάτης εἶπεν· Καὶ δοκεῖ γέ μοι, ἄνδρες Λακεδαιμόνιοι, τοῦτο ὑμᾶς πρῶτον ἡμῶν στρατηγήσαι, παρὰ Σεύθου ἡμῖν τὸν μισθὸν ἀναπρᾶξαι ἢ ἐκόντος ἢ ἄκοντος, καὶ μὴ πρότερον ἡμᾶς ἀπαγαγεῖν.
- 41 Πολυκράτης δὲ Ἀθηναῖος εἶπεν ἐνετὸς ὑπὸ Ξενοφώντος· Ὅρῳ γε μήν, ἔφη, ὧ ἄνδρες, καὶ Ἡρακλείδην ἐνταῦθα παρόντα, ὃς παραλαβὼν τὰ χρήματα ἃ ἡμεῖς ἐποιήσαμεν, ταῦτα ἀποδόμενος οὔτε Σεύθῃ ἀπέδωκεν οὔτε ἡμῖν τὰ γιγνόμενα, ἀλλ' αὐτὸς κλέψας πέπαται. ἦν οὖν σωφρονῶμεν, ἐξόμεθα αὐτοῦ· οὐ γὰρ δὴ οὗτός γε, ἔφη, Θραξὲς ἐστίν, ἀλλ' Ἕλληνας ὦν Ἕλληνας ἀδικεῖ.

we were in straits, O you who remember better than all other men; nay, then you called me 'father,' and you promised to keep me for ever in memory as a benefactor! Not by any means, however, are these men, who have now come after you, wanting in judgment; therefore, I imagine, they also think none the better of you for behaving in this manner towards me." With these words he ceased speaking.

Then Charminus the Lacedaemonian arose and said: "No, by the twin gods; I, at any rate, think you are unjust in being angry with this man; for I can bear witness for him myself. When I and Polynicus asked Seuthes about Xenophon, to learn what sort of a man he was, Seuthes had no fault to find with him save that, as he said, he was 'too great a friend of the soldiers,' and on that account, he added, things went the worse for him, both so far as we the Lacedaemonians were concerned and on his own account." After him Eurylochus of Lusi rose and said: "Yes, and I believe, men of Lacedaemon, that you ought to assume leadership over us in this enterprise first of all, in exacting our pay from Seuthes whether he will or no, and that you should not take us away till that is done." And Polycrates the Athenian said, at the instigation of Xenophon: "Look you, fellow soldiers, I see Heracleides also present here, the man who took in charge the property which we had won by our toil, and then sold it, and did not pay over the proceeds either to Seuthes or to us, but stole the money, and is keeping it for himself. If we are wise, therefore, we shall lay hold of him; for this fellow," said he, "is no Thracian, but a Greek, and yet he is wronging Greeks."

42 Ταῦτα ἀκούσας ὁ Ἡρακλείδης μάλα ἐξεπλήγη·
καὶ προσελθὼν τῷ Σεύθῃ λέγει· Ἡμεῖς ἦν σωφρο-
νῶμεν, ἄπιμεν ἐντεῦθεν ἐκ τῆς τούτων ἐπικρατείας.
καὶ ἀναβάντες ἐπὶ τοὺς ἵππους ᾗχοντο ἀπελαύ-
43 νοντες εἰς τὸ ἑαυτῶν στρατόπεδον. καὶ ἐντεῦθεν
Σεύθης πέμπει Ἀβροζέλμην τὸν ἑαυτοῦ ἑρμηνέα
πρὸς Ξενοφῶντα καὶ κελεύει αὐτὸν καταμεῖναι παρ'
ἑαυτῷ ἔχοντα χιλίους ὀπλίτας, καὶ ὑπισχνεῖται
αὐτῷ ἀποδώσειν τὰ τε χωρία τὰ ἐπὶ θαλάττῃ καὶ
τὰ ἄλλα ἃ ὑπέσχετο. καὶ ἐν ἀπορρήτῳ ποιησά-
μενος λέγει ὅτι ἀκήκοε Πολυνίκου ὡς εἰ ὑποχεί-
ριος ἔσται Λακεδαιμονίοις, σαφῶς ἀποθανοῖτο
44 ὑπὸ Θίβρωνος. ἐπέστελλον δὲ ταῦτα καὶ ἄλλοι
πολλοὶ τῷ Ξενοφῶντι ὡς διαβεβλημένος εἶη καὶ
φυλάττεσθαι δέοι. ὁ δὲ ἀκούων ταῦτα δύο ἱερεῖα
λαβὼν ἐθύετο τῷ Διὶ τῷ βασιλεῖ πρότερά οἱ λῶνον
καὶ ἄμεινον εἶη μένειν παρὰ Σεύθῃ ἐφ' οἷς Σεύθης
λέγει ἢ ἀπιέναι σὺν τῷ στρατεύματι. ἀναιρεῖ
αὐτῷ ἀπιέναι.

VII. Ἐντεῦθεν Σεύθης μὲν ἀπεστρατοπεδεύ-
σατο προσωτέρω· οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες ἐσκήνησαν εἰς
κώμας ὅθεν ἔμελλον πλείστα ἐπισιτισάμενοι ἐπὶ
θάλατταν ἦξειν. αἱ δὲ κώμαι αὗται ἦσαν δεδο-
2 μέναι ὑπὸ Σεύθου Μηδοσάδῃ. ὁρῶν οὖν ὁ Μηδο-
σάδης δαπανώμενα τὰ ἐν ταῖς κώμαις ὑπὸ τῶν
Ἑλλήνων χαλεπῶς ἔφερε· καὶ λαβὼν ἄνδρα
Ὀδρῦσην δυνατώτατον τῶν ἄνωθεν καταβεβη-
κότων καὶ ἱππέας ὅσον τριάκοντα ἔρχεται καὶ

¹ See iv. 21, v. 15.

Upon hearing these words Heracleides was exceedingly terrified; and going up to Seuthes, he said: "And if we are wise, we shall go away from here and get out of the power of these fellows." So they mounted their horses and went riding off to their own camp. And after that Seuthes sent Abrozelmes, his interpreter, to Xenophon and urged him to stay behind with him with a force of a thousand hoplites, promising that he would deliver over to him not only the fortresses upon the coast, but also the other things which he had promised. He likewise said, making a great secret of it, that he had heard from Polynicus that if Xenophon should fall into the hands of the Lacedaemonians, he would certainly be put to death by Thibron. Many other people also sent Xenophon this message, saying that he had been traduced and would better be on his guard. And he, hearing these reports, took two victims and proceeded to offer sacrifice to Zeus the King, to learn whether it was better and more profitable for him to remain with Seuthes on the conditions that Seuthes proposed, or to depart with the army. The god directed him to depart.

VII. After that Seuthes encamped at a greater distance away, while the Greeks took up quarters in villages from which they could secure provisions in greatest abundance before their journey to the coast. Now these villages had been given by Seuthes to Medosades. When, therefore, Medosades saw that the supplies in the villages were being used up by the Greeks, he was angry; and taking with him an Odrysian who was exceedingly powerful, from among those who had come down from the interior,¹ and likewise about thirty horsemen, he came and

προκαλείται Ξενοφῶντα ἐκ τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ στρα-
τεύματος. καὶ ὃς λαβῶν τινὰς τῶν λοχαγῶν καὶ
3 ἄλλους τῶν ἐπιτηδείων προσέρχεται. ἔνθα δὴ
λέγει Μηδοσάδης· Ἄδικεῖτε, ὦ Ξενοφῶν, τὰς ἡμε-
τέρας κώμας πορθοῦντες. προλέγομεν οὖν ὑμῖν,
ἐγὼ τε ὑπὲρ Σεύθου καὶ ὅδε ἀνὴρ παρὰ Μηδόκου
ἤκων τοῦ ἄνω βασιλέως, ἀπιέναι ἐκ τῆς χώρας·
εἰ δὲ μή, οὐκ ἐπιτρέψομεν ὑμῖν, ἀλλ' ἐὰν ποιῆτε
κακῶς τὴν ἡμετέραν χώραν, ὡς πολεμίους ἀλεξο-
μεθα.

4 Ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἀκούσας ταῦτα εἶπεν· Ἀλλὰ
σοὶ μὲν τοιαῦτα λέγοντι καὶ ἀποκρίνασθαι χαλε-
πόν· τούτου δ' ἕνεκα τοῦ νεανίσκου λέξω, ἵν' εἰδῆ
5 οἱοί τε ὑμεῖς ἐστε καὶ οἱοί ἡμεῖς. ἡμεῖς μὲν γάρ,
ἔφη, πρὶν ὑμῖν φίλοι γενέσθαι ἐπορευόμεθα διὰ
ταύτης τῆς χώρας ὅποι ἐβουλόμεθα, ἦν μὲν ἐθέλοι-
6 μεν πορθοῦντες, ἦν δὲ θέλομεν καίοντες, καὶ σὺ
ὅποτε πρὸς ἡμᾶς ἔλθοις πρεσβεύων, ἠυλίζου τότε
παρ' ἡμῖν οὐδένα φοβούμενος τῶν πολεμίων· ὑμεῖς
δὲ οὐκ ἦτε εἰς τήνδε τὴν χώραν, ἢ εἰ ποτε ἔλθοιτε,
ὡς ἐν κρειττόνων χώρα ἠυλίζεσθε ἐγκεχαλινωμέ-
7 νοις τοῖς ἵπποις. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἡμῖν φίλοι ἐγένεσθε
καὶ δι' ἡμᾶς σὺν θεοῖς ἔχετε τήνδε τὴν χώραν,
νῦν δὴ ἐξελαύνετε ἡμᾶς ἐκ τῆσδε τῆς χώρας ἦν
παρ' ἡμῶν ἐχόντων κατὰ κράτος παρελάβετε·
ὡς γὰρ αὐτὸς οἴσθα, οἱ πολέμιοι οὐχ ἱκανοὶ ἦσαν
8 ἡμᾶς ἐξελαύνειν. καὶ οὐχ ὅπως δῶρα δοῦς καὶ

summoned Xenophon forth from the Greek camp. So Xenophon took certain of the captains as well as others who were fit men for the purpose, and came to meet him. Then Medosades said: "You Greeks are committing a wrong, Xenophon, in plundering our villages. Therefore we give you public warning, I on behalf of Seuthes, and this man who has come from Medocus, who is king in the interior, to depart from the country; and if you fail to depart, we shall not leave you a free hand, but in case you continue to do harm to our territory, we shall defend ourselves against you as against enemies."

Upon hearing these words Xenophon said: "As for you, when you say such things as these it is painful even to give you an answer; yet for the sake of this young man I will speak, that he may know what sort of people you are and what we are. For we," he went on, "before we became friends of yours, marched whithersoever we chose through this country, plundering where we wished and burning where we wished, and whenever you came to us as envoy, you used then to bivouac with us without fear of any enemy; your people, on the other hand, never came into this country, or if at any time you did come, you would bivouac as in the land of men stronger than yourselves, keeping your horses all bridled. But after you had once become friends of ours and now through us, with the aid of the gods, enjoy possession of this land, you seek to drive us forth, out of this very land that you received from us, who held it by right of strength; for as you know yourself, the enemy were not able to drive us out. And yet, so far from deeming it proper to speed us on our way after bestowing gifts upon us

εὖ ποιήσας ἀνθ' ὧν εὖ ἔπαθες ἀξιοῖς ἡμᾶς ἀποπέμψασθαι, ἀλλ' ἀποπορευομένους ἡμᾶς οὐδ' ἐναυ-
 9 λισθῆναι ὅσον δύνασαι ἐπιτρέπεις. καὶ ταῦτα λέγων οὔτε θεοὺς αἰσχύνῃ οὔτε τόνδε τὸν ἄνδρα, ὃς νῦν μὲν σε ὀρᾷ πλουτοῦντα, πρὶν δὲ ἡμῖν φίλον γενέσθαι ἀπὸ ληστείας τὸν βίον ἔχοντα, ὡς αὐτὸς
 10 ἔφησθα. ἀτὰρ τί καὶ πρὸς ἐμὲ λέγεις ταῦτα; ἔφη· οὐ γὰρ ἔγωγ' ἔτι ἄρχω, ἀλλὰ Λακεδαιμόνιοι, οἷς ὑμεῖς παρεδώκατε τὸ στράτευμα ἀπαγαγεῖν οὐδὲν ἐμὲ παρακαλέσαντες, ὧ θαυμαστότατοι, ὅπως ὥσπερ ἀπηχθανόμην αὐτοῖς ὅτε πρὸς ὑμᾶς ἦγον, οὕτω καὶ χαρισαίμην νῦν ἀποδιδούς.
 11 Ἐπεὶ ταῦτα ἤκουσεν ὁ Ὀδρύσης, εἶπεν· Ἐγὼ μὲν, ὧ Μηδόσαδες, κατὰ τῆς γῆς καταδύομαι ὑπὸ τῆς αἰσχύνῃς ἀκούων ταῦτα. καὶ εἰ μὲν πρόσθεν ἠπιστάμην, οὐδ' ἂν συνηκολούθησά σοι· καὶ νῦν ἄπειμι. οὐδὲ γὰρ ἂν Μηδοκός με ὁ βασιλεὺς
 12 ἐπαινοίη, εἰ ἐξελεύνοίμι τοὺς εὐεργέτας. ταῦτ' εἰπὼν ἀναβὰς ἐπὶ τὸν ἵππον ἀπήλαυσε καὶ σὺν αὐτῷ οἱ ἄλλοι ἵππεῖς πλὴν τεττάρων ἢ πέντε. ὁ δὲ Μηδοσάδης, ἐλύπει γὰρ αὐτὸν ἢ χώρα πορθομένη, ἐκέλευε τὸν Ξενοφῶντα καλέσαι τῷ Λακε-
 13 δαιμονίῳ. καὶ ὃς λαβὼν τοὺς ἐπιτηδειοτάτους προσῆλθε τῷ Χαρμίνῳ καὶ Πολυνίκῳ καὶ ἔλεγεν ὅτι καλεῖ αὐτοὺς Μηδοσάδης προερῶν ἄπερ αὐτῷ,
 14 ἀπιέναι ἐκ τῆς χώρας. οἶομαι ἂν οὖν, ἔφη, ὑμᾶς

and doing us kindnesses in return for the benefits you have received at our hands, you will not, so far as you have the power to prevent it, allow us at the moment of our departure even to bivouac in the country. And in uttering these words you are not ashamed either before the gods or before this Odrysian, who now sees you possessed of riches, whereas before you became our friend you got your living, as you said yourself, from pillaging. But really, why do you," he added, "address these words to me? For I am no longer in command, but rather the Lacedaemonians; and it was to them that you yourselves delivered over the army to be led away, and that, you most ill-mannered of men, without so much as inviting me to be present, so that even as I had incurred their hatred at the time when I led the army to you, so I might now win their favour by giving it back."

When the Odrysian heard this, he said: "As for me, Medosades, I sink beneath the earth for shame at this which I hear. If I had understood the matter before, I should not even have accompanied you; and now I am going back. For Medocus, the king, would never commend me if I should drive forth his benefactors." With these words he mounted his horse and rode away, and with him went the horsemen also, except four or five. But Medosades, still distressed by the plundering of the country, urged Xenophon to summon the two Lacedaemonians. And Xenophon, taking with him the best men he had, went to Charminus and Polynicus and said that Medosades was summoning them in order to give them the same warning as he had already given him,—to depart from the country. "I

ἀπολαβεῖν τῇ στρατιᾷ τὸν ὀφειλόμενον μισθόν, εἰ εἶποιτε ὅτι δεδέηται ὑμῶν ἢ στρατιὰ συναναπράξαι τὸν μισθὸν ἢ παρ' ἐκόντος ἢ παρ' ἄκοντος Σεύθου, καὶ ὅτι τούτων τυχόντες προθύμως ἀνσυνέπεσθαι ὑμῖν φασί· καὶ ὅτι δίκαια ὑμῖν δοκοῦσι λέγειν· καὶ ὅτι ὑπέσχεσθε αὐτοῖς τότε ἀπιέναι ὅταν τὰ δίκαια ἔχωσιν οἱ στρατιῶται.

- 16 Ἀκούσαντες οἱ Λάκωνες ταῦτα ἔφασαν ἐρεῖν καὶ ἄλλα ὅποια ἀνδύνωνται κράτιστα· καὶ εὐθύς ἐπορεύοντο ἔχοντες πάντας τοὺς ἐπικαιρίους. ἐλθὼν δὲ ἔλεξε Χαρμῖνος· Εἰ μὲν σύ τι ἔχεις, ὦ Μηδόσαδες, πρὸς ἡμᾶς λέγειν, εἰ δὲ μή, ἡμεῖς πρὸς σὲ ἔχομεν. ὁ δὲ Μηδοσάδης μάλα δὴ ὑφειμένως· Ἄλλ' ἐγὼ μὲν λέγω, ἔφη, καὶ Σεύθης τὰ αὐτά, ὅτι ἀξιούμεν τοὺς φίλους ἡμῖν γεγενημένους μὴ κακῶς πάσχειν ὑφ' ὑμῶν. ὅ τι γὰρ ἀνδρῶν τούτων κακῶς ποιῆτε ἡμᾶς ἤδη ποιεῖτε· ἡμέτεροι γάρ
- 17 εἰσιν. Ἡμεῖς τοίνυν, ἔφασαν οἱ Λάκωνες, ἀπιόμεν ἀνδρῶν ὅποτε τὸν μισθὸν ἔχοιεν οἱ ταῦτα ὑμῖν καταπράξαντες· εἰ δὲ μή, ἐρχόμεθα μὲν καὶ νῦν βοηθήσοντες τούτοις καὶ τιμωρησόμενοι ἀνδρῶν οἱ τούτους παρὰ τοὺς ὄρκους ἠδίκησαν. ἦν δὲ δὴ καὶ ἡμεῖς τοιοῦτοι ἦτε, ἐνθένδε ἀρξόμεθα τὰ δίκαια
- 18 λαμβάνειν. ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν εἶπεν· Ἐθέλοιτε ἀνδρῶν τούτοις, ὦ Μηδόσαδες, ἐπιτρέψαι, ἐπειδὴ φίλους ἔφατε εἶναι ὑμῖν, ἐν ᾧ τῇ χώρᾳ ἐσμέν, ὅποτερ' ἀνδρῶν ψηφίσωνται, εἴθ' ὑμᾶς προσήκει¹ ἐκ τῆς χώρας

¹ προσήκει Gem., following Poppo; προσήκειν MSS., Mar.

should think, therefore," he continued, "that you might recover for the army the pay that is due if you should say that the army has requested you to aid them in exacting their pay from Seuthes whether he will or no, and that the troops say that they would follow you eagerly in case they should obtain it; also, that their words seem to you just, and that you promised them not to depart until the soldiers should obtain their rights."

When they had heard him, the Laconians replied that they would make such statements, adding others as forceful as they could make them; and straightway they set forth, taking with them all the important men of the army. Upon their arrival Charminus said: "If you have anything to say to us, Medosades, say it; if not, we have something to say to you." And Medosades replied, very submissively: "I say, and Seuthes also says the same, that we ask that those who have become friends of ours should not suffer harm at your hands; for whatever harm you may do to them, you are then and there doing to us; for they are ours." "As for ourselves, then," said the Laconians, "we shall depart whenever the men who obtained these possessions for you, have received their pay; failing that, we intend here and now to lend them our assistance and to punish the men who, in violation of their oaths, have done them wrong. And if you belong to that number, it is with you that we shall begin in obtaining their rights." Then Xenophon said: "Would you be willing, Medosades, to leave the question to these people (for you were saying that they are your friends) in whose country we are, to vote, one way or the other, whether it is proper for you or ourselves

- 19 ἀπιέναι εἴτε ἡμᾶς ; ὁ δὲ ταῦτα μὲν οὐκ ἔφη· ἐκέλευε δὲ μάλιστα μὲν αὐτῷ τῷ Λάκωνε ἐλθεῖν παρὰ Σεύθην περὶ τοῦ μισθοῦ, καὶ οἴεσθαι ἂν Σεύθην πείσαι· εἰ δὲ μὴ, Ξενοφῶντα σὺν αὐτῷ πέμπειν, καὶ συμπράξειν ὑπισχνεῖτο. ἐδεῖτο δὲ τὰς κώμας μὴ καίειν.
- 20 Ἐντεῦθεν πέμπουσι Ξενοφῶντα καὶ σὺν αὐτῷ οἳ ἐδόκουν ἐπιτηδειότατοι εἶναι. ὁ δὲ ἐλθὼν λέγει πρὸς τὸν Σεύθην· Οὐδὲν ἀπαιτήσων, ὦ
- 21 Σεύθη, πάρεμι, ἀλλὰ διδάξων, ἣν δύνωμαι, ὡς οὐ δικαίως μοι ἤχθέςθης ὅτι ὑπὲρ τῶν στρατιωτῶν ἀπήτουν σε προθύμως ἂ ὑπέσχου αὐτοῖς· σοὶ γὰρ ἔγωγε οὐχ ἤττον ἐνόμιζον σύμφορον εἶναι ἀπο-
- 22 δοῦναι ἢ ἐκείνοις ἀπολαβεῖν. πρῶτον μὲν γὰρ οἶδα μετὰ τοὺς θεοὺς εἰς τὸ φανερόν σε τούτους καταστήσαντας, ἐπεὶ γε βασιλέα σε ἐποίησαν πολλῆς χώρας καὶ πολλῶν ἀνθρώπων· ὥστε οὐχ οἶόν τέ σοι λαυθάνειν οὔτε ἦν τι καλὸν οὔτε ἦν τι
- 23 αἰσχρὸν ποιήσης. τοιούτῳ δὲ ὄντι ἀνδρὶ μέγα μὲν μοι ἐδόκει εἶναι μὴ δοκεῖν ἀχαρίστως ἀποπέμψασθαι ἀνδρας εὐεργέτας, μέγα δὲ εὖ ἀκούειν ὑπὸ ἑξακισχιλίων ἀνθρώπων, τὸ δὲ μέγιστον μηδαμῶς ἀπίστον σαυτὸν καταστήσαι ὃ τι λέγοις.
- 24 ὁρῶ γὰρ τῶν μὲν ἀπίστων ματαίους καὶ ἀδυνάτους καὶ ἀτίμους τοὺς λόγους πλανωμένους· οἳ δ' ἂν φανεροὶ ὦσιν ἀλήθειαν ἀσκοῦντες, τούτων οἱ λόγοι, ἦν τι δέωνται, οὐδὲν μείον δύνανται

¹ *cp.* the enumeration of the "Ten Thousand" in v. iii. 3, and see especially ii. 3-4 and 6.

to depart from their country?" Medosades said "No" to that; but he urged, as his preference, that the two Laconians should go to Seuthes themselves about the pay, and said that he thought they might persuade Seuthes; or if they would not consent to go, he asked them to send Xenophon along with himself, and promised to support him. And he begged them not to burn the villages.

Thereupon they sent Xenophon, and with him the men who seemed to be fittest. When he had come, he said to Seuthes: "I am here, Seuthes, not to present any demand, but to show you, if I can, that you were wrong in getting angry with me because in the name of the soldiers I zealously demanded from you what you had promised them; for I believed that it was no less to your advantage to pay them than it was to theirs to get their pay. For, in the first place, I know that next to the gods it was these men who set you in a conspicuous position, since they made you king over a large territory and many people; hence it is not possible for you to escape notice, whether you perform an honourable deed or a base one. Now it seemed to me an important thing that a man in such a place should not be thought to have dismissed benefactors without gratitude, an important thing also to be well spoken of by six thousand men,¹ but most important of all that you should by no means set yourself down as untrustworthy in whatever you say. For I see that the words of untrustworthy men wander here and there without result, without power, and without honour; but if men are seen to practise truth, their words, if they desire anything, have power to accomplish no less than force in the hands

ἀνύσασθαι ἢ ἄλλων ἢ βία· ἦν τέ τινες σωφρο-
νίζειν βούλωνται, γινώσκω τὰς τούτων ἀπειλὰς
οὐχ ἦττον σωφρονιζούσας ἢ ἄλλων τὸ ἤδη κο-
λάζειν· ἦν τέ τῷ τι ὑπισχνῶνται οἱ τοιοῦτοι
ἄνδρες, οὐδὲν μείον διαπράττονται ἢ ἄλλοι παρα-
χρῆμα διδόντες.

- 25 Ἄναμνήσθητι δὲ καὶ σὺ τί προτελέσας ἡμῖν
συμμάχους ἡμᾶς ἔλαβες· οἶσθ' ὅτι οὐδέν· ἀλλὰ
πιστεύεις ἀληθεύσειν ἃ ἔλεγες ἐπήρας τοσοῦτους
ἀνθρώπους συστρατεύεσθαι τε καὶ κατεργάσασθαι
σοι ἀρχὴν οὐ τριάκοντα μόνον ἀξίαν ταλάντων,
26 ὅσα οἴονται δεῖν οὗτοι νῦν ἀπολαβεῖν, ἀλλὰ
πολλαπλασίῳ. οὐκοῦν τοῦτο μὲν πρῶτον τὸ
πιστεῦεσθαι, τὸ καὶ τὴν βασιλείαν σοι κατεργα-
σάμενον, τούτων τῶν χρημάτων πιπράσκειται.
- 27 Ἴθι δὴ ἀναμνήσθητι πῶς μέγα ἡγοῦ τότε κατα-
πράξει ἃ νῦν καταστρεψάμενος ἔχεις· ἐγὼ μὲν
εὖ οἶδ' ὅτι ἠὔξω ἂν τὰ νῦν πεπραγμένα μᾶλλον
σοι καταπραχθῆναι ἢ πολλαπλάσια τούτων τῶν
28 χρημάτων γενέσθαι· ἐμοὶ τοίνυν μείζον βλάβος
καὶ αἰσχίον δοκεῖ εἶναι τὸ ταῦτα νῦν μὴ κατα-
σχεῖν ἢ τότε μὴ λαβεῖν, ὅσπερ χαλεπώτερον ἐκ
πλουσίου πένητα γενέσθαι ἢ ἀρχὴν μὴ πλου-
τῆσαι, καὶ ὅσφ' λυπηρότερον ἐκ βασιλέως ἰδιώτην
29 φανῆναι ἢ ἀρχὴν μὴ βασιλεῦσαι· οὐκοῦν ἐπί-
στασαι μὲν ὅτι οἱ νῦν σοι ὑπήκοοι γενόμενοι οὐ
φιλία τῇ σῇ ἐπέισθησαν ὑπὸ σοῦ ἄρχεσθαι ἀλλ'
ἀνάγκη, καὶ ὅτι ἐπιχειροῖεν ἂν πάλιν ἐλεύθεροι
γίγνεσθαι, εἰ μὴ τις αὐτοὺς φόβος κατέχοι.

of other men; and if they wish to bring one to reason, I perceive that their threats can do this no less than present chastisement applied by others; and if such men make a promise to any one, they accomplish no less than others do by an immediate gift.

“Recall for yourself what amount you paid to us in advance in order to obtain us as allies. You know that it was nothing; but because you were trusted to carry out truthfully whatever you said, you induced that great body of men to take the field with you and to gain for you a realm worth not merely thirty talents, the sum which these men think they ought now to recover, but many times as much. First of all, then, this trust, the very thing which gained your kingdom for you, is being sold for this sum.

“Come, now, recall how great a thing you then deemed it to achieve the conquests which you now have achieved. For my part, I am sure you would have prayed that the deeds now done might be accomplished for you rather than that many times that amount of money might fall to your lot. Now I count it greater hurt and shame not to hold these possessions firmly now than not to have gained them then, by so much as it is a harder fate to become poor after being rich than not to become rich at all, and by so much as it is more painful to be found a subject after being a king than not to become king at all. You understand, then, that those who have now become your subjects were not persuaded to live under your rule out of affection for you, but by stress of necessity, and that unless some fear should restrain them, they would endeavour to become free again.

30 ποτέρως οὖν οἶει μᾶλλον ἂν φοβείσθαι τε αὐτοὺς
καὶ σωφρονεῖν τὰ πρὸς σέ, εἰ ὀρῶέν σοι τοὺς
στρατιώτας οὕτω διακειμένους ὡς νῦν τε μένοντας
ἄν, εἰ σὺ κελεύεις, αὐθίς τ' ἂν ταχὺ ἐλθόντας, εἰ
δέοι, ἄλλους τε τούτων περὶ σοῦ ἀκούοντας
πολλὰ ἀγαθὰ ταχὺ ἂν σοι ὅποτε βούλοιο παρα-
γενέσθαι, ἢ εἰ καταδοξάσειαν μήτ' ἂν ἄλλους σοι
31 ἐλθεῖν δι' ἀπιστίαν ἐκ τῶν νῦν γεγενημένων τού-
τους τε αὐτοῖς εὐνουστέρους εἶναι ἢ σοί; ἀλλὰ
μὴν οὐδὲ πλήθει γε ἡμῶν λειφθέντες ὑπεῖξάν
σοι, ἀλλὰ προστατῶν ἀπορία. οὐκοῦν νῦν καὶ
τοῦτο κίνδυνος μὴ λάβωσι προιττάτας αὐτῶν
τινας τούτων οἱ νομίζουσιν ὑπὸ σοῦ ἀδικεῖσθαι,
ἢ καὶ τούτων κρείττονας τοὺς Λακεδαιμονίους,
εἰ μὲν οἱ στρατιῶται ὑπισχνῶνται προθυμότερον
αὐτοῖς συστρατεύσεσθαι, ἂν τὰ παρὰ σοῦ νῦν
ἀναπράξωσιν, οἱ δὲ Λακεδαιμόνιοι διὰ τὸ δεῖσθαι
32 τῆς στρατιᾶς συναινέσωσιν αὐτοῖς ταῦτα. ὅτι
γε μὴν οἱ νῦν ὑπὸ σοὶ Θρᾶκες γενόμενοι πολὺ ἂν
προθυμότερον ἴοιεν ἐπὶ σε ἢ σὺν σοι οὐκ ἄδηλον·
σοῦ μὲν γὰρ κρατοῦντος δουλεία ὑπάρχει αὐτοῖς,
κρατουμένου δέ σου ἐλευθερία.

33 Εἰ δὲ καὶ τῆς χώρας προνοεῖσθαι ἤδη τι δεῖ
ὡς σῆς οὔσης, ποτέρως ἂν οἶει ἀπαθῆ κακῶν
μᾶλλον αὐτὴν εἶναι, εἰ οὗτοι οἱ στρατιῶται ἀπο-

In which of these two cases, therefore, do you think they would feel greater fear and be more moderate in their relations with you: if they should see the soldiers cherishing such feelings toward you that they would stay with you now if you so bade them and would quickly come back to you again if you needed them, and should see also that others, hearing many good things about you from these troops, would quickly present themselves to take service with you whenever you wished it—or if they should form the unkind opinion that no other soldiers would come to you, in consequence of a distrust resulting from what has now happened, and that these whom you have are more friendly to them than to you? Again, it was by no means because they fell short of us in numbers that they yielded to you, but because they lacked leaders. Hence there is now danger on this count also, the danger that they may find leaders in some of these soldiers who regard themselves as wronged by you, or else in men who are even stronger than these are,—I mean the Lacedaemonians,—in case the soldiers promise to render them more zealous service if they now exact what is due from you, and in case the Lacedaemonians, on account of their needing the army, grant them this request. Again, that the Thracians who have now fallen under your sway would far more eagerly go against you than with you, is quite certain; for when you are conqueror their lot is slavery, and when you are conquered it is freedom.

“And if you need henceforth to take some thought for the sake of this land also, seeing that it is yours, in which case do you suppose it would be freer from ills: if these soldiers should recover what they claim

λαβόντες ἂ ἐγκαλοῦσιν εἰρήνην καταλιπόντες οἴχοιντο, ἢ εἰ οὗτοί τε μένοιεν ὡς ἐν πολεμῷ σύ τε ἄλλους πειρῶο πλέονας τούτων ἔχων ἀντιστρατοπεδεύεσθαι δεομένους τῶν ἐπιτηδείων;

34 ἀργύριον δὲ ποτέρως ἂν πλέον ἀναλωθείη, εἰ τούτοις τὸ ὀφειλόμενον ἀποδοθείη, ἢ εἰ ταῦτά τε ὀφείλοιντο ἄλλους τε κρείττονας δέοι σε μισθοῦ-

35 σθαι; ἀλλὰ γὰρ Ἡρακλείδης, ὡς πρὸς ἐμὲ ἐδήλον, πάμπλου δοκεῖ τούτο τὸ ἀργύριον εἶναι. ἢ μὴν πολὺ γέ ἐστιν ἔλαττον νῦν σοι καὶ λαβεῖν τούτο καὶ ἀποδοῦναι ἢ πρὶν ἡμᾶς ἐλθεῖν πρὸς σὲ δέ-

36 κατον τούτου μέρος. οὐ γὰρ ἀριθμὸς ἐστὶν ὁ ὀρίζων τὸ πολὺ καὶ τὸ ὀλίγον, ἀλλ' ἡ δύναμις τοῦ τε ἀποδιδόντος καὶ τοῦ λαμβάνοντος. σοὶ δὲ νῦν ἢ κατ' ἐνιαυτὸν πρόσσδος πλείων ἐστὶ ἢ ἔμπροσθεν τὰ παρόντα πάντα ἂ ἐκέκτησο.

37 Ἐγὼ μὲν, ὦ Σεύθη, ταῦτα ὡς φίλου ὄντος σου προνουούμην, ὅπως σύ τε ἄξιος δοκοῖς εἶναι ὧν οἱ θεοὶ σοι ἔδωκαν ἀγαθῶν ἐγὼ τε μὴ διαφθαρείην

38 ἐν τῇ στρατιᾷ. εὖ γὰρ ἴσθι ὅτι νῦν ἐγὼ οὐτ' ἂν ἐχθρὸν βουλόμενος κακῶς ποιῆσαι δυνηθείην σὺν ταύτῃ τῇ στρατιᾷ οὐτ' ἂν εἴ σοι πάλιν βουλοίμην βοηθήσαι, ἱκανὸς ἂν γενοίμην· οὕτω γὰρ

39 πρὸς με ἡ στρατιὰ διάκειται. καίτοι αὐτὸν σε μάρτυρα σὺν θεοῖς εἰδόσι ποιούμαι ὅτι οὔτε ἔχω παρὰ σοῦ ἐπὶ τοῖς στρατιώταις οὐδὲν οὔτε ἤτησα πώποτε εἰς τὸ ἴδιον τὰ ἐκείνων οὔτε ἂ ὑπέσχου

and go away leaving a state of peace behind them, or if they should remain as in a hostile country and you should undertake to maintain an opposing camp with other troops, that would have to be more numerous than these and would need provisions? And in which case would more money be spent, if what is owing to these men should be paid over to them, or if this sum should be left owing and you should have to hire other troops stronger than they are? Yes, but Heracleides thinks, as he used to explain to me, that this sum of money is a very large one. Upon my word it is a far smaller thing now for you to receive or to pay this sum than it would have been before we came to you to receive or to pay a tenth part of it. For it is not number that determines what is much and what is little, but the capacity of the man who pays and of him who receives. And as for yourself, your yearly income is going to be greater now than all the property you possessed amounted to before.

“For my part, Seuthes, it was out of regard for you as a friend that I urged this course, in order that you might be deemed worthy of the good things which the gods have given to you and that I might not lose credit with the army. For be well assured that at present if I should wish to inflict harm upon a foe, I could not do it with this army, and if I should wish to come to your assistance again, I should not find myself able to do that; such is the feeling of the army toward me. And yet I make your own self my witness, along with the gods, who know, that I have neither received anything from you that was intended for the soldiers, nor have ever asked what was theirs for my private use, nor demanded

- 40 μοι ἀπήτησα· ὄμνυμι δέ σοι μηδὲ ἀποδιδόντος
δέξασθαι ἄν, εἰ μὴ καὶ οἱ στρατιῶται ἔμελλον τὰ
ἑαυτῶν συναπολαμβάνειν. αἰσχρὸν γὰρ ἦν τὰ
μὲν ἐμὰ διαπεπραχθαι, τὰ δ' ἐκείνων περιδεῖν
κακῶς ἔχοντα, ἄλλως τε καὶ τιμώμενον ὑπ'
41 ἐκείνων. καίτοι Ἡρακλείδῃ γε λῆρος πάντα
δοκεῖ εἶναι πρὸς τὸ ἀργύριον ἔχειν ἐκ παντὸς
τρόπου· ἐγὼ δέ, ὦ Σεύθη, οὐδὲν νομίζω ἀνδρὶ
ἄλλως τε καὶ ἄρχοντι κάλλιον εἶναι κτήμα οὐδὲ
λαμπρότερον ἀρετῆς καὶ δικαιοσύνης καὶ γενναιό-
42 τητος. ὁ γὰρ ταῦτα ἔχων πλουτεῖ μὲν ὄντων
φίλων πολλῶν, πλουτεῖ δὲ καὶ ἄλλων βουλο-
μένων γενέσθαι, καὶ εὖ μὲν πράττων ἔχει τοὺς
συνησθησομένους, ἐὰν δέ τι σφαλῆ, οὐ σπανίζει
τῶν βοηθησόντων.
- 43 Ἄλλα γὰρ εἰ μήτε ἐκ τῶν ἔργων κατέμαθες
ὅτι σοι ἐκ τῆς ψυχῆς φίλος ἦν, μήτε ἐκ τῶν ἐμῶν
λόγων δύνασαι τοῦτο γινῶναι, ἀλλὰ τοὺς τῶν
στρατιωτῶν λόγους πάντας κατανόησον· παρήσθα
γὰρ καὶ ἤκουες ἃ ἔλεγον οἱ ψέγειν ἐμὲ βουλό-
44 μενοι. κατηγοροῦν γάρ μου πρὸς Λακεδαιμονίους
ὡς σὲ περὶ πλείονος ποιόμην ἢ Λακεδαιμονίους,
αὐτοὶ δ' ἐνεκάλουν ἐμοὶ ὡς μᾶλλον μέλει μοι
ὅπως τὰ σὰ καλῶς ἔχοι ἢ ὅπως τὰ ἑαυτῶν·
45 ἔφασαν δέ με καὶ δῶρα ἔχειν παρὰ σοῦ. καίτοι
τὰ δῶρα ταῦτα πότερον οἶει αὐτοὺς κακόνοιάν
τινα ἐνιδόντας μοι πρὸς σὲ αἰτιᾶσθαί με ἔχειν
παρὰ σοῦ ἢ προθυμίαν πολλήν περὶ σὲ κατανοή-

from you what you had promised me; and I swear to you that even if you had offered to pay what was due to me, I should not have accepted it unless the soldiers also were at the same time to recover what was due to them. For it would have been disgraceful to get my own affairs arranged and leave theirs in an evil state, especially since I was honoured by them. And yet Heracleides thinks that everything is but nonsense in comparison with possessing money, by hook or by crook; but I believe, Seuthes, that no possession is more honourable for a man, especially a commander, or more splendid than valour and justice and generosity. For he who possesses these things is rich because many are his friends, and rich because still others desire to become his friends; if he prospers he has those who will rejoice with him, and if he meets with a mischance he does not lack those who will come to his aid.

“But if you neither learned from my deeds that I was your friend from the bottom of my heart nor are able to perceive this from my words, at least give a thought to what the soldiers say with one accord; for you were present and heard what those who wished to censure me said. They accused me before the Lacedaemonians of regarding you more highly than I did the Lacedaemonians, while on their own account they charged me with being more concerned that your affairs should be well than that their own should be; and they also said that I had received gifts from you. And yet, touching these gifts, do you imagine it was because they had observed in me some ill-will toward you that they charged me with having received them from you, or because they perceived in me abundant good-will for you? For

- 46 *σαντας ; ἐγὼ μὲν οἶμαι πάντας ἀνθρώπους νομί-
ζειν εὖνοιαν δεῖν ἀποδείκνυσθαι τούτῳ παρ' οὗ
ἂν δῶρά τις λαμβάνῃ. σὺ δὲ πρὶν μὲν ὑπηρετῆσαι
τί σοι ἐμὲ ἐδέξω ἠδέως καὶ ὄμμασι καὶ φωνῇ καὶ
ξενίοις καὶ ὅσα ἔσοιτο ὑπισχνούμενος οὐκ ἐνε-
πίμπλασο· ἐπεὶ δὲ κατέπραξας ἃ ἐβούλου καὶ
γεγένησαι ὅσον ἐγὼ ἐδυνάμην μέγιστος, νῦν οὕτω
με ἄτιμον ὄντα ἐν τοῖς στρατιώταις τολμᾶς*
- 47 *περιορᾶν ; ἀλλὰ μὴν ὅτι σοι δόξει ἀποδοῦναι
πιστεύω καὶ τὸν χρόνον διδάξειν σε καὶ αὐτόν
γέ σε οὐχὶ ἀνέξεσθαι τοὺς σοὶ προεμένους εὐεργε-
σίαν ὀρώντά σοι ἐγκαλοῦντας. δέομαι οὖν σου,
ὅταν ἀποδιδῶς, προθυμείσθαι ἐμὲ παρὰ τοῖς
στρατιώταις τοιοῦτον ποιῆσαι οἷόν περ καὶ παρέ-
λαβες.*
- 48 *Ἀκούσας ταῦτα ὁ Σεύθης κατηράσατο τῷ
αἰτιῷ τοῦ μὴ πάλαι ἀποδεδόσθαι τὸν μισθόν· καὶ
πάντες Ἑρακλείδην τοῦτον ὑπόπτεισαν εἶναι·
ἐγὼ γάρ, ἔφη, οὔτε διενοήθην πώποτε ἀποστε-
ρῆσαι ἀποδώσω τε. ἐντεῦθεν πάλιν εἶπεν ὁ*
- 49 *Ξενοφῶν· Ἐπεὶ τοίνυν διανοῆ ἀποδιδόναι, νῦν
ἐγὼ σου δέομαι δι' ἐμοῦ ἀποδοῦναι, καὶ μὴ περι-
ιδεῖν με διὰ σὲ ἀνομοίως ἔχοντα ἐν τῇ στρατιᾷ*
- 50 *νῦν τε καὶ ὅτε πρὸς σὲ ἀφικόμεθα. ὁ δ' εἶπεν·
Ἄλλ' οὔτ' ἐν τοῖς στρατιώταις ἔση δι' ἐμὲ ἀτιμό-
τερος ἂν τε μένης παρ' ἐμοὶ χιλίους μόνους ὀπλί-
τας ἔχων, ἐγὼ σοι τά τε χωρία ἀποδώσω καὶ*

my part, I presume that everybody believes he ought to show good-will to the man from whom he receives gifts. You, however, before I had rendered you any service, welcomed me with a pleasure which you showed by your eyes, your voice, and your hospitality, and you could not make promises enough about all that should be done for me ; yet now that you have accomplished what you desired and have become as great as I could possibly make you, have you now the heart to allow me to be held in such dishonour among the soldiers? But truly I have confidence, not only that time will teach you that you must resolve to pay what is due, but also that you will not yourself endure to see those men who have freely given you good service, accusing you. I ask you, therefore, when you render payment, to use all zeal to make me just such a man in the eyes of the soldiers as I was when you made me your friend."

Upon hearing these words Seuthes cursed the man who was to blame for the fact that the soldiers' wages had not been paid long ago ; and everybody suspected that Heracleides was that man ; "for I," said Seuthes, "never intended to defraud them, and I will pay over the money." Thereupon Xenophon said again : "Then since you intend to make payment, I now request you to do it through me, and not to allow me to have, on your account, a different standing with the army now from what I had at the time when we came to you." And Seuthes replied : "But you will not be less honoured among the soldiers on my account if you will stay with me, keeping only a thousand hoplites, and, besides, I will give over the fortresses to you and the other things that I

51 τὰλλα ἂ ὑπεσχόμεν. ὁ δὲ πάλιν εἶπε· Ταῦτα
 μὲν ἔχειν οὕτως οὐχ οἶόν τε· ἀπόπεμπε δὲ ἡμᾶς.
 Καὶ μὴν, ἔφη ὁ Σεύθης, καὶ ἀσφαλέστερόν γέ σοι
 52 οἶδα ὃν παρ' ἐμοὶ μένειν ἢ ἀπιέναι. ὁ δὲ πάλιν
 εἶπεν· Ἄλλὰ τὴν μὲν σὴν πρόνοιαν ἐπαινῶ· ἐμοὶ
 δὲ μένειν οὐχ οἶόν τε· ὅπου δ' ἂν ἐγὼ ἐντιμότερος
 53 ὦ, νόμιζε καὶ σοὶ τοῦτο ἀγαθὸν ἔσεσθαι. ἐντεῦ-
 θεν λέγει Σεύθης· Ἀργύριον μὲν οὐκ ἔχω ἄλλ' ἢ
 μικρόν τι, καὶ τοῦτό σοι δίδωμι, τάλαντον· βούς
 δὲ ἑξακοσίους καὶ πρόβατα εἰς τετρακισχίλια καὶ
 ἀνδράποδα εἰς εἴκοσι καὶ ἑκατόν. ταῦτα λαβὼν
 καὶ τοὺς τῶν ἀδικησάντων σε ὁμήρους προσλαβὼν
 54 ἄπιθι. γελάσας ὁ Ξενοφῶν εἶπεν· Ἦν οὖν μὴ
 ἐξικνῆται ταῦτ' εἰς τὸν μισθόν, τίνας τάλαντον
 φήσω ἔχειν; ἄρ' οὐκ, ἐπειδὴ καὶ ἐπικίνδυνόν
 μοὶ ἐστίν, ἀπιόντα γε ἄμεινον φυλάττεσθαι πέ-
 τρους; ἦκουες δὲ τὰς ἀπειλάς. τότε μὲν δὴ
 αὐτοῦ ἔμεινε.
 55 Τῇ δ' ὑστεραία ἀπέδωκέ τε αὐτοῖς ἂ ὑπέσχετο
 καὶ τοὺς ἐλῶντας συνέπεμψεν. οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται
 τέως μὲν ἔλεγον ὡς ὁ Ξενοφῶν οἴχοιτο ὡς Σεύ-
 θην οἰκῆσων καὶ ἂ ὑπέσχετο αὐτῷ ληψόμενος·
 56 ἐπεὶ δὲ εἶδον, ἤσθησαν καὶ προσέθεον. Ξενοφῶν
 δ' ἐπεὶ εἶδε Χαομῖνόν τε καὶ Πολύνικον, Ταῦτα,
 ἔφη, σέσωται δι' ὑμᾶς τῇ στρατιᾷ καὶ παραδί-
 δωμι αὐτὰ ἐγὼ ὑμῖν· ὑμεῖς δὲ διαθέμενοι διάδοτε
 τῇ στρατιᾷ. οἱ μὲν οὖν παραλαβόντες καὶ λα-
 φυροπώλας καταστήσαντες ἐπώλουν, καὶ πολλὴν

¹ See note on I. vii. 18.

² *cp.* iv. 12-24.

³ With reference to vi. 10.

promised." And Xenophon answered: "This plan is not a possible one; so dismiss us." "Yet really," said Seuthes, "I know that it is also safer for you to stay with me than to go away." And Xenophon replied: "Well, I thank you for your solicitude; it is not possible, however, for me to stay; but wherever I may enjoy greater honour, be sure that it will be a good thing for you as well as myself." Thereupon Seuthes said: "As for ready money, I have only a little, and that I give you, a talent;¹ but I have six hundred cattle, and sheep to the number of four thousand, and nearly a hundred and twenty slaves. Take these, and likewise the hostages of the people who wronged you,² and go your way." Xenophon laughed and said: "Now supposing all this does not suffice to cover the amount of the pay, whose talent shall I say I have? Would I not better, seeing that it is really a source of danger to me, be on my guard against stones³ on my way back? For you heard the threats." For the time, then, he remained there at Seuthes' quarters.

On the next day Seuthes delivered over to them what he had promised, and sent men with them to drive the cattle. As for the soldiers, up to this time they had been saying that Xenophon had gone off to Seuthes to dwell with him and to receive what Seuthes had promised him; but when they caught sight of him, they were delighted, and ran out to meet him. As soon as Xenophon saw Charminus and Polynicus, he said to them: "This property has been saved for the army through you, and to you I turn it over; do you, then, dispose of it and make the distribution to the army." They, accordingly, took it over, appointed booty-vendors, and proceeded to sell

57 εἶχον αἰτίαν. Ξενοφῶν δὲ οὐ προσήει, ἀλλὰ φανερὸς ἦν οἴκαδε παρασκευαζόμενος· οὐ γάρ πω ψῆφος αὐτῷ ἐπήκτο Ἀθήνησι περὶ φυγῆς. προσελθόντες δὲ αὐτῷ οἱ ἐπιτήδειοι ἐν τῷ στρατοπέδῳ ἐδέοντο μὴ ἀπελθεῖν πρὶν ἀπαγάγοι τὸ στρατεύμα καὶ Θίβρωνι παραδοίῃ.

VIII. Ἐντεῦθεν διέπλευσαν εἰς Λάμψακον, καὶ ἀπαντᾷ τῷ Ξενοφῶντι Εὐκλείδης μάντις Φλειάσιος ὁ Κλεαγόρου υἱὸς τοῦ τὰ ἐντοίχια ἐν Λυκείῳ γεγραφότος. οὗτος συνήδετο τῷ Ξενοφῶντι ὅτι ἐσέσωτο, καὶ ἡρώτα αὐτὸν πόσον χρυσίου ἔχει.

2 ὁ δ' αὐτῷ ἐπομόσας εἶπεν ἢ μὴν ἐσεσθαι μὴδὲ ἐφόδιον ἱκανὸν οἴκαδε ἀπιόντι, εἰ μὴ ἀπόδοιτο τὸν ἵππον καὶ ἂ ἀμφ' αὐτὸν εἶχεν. ὁ δ' αὐτῷ οὐκ

3 ἐπίστευεν. ἐπεὶ δ' ἔπεμψαν Λαμψακηνοὶ ξένια τῷ Ξενοφῶντι καὶ ἔθνε τῷ Ἀπόλλωνι, παρεστήσατο τὸν Εὐκλείδην· ἰδὼν δὲ τὰ ἱερά Εὐκλείδης εἶπεν ὅτι πείθοιτο αὐτῷ μὴ εἶναι χρήματα. Ἄλλ' οἶδα, ἔφη, ὅτι κὰν μέλλῃ ποτὲ ἐσεσθαι, φαίνεται τι ἐμπόδιον, ἂν μὴδὲν ἄλλο, σὺ σαυτῷ. συνωμο-

4 λόγει ταῦτα ὁ Ξενοφῶν. ὁ δὲ εἶπεν· Ἐμπόδιος γάρ σοι ὁ Ζεὺς ὁ μελίχιός ἐστι, καὶ ἐπήρετο εἰ ἤδη θύσειεν, ὥσπερ οἴκοι, ἔφη, εἰώθειν ἐγὼ ὑμῖν θύεσθαι καὶ ὀλοκαυτεῖν. ὁ δ' οὐκ ἔφη ἐξ ὅτου ἀπεδήμησε τεθυκέναι τούτῳ τῷ θεῷ. συνεβούλευσεν οὖν αὐτῷ θύεσθαι καθὰ εἰώθει, καὶ ἔφη

¹ The precise date of Xenophon's banishment is uncertain. It appears to have resulted not only from his participation in the expedition of Cyrus, who had been an ally of the Spartans against Athens (see III. i. 5), but from his close association with Spartans thereafter.

² The famous gymnasium at Athens.

³ *i. e.* Zeus in this particular one of his functions, as "the Merciful." *cp.* vi. 44.

it; and they incurred a great deal of blame. As for Xenophon, he would not go near them, but it was plain that he was making preparations for his homeward journey; for not yet had sentence of exile been pronounced against him at Athens.¹ His friends in the camp, however, came to him and begged him not to depart until he should lead the army away and turn it over to Thibron.

VIII. From there they sailed across to Lampsacus, where Xenophon was met by Eucleides, the Phliasian seer, son of the Cleagoras who painted the mural paintings in the Lyceum.² Eucleides congratulated Xenophon upon his safe return, and asked him how much gold he had got. He replied, swearing to the truth of his statement, that he would not have even enough money to pay his travelling expenses on the way home unless he should sell his horse and what he had about his person. And Eucleides would not believe him. But when the Lampsacenes sent gifts of hospitality to Xenophon and he was sacrificing to Apollo, he gave Eucleides a place beside him; and when Eucleides saw the vitals of the victims, he said that he well believed that Xenophon had no money. "But I am sure," he went on, "that even if money should ever be about to come to you, some obstacle always appears—if nothing else, your own self." In this Xenophon agreed with him. Then Eucleides said, "Yes, Zeus the Merciful is an obstacle in your way," and asked whether he had yet sacrificed to him, "just as at home," he continued, "where I was wont to offer the sacrifices for you, and with whole victims." Xenophon replied that not since he left home had he sacrificed to that god.³ Eucleides, accordingly, advised him to sacrifice just as he used to do, and said that it would be to his advantage.

5 συνοίσειν ἐπὶ τὸ βέλτιον. τῇ δὲ ὑστεραία Ξενοφῶν προσελθὼν εἰς Ὀφρύνιον ἐθύετο καὶ ὠλοκαύτει χοίρους τῷ πατρίῳ νόμῳ, καὶ ἐκαλλιέρει.
6 καὶ ταύτη τῇ ἡμέρᾳ ἀφικνεῖται Βίων καὶ Ναυσικλείδης χρήματα δώσοντες τῷ στρατεύματι καὶ ξενοῦνται τῷ Ξενοφῶντι, καὶ ἵππον ὃν ἐν Λαμψάκῳ ἀπέδοτο πενήτηκοντα δαρεικῶν, ὑποπτεύοντες αὐτὸν δι' ἔνδειαν πεπρακέναι, ὅτι ἤκουον αὐτὸν ἠδесθαι τῷ ἵππῳ, λυσάμενοι ἀπέδοσαν καὶ τὴν τιμὴν οὐκ ἤθελον ἀπολαβεῖν.

7 Ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύοντο διὰ τῆς Τρωάδος, καὶ ὑπερβάντες τὴν Ἴδην εἰς Ἄντανδρον ἀφικνοῦνται πρῶτον, εἶτα παρὰ θάλατταν πορευόμενοι εἰς
8 Θήβης πεδίον. ἐντεῦθεν δι' Ἀδραμυττίου¹ καὶ Κερτωνοῦ¹ ὁδεύσαντες εἰς Καΐκου πεδίον ἐλθόντες Πέργαμον καταλαμβάνουσι τῆς Μυσίας.

Ἐνταῦθα δὴ ξενοῦται Ξενοφῶν Ἑλλάδι τῇ Γογγύλου τοῦ Ἐρετριέως γυναικὶ καὶ Γοργίωνος
9 καὶ Γογγύλου μητρί. αὕτη δ' αὐτῷ φράζει ὅτι Ἀσιδάτης ἐστὶν ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ ἀνὴρ Πέρσης· τοῦτον ἔφη αὐτόν, εἰ ἔλθοι τῆς νυκτὸς σὺν τριακοσίοις ἀνδράσι, λαβεῖν ἂν καὶ αὐτὸν καὶ γυναῖκα καὶ παῖδας καὶ τὰ χρήματα· εἶναι δὲ πολλά. ταῦτα δὲ καθηγησομένους ἔπεμψε τὸν τε αὐτῆς ἀνεψιὸν καὶ Δαφναγόραν, ὃν περὶ πλείστου ἐποίητο.
10 εἶτο. ἔχων οὖν ὁ Ξενοφῶν τούτους παρ' ἑαυτῷ ἐθύετο. καὶ Βασίας ὁ Ἠλεῖος μάντις παρῶν

¹ Printed as by Mar., following the MSS. : various slight changes have been suggested.

¹ Apparently officers sent by Thibron.

And the next day, upon coming to Ophrynum, Xenophon proceeded to sacrifice, offering whole victims of swine after the custom of his fathers, and he obtained favourable omens. In fact, on that very day Bion and Nausicleides¹ arrived with money to give to the army and were entertained by Xenophon, and they redeemed his horse, which he had sold at Lampsacus for fifty darics,—for they suspected that he had sold it for want of money, since they heard he was fond of the horse,—gave it back to him, and would not accept from him the price of it.

From there they marched through the Troad and, crossing over Mount Ida, arrived first at Antandrus, and then, proceeding along the coast, reached the plain of Thebe. Making their way from there through Adramyttium and Certonus, they came to the plain of the Caicus and so reached Pergamus, in Mysia.

Here Xenophon was entertained by Hellas, the wife of Gongylus² the Eretrian and mother of Gorgion and Gongylus. She told him that there was a Persian in the plain named Asidates, and said that if he should go by night with three hundred troops, he could capture this man, along with his wife and children and property, of which he had a great deal. And she sent as guides for this enterprise not only her own cousin, but also Daphnagoras, whom she regarded very highly. Xenophon, accordingly, proceeded to sacrifice, keeping these two by his side. And Basias, the Elean seer who was present, said

² Whose ancestor (father?), according to *Hell.* III. i. 6, had been given four cities in this neighbourhood by Xerxes "because he espoused the Persian cause, being the only man among the Eretrians who did so, and was therefore banished." *cp.* II. i. 3 and note.

- εἶπεν ὅτι κάλλιστα εἶη τὰ ἱερὰ αὐτῷ καὶ ὁ ἀνὴρ
 11 ἀλώσιμος εἶη. δειπνήσας οὖν ἐπορεύετο τοὺς τε
 λοχαγούς τοὺς μάλιστα φίλους λαβὼν καὶ ἄλλους¹
 πιστοὺς γεγενημένους διὰ παντός, ὅπως εὖ ποιήσαι
 αὐτούς. συνεχέρονται δὲ αὐτῷ καὶ ἄλλοι βιασά-
 μενοι εἰς ἑξακοσίους· οἱ δὲ λοχαγοὶ ἀπήλαυνον, ἵνα
 μὴ μεταδοῖεν τὸ μέρος, ὡς ἐτοίμων δὴ χρημάτων.
 12 Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀφίκοντο περὶ μέσας νύκτας, τὰ μὲν
 πέριξ ὄντα ἀνδράποδα τῆς τύρσιος καὶ χρήματα
 τὰ πλείστα ἀπέδρα αὐτοὺς παραμελούντας, ὡς τὸν
 13 Ἀσιδάτην αὐτὸν λάβοιεν καὶ τὰ ἐκείνου. πυργο-
 μαχοῦντες δὲ ἐπεὶ οὐκ ἐδύναντο λαβεῖν τὴν τύρ-
 σιν—ὑψηλὴ γὰρ ἦν καὶ μεγάλη καὶ προμαχεῶνας
 καὶ ἄνδρας πολλοὺς καὶ μαχίμους ἔχουσα—διο-
 14 ρύττειν ἐπεχείρησαν τὸν πύργον. ὁ δὲ τοῖχος ἦν
 ἐπ' ὀκτὼ πλίνθων γηίνων τὸ εὖρος. ἅμα δὲ τῇ
 ἡμέρᾳ διωρώρυκτο· καὶ ὡς τὸ πρῶτον διεφάνη,
 ἐπάταξεν ἔνδοθεν βουπόρῳ τις ὀβελίσκῳ διαμ-
 περὲς τὸν μηρὸν τοῦ ἐγγυτάτῳ· τὸ δὲ λοιπὸν
 ἐκτοξεύοντες ἐποίουν μηδὲ παριέναι ἔτι ἀσφαλές
 15 εἶναι. κεκραγόντων δὲ αὐτῶν καὶ πυρσευόντων
 ἐκβοηθοῦσιν Ἰταμένης μὲν ἔχων τὴν ἑαυτοῦ δύνα-
 μιν, ἐκ Κομανίας δὲ ὀπλίται Ἀσσύριοι καὶ Ἑρκά-
 νιοι ἰππεῖς καὶ οὗτοι βασιλέως μισθοφόροι ὡς
 ὀγδοήκοντα, καὶ ἄλλοι πελτασταὶ εἰς ὀκτακοσίους,

¹ ἄλλους inserted by Hug, whom Mar. inclines to follow :
 Gem. emends by inserting τε before μάλιστα.

that the omens were extremely favourable for him and that the man was easy to capture. So after dinner he set forth, taking with him the captains who were his closest friends and others who had proved themselves trustworthy throughout, in order that he might do them a good turn. But there joined him still others who forced themselves in, to the number of six hundred; and the captains tried to drive them away, so that they might not have to give them a share in the booty—just as though the property was already in hand.

When they reached the place, about midnight, the slaves that were round about the tower and most of the animals ran away, the Greeks leaving them unheeded in order to capture Asidates himself and his belongings. And when they found themselves unable to take the tower by storm (for it was high and large, and furnished with battlements and a considerable force of warlike defenders), they attempted to dig through the tower-wall. Now the wall had a thickness of eight earthen bricks. At daybreak, however, a breach had been made; and just as soon as the light showed through, some one from within struck with an ox-spit clean through the thigh of the man who was nearest the hole; and from that time on they kept shooting out arrows and so made it unsafe even to pass by the place any more. Then, as the result of their shouting and lighting of beacon fires, there came to their assistance Itamenes with his own force, and from Comania Assyrian hoplites and Hyrcanian horsemen—these also being mercenaries in the service of the King—to the number of eighty, as well as about eight hundred peltasts, and more from Parthenium, and

ἄλλοι δ' ἐκ Παρθενίου, ἄλλοι δ' ἐξ Ἀπολλωνίας
καὶ ἐκ τῶν πλησίων χωρίων καὶ ἵππεῖς.

- 16 Ἐνταῦθα δὴ ὦρα ἦν σκοπεῖν πῶς ἔσται ἡ ἄφο-
δος· καὶ λαβόντες ὅσοι ἦσαν βόες καὶ πρόβατα
ἤλαυνον καὶ ἀνδράποδα ἐντὸς πλαισίου ποιησά-
μενοι, οὐ τοῖς χρήμασιν ἔτι προσέχοντες τὸν νοῦν,
ἀλλὰ μὴ φυγὴ εἴη ἡ ἄφοδος, εἰ καταλιπόντες τὰ
χρήματα ἀπίοιεν, καὶ οἱ τε πολέμοιοι θρασύτεροι
εἶεν καὶ οἱ στρατιῶται ἀθυρότεροι· νῦν δὲ ἀπῆσαν
- 17 ὡς περὶ τῶν χρημάτων μαχοῦμενοι. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἑώρα
Γογγύλος ὀλίγους μὲν τοὺς Ἕλληνας, πολλοὺς
δὲ τοὺς ἐπικειμένους, ἐξέρχεται καὶ αὐτὸς βία τῆς
μητρὸς ἔχων τὴν ἑαυτοῦ δύναμιν, βουλόμενος
μετασχεῖν τοῦ ἔργου· συνεβοήθει δὲ καὶ Προκλῆς
ἐξ Ἀλισάρνης καὶ Τευθρανίας ὁ ἀπὸ Δαμαράτου.
- 18 οἱ δὲ περὶ Ξενοφῶντα ἐπεὶ πάνυ ἤδη ἐπιέζοντο
ὑπὸ τῶν τοξευμάτων καὶ σφενδονῶν, πορευόμενοι
κύκλω, ὅπως τὰ ὄπλα ἔχοιεν πρὸ τῶν τοξευμάτων,
μόλις διαβαίνουσι τὸν Κάρκασον ποταμόν, τετρω-
μένοι ἐγγὺς οἱ ἡμίσεις.
- 19 ἐνταῦθα δὲ Ἀγασίας ὁ
Στυμφάλιος λοχαγὸς τιτρώσκειται, τὸν πάντα
χρόνον μαχόμενος πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους. καὶ δια-
σφύζονται ἀνδράποδα ὡς διακόσια ἔχοντες καὶ
πρόβατα ὅσον θύματα.
- 20 Τῇ δὲ ὑστεραία θυσάμενος ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἐξάγει
νύκτωρ πᾶν τὸ στράτευμα, ὅπως ὅτι μακροτάτην
ἔλθοι τῆς Λυδίας, εἰς τὸ μὴ διὰ τὸ ἐγγὺς εἶναι
- 21 φοβεῖσθαι, ἀλλ' ἀφυλακτεῖν. ὁ δὲ Ἀσιδάτης

more from Apollonia and from the near-by places,
including horsemen.

Then it was time to consider how the retreat was
to be effected; so seizing all the cattle and sheep
there were, as well as slaves, they got them inside of
a hollow square and proceeded to drive them along
with them, not because they were any longer giving
thought to the matter of booty, but out of fear that
the retreat might become a rout if they should go off
and leave their booty behind, and that the enemy
might become bolder and the soldiers more dis-
heartened; while as it was, they were withdrawing
like men ready to fight for their possessions. But as
soon as Gongylus saw that the Greeks were few and
those who were attacking them many, he sallied
forth himself, in spite of his mother, at the head of
his own force, desiring to take part in the action;
and Procles¹ also came to the rescue, from Halisarna
and Teuthrania, the descendant of Damaratus. And
Xenophon and his men, by this time sorely distressed
by the arrows and sling-stones, and marching in a
curved line in order to keep their shields facing the
arrows, succeeded with difficulty in crossing the
Carcasus river, almost half of their number wounded.
It was here that Agasias, the Stymphalian captain,
was wounded, though he continued to fight all the
time against the enemy. So they came out of it in
safety, with about two hundred slaves and sheep
enough for sacrificial victims.

The next day Xenophon offered sacrifice, and then
by night led forth the entire army with the intention
of making as long a march as possible through Lydia,
to the end that Asidates might not be fearful on
account of their nearness, but be off his guard.

¹ cp. II. i. 3 and note.

- ἀκούσας ὅτι πάλιν ἐπ' αὐτὸν τεθυμένος εἶη ὁ
 Ξενοφῶν καὶ παντὶ τῷ στρατεύματι ἤξι, ἐξαι-
 λίζεται εἰς κώμας ὑπὸ τὸ Παρθένιον πόλισμα
 22 ἐχούσας. ἐνταῦθα οἱ περὶ Ξενοφῶντα συντυγ-
 χάνουσιν αὐτῷ καὶ λαμβάνουσιν αὐτὸν καὶ γυ-
 ναῖκα καὶ παῖδας καὶ τοὺς ἵππους καὶ πάντα τὰ
 23 ὄντα· καὶ οὕτω τὰ πρότερα ἱερὰ ἀπέβη. ἔπειτα
 πάλιν ἀφικνούνται εἰς Πέργαμον. ἐνταῦθα τὸν
 θεὸν ἠσπάσατο Ξενοφῶν· συνέπραττον γὰρ καὶ
 οἱ Λάκωνες καὶ οἱ λοχαγοὶ καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι στρα-
 τηγοὶ καὶ οἱ στρατιῶται ὥστ' ἐξαίρετα λαβεῖν
 καὶ ἵππους καὶ ζεύγη καὶ τᾶλλα· ὥστε ἰκανὸν
 εἶναι καὶ ἄλλον ἤδη εὖ ποιεῖν.
 24 Ἐν τούτῳ Θίβρων παραγενόμενος παρέλαβε τὸ
 στρατεύμα καὶ συμμείξας τῷ ἄλλῳ Ἑλληνικῷ
 ἐπολέμει πρὸς Τισσαφέρην καὶ Φαρνάβαζον.¹

- ¹ The MSS. add the following statistical notes, which,
 like the summaries prefixed to the several books (see note
 on II. i. 1), must have been the contribution of a late editor:
 25 Ἄρχοντες δὲ οὔτε τῆς βασιλέως χώρας ὄσσην ἐπήλθομεν. Λυδίας
 Ἄρτιμας, Φρυγίας Ἄρτακάμας, Λυκαονίας καὶ Καππαδοκίας Μιθρα-
 δάτης, Κιλικίας Σύννεσις, Φοινίκης καὶ Ἀραβίας Δέρνης, Συρίας
 καὶ Ἀσσυρίας Βέλεσος, Βαβυλῶνος Ῥωπάρας, Μηδίας Ἀρβάκας,
 Φασιανῶν καὶ Ἑσπεριτῶν Τίριβαζος· Καρδοῦχοι δὲ καὶ Χάλυβες
 καὶ Χαλδαῖοι καὶ Μάκρωνες καὶ Κόλχοι καὶ Μοσσύνοικοι καὶ Κοῖτοι
 καὶ Τιβαρηνοὶ αὐτόνομοι Παφλαγονίας Κορύλας, Βιθυνῶν Φαρνά-
 βαζος, τῶν ἐν Εὐρώπῃ Θρακῶν Σεύθης.
 26 Ἄριθμὸς συμπάσης τῆς ὁδοῦ τῆς ἀναβάσεως καὶ καταβάσεως
 σταθμοὶ διακόσιοι δεκαπέντε, παρασάγγαι χίλιοι ἑκατὸν πενή-
 κοντα, στάδια τρισμῦρια τετρακισχίλια διακόσια πενήκοντα
 πέντε. χρόνου πλῆθος τῆς ἀναβάσεως καὶ καταβάσεως ἐνιαυτὸς
 καὶ τρεῖς μῆνες.

Asidates, however, hearing that Xenophon had sacrificed again with a view to attacking him and that he was to come with the entire army, left his tower and encamped in villages that lay below the town of Parthenium. There Xenophon and his men fell in with him, and they captured him, his wife and children, his horses, and all that he had; and thus the omens of the earlier sacrifice proved true. After that they came back again to Pergamus. And there Xenophon paid his greeting to the god; for the Laconians, the captains, the other generals, and the soldiers joined in arranging matters so that he got the pick of horses and teams of oxen and all the rest; the result was, that he was now able even to do a kindness to another.

Meanwhile Thibron arrived and took over the army, and uniting it with the rest of his Greek forces, proceeded to wage war upon Tissaphernes and Pharnabazus.¹

¹ Statistical notes (see opposite page): The governors of all the King's territories that we traversed were as follows: Artimas of Lydia, Artacamas of Phrygia, Mithradates of Lycaonia and Cappadocia, Syennesis of Cilicia, Dernes of Phoenicia and Arabia, Belesys of Syria and Assyria, Rhoparas of Babylon, Arbacas of Media, Tiribazus of the Phasians and Hesperites; then the Carduchians, Chalybians, Chaldaeans, Macronians, Colchians, Mossynoecians, Coetians, and Tibarenians, who were independent; and then Corylas governor of Paphlagonia, Pharnabazus of the Bithynians, and Seuthes of the Thracians in Europe

The length of the entire journey, upward and downward, was two hundred and fifteen stages, one thousand, one hundred and fifty parasangs, or thirty-four thousand, two hundred and fifty-five stadia; and the length in time, upward and downward, a year and three months.

INDEX TO ANABASIS

- Abrocomas, satrap of Phoenicia, I. iii. 20, iv. 3, 5, 18, vii. 12
 Abrozelmus, Seuthes' interpreter, VII. vi. 43
 Abydus, city of the Troad, on the Hellespont, I. i. 9
 Acarnanian, inh. of Acarnania, country in northern Greece, IV. viii. 18
 Achaean, inh. of Achaea, country in Peloponnesus, VI. ii. 9, 10, 12, 16, iii. 24; (Socrates, Xanthicles, Philesius, Samolus, Lycon, Phryniscus), I. i. 11, ii. 3; II. v. 31, vi. 30; III. i. 47; V. vi. 14, 27; VI. ii. 4, 7, 9, v. 11; VII. i. 32, ii. 1, v. 4
 Acherusian Chersonese, peninsula near Heracleia, in Bithynia, VI. ii. 2
 Adramyttium, city in Mysia, VII. viii. 8
 Aectes, whose grandson was king of the Phasians, in Colchis, v. vi. 37
 Aeneas, Stymphalian, captain, IV. vii. 13
 Aenianian, inh. of Aeniania, in southern Thessaly, I. ii. 6; VI. i. 7
 Aeolis, district in western Asia Minor, v. vi. 24
 Aeschines, Acarnanian, commander of peltasts, IV. iii. 22, viii. 18
 Agasias, Stymphalian, captain, III. i. 31; IV. i. 27, vii. 9, 11; v. ii. 15; VI. i. 30, ii. 7, iv. 10, vi. 7-21; VII. viii. 19
 Agesilaus, king of Sparta, v. iii. 6
 Agias, Arcadian, general, I. ii. 9; II. v. 31, vi. 30; III. i. 47
 Amazons, the, IV. iv. 16
 Ambraciot, inh. of Ambracia, city in Epirus, I. vii. 8; v. vi. 16; VI. iv. 13
 Amphicrates, Athenian, captain, IV. ii. 13, 17
 Amphidamus, Athenian, IV. ii. 13
 Amphipolitan, inh. of Amphipolis, city in Macedonia (Episthenes, Pleisthenes), I. x. 7; IV. vi. 1
 Anaxibius, Lacedaemonian admiral, v. i. 4; VI. i. 16, 32, vi. 13; VII. i. 2-39, ii. 4-13
 Antandrus, city of the Troad, VII. viii. 7
 Apollo, I. ii. 8; III. i. 6; v. iii. 4, 5; VII. viii. 3
 Apollonia, town in Mysia, VII. viii. 15
 Apollonides, Lydian, captain, III. i. 26, 31
 Arabia, I. v. 1
 Araxes, river in Syria, tributary of Euphrates, I. iv. 19
 Arbaces, Persian general, I. vii. 12
 Arcadian, inh. of Arcadia, country in Peloponnesus, IV. viii. 13; VI. i. 11, 12, 30, ii. 9-17, iii. 2-25, iv. 9, 10; (Agias, Xenias, Cleanor, Nicarchus, Basias, Callimachus, Arexion, Pyrrhias, Eurylochus, Arystas), I. ii. 1, 9, 10, iv. 7; II. i. 10, v. 31, 33, vi. 30; III. i. 47, iii. 5; IV. i. 18; v. vi. 14; VI. iv. 13, 22, v. 11; VII. i. 32, iii. 23, vi. 8, 9
 Archagoras, Argive, captain, IV. ii. 13, 17
 Arexion, Parrhasian, soothsayer, VI. iv. 13, v. 2, 8
 Argive, inh. of Argolis, country in Peloponnesus, IV. ii. 13, 17
 Ariaeus, Persian, commander of Cyrus' barbarian troops, I. viii. 5, ix. 31, x. 1; II. i. 3-5, ii. 1-14, iv. 1-16, v. 28-40, vi. 28; III. ii. 2, 5, 17, v. 1
 Aristarchus, Lacedaemonian governor of Byzantium, VII. ii. 5-16, iii. 2-7, vi. 13-24
 Aristaeas, Chian, commander of light troops, IV. i. 28, vi. 20
 Aristippus, Thessalian, I. i. 10, ii. 1; II. vi. 28
 Ariston, Athenian, v. vi. 14
 Aristonymus, Methydrion, captain, IV. i. 27, vi. 20, vii. 9-12
 Armenia, a northern province of the

INDEX TO ANABASIS

- Persian Empire, III. v. 17; IV. iii. 1, 3, iv. 1, 3, v. 34
 Armenian, IV. iii. 4, 20, v. 33
 Artagereses, Persian, commander of the King's bodyguard of cavalry, I. vii. 11, viii. 24
 Artaozus, Persian, friend of Cyrus, II. iv. 16, v. 35
 Artapates, Persian, chamberlain of Cyrus, I. vi. 11, viii. 28
 Artaxerxes (II.), king of Persia, I. i. 1, 3, 4; II. iv. 25
 Artemis, I. vi. 7; III. ii. 12; of the Ephesians, V. iii. 4-13
 Artuchas, Persian general, IV. iii. 4
 Arystas, Arcadian, captain, VII. iii. 23, 24
 Asia, v. iii. 6; VI. iv. 1; VII. i. 2, 27, ii. 2-28, vi. 12, 32
 Asidates, Persian, VII. viii. 9-22
 Asinaean, inh. of Asine, town in Laconia, V. iii. 4, vi. 36; VI. iv. 11; VII. i. 40, ii. 1
 Aspendian, inh. of Aspendus, city in Pamphylia, I. ii. 12
 Assyrian, inh. of Assyria, province of the Persian Empire, VII. viii. 15
 Athena, VII. iii. 39
 Athens, chief city of Attica, country in northern Greece, III. i. 5, ii. 11; IV. viii. 4; VII. vii. 57
 Athenian, II. vi. 2; III. ii. 11; IV. vi. 16; v. iii. 5; VII. i. 27, 28, ii. 31; (Xenophon, Theopompus, Socrates, Lycius, Cephisodorus, Amphicrates, Polycrates, Ariston, Phrasias, Gne-sippus), I. viii. 15; II. i. 11, v. 37; III. i. 4, 5, 45, 47, iii. 20; IV. ii. 13, v. 24; V. i. 16, vi. 14; VI. ii. 10, v. 11; VII. ii. 17, 19, iii. 23, vi. 41
 Attic, I. v. 6
 Babylon, chief city of the Persian Empire, I. iv. 11, 13, v. 5; II. iv. 12; III. v. 15
 Babylonia, district around Babylon, I. vii. 1; II. ii. 13
 Basias, (1) Arcadian, IV. i. 18; (2) Elean, soothsayer, VII. viii. 10
 Belesys, satrap of Syria, I. iv. 10
 Bion, Lacedaemonian, in service of Thibron, VII. viii. 6
 Bisanthe, fortress on the Propontis, VII. ii. 38, v. 8
 Bithynian, inh. of Bithynia, province on north-western coast of Asia Minor, VI. ii. 17, iv. 24, 26, v. 26, 30, vi. 37; Bithynian Thracians, VI. iv. 2
 Boeotia, country in northern Greece, III. i. 31
 Boeotian, v. iii. 6; (Proxenus, Thorax), I. i. 11; II. v. 31, vi. 16; V. vi. 19, 21, 25
 Boiscus, Thessalian, pugilist, v. viii. 23
 Byzantium, city on the Bosphorus, now Constantinople, VI. ii. 13, iv. 2, 3, 18, vi. 13; VII. i. 2-38, ii. 1-27, iii. 3, v. 1
 Byzantine, VII. i. 19, 39
 Caenae, city in Mesopotamia, on the Tigris, II. iv. 28
 Calicus, river in Mysia, VII. viii. 8
 Calchedon, city on the Bosphorus, opposite Byzantium, VII. i. 20, ii. 24, 26
 Calchedonia, district around Calchedon, VI. iv. 38
 Callimachus, Parrhasian, captain, IV. i. 27, vii. 8, 10, 11, 12; v. vi. 14; VI. ii. 7, 9
 Calpe Harbour, on the northern coast of Bithynia, VI. ii. 13, 17, iii. 2, 10, 14, 24, iv. 1, 3
 Cappadocia, province in central Asia Minor, I. ii. 20, ix. 7
 Carcasus, river in Mysia, VII. viii. 18
 Carduchians, mountain people dwelling between Assyria and Armenia, III. v. 15, 17; IV. i. 8-11, iii. 1-30, iv. 1; v. v. 17
 Carsus, river between Cilicia and Syria, I. iv. 4
 Castolus, town in Lydia, near Sardis, I. i. 2, ix. 7
 Caystru-pedion, town in Phrygia, I. ii. 11
 Celaenae, city in Phrygia, I. ii. 7-9
 Centrites, river between Armenia and the country of the Carduchians, IV. iii. 1
 Cephisodorus, Athenian, captain, IV. ii. 13, 17
 Cephisophon, Athenian, IV. ii. 13
 Ceramon-agera, town in Phrygia, I. ii. 10
 Cerasus, Greek city on the Euxine Sea, colony of Sinope, v. iii. 2, iv. 1, vii. 16, 17, 19, 30

INDEX TO ANABASIS

- Cerasuntians, v. v. 10, vii. 13-30
 Cerberus, watch-dog of the lower world, VI. ii. 2
 Certonus, city in Mysia, VII. viii. 8
 Chaldaeans, tribe in Armenia, IV. iii. 4; v. v. 17
 Chalus, river in Syria, I. iv. 9
 Chalybians, tribe in Pontus, on northern frontier of Armenia, IV. iv. 18, v. 34, vi. 5, vii. 15; v. v. 1
 Charmande, city in Arabia, on the Euphrates, I. v. 10
 Charminus, Lacedaemonian, in service of Thibron, VII. vi. 1, 39, vii. 13, 15, 56
 Cheirisophus, Lacedaemonian general, commander of the Greek vanguard in the Retreat, I. iv. 3; II. i. 5, ii. 1, v. 37; III. i. 45, ii. 1, 33, 37, iii. 3, 11, iv. 38-43, v. 1, 4, 6; IV. i. 6-20, ii. 8, 23, 26, iii. 8-27, v. 9-34, vi. 1-25, vii. 2-8, viii. 16; v. i. 3-10, iii. 1, 4, vi. 36; vi. i. 16, 32, ii. 6-18, iii. 10-15, iv. 11, 23
 Chersonese, the Acherusian, peninsula near Heracleia, in Bithynia, VI. ii. 2
 Chersonese, the Thracian, peninsula north of the Hellespont, I. i. 9, iii. 4; II. vi. 2; v. vi. 25; VII. i. 13, ii. 2, 15, iii. 3, vi. 14
 Chian, inh. of Chios, island west of Lydia, IV. i. 28, vi. 20
 Chrysopolis, city on the Bosphorus, opposite Byzantium, VI. iii. 14, vi. 38
 Cilicia, province on south-eastern coast of Asia Minor, I. ii. 20, 21, 23, iv. 1, 4, 5; III. i. 10
 Cilician, I. ii. 12-25, iii. 14, iv. 4
 Cleaenetus, captain, v. i. 17
 Cleagoras, Phliasian, painter, VII. viii. 1
 Cleander, Lacedaemonian governor of Byzantium, VI. ii. 13, iv. 18, vi. 1-35; VII. i. 8, 38, 39, 40, ii. 5, 6
 Cleonor, Orchomenian general, II. i. 10, v. 37, 39; III. i. 47, ii. 4, 8; IV. vi. 9, viii. 18; VI. iv. 22; VII. i. 40, ii. 2, iii. 46, 48, v. 4, 10
 Clearchus, Lacedaemonian general, I. i. 9, ii. 1, 9, 15, iii. 1-20, iv. 7, v. 11-17, vi. 5, 9, vii. 1, 9, viii. 4, 5, 12, 13, x. 5, 14; II. i. 4-23, ii. 2-21, iii. 2-21, iv. 2-26, v. 2-41, vi. 1, 8, 29; III. i. 10, 47, ii. 4, 31, iii. 19; v. iii. 5, vi. 24; vi. i. 32, ii. 16
 Clearetus, captain, v. vii. 14, 16
 Coeratadas, Theban, VII. i. 33-40
 Colchian, IV. viii. 8, 9, 22, 24; v. ii. 1, vii. 2
 Colchis, country on eastern and south-eastern coast of the Euxine Sea, IV. viii. 23; v. iii. 2
 Colossae, city in Phrygia, I. ii. 6
 Comania, place in Mysia, near Pergamus, VII. viii. 15
 Corsote, city in Mesopotamia, on the Euphrates, I. v. 4
 Corylas, chief of the Paphlagonians, v. v. 12, 22, vi. 11; VI. i. 2
 Cotyora, Greek city on the Euxine Sea, colony of Sinope, v. v. 3
 Cotyrorites, v. v. 6-25, viii. 23
 Cretan, inh. of the island of Crete, I. ii. 9; III. iii. 7, 15, iv. 17; IV. ii. 23, viii. 27; v. ii. 29-32
 Ctesias, Greek physician in service of Artaxerxes, I. viii. 26, 27
 Cydnus, river in Cilicia, I. ii. 23
 Cyniscus, Lacedaemonian, VII. i. 13
 Cyrus, the Great, founder of the Persian Empire, I. ix. 1
 Cyrus, the Younger, brother of King Artaxerxes II., I. i. 1-II. i. 14, frequently; II. ii. 3, iii. 19, 21, 23, iv. 1, 9, 16, 25, 27, v. 11, 22, 35, 38, 39, vi. 4, 5, 17, 29; III. i. 2, 4, 5, 8, 9, 10, 27, II. 5, 15, iii. 2, iv. 13; v. vi. 16, 18, vii. 34; VI. i. 23, iv. 8; VII. ii. 6, 7
 Cyzicus, city on the Propontis, VII. ii. 5
 Damaratus, king of Sparta, II. i. 3; VII. viii. 17
 Dana, city in Cappadocia, I. ii. 20
 Daphnagoras, Mysian, VII. viii. 9
 Dardanian, inh. of Dardanus, city of the Troad (Timasion, Eurymachus), III. i. 47; v. vi. 19, 21, 37; VI. i. 52; VII. i. 40, ii. 1, iii. 18, v. 4
 Dardas, river in Syria, I. iv. 10
 Darius (II.), king of Persia, I. i. 1, 3, vii. 9
 Delphi, city in Phocis, with temple and oracle of Apollo, III. i. 5; v. iii. 5; VI. i. 22
 Delta, peninsula of Thrace, VII. i. 33, v. 1

INDEX TO ANABASIS

- Democrates, Temnian, IV. iv. 15
 Dercylidas, Lacedaemonian general, V. vi. 24
 Dexippus, Laconian, V. i. 15; VI. i. 32, vi. 5-33
 Dolopian, inh. of Dolopia, district in south-western Thessaly, I. ii. 6
 Dracontius, Spartan, IV. viii. 25, 26; VI. vi. 30
 Drilae, mountain tribe near Trapezus, V. ii. 1, 2, 3
 Eobatana, capital of Media, II. iv. 25; III. v. 15
 Egypt, II. i. 14
 Egyptian, I. iv. 2, viii. 9; II. i. 6, v. 13
 Elean, inh. of Elis, country in Peloponnesus (Tolmides, Hieronymus, Basias), II. ii. 20; III. i. 34; VI. iv. 10; VII. i. 32, viii. 10
 Enyalius, surname of Ares, I. viii. 18; V. ii. 14
 Ephesus, city in Ionia, I. iv. 2; v. iii. 8, 12; VI. i. 23
 Ephesian, V. iii. 4, 6
 Episthenes, (1) Amphipolitan, commander of peltasts, I. x. 7; (2) Olynthian, VII. iv. 7-10
 Epitalian, inh. of Epitalium, town in Elis, VII. iv. 13
 Epyaxa, wife of Syennesis, king of Cilicia, I. ii. 12, 25
 Eretrian, inh. of Eretria, city in Euboea, VII. viii. 8
 Eteonicus, Lacedaemonian officer under Anaxibius, VII. i. 12, 15, 20
 Euclides, Phliasian, soothsayer, VII. viii. 1, 3
 Euphrates, river of Mesopotamia, I. iii. 20, iv. 11, 14, v. 1, 5, 10, vii. 15, viii. 4; II. iv. 6; IV. v. 2
 Europe, VII. i. 27, vi. 32
 Eurylochus, Lusian, hoplite, IV. ii. 21, vii. 11, 12; VII. i. 32, vi. 40
 Eurymachus, Dardanian, V. vi. 21
 Euxine, the Black Sea, IV. viii. 22
 Ganos, fortress on the Propontis, VII. v. 8
 Gates, of Cilicia and Syria, I. iv. 4, 5
 Gaulites, Samian, I. vii. 5
 Glus, Egyptian, one of Cyrus' officers, I. iv. 16, v. 7; II. i. 3, iv. 24
 Gnessippus, Athenian, VII. iii. 23
 Gobryas, Persian general, I. vii. 12
 Gongylus, (1) Eretrian, living at Pergamus, VII. viii. 8; (2) son of the preceding, VII. viii. 8, 17
 Gorgias, of Leontini, rhetorician, II. vi. 16
 Gorgion, son of Gongylus (1), above
 Greece, I. ii. 9, iii. 4, 14, iv. 7; II. i. 17, iii. 18, 26, 29, iv. 4, 13; III. i. 2, 30, 31, ii. 4, 13, 26, iv. 46; IV. viii. 6; V. i. 2, iv. 5, vi. 15, 18, 22, 25, 33, vii. 6, 7, 9; VI. i. 17, iv. 8, v. 23, vi. 12, 14, 16, 23, 34; VII. i. 30, 33
 Greek, Greeks (generally and of the Ten Thousand in particular), frequently
 Gymnias, city of the Scythinians, near Trapezus, IV. vii. 19
 Halisarna, city in Mysia, VII. viii. 17
 Halys, river in Asia Minor, V. vi. 9
 Harmene, port near Sinope, VI. i. 15, 17
 Harpasus, river between the Chalybians and Scythinians, IV. vii. 18
 Hecatonymus, Sinopean ambassador, V. v. 7, 24, vi. 3
 Hegesander, Arcadian, captain, VI. iii. 5
 Helius, the sun-god, IV. v. 35
 Hellas, wife of the elder Gongylus, VII. viii. 8
 Hellespont, strait between Europe and Asia, now the Dardanelles, I. i. 9; II. vi. 3; VII. ii. 5
 Hellespontine, I. i. 9
 Heracleia, Greek city on the Euxine Sea, in Bithynia, v. vi. 10; VI. i. 33, ii. 1, 19, iii. 14, iv. 1, 2, 3, 13, v. 1
 Heracleides, Maronite, in service of Seuthes, VII. iii. 16, 29, iv. 2, v. 2, 4, 5, 6, 8, 9, 11, vi. 2, 4-7, 41, 42, vii. 35, 41, 48
 Heracleot, inh. of Heracleia, v. vi. 19, 21, 26, 31, 35; VI. ii. 3, 4, 8, 17, 18, iv. 23
 Heracles, the hero, IV. viii. 25; VI. ii. 2, 15, v. 24, 25
 Hieronymus, Elean, captain, III. i. 34; VI. iv. 10; VII. i. 32, iv. 18
 Hyrcanian, inh. of Hyrcania, province south-east of Caspian Sea, VII. viii. 15

INDEX TO ANABASIS

- Iconium, city in Phrygia, I. ii. 19
 Ida, mountain in the Troad, VII. viii. 7
 Ionia, district on western coast of Asia Minor, I. ii. 21, iv. 13; II. i. 3; III. v. 15
 Ionian, I. i. 6
 Iris, river in northern Asia Minor, V. vi. 9
 Issus, city in Cilicia, I. ii. 24, iv. 1
 Isthmus, of Corinth, II. vi. 3
 Itamenes, Persian commander, VII. viii. 15
 Lacedaemon (or Laconia), country in Peloponnesus, v. iii. 11
 Lacedaemonian, I. ii. 21; II. vi. 2; III. i. 5; IV. vi. 14; V. iii. 7; VI. i. 27, 30, vi. 9, 12, 13, 18, 34; VII. i. 25-28, ii. 2, 37, vi. 1, 2, 7, 37, 39, 43, vii. 10, 31, 44; (Clearchus, Pythagoras, Ocheirisophus, Charminus, Polynicus, Aristarchus), I. i. 9, ii. 9, iv. 2, 3; III. ii. 1, 37; VI. i. 26, ii. 10; VII. vi. 2, 4, 9, 24, 33, 34, 39, 40, vii. 12, 44
 Laconian, IV. vii. 16; (Damaratus, Ocheirisophus, Clearchus, Leonymus, Dexippus, Nicander, Neon, Aristarchus, Charminus, Polynicus), II. i. 3, 5, v. 31; IV. i. 18; V. i. 15; VI. i. 32; VII. ii. 29, iii. 8, vi. 1, 7, vii. 15, 17, 19, viii. 23
 Lampsacenes, VII. viii. 3
 Lampsacus, city of the Troad, on the Hellespont, VII. viii. 1, 6
 Larisa, ruined city on the Tigris, the ancient Calah, III. iv. 7
 Leon, Thurian, V. i. 2
 Leontine, inh. of Leontini, Greek city in Sicily, II. vi. 16
 Leonymus, Laconian, IV. i. 18
 Locrian, inh. of Locris, country in northern Greece, VII. iv. 18
 Lusian, inh. of Lusi, city in Arcadia, IV. ii. 21, vii. 11, 12; VII. vi. 40
 Lycaea, festival in honour of Lycaean Zeus, I. ii. 10
 Lycaonia, province in central Asia Minor, I. ii. 19
 Lycaonians, III. ii. 23
 Lyceum, gymnasium at Athens, VII. viii. 1
 Lycius, (1) Syracusan, I. x. 14, 15; (2) Athenian, commander of cavalry, III. iii. 20; IV. iii. 22, 25, vii. 24
 Lycon, Achaean, v. vi. 27; VI. ii. 4, 7, 9
 Lyceus, river near Heracleia, VI. ii. 3
 Lydia, province in western Asia Minor, I. ii. 5, ix. 7; III. v. 15; VII. viii. 20
 Lydian, I. v. 6; III. i. 31
 Macistian, inh. of Macistus, city in Elis, VII. iv. 16
 Macronians, tribe dwelling south of Trapezus, IV. vii. 27, viii. 1, 3, 5, 6, 7, 8; V. v. 18
 Maeander, river in western Asia Minor, I. ii. 5, 7, 8
 Maesades, father of Seuthes, VII. ii. 32, v. 1
 Magnesians, inh. of Magnesia, in southern Thessaly, VI. i. 7
 Mantineans, inh. of Mantinea, city in Arcadia, VI. i. 11
 Mardians, tribe in Armenia, IV. iii. 4
 Mariandynians, tribe in Bithynia, near Heracleia, VI. ii. 1
 Maronite, inh. of Maroneia, Greek city on the coast of Thrace, VII. iii. 16
 Marsyas, (1) Phrygian satyr, I. ii. 8; (2) river of Phrygia called by his name, I. ii. 8
 Mascas, river in Mesopotamia, I. v. 4
 Medea, wife of the king of Media, III. iv. 11
 Medes, III. ii. 25, iv. 7, 8, 10, 11
 Media (in *Anabasis*), district along Tigris river, I. vii. 15; II. iv. 12, 27; III. v. 15
 Medocus, king of the Odrysians, VII. ii. 32, iii. 16, 17, vii. 3, 11
 Medosades, ambassador of Seuthes, VII. i. 5, ii. 10, 23-26, vii. 1-18
 Megabyzus, keeper of the temple of Artemis at Ephesus, v. iii. 6, 7
 Megaphernes, Persian nobleman, I. ii. 20
 Megarian, inh. of Megara, city on the isthmus of Corinth, I. ii. 3, iv. 7; VI. ii. 1
 Melanditae, Thracian tribe, VII. ii. 32
 Meinnophagi, Thracian tribe near Salmydessus, VII. v. 12
 Menon, Thessalian general, I. ii. 6, 15, 20, 21, 25, iv. 13, 17, v. 11-13, vii. 1, viii. 4; II. i. 5, ii. 1, iv. 15,

INDEX TO ANABASIS

- v. 28, 31, 38, 41, vi. 21, 26; III. i. 47
- Mespila, ruined city on the Tigris, the ancient Nineveh, III. iv. 10
- Methydrian, inh. of Methydrium, town in Arcadia, IV. i. 27, vi. 20, vii. 9, 12
- Metropolis, capital of the Mossynoecians, v. iv. 15, 25
- Micres, Arcadian captain, VI. iii. 4, 5
- Midas, mythical king of Phrygia, I. ii. 13
- Milesian, I. i. 11, ix. 9, x. 3; VI. i. 15
- Miletus, city in Ionia, I. i. 6, 7, ii. 2, 3, iv. 2
- Miltocythes, Thracian commander of cavalry, II. ii. 7
- Mithradates, Persian friend of Cyrus, II. v. 35; III. iii. 1, 4, 6, iv. 2-4
- Mossynoecians, barbarous tribe on the Euxine Sea, near Cerasus, v. iv. 2, 4, 5, 8, 15, 27, 28, 30, v. 1
- Myriandus, city in Syria, I. v. 6
- Mysia, province in north-western Asia Minor, VII. viii. 8
- Mysian, I. ii. 10, vi. 7, ix. 14; II. v. 13; III. ii. 23, 24; v. ii. 29-31; VI. i. 9, 12
- Nausicleides, Lacedaemonian in service of Thibron, VII. viii. 6
- Neon, Asinaean general, v. iii. 4, vi. 36, vii. 1; VI. ii. 13, iv. 11, 23, v. 4; VII. i. 40, ii. 1, 2, 11, 17, 29, iii. 2, 7
- Neonteichos, fortress on the Propontis, VII. v. 8
- Nicanter, Laconian, v. i. 15
- Nicarchus, (1) Arcadian, II. v. 33; (2) Arcadian captain, III. iii. 5
- Nicomachus, Oetaean commander of light troops, IV. vi. 20
- Odrysiens, tribe of Thracians, VII. ii. 32, iii. 16, iv. 21, v. 1, 15, vii. 2, 11
- Odysseus, hero of the *Odyssey* of Homer, v. i. 2
- Oetaean, inh. of the district around Mt. Oeta in Thessaly, IV. vi. 20
- Olympia, shrine of Zeus in Elis, where the Olympian games were held, v. iii. 7, 11
- Olynthian, inh. of Olynthus, city in the Chalcidian peninsula, I. ii. 6; VII. iv. 7
- Ophrynum, city of the Troad, VII. viii. 5
- Opis, city on the Physcus river, in Assyria, II. iv. 25
- Orchomenian, inh. of Orchomenus, city in Arcadia, II. v. 37, 39; III. ii. 4; IV. viii. 18; VII. i. 40, v. 4
- Orontas, (1) Persian of royal blood, put to death by Cyrus, I. vi. 1-11, ix. 29; (2) son-in-law of Artaxerxes, satrap of Armenia, II. iv. 8, 9, v. 40; III. iv. 13, v. 17; IV. iii. 4
- Paphlagonia, province in northern Asia Minor, v. v. 6, vi. 1; VI. i. 1, 2, 14
- Paphlagonian, I. viii. 5; V. ii. 22, iv. 13, v. 12, 22, vi. 3, 6; VI. i. 1, 6, 11, 13, 14, 15
- Parian, VII. iii. 16
- Parium, city on Asiatic coast of Propontis, VII. ii. 7, 25, iii. 20
- Parrhasian, inh. of Parrhasia, district in Arcadia (Xenias, Callimachus, Arexion), I. i. 2; IV. i. 27, vii. 8; VI. ii. 7, 9, v. 2
- Parthenium, town in Mysia, VII. viii. 15, 21
- Parthenius, river in northern Asia Minor, v. v. 9
- Parysatis, wife of Darius II., mother of Artaxerxes and Cyrus, I. i. 1, 4, iv. 9, vii. 9; II. iv. 27
- Pasion, Megarian general, I. ii. 3, iii. 7, iv. 7, 8
- Pategyas, Persian of Cyrus' staff, I. viii. 1
- Peloponnesians, I. i. 6; VI. ii. 10
- Peloponnesus, southern peninsula of Greece, I. iv. 2
- Peltae, city in Phrygia, I. ii. 10
- Pergamus, city in Mysia, VII. viii. 8, 23
- Perinthians, VII. ii. 8, 11
- Perinthus, city on European coast of Propontis, II. vi. 2; VII. ii. 8, 11, 28, iv. 2, vi. 24
- Persian, inh. of Persia, country on northern shore of Persian Gulf, but often used of any subject of the Persian King, I. ii. 20, 27, v. 8, vi. 1, 4, viii. 1, 21, 29, ix. 1, 3; II. ii. 1, iii. 17, iv. 1, 26, v. 35; III. ii. 11, 25, iii. 16, iv. 8, 11, 12,

INDEX TO ANABASIS

- 16, 17, 35; IV. iv. 16, 17, v. 36, vii. 27; VI. i. 10; VII. viii. 9
- Phalimus, Greek instructor in tactics, in service of Tissaphernes, II. i. 7-22, ii. 1
- Pharnabazus, satrap of Lesser Phrygia and Bithynia, v. vi. 24; VI. iv. 24, v. 7, 30; VII. i. 2, ii. 4, 7, 12, 14, viii. 24
- Phasiens, (1) tribe on the Armenian Phasis, IV. vi. 5; (2) tribe on the Colchian Phasis, v. vi. 36
- Phasis, (1) river in Armenia, IV. vi. 4; (2) river in Colchis, v. vi. 36, vii. 1, 5, 7, 9
- Philesius, Achaean general, III. i. 47; v. iii. 1, vi. 27, viii. 1; VII. i. 32, ii. 1
- Phliasian, inh. of Phlius, city in Peloponnesus, VII. viii. 1
- Phocaeans, inh. of Phocaea, city in Ionia, I. x. 2
- Phoenicia, country on eastern coast of Mediterranean Sea, I. iv. 5, vii. 12
- Phoenicians, I. iv. 6
- Pholoe, mountain between Arcadia and Elis, v. iii. 10
- Phrasias, Athenian captain, VI. v. 11
- Phrygia, (1) the Greater, province in central Asia Minor, I. ii. 6, 7, 19, ix. 7; (2) the Lesser, province in north-western Asia Minor, v. vi. 24; VI. iv. 24
- Phrygians, inh. of Phrygia (1), I. ii. 13
- Phryniscus, Achaean general, VII. ii. 1, 2, 29, v. 4, 10
- Physcus, river in Assyria, tributary of Tigris, II. iv. 25
- Pigres, Cyrus' interpreter, I. ii. 17, v. 7, viii. 12
- Pisidians, inh. of Pisidia, province in southern Asia Minor, I. i. 11, ii. 1, 4, ix. 14; II. v. 13; III. i. 9, ii. 23
- Pleisthenes, Amphipolitan, IV. vi. 1, 3
- Polus, Lacedaemonian admiral, VII. ii. 5
- Polycrates, Athenian captain, IV. v. 24; v. i. 16; VII. ii. 17, 29, 30, vi. 41
- Polynicus, Lacedaemonian in service of Thibron, VII. vi. 1, 39, 43, vii. 13, 56
- Polystратus, Athenian, III. iii. 20
- Pontus, (1) the Euxine or Black Sea, IV. viii. 22; v. i. 15, ii. 2, vi. 16, 20, vii. 7, 15; VI. i. 16, iv. 1, v. 20; VII. v. 12; (2) the region along the south-eastern coast of the Euxine, v. vi. 15, 19, 25; VI. ii. 4
- Procles, ruler of Teuthrania, II. i. 8, ii. 1; VII. viii. 17
- Proxenus, Boeotian general, I. i. 11, ii. 3, v. 14, 16, viii. 4, x. 5; II. i. 10, iv. 15, 16, v. 31, 37, 38, 41, vi. 16; III. i. 4, 8, 9, 10, 15, 34, 47; v. iii. 5
- Psarus, river in Cilicia, I. iv. 1
- Pylae, fortress on the frontier of Babylonia, I. v. 5
- Pyramus, river in eastern Asia Minor, I. iv. 1
- Pyrrhias, Arcadian captain, VI. v. 11
- Eythagoras, Lacedaemonian admiral, I. iv. 2
- Rhathines, officer under Pharnabazus, VI. v. 7
- Rhodium, inh. of Rhodes, island off south-western coast of Asia Minor, III. iii. 16, 17, iv. 15, 16, v. 8
- Sacred Mount, on northern coast of Propontis, VII. i. 14, iii. 3
- Salmydessus, city on western coast of Euxine Sea, VII. v. 12
- Samian, inh. of Samos, island west of Asia Minor, I. vii. 5
- Samolus, Achaean captain, v. vi. 14; VI. v. 11
- Sardis, capital of Lydia, I. ii. 2, 3, 5, vi. 6; III. i. 8
- Scillus, town in Elis, near Olympia, v. iii. 7, 8
- Scythians, tribe near south-eastern shore of Euxine Sea, IV. vii. 18, viii. 1
- Selinus, (1) stream in Ephesus, v. iii. 8; (2) stream in Scillus, v. iii. 8
- Selymbria, city on European coast of Propontis, VII. ii. 28, v. 15
- Seuthes, Odrysian prince, v. i. 15; VII. i. 5, 14, ii. 2, 10-31, iii. 4-47, iv. 1-23, v. 2-16, vi. 2-44, vii. 1-55
- Sicyonian, inh. of Sicyon, country in Peloponnesus, III. iv. 47
- Silanus, (1) Ambraciot soothsayer, I. vii. 18; v. vi. 16, 17, 18, 29, 34; VI. iv. 13; (2) Macistian trumpeter, VII. iv. 16
- Sinope, Greek city in Paphlagonia,

INDEX TO ANABASIS

- on the Euxine Sea, v. v. 7, vi. 10; vi. i. 15
- Sinopians, iv. viii. 22; v. iii. 2, v. 3, 8, 11, 13, 24, 25, vi. 1, 11, 12, 13, 19, 21, 26, 31; vi. i. 15
- Sitalcas, Thracian war song, vi. i. 6
- Sittace, city in Babylonia, on the Tigris, II. iv. 13
- Socrates, (1) Athenian philosopher, III. i. 5, 7; (2) Achaean general, I. i. 11, ii. 3; II. v. 31, vi. 30; III. i. 47
- Soli, city in Cilicia, I. ii. 24
- Sophaenetus, Stymphalian general, I. i. 11, ii. 3; II. v. 37; IV. iv. 19; v. iii. 1, viii. 1; vi. v. 13
- Sosis, Syracusan general, I. ii. 9
- Soteridas, Sicyonian, III. iv. 47, 49
- Sparta, capital of Lacedaemon, II. vi. 4
- Spartan, IV. viii. 25; VI. vi. 30
- Sphthridates, officer under Pharnabazus, VI. v. 7
- Stratocles, Cretan commander of bowmen, IV. ii. 28
- Stymphalian, inh. of Stymphalus, city in Arcadia (Sophaenetus, Agasias, Aeneas), I. i. 11, ii. 3; II. v. 37; III. i. 31; IV. i. 27, iv. 19, vii. 9, 13; v. ii. 15; VI. i. 30, ii. 7, iv. 10; VII. viii. 19
- Susa, capital of the Persian Empire, II. iv. 25; III. v. 15
- Syennesis, king of Cilicia, I. ii. 12, 21-27, iv. 4
- Syracusan, inh. of Syracuse, Greek city in Sicily (Sosis, Lycius), I. ii. 9, x. 14
- Syria, country between Mesopotamia, Arabia, and Phoenicia, I. iv. 4, 6, 10, 19
- Syrian, I. iv. 5, 9
- Tamos, Egyptian, Cyrus' admiral, I. ii. 21, iv. 2; II. i. 3
- Taochians, tribe near south-eastern shore of Euxine Sea, IV. iv. 18, vi. 5, vii. 1, 17; v. v. 17
- Tarsus, capital of Cilicia, I. ii. 23, 25, 26
- Teleboas, river in Armenia, tributary of Euphrates, IV. iv. 3
- Temnian, inh. of Temnus, city in Aeolis, IV. iv. 15
- Teres, (1) ancestor of Seuthes, VII. ii. 22; (2) Odrysian, VII. v. 1
- Tenthraia, city in Mysia, II. i. 3; VII. viii. 17
- Thapsacenes, I. iv. 18
- Thapsacus, city in Syria, on the Euphrates, I. iv. 11
- Tharypas, favourite of Menon, II. vi. 28
- Theban, inh. of Thebes, chief city of Boeotia (Proxenus, Coeratadas), II. i. 10; VII. i. 33
- Thebe, town in Mysia, VII. viii. 7
- Theches, mountain from which the Greeks first saw the Euxine Sea, IV. vii. 21
- Theogenes, Locrian captain, VII. iv. 18
- Theopompus, Athenian, II. i. 11
- Thermodon, river in northern Asia Minor, v. vi. 9
- Thessalian (Aristippus, Menon, Boiscus), I. i. 10, ii. 6; II. i. 5, v. 31, vi. 21; v. viii. 23
- Thessaly, northernmost country in Greece, I. i. 10
- Thibron, Lacedaemonian commander in war against the Persians, VII. vi. 1, 43, vii. 57, viii. 24
- Thorax, Boeotian, v. vi. 19, 21, 25, 35
- Thrace, (1) in Europe, the south-eastern part of the Balkan peninsula, v. i. 15; VII. i. 14, 33, ii. 9, vi. 24; (2) in Asia, the country also called Bithynia, vi. ii. 17, 18, 19, iv. 1
- Thracian, I. i. 9, ii. 9, iii. 4, v. 13; II. ii. 7, vi. 2, 5; VI. i. 5, 6, ii. 16, iii. 4, 6, 8, 9, 11, 23, iv. 2; VII. i. 13, ii. 1, 23, 33, iii. 21, 26, 34, iv. 4, 11, 12, 17, 19, v. 1, 12, 13, vi. 28, 32, 41, vii. 32; (Miltocythes, Seuthes), II. ii. 7; VII. i. 5
- Thurian, inh. of Thurii, Greek city in Italy, v. i. 2
- Thracian Square, in Byzantium, VII. i. 24
- Thymbrium, city in Phrygia, I. ii. 13
- Thynians, Thracian tribe, VII. ii. 22, 32, iv. 2, 14, 18, 22
- Tibarenians, tribe on south-eastern coast of Euxine Sea, v. v. 1-3
- Tigris, river of Mesopotamia, II. ii. 3, iv. 13, 14, 17, 21, 22, 25, 28; III. iv. 6, v. 1; IV. iv. 3
- Timasion, Dardanian general, III. i. 47, ii. 37; v. vi. 19, 21, 26, 35, 37; VI. i. 32, iii. 17, 22, v. 23; VII. i. 40, ii. 1, 2, iii. 18, 27, 46, v. 4, 10

INDEX TO ANABASIS

- Timesitheus, Trapezuntian, v. iv. 2-4
- Tiribazus, governor of Western Armenia, IV. iv. 4, 7, 17, 18, 21, v. 1
- Tissaphernes, satrap of Ionia and Persian general, I. i. 2, 3, 6, 7, 8, 11, ii. 4, 5, iv. 2, vii. 12, viii. 9, ix. 9, x. 5-8; II. i. 7, iii. 17, 24, 28, 29, iv. 1, 8, 9, 17, 24, 27, v. 2, 3, 16, 25-40; III. i. 35, ii. 4, 20, iii. 4, iv. 2, 13, 15, 18, 32, 39, 45, v. 1, 3; IV. iii. 2; VII. i. 23, vi. 1, 7, viii. 24
- Tolmides, Elean, herald, II. ii. 20; III. i. 46; v. ii. 18
- Tralles, city in Caria, I. iv. 8
- Tranpsae, Thracian tribe, VII. ii. 32
- Trapezuntians, IV. viii. 23; v. i. 11, 15, ii. 1, 2, iv. 2, v. 10; VI. vi. 22, 23
- Trapezus, Greek city on south-eastern coast of Euxine Sea, colony of Sinope, IV. viii. 22; v. ii. 28, v. 14; VI. vi. 5
- Troad, the, district in north-western Asia Minor, v. vi. 23, 24; VII. viii. 7
- Tyriaeum, city in Phrygia, I. ii. 14
- Xanthicles, Achaean general, III. i. 47; v. viii. 1; VII. ii. 1
- Xenias, Parrhasian general, I. i. 2, ii. 1, 3, 10, iii. 7, iv. 7, 8
- Xenophon, Athenian general and author of the *Anabasis*, I. viii. 15; II. iv. 15, v. 37, 41; III.-VII. frequently
- Xerxes, king of Persia, I. ii. 9; III. ii. 13
- Zapatas, river in Assyria, tributary of the Tigris, II. v. 1; III. iii. 6
- Zelarchus, market-clerk, v. vii. 24, 29
- Zeus, III. iv. 12; v. iii. 11; Zeus the Saviour, I. viii. 16; III. ii. 9; IV. viii. 25; VI. v. 25; Zeus the King, III. i. 12; VI. i. 22; VII. vi. 44; the Strangers' god, III. ii. 4; the Merciful, VII. viii. 4

